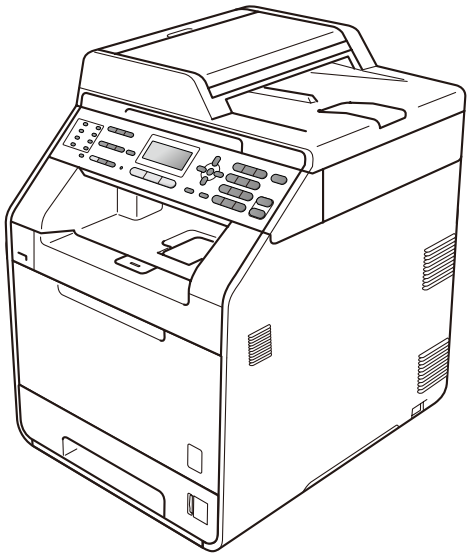
Brother Color Laser MFC
SERVICE MANUAL

MODEL: DCP-9055CDN/9270CDN
MFC-9460CDN/9465CDN
MFC-9560CDW/9970CDW



Read this manual thoroughly before maintenance work.
Keep this manual in a convenient place for quick and easy reference at all times.

August 2010
SM-FAX118
8CE301

TRADEMARKS

The Brother logo is a registered trademark of Brother Industries, Ltd.

Apple and Macintosh are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

PCL is either a trademark or a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company in the United States and other countries.

Windows Vista is either a registered trademark or a trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server and Internet Explorer are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

PostScript and PostScript3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

ENERGY STAR is a U.S. registered mark.

Citrix and MetaFrame are registered trademarks of Citrix Systems, Inc. in the United States.

Intel, Intel Xeon and Pentium are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation.

AMD, AMD Athlon, AMD Opteron and combinations thereof, are trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.

PictBridge is a trademark.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

The function comparative table for models as described in this Service manual are shown blow.

Model	DCP-9055CDN	DCP-9270CDN	MFC-9460CDN	MFC-9465CDN	MFC-9560CDW	MFC-9970CDW
Duplex Scanning	---	√	---	√	√	√
LAN	Wired	Wired	Wired	Wired	Wireless	Wireless
Touch Panel	---	√	---	---	---	√
Scanning Size	A4	Legal	A4	A4	A4	Legal
USB host	---	√	√	√	√	√

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 3 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

CHAPTER 4 ADJUSTMENTS AND UPDATING OF SETTINGS, REQUIRED AFTER PARTS REPLACEMENT

REGULATION

■ Approval Information (MFC only)

THIS EQUIPMENT IS DESIGNED TO WORK WITH A TWO WIRE ANALOGUE PSTN LINE FITTED WITH THE APPROPRIATE CONNECTOR.

Brother advises that this product may not function correctly in a country other than where it was originally purchased, and does not offer any warranty in the event that this product is used on public telecommunication lines in another country.

■ Declaration of Conformity (Europe only) (MFC-9460CDN/MFC-9465CDN only)

We, Brother Industries, Ltd.

15-1, Naeshiro-cho, Mizuho-ku, Nagoya 467-8561 Japan

declare that this product is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directives 1999/5/EC and 2005/32/EC.

The Declaration of Conformity (DoC) is on our Website.

Please go to http://solutions.brother.com/.

- choose region (eg. Europe)
- choose country
- choose your model
- choose “Manuals”
- choose Declaration of Conformity (Select Language when required.)

■ Declaration of Conformity (Europe only) (DCP-9055CDN only)

We, Brother Industries, Ltd.

15-1, Naeshiro-cho, Mizuho-ku, Nagoya 467-8561 Japan

declare that this product is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC and 2005/32/EC.

The Declaration of Conformity (DoC) is on our Website.

Please go to http://solutions.brother.com/.

- choose region (eg. Europe)
- choose country
- choose your model
- choose “Manuals”
- choose Declaration of Conformity (Select Language when required.)

■ IEC60825-1:2007 Specification (For 220-240V models only)

This product is a Class 1 laser product as defined in IEC60825-1:2007 specifications.
The label shown below is attached in countries where required.

This product has a Class 3B Laser Diode which emits invisible laser radiation in the scanner unit. The scanner unit should not be opened under any circumstances.

Internal laser radiation

Wave length: 770 - 800 nm
Output: 20 mW max.
Laser Class: Class 3B

> **WARNING**
>
> Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

■ Disconnect Device

This product must be installed near an electrical socket that is easily accessible. In case of emergencies, you must disconnect the power cord from the electrical socket to shut off power completely.

■ Wiring Information (U.K. only)

If you need to replace the plug fuse, fit a fuse that is approved by ASTA to BS1362 with the same rating as the original fuse.

Always replace the fuse cover. Never use a plug that does not have a cover. If in any doubt, call a qualified electrician.

Warning -This product must be earthed.

The wires in the mains lead are coloured in line with the following code:

- Green and Yellow: Earth
- Blue: Neutral
- Brown: Live

■ LAN Connection (Network models only)

> **CAUTION**
>
> DO NOT connect this product to a LAN connection that is subject to over-voltages.

■ Radio Interference

This product complies with EN55022 (CISPR Publication 22)/Class B.

■ EU Directive 2002/96/EC and EN50419

European
Union only

This equipment is marked with the above recycling symbol. It means that at the end of the life of the equipment you must dispose of it separately at an appropriate collection point and not place it in the normal domestic unsorted waste stream. This will benefit the environment for all. (European Union only)

For USA and Canada

■ Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Declaration of Conformity (For USA)

Responsible Party: Brother International Corporation

100 Somerset Corporate Boulevard

P.O. Box 6911

Bridgewater, NJ 08807-0911

USA

Telephone: (908) 704-1700

declares, that the products

Product name: Color MFC
DCP-9055CDN/9270CDN
MFC-9460CDN/9465CDN/9560CDW/9970CDW

Product option: Lower Tray Unit LT-300CL

complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.
If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

(Wireless network models only)
This transmitter must be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Important

A shielded interface cable should be used to ensure compliance with the limits for a Class B digital device. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Brother Industries, Ltd. could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

■ Industry Canada Compliance Statement (For Canada)

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

■ Laser Safety (110 to 120 volt model only)

This machine is certified as a Class 1 laser product under the USA. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) Radiation Performance Standard according to the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968. This means that the machine does not produce hazardous laser radiation.

Since radiation emitted inside the machine is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape from the machine during any phase of user operation.

■ FDA Regulations (110 to 120 volt model only)

The USA Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has implemented regulations for laser products manufactured on and after August 2, 1976. Compliance is mandatory for products marketed in the United States. The following label on the back of the machine indicates compliance with the FDA regulations and must be attached to laser products marketed in the United States.

MANUFACTURED:
Brother Technology (Shenzhen) Ltd.
NO6 Gold Garden Ind., Nanling Buji, Longgang, Shenzhen, China
This product complies with FDA performance standards for laser products except for deviations pursuant to Laser Notice No.50, dated June 24, 2007.

■ Internal laser radiation

Maximum radiation power:	20 mW
Wave length:	770 - 800 nm
Laser class:	Class 3B

SAFETY INFORMATION

■ Definitions of Warnings, Cautions, Notes and Memos

The following conventions are used in this manual:

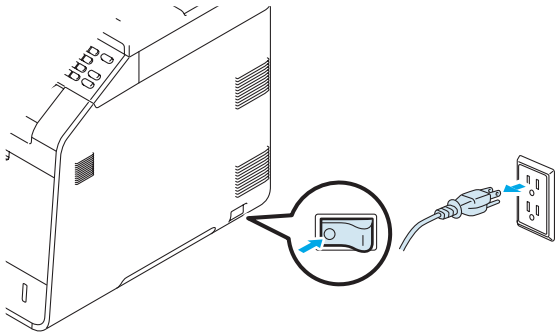
Mark	Contents
	Warnings tell you what to do to prevent possible personal injury.
	Electrical Hazard icons alert you to a possible electrical shock.
	Hot Surface icons warn you not to touch machine parts that are hot.
	Cautions specify procedures you must follow or avoid to prevent possible damage to the machine or other objects.
Note	Notes tell you useful tips when servicing the machine.
Memo	Memo tells you bits of knowledge to help understand the machine.

■ Safety Precautions

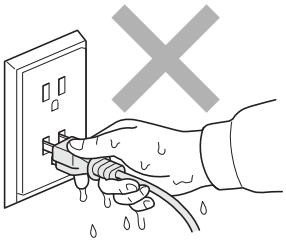
Listed below are the various kinds of “WARNING” messages included in this manual.

WARNING

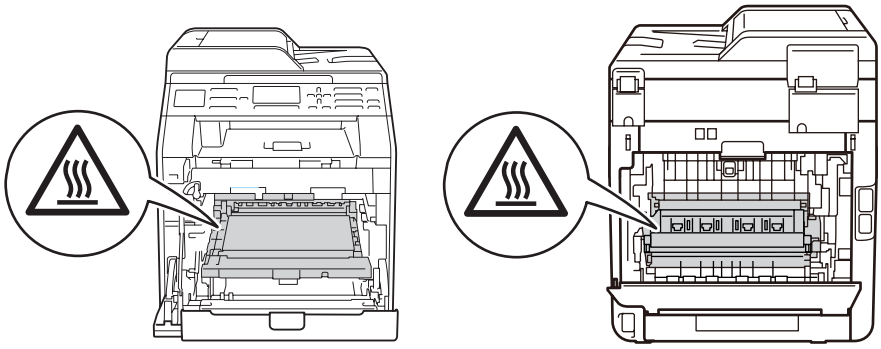
There are high voltage electrodes inside the machine. Before you clean the inside of the machine or replace parts, make sure that you have turned off the power switch and unplugged the machine from the AC power outlet.



DO NOT handle the plug with wet hands. Doing this might cause an electrical shock.

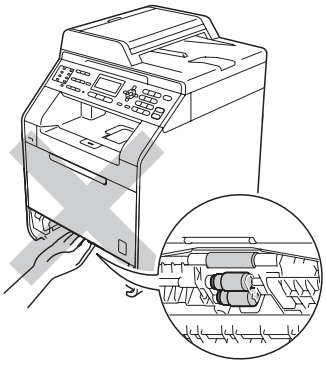


The fuser unit becomes extremely hot during operation. Wait until it has cooled down sufficiently before replacing consumable items. DO NOT remove or damage the caution label located on or around the fuser.



WARNING

DO NOT touch the shaded parts shown in the illustration. These rollers may be rotating at high speed and can pinch or entrap your hand.



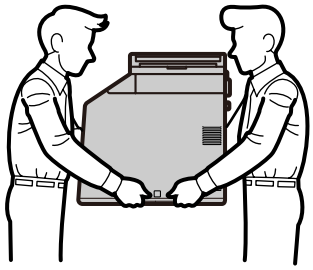
Languages on the label may vary depending on your country.

DO NOT use flammable substances, any type of spray or any organic solvent/liquids contains alcohol or ammonia to clean the inside or outside of the machine. Doing this may cause a fire or electrical shock.

If the machine becomes hot, blows smoke, or generates obscure odor, immediately turn off the power switch and unplug the machine from the AC power outlet.

If metal objects, water or other liquids get inside the machine, immediately turn off the power switch and unplug the machine from the AC power outlet.

This machine is heavy and weighs approximately 28.0 kg (61.7 lb). To prevent injuries when moving or lifting this machine, make sure to use at least two people. Be careful not to pinch your fingers when you set the machine back down.



CAUTION
Lightning and power surges can damage this product! We recommend that you use a quality surge protection device on the AC power line, or unplug the machine during a lightning storm.
Violently closing the top cover without mounting the toner cartridge and the drum unit can damage this product.

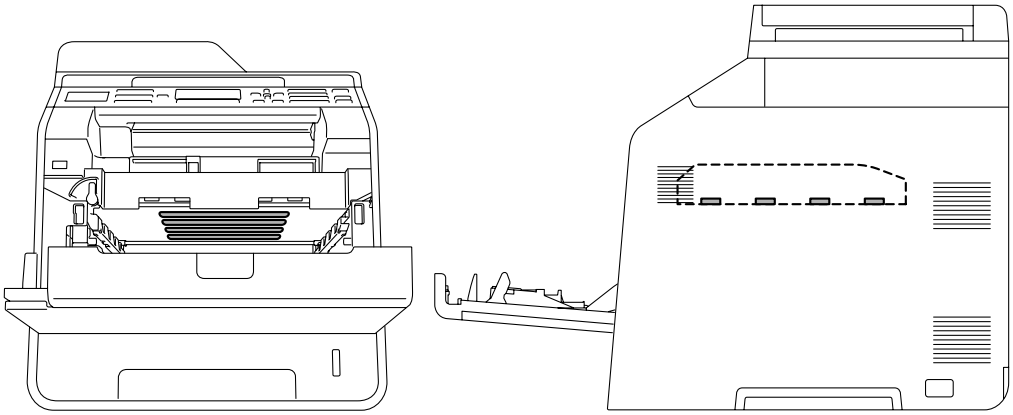
■ Caution for Laser Product (WARNHINWEIS fur Laser drucker)

CAUTION: When the machine during servicing is operated with the cover open, the regulations of VBG 93 and the performance instructions for VBG 93 are valid.

CAUTION: In case of any trouble with the laser unit, replace the laser unit itself. To prevent direct exposure to the laser beam, do not try to open the enclosure of the laser unit.

ACHTUNG: Im Falle von Störungen der Lasereinheit muß diese ersetzt werden. Das Gehäuse der Lasereinheit darf nicht geöffnet werden, da sonst Laser-strahlen austreten können.

<Location of the scanner windows>



■ Additional Information

When servicing the optical system of the machine, be careful not to place a screwdriver or other reflective object in the path of the laser beam. Be sure to take off any personal accessories such as watches and rings before working on the machine. A reflected beam, though invisible, can permanently damage the eyes.

Since the beam is invisible, the following caution label is attached on the laser unit.

CHAPTER 1
SPECIFICATIONS

CHAPTER 1
SPECIFICATIONS

This chapter lists the specifications of each model.

CONTENTS

1. SPECIFICATIONS LIST

1.1 General

Model		DCP-9055CDN	DCP-9270CDN
Print method		Electrophotographic Laser beam printer (Single-pass)	
Resolution		600 x 600 dpi, 2,400 dpi (2400 x 600) quality	
Print speed	One-sided	Monochrome/Full Color: Up to 24/25 ppm (A4/Letter size)	Monochrome/Full Color: Up to 28/30 ppm (A4/Letter size)
		* When loading A4 or Letter size paper from the paper tray.	
	Two-sided	Monochrome/Full Color: Up to 7/7 ppm (A4/Letter size) * When loading A4 or Letter size paper from the paper tray.	
Warm-up time		From Sleep mode: Less than 33 seconds From Power OFF → ON: Less than 35 seconds 23°C (73.4F)	
First print time[*1]		Monochrome: Less than 16 seconds Color: Less than 16 seconds	
CPU		StarSaphire (SS1000) 400 MHz	
Memory		128 MB	256 MB
Interface		Hi-Speed USB 2.0, 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX Ethernet	
Power consumption	Copying	For U.S.A Average: Approximately 575 W Except for U.S.A Average: Approximately 570 W	Approximately 600 W
	Ready	Average: Approximately 70 W	Average: Approximately 100W
	Sleep, Wireless LAN: ON	N/A	
	Deep sleep	Average: Approximately 1.2 W	Average: Approximately 2 W
Noise Level	Sound pressure	Printing: 57 dB (A) Ready: 33 dB (A)	
	Sound power	Printing (Mono): 6.74 B (A) Printing (Color): 6.82 B (A) Ready: 4.8 B (A)	Printing (Mono): 6.88 B (A) Printing (Color): 6.94 B (A) Ready: 4.8 B (A)
Environment	Temperature	Operating: 10 to 32.5 °C Storage: 0 to 40 °C	
	Humidity	Operating: 20 to 80 % Storage: 10 to 90 %	
Dimensions (W x D x H)	Carton Size	585 x 676 x 660 mm (23.0 x 26.6 x 26.0 inch)	663 x 699 x 705 mm (26.1 x 27.5 x 27.8 inch)
	Machine Size	410 x 503 x 492 mm (16.1 x 19.8 x 19.4 inch)	490 x 526 x 530 mm (19.3 x 20.7 x 20.9 inch)

[*1] The time may change if the machine is performing adjustment of color density or adjustment of color registration.

Specifications are subjected to change without notice.

Model		DCP-9055CDN	DCP-9270CDN
Weights	With Carton	32.0 kg / 70.5 lb	34.0kg / 75.0 lb
	Without Carton, With toner/ drum	26.5kg / 58.4 lb	30.0kg / 66.1 lb
	Without Carton and toner/drum	21.0kg / 46.3 lb	23.0kg / 50.7 lb
LCD Size		Except for China: 22 Characters x 5 lines For China: 15 Characters x 5 lines	5 inch Color Touch Panel

Specifications are subjected to change without notice.

Model		MFC-9460CDN	MFC-9465CDN	MFC-9560CDW	MFC-9970CDW
Print method		Electrophotographic Laser beam printer (Single-pass)			
Resolution		600 x 600 dpi, 2,400 dpi (2400 x 600) quality			
Print speed	One-sided	Monochrome/Full Color: Up to 24/25 ppm (A4/Letter size)			Monochrome/ Full Color: Up to 28/30 ppm (A4/Letter size)
		* When loading A4 or Letter size paper from the paper tray.			
	Two-sided	Monochrome/Full Color: Up to 7/7 ppm (A4/Letter size) * When loading A4 or Letter size paper from the paper tray.			
Warm-up time		From Sleep mode: Less than 33 seconds From Power OFF → ON: Less than 35 seconds 23°C (73.4F)			
First print time[*1]		Monochrome: Less than 16 seconds Color: Less than 16 seconds			
CPU		StarSaphire (SS1000) 400 MHz			
Memory		128 MB	256 MB		
Interface		Hi-Speed USB 2.0, Wired LAN, 10BASE-T/ 100BASE-TX Ethernet		Hi-Speed USB 2.0, Wired LAN, 10BASE-T/ 100BASE-TX Ethernet, Wireless LAN IEEE802.11b/g (Infrastructure Mode/Adhoc mode)	
Power consumption	Copying	For U.S.A Average: Approximately 575 W Except for U.S.A Average: Approximately 570 W			Approximately 600 W
	Ready	Average: Approximately 70 W			Average: Approximately 100 W
	Sleep, Wireless LAN: ON	N/A		Average: Approximately 9 W	Average: Approximately 25 W
	Deep sleep	Average: Approximately 1.5 W (For U.S.A/Canada) Approximately 1.7 W (Except For U.S.A/Canada)			Average: Approximately 2 W

[*1] The time may change if the machine is performing adjustment of color density or adjustment of color registration.

Specifications are subjected to change without notice.

Model		MFC-9460CDN	MFC-9465CDN	MFC-9560CDW	MFC-9970CDW
Noise Level	Sound pressure	Printing: 57 dB (A) Ready: 33 dB (A)			
	Sound power	Printing (Mono): 6.74 B (A) Printing (Color): 6.82 B (A) Ready: 4.8 B (A)			Printing (Mono): 6.88 B (A) Printing (Color): 6.94 B (A) Ready: 4.8 B (A)
Environment	Temperature	Operating: 10 to 32.5 °C Storage: 0 to 40 °C			
	Humidity	Operating: 20 to 80 % Storage: 10 to 90 %			
Dimensions (W x D x H)	Carton Size	585 x 676 x 660 mm (23.0 x 26.6 x 26.0 inch)			663 x 699 x 705 mm (26.1 x 27.5 x 27.8 inch)
	Machine Size	410 x 503 x 492 mm (16.1 x 19.8 x 19.4 inch)			490 x 526 x 530 mm (19.3 x 20.7 x 20.9 inch)
Weights	With Carton	32.0 kg / 70.5 lb			34.0 kg / 75.0 lb
	Without Carton, With toner/drum	26.5 kg / 58.4 lb			30.0 kg / 66.1 lb
	Without Carton and toner/drum	21.0 kg / 46.3 lb			23.0 kg / 50.7 lb
LCD Size		Except for China: 22 Characters x 5 lines For China: 15 Characters x 5 lines			5 inch Color Touch Panel

Specifications are subjected to change without notice.

<Computer requirements>

Computer platform & operating system version		Processor Speed	Minimum RAM	Recommended RAM	Available Hard Disk Space		Supported PC Interface[*2]
					For Drivers	For Applications	
Windows® Operating System	Windows® 2000 Professional[*3]	Intel® Pentium® II or equivalent	64 MB	256 MB	150 MB	500 MB	USB, 10BASE-T/ 100BASE-TX Ethernet, Wireless 802.11 b/g
	Windows® XP Home[*1 *4] Windows® XP Professional[*1 *4]		128 MB				
	Windows® XP Professional X64 Edition[*1 *4]	64-bit (Intel® 64 or AMD64) supported CPU	256 MB	512 MB			
	Windows Vista®[*4]	Intel® Pentium® 4 Or equivalent 64-bit (Intel® 64 or AMD64) supported CPU	512 MB	1 GB	500 MB	1.2 GB	
	Windows®7[*4]		1 GB (32-bit) 2 GB (64-bit)	1 GB (32-bit) 2 GB (64-bit)	650 MB		
	Windows Server® 2003 (print only via network)	Intel® Pentium® III or equivalent	256 MB	512 MB	50 MB	N/A	10BASE-T/ 100BASE-TX Ethernet, Wireless 802.11 b/g
	Windows Server® 2003 x 64 Edition (print only via network)	64-bit (Intel® 64 or AMD64) supported CPU					
	Windows Server® 2008 (print only via network)	Intel® Pentium® 4 Or equivalent 64-bit (Intel® 64 or AMD64) supported CPU	512 MB	2 GB			
	Windows Server® 2008 R2 (print only via network)	64-bit (Intel® 64 or AMD64) supported CPU					

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Computer platform & operating system version		Processor Speed	Minimum RAM	Recom-mended RAM	Available Hard Disk Space		Supported PC Interface*2
					For Drivers	For Applications	
Macintosh Operating System	Mac OS X 10.4.11 10.5.x	PowerPC® G4/G5 Intel® Core™ Processor	512 MB	1GB	80 MB	400 MB	USB, 10BASE-T/ 100BASE-TX Ethernet, Wireless 802.11 b/g
	Mac OS X 10.6.x	Intel® Core™ Processor	1GB	2GB			

*1 For WIA, 1200 x 1200 resolution. Brother Scanner Utility enables to enhance up to 19200 x 19200 dpi.

*2 Third-party USB ports are not supported.

*3 PaperPort™ 11SE supports Microsoft® SP4 or higher for Windows® 2000.

*4 PaperPort™ 12SE supports Microsoft® SP3 or higher for Windows® XP and SP2 or higher for Windows Vista® and Windows®7.

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.2 Network Connectivity

Model		DCP-9055CDN	DCP-9270CDN
Wired network	Network node type	NC-6900h type2	
	Network type	10BASE-T/100BASE-TX Ethernet	
Wireless network	Network node type	N/A	
	RF channels	N/A	
	Communication mode	N/A	
	Network security	N/A	

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Model		MFC-9460CDN	MFC-9465CDN	MFC-9560CDW	MFC-9970CDW
Wired network	Network node type	NC-6900h type2			
	Network type	10BASE-T/100BASE-TX Ethernet			
Wireless network	Network node type	N/A		IEEE802.11b/g (Infrastructure Mode/Adhoc mode)	
	RF channels	N/A		For U.S.A/Canada: 1-11 Except For U.S.A/Canada: 1-13	
	Communication mode	N/A		Infrastructure, Ad-hoc	
	Network security	N/A		WEP 64/128 bit, WPA-PSK (TKIP/AES), WPA2-PSK (AES), APOP, POP before SMTP, SMTP-AUTH, SSL/TLS (IPPS, HTTPS, SMTP, POP), SNMP v3, 802.1x (LEAP, EAP-FAST, PEAP, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS), Kerberos	

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.3 Service Information

Part		Approximate life
Machine life		Approximately 200,000 pages (A4/Letter) or 5 years
Machine life (ADF)		50,000 pages or 5 years
Machine life (Document scanner unit)		50,000 pages or 5 years
Maximum monthly print volume		Touch panel model: 60,000 pages Non Touch panel model: 40,000 pages
Periodical replacement parts	Fuser unit	100,000 pages
	Laser unit	100,000 pages
	Paper feeding kit1	100,000 pages
	Paper feeding kit2	100,000 pages
	Paper feeding kit MP	50,000 pages

* As for replacement of the periodical replacement parts, refer to “PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE” in Chapter 7.

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.4 Supplies

Consumables		Approximate life
Toner cartridge	Starter Toner *2	Black: Approximately 2,500 pages/cartridge Yellow, Magenta, Cyan: Approximately 1,500 pages/cartridge
	Standard Toner *1	Black: Approximately 2,500 pages/cartridge Yellow, Magenta, Cyan: Approximately 1,500 pages/cartridge
	High Capacity Toner *1	Black (For Europe): Approximately 4,000 pages/cartridge Black (Except for Europe): N/A Yellow, Magenta, Cyan : Approximately 3,500 pages/cartridge
	Super High Capacity Toner *1	Black (For U.S.A, Asia Pacific): Approximately 6,000 pages/cartridge Black (Except for U.S.A, Asia Pacific): N/A Yellow, Magenta, Cyan: Approximately 6,000 pages/cartridge
* When printing A4/Letter size one sided pages in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798. Shelf life: 2 years without opening (6 months after opening)		
Drum unit		Life expectancy: Approximately 25,000 *3 pages/drum unit The life expectancy varies according to the use condition. (Refer to Display of the machine log (Function code 80 in Chapter 5.) * When printing A4/Letter size one sided pages in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798. Shelf life: 2 years without opening (6 months after opening)
The shelf life of toner cartridge and drum unit is guaranteed under the normal condition as below; (Temperature) Normal condition: 0 to 40 °C * Storage condition at the temperature of 40 to 50 °C: Up to 5 days * Storage condition at the temperature of -20 to 0°C: Up to 5 days (Humidity) Normal condition: 35 to 85 % * Storage condition at the humidity of 85 to 95 %: Up to 5 days * Storage condition at the humidity of 10 to 35 %: Up to 5 days		
Belt unit		Life expectancy: Approximately 50,000 pages/belt unit The life expectancy varies according to use the condition.
Waste toner box		Life expectancy: Approximately 50,000 pages/waste toner box

*1 Separately sold consumable toner

*2 Toner supplied with the machine.

*3 In the normal use, the color photosensitive drums rotate simultaneously even if no color print is made at all and black print only is made. Thus, the four color drum units reach the life expectancy at the same time.

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.5 Paper

1.5.1 Paper handling

Model		All models
Paper Input	Paper tray 1	250 sheets
	Paper tray 2	500 sheets
	MP tray	50 sheets
	ADF	Legal model: 50 sheets A4 model: 35 sheets
Paper Output	Face-down	150 sheets
	Face-up	1 sheet (Straight paper path)
Duplex		Yes

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.5.2 Media specifications

Model		All models
Media type	Paper tray 1	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper
	Paper tray 2	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper
	MP tray	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Thick Paper, Thicker Paper, Recycled Paper, Bond, Label, Envelope, Env. Thin, Env.Thick, Glossy Paper[*1]
	Duplex	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper, Glossy Paper
	ADF	Plain Paper, Recycled Paper
Media weight	Paper tray 1	60 to 105 g/m^2 (16 to 28 lb)
	Paper tray 2	60 to 105 g/m^2 (16 to 28 lb)
	MP tray	60 to 163 g/m^2 (16 to 43 lb)
	Duplex	60 to 105 g/m^2 (16 to 28 lb)
	ADF	64 to 90 g/m^2 (17 to 24 lb)
Media size	Paper tray 1	A4, Letter, B5(ISO), A5, A5(Long Edge), B6(ISO), A6, Executive, Legal[*2], Folio
	Paper tray 2	A4, Letter, B5(ISO), A5, B6(ISO), Executive, Legal[*2]
	MP tray	Width: 69.8 to 216 mm (2.75 to 8.5 inch) Length: 116 to 406.4 mm (4.57 to 16 inch)
	Duplex	For U.S.A: Letter, Legal[*2], Folio Except for U.S.A: A4
	ADF	Width: 147.3 to 215.9 mm (5.8 to 8.5 inch) Length: 147.3 to 356.0 mm (5.8 to 14 inch)

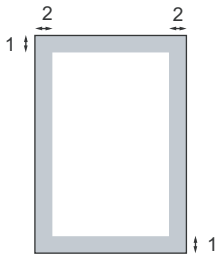
[*1] When you print on glossy paper, set only a single sheet on the MP tray.

[*2] Legal size paper is not available in some regions outside U.S.A and Canada.

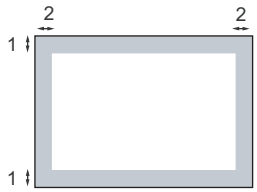
Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.6 Unprintable Area

Portrait



Landscape



	Windows® printer driver and Macintosh printer driver BRScript printer driver for Windows® and Macintosh
1	4.23 mm (0.16 inch)
2	4.23 mm (0.16 inch)

Note:

The area that cannot be printed on may vary depending on the paper size and the printer driver you are using. The unprintable area shown above is for Letter size paper.

1.7 Telephone

Model	All models
Handset	N/A

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.8 FAX (Only for the models with FAX function)

Model		MFC-9460CDN	MFC-9465CDN	MFC-9560CDW	MFC-9970CDW
Modem Speed		33,600 bps (FAX)			
Transmission speed		Approximately 2.5 seconds (ITU-Test Chart, Std resolution, JBIG)			
ITU-T group		Super G3			
Color FAX	Sending	Yes (Not available for saving the data into the Memory)			
	Receiving	Yes (Not available for saving the data into the Memory)			
Internet FAX (ITU T.37 simple mode)		Yes (Download only)			Yes

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.9 Copy

Model		DCP-9055CDN	DCP-9270CDN
Copy Speed simplex (FB, ADF)	Monochrome	Up to 24/25 cpm (A4/Letter)	Up to 28/30 cpm (A4/Letter)
	Color		
First copy out time	Monochrome	Less than 19 seconds (from Ready mode and standard Tray)	
	Color	Less than 21 seconds (from Ready mode and standard Tray)	
Resolution (Optical)		Up to 1200 x 600 dpi	
Auto duplex scanning copy		N/A	Yes

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Model		MFC-9460CDN	MFC-9465CDN	MFC-9560CDW	MFC-9970CDW
Copy Speed simplex (FB, ADF)	Monochrome	Up to 24/25 cpm (A4/Letter)			Up to 28/30 cpm (A4/Letter)
	Color				
First copy out time	Monochrome	Less than 19 seconds (from Ready mode and standard Tray)			
	Color	Less than 21 seconds (from Ready mode and standard Tray)			
Resolution (Optical)		Up to 1200 x 600 dpi			
Auto duplex scanning copy		N/A	Yes		

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.10 Scanner

Model		DCP-9055CDN	DCP-9270CDN
Resolution (Optical)	FB	Maximum scanning 1,200 (main scanning) x 2,400 dpi (sub scanning)	
	ADF	Maximum scanning 1,200 (main scanning) x 600 dpi (sub scanning)	
Resolution (Interpolated)		Maximum scanning 19,200 (main scanning) x 19,200 dpi (sub scanning)	
Scanning speed	Monochrome/ Color	A4: 2.12 seconds Letter: 1.99 seconds	A4: 1.79 seconds Letter: 1.68 seconds

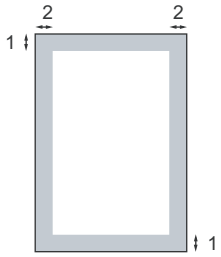
Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Model		MFC-9460CDN	MFC-9465CDN	MFC-9560CDW	MFC-9970CDW
Resolution (Optical)	FB	Maximum scanning 1,200 (main scanning) x 2,400 dpi (sub scanning)			
	ADF	Maximum scanning 1,200 (main scanning) x 600 dpi (sub scanning)			
Resolution (Interpolated)		Maximum scanning 19,200 (main scanning) x 19,200 dpi (sub scanning)			
Scanning speed	Monochrome/ Color	A4: 2.12 seconds Letter: 1.99 seconds			A4: 1.79 seconds Letter: 1.68 seconds

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

1.11 Unscannable Area

The scannable area depends on the settings in the application you are using. The figures below show unscannable areas.



Usage	Document Size	Top (1) Bottom (1)	Left (2) Right (2)
Fax	Letter	3 mm (0.12 inch)	3.95 mm (0.15 inch)
	A4	3 mm (0.12 inch)	3 mm (0.12 inch)
Copy	Letter	4 mm (0.16 inch)	3.96 mm (0.15 inch)
	A4	4 mm (0.16 inch)	3 mm (0.12 inch)

Note:
(For copies) This unprintable area shown above is for a single copy or a 1 in 1 copy using A4 size paper. The area that cannot be printed on may vary depending on the paper size.

1.12 USB Direct Interface

Model	DCP-9055CDN	DCP-9270CDN
PictBridge	N/A	
Direct print	N/A	PDF version1.7, JPEG, Exif+JPEG, PRN (created by own printer driver) TIFF(scanned by Brother model), XPS version 1.0

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Model	MFC-9460CDN	MFC-9465CDN	MFC-9560CDW	MFC-9970CDW
PictBridge	N/A			
Direct print	PDF version1.7, JPEG, Exif+JPEG, PRN(created by own printer driver) TIFF(scanned by Brother model), XPS version 1.0			

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

CHAPTER 2
ERROR INDICATION AND TROUBLESHOOTING

CHAPTER 2
ERROR INDICATION AND TROUBLESHOOTING

This chapter details error messages and codes which the incorporated self-diagnostic function of the machine will display if any error or malfunction occurs. If any error message appears, refer to this chapter to find which parts should be checked or replaced.

The latter half of this chapter provides sample problems which could occur in the main sections of the machine and related troubleshooting procedures.

CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION

Troubleshooting is the countermeasure procedures that the service personnel should follow if an error or malfunction occurs with the machine. It is impossible to anticipate all of the possible troubles which may occur in future and determine the troubleshooting procedures, so this chapter covers some sample troubles. However, those samples will help the service personnel pinpoint and repair other defective elements.

1.1 Precautions

Be sure to observe and follow all the precautions to prevent any secondary problems from happening during troubleshooting.

(1) Always turn off the power and unplug the power cable before removing any covers or PCBs, adjusting the machine and so on. If you need to take voltage measurements with the power switched on, take the greatest of care not to receive an electric shock.

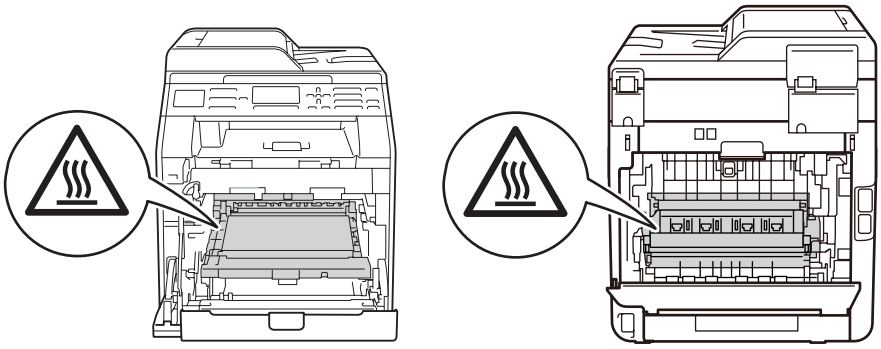
(2) When connecting or disconnecting cable connectors, make sure that you hold the connector body and not the cables.

(3) Static electricity charged in your body may damage electronic parts.
Before handling the PCBs, touch a metal portion of the machine to discharge static electricity charged in your body. When transporting PCBs, be sure to wrap them in conductive sheets.
When replacing the PCBs, put on a grounding wrist band and perform the job on a static mat. Also take care not to touch the conductor sections on the flat cables.

(4) Follow the warning by all means.

WARNING

The fuser unit becomes extremely hot during operation. Wait until it has cooled down sufficiently before replacing consumable items. DO NOT remove or damage the caution label located on or around the fuser.



WARNING

DO NOT use flammable substances, any type of spray or any organic solvent/liquids contains alcohol or ammonia to clean the inside or outside of the machine. Doing this may cause a fire or electrical shock.

(5) Verify again that the repaired portion works properly.

1.2 Initial Check

Check the following items before attempting to repair the machine.

■ Operating environment

(1) Put your machine on a flat, stable surface such as a desk that is free of vibration and shocks.

(2) Use the machine in a well-ventilated room; use the machine within the following ranges of temperature and humidity: temperature between 10 °C and 32.5 °C (50 °F to 90.5 °F), and the relative humidity is maintained between 20 % and 80 %.

(3) Ensure the machine is not exposed to direct sunlight, excessive heat, moisture, or dust.

(4) Keep the machine horizontal when you carry it. To prevent injuries when moving or lifting this machine, make sure to use at least two people.

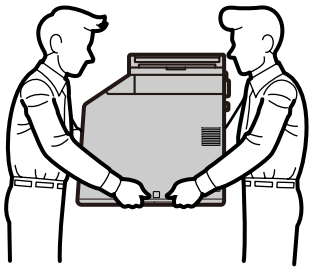


Fig. 2-1

■ Power supply

(1) The AC input power supply described on the rating plate of the machine should be within ±10 % of the rated voltage.

(2) The AC input power supply is within the regulated value.

(3) The cables and harnesses are connected correctly.

(4) The fuses are not blown.

■ Paper

(1) A recommended type of paper is being used. (Refer to User's guide.)

(2) The paper is not damp.

(3) The paper is not short-grained paper or acid paper.

■ Consumable parts

(1) The drum unit (including the toner cartridge) is installed correctly.

(2) The belt unit and waste toner box are installed correctly.

■ Others

(1) Condensation

When the machine is moved from a cold place into a warm room, condensation may occur inside the machine, causing various problems as listed below.

- Condensation on the surface of optical devices such as the scanner windows, lens, reflecting mirror, and protection glass, etc, may cause light print image.
- If the exposure drum is cold, the electrical resistance of the photosensitive layer is increased, making it impossible to obtain the correct contrast when printing.
- Condensation on the charge unit may cause corona charge leakage.
- Condensation on the plate and separation pad may cause paper feed problems.

If condensation has occurred, leave the machine for at least two hours to allow it to reach room temperature.

If the drum unit is unpacked soon after it is moved from a cold place to a warm room, condensation may occur inside the unit which may cause incorrect images. Instruct the user to allow the unit to come to room temperature before unpacking it. This will take one or two hours.

(2) Low temperature

The motor may not drive normally under the low temperature environment. This is due to there being too much load to drive each unit. In this case, the "**Low Temperature/ Increase room temperature to allow the machine to operate**" message will appear on the LCD. Increase the room temperature when the above message is indicated.

■ Cleaning

Use a soft dry lint-free cloth.

WARNING

DO NOT use flammable substances, any type of spray or any organic solvent/liquids contains alcohol or ammonia to clean the inside or outside of the machine. Doing this may cause a fire or electrical shock.

2. OVERVIEW

2.1 Cross-section Drawing

■ Printer part

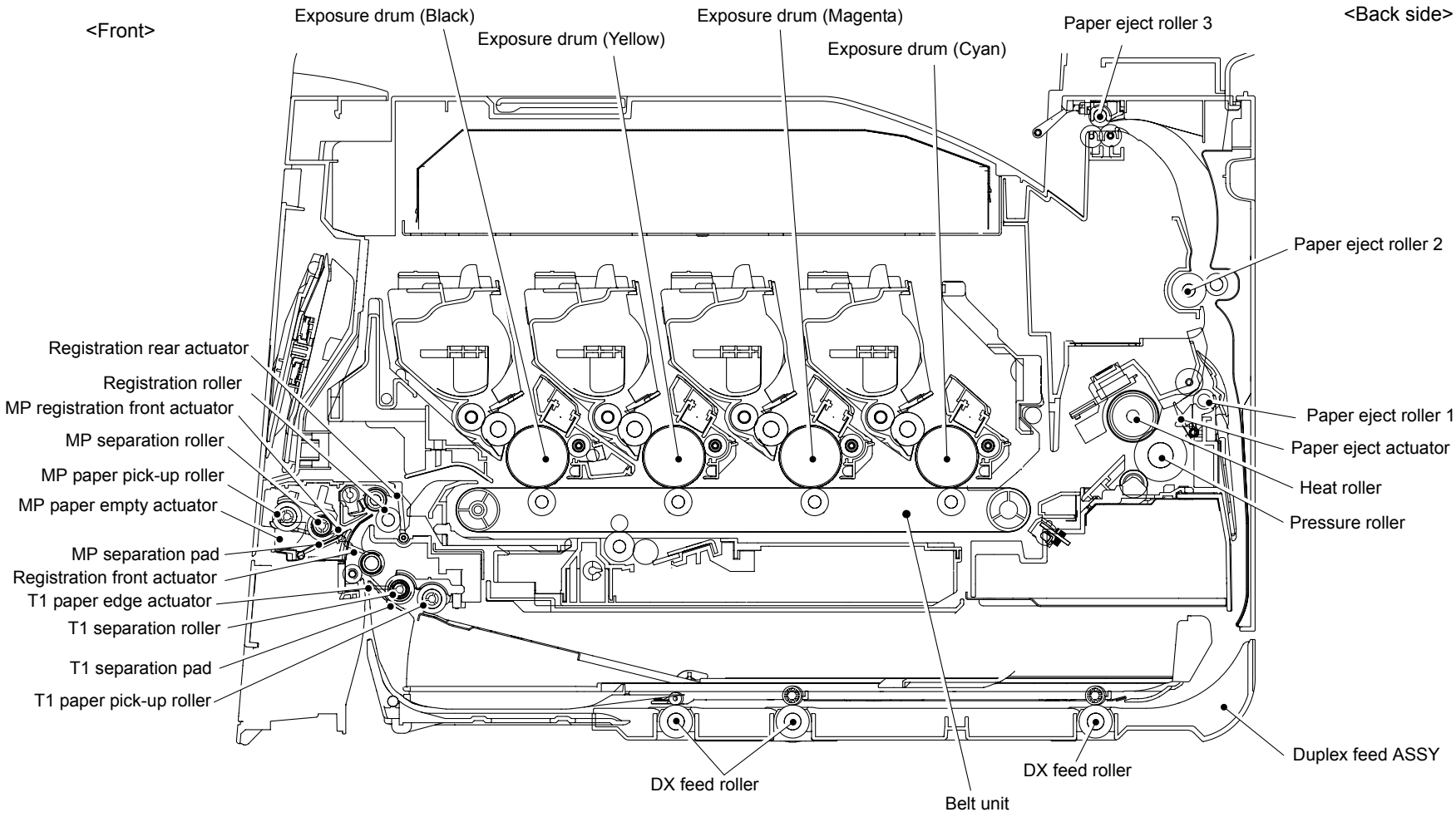


Fig. 2-2

■ ADF part (A4 model)

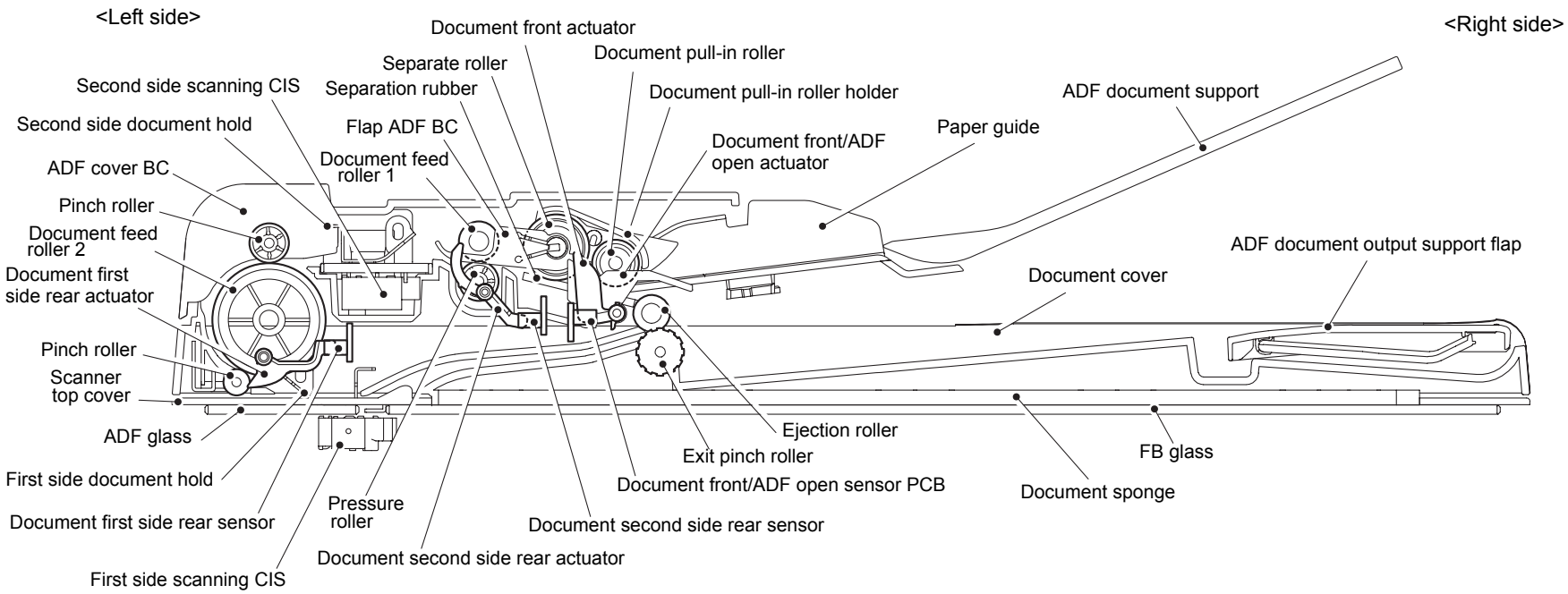


Fig. 2-3

■ ADF part (Legal model)

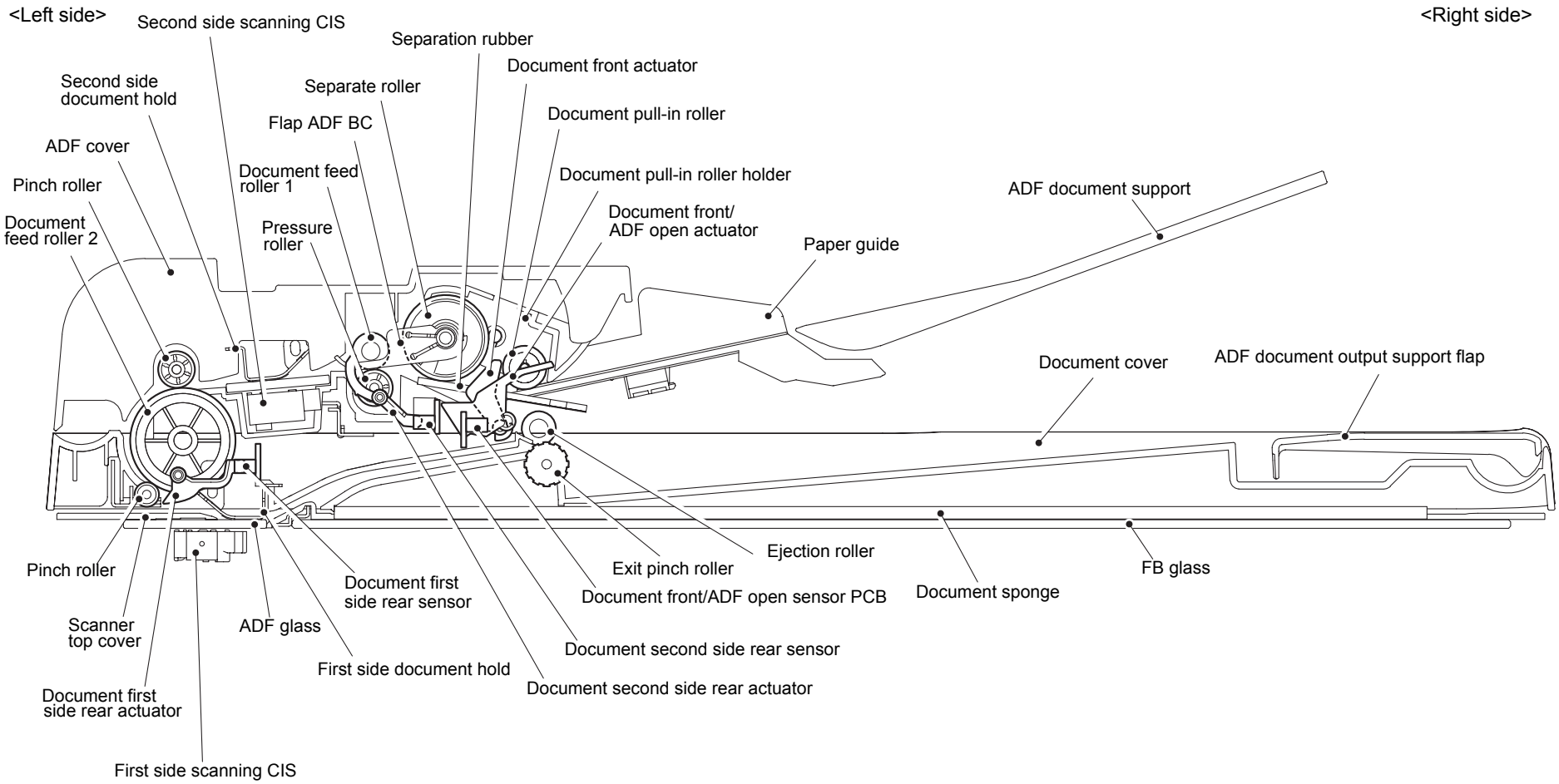


Fig. 2-4

2.2 Paper Feeding

■ Printer part

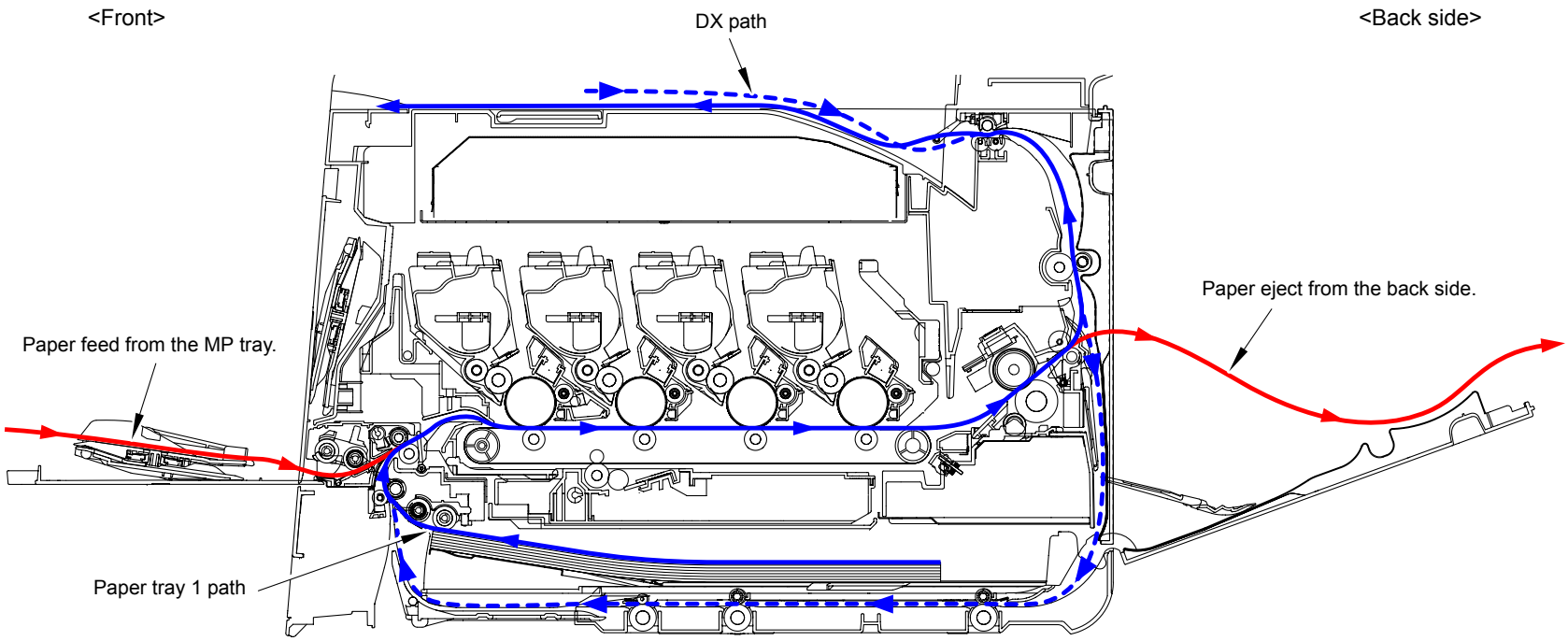


Fig. 2-5

■ ADF part (A4 model)

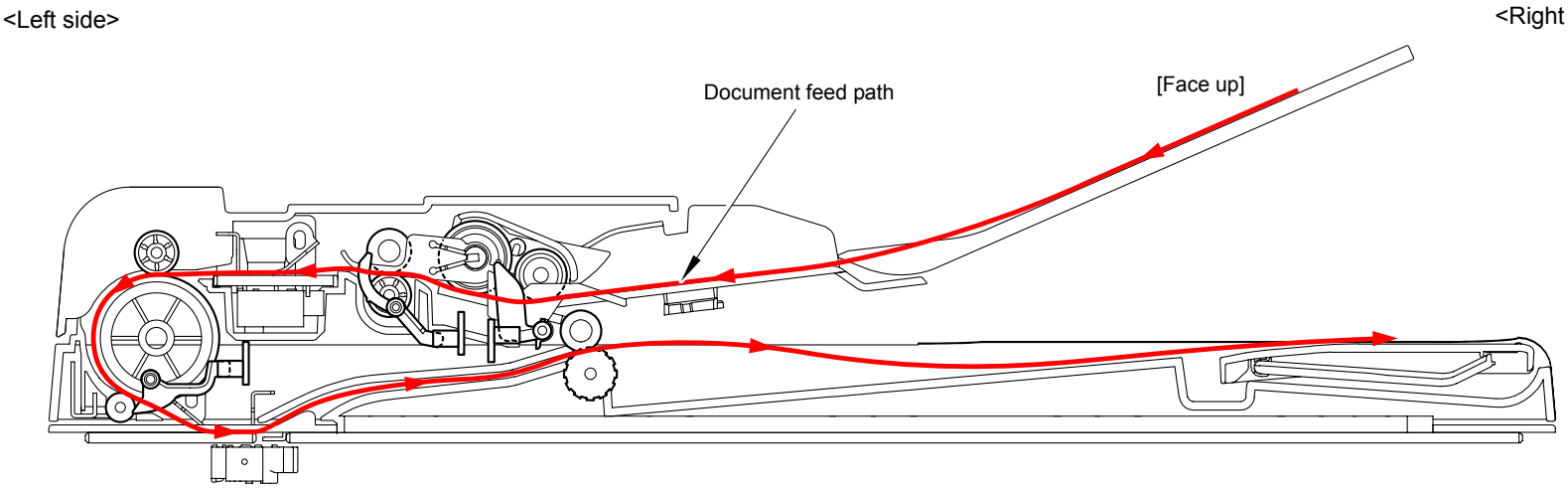


Fig. 2-6

■ ADF part (Legal model)

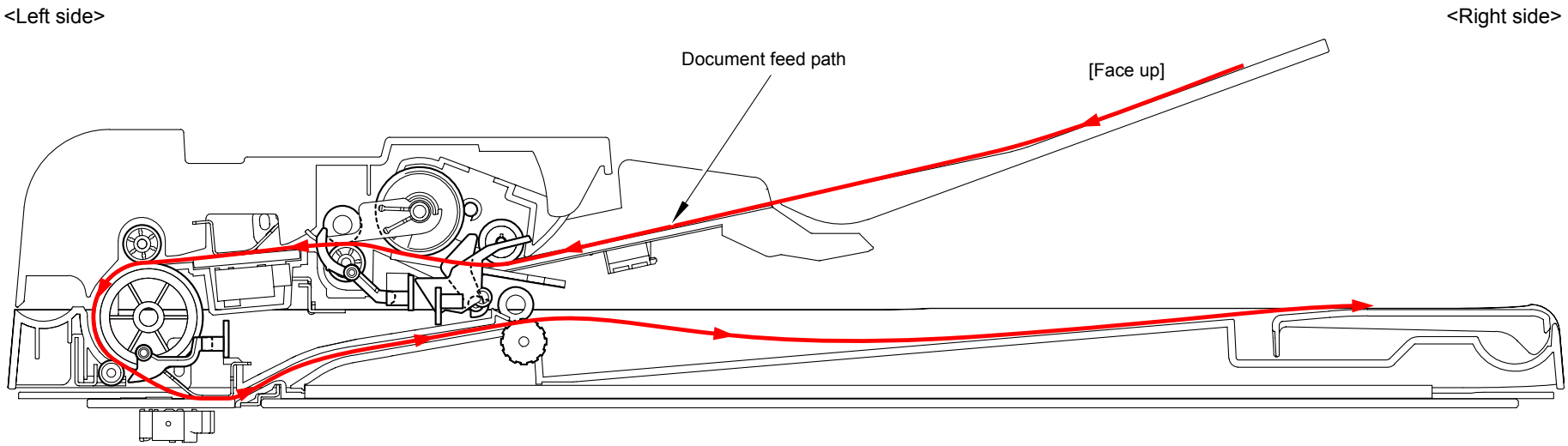


Fig. 2-7

2.3 Operation of Each Part

■ Printer part

Part name	Operation
T1 paper pick-up roller	Feed the paper from the paper tray 1.
T1 separation roller, T1 separation pad	Separate into single sheet from the paper tray 1.
T1 paper edge actuator	Detect whether or not the paper tray 1 is installed. Detect whether or not paper is loaded. Detect the paper jam of front part.
Registration front actuator	Detect the front edge of paper and control the drive of the registration roller. Detect the paper jam of front part.
Registration roller	When the front edge of the paper hit the stopped registration roller and the inclination of the paper is corrected. After correction is made, the registration roller rotates to feed the paper to the belt unit.
Registration rear actuator	Detect the passage of paper and adjust the starting position for writing on a sheet of paper. Detect the paper jam of center part. Detect the rear edge of paper and identify the paper size.
Belt unit	Feed the paper to the drum unit for each color and transfer toner on the paper.
Heat roller, Pressure roller	Fuse and fix the toner transferred on paper by heat and pressure, and feed the paper to the paper eject roller 1.
Paper eject actuator	Detect whether or not paper is ejected from the fuser unit. In the case of the duplex printing, detect the rear edge of paper and adjust the timing of the paper eject roller 3 switching.
Paper eject roller 1	Feed the paper ejected from the fuser unit to the paper eject roller 2.
Paper eject roller 2	Feed the paper to the paper eject roller 3.
Paper eject roller 3	Eject the paper to the face-down output tray. In the case of the duplex printing, after the paper is fed from the eject roller 3 up to a certain point with the front of the sheet printed, the eject roller 3 rotates conversely and feeds the paper to the duplex tray.
DX feed roller	Feed the paper passed in the duplex tray to the registration roller.
MP paper pick-up roller	Feed the paper from the MP tray.
MP separation roller, MP separation pad	Separate into single sheet from the MP tray.
MP paper empty actuator	Detect whether paper is loaded in the MP tray.
MP registration front actuator	Detect the front edge of paper from MP tray and control the drive of the registration roller. Detect the paper jam of MP part.

■ ADF part

Part name	Operation
Document front/ADF open actuator	Detect whether or not documents are loaded in the ADF document support.
Document pull-in roller	Feed the documents loaded in the ADF document support.
Separate roller, Separation rubber	Separate the documents fed by the document pull-in roller into a single paper.
Document second side rear actuator	Detect the front edge of the paper and adjust the scanning position of the second side. Detect paper jam in the ADF.
Document feed roller	Feed the paper to the CIS unit (first side).
Document first side rear actuator	Detect the front edge of the paper and adjust the scanning position of the first side. Detect paper jam in the ADF.
Ejection roller	Eject the paper of which the first side has been scanned to the document cover.

2.4 Block Diagram

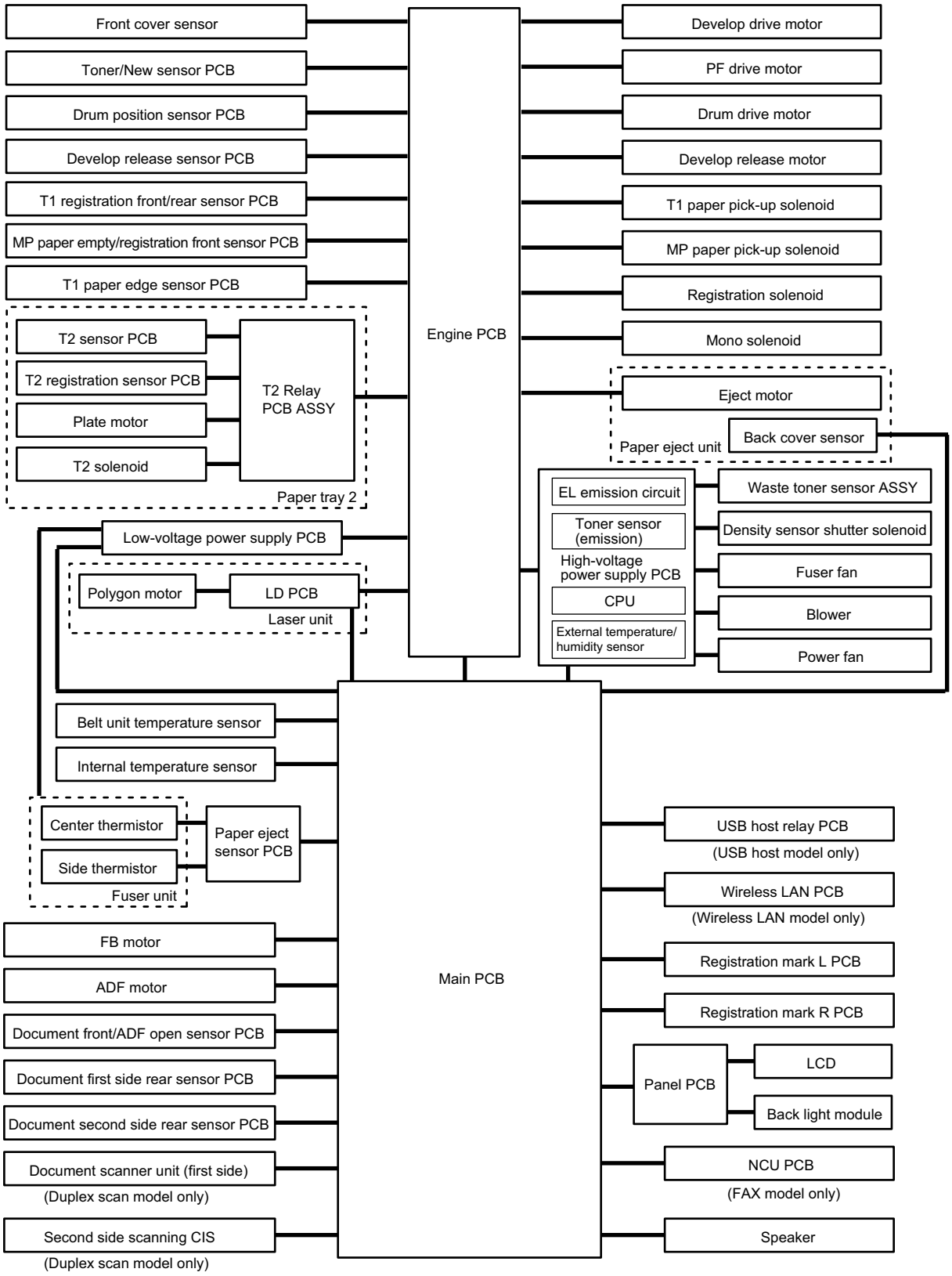


Fig. 2-8

2.5 Components

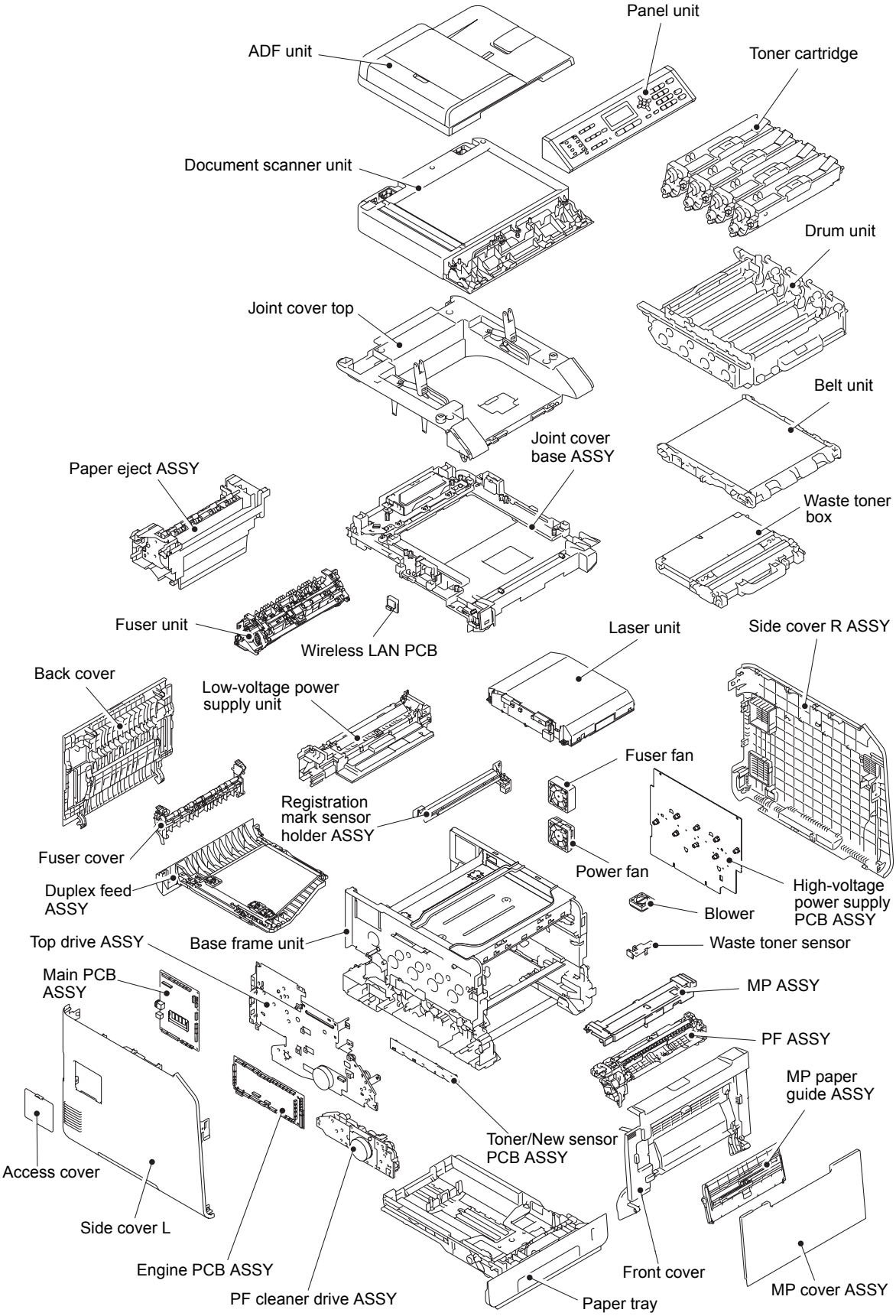


Fig. 2-9

2.6 Life of Toner Cartridge and Drum Unit

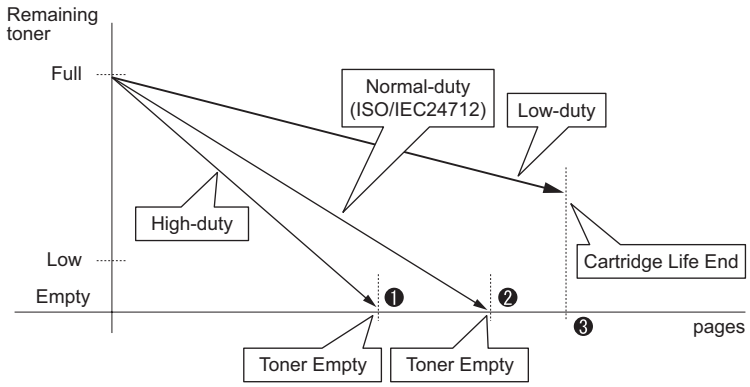
■ Life of toner cartridge

<Method of detecting toner life>

There are two messages, which are displayed on the LCD to indicate that toner reaches its life: “Toner Low” and “Replace Toner.” While “Toner Low” is displayed on the LCD when the toner sensor detects a certain amount of toner is used, “Replace Toner” is displayed on the LCD when the toner sensor detects that toner is used up or when the number of rotations of the developer roller reaches its life.

- Detection by the toner sensor
  This machine has a function to detect the remaining toner by checking the level at which toner in a cartridge interrupts light using a transmissive light sensor.
- Detection by means of rotation rates of the developer roller reached its upper limit
  This machine has a function to detect when the number of rotations reaches the upper limit before the developer roller is worn out and becomes unusable.

<Relationship between printable pages of the toner cartridge and remaining toner>



Memo:
When the number of rotations of the developer roller reaches the cartridge life end, “Replace Toner” is displayed even if toner remains.

The life of toner cartridges when making prints of the print pattern specified by ISO/IEC 24712 is shown in the table below. (At the point of ❷ in the figure above)

Toner cartridge		Number of printable pages
Standard	Black	2,500 pages
	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan	1,500 pages
High	Black	4,000 pages
	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan	3,500 pages
Super High	Black	6,000 pages
	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan	6,000 pages

To avoid problems caused by the worn-out of the developer roller surface and deterioration of the toner ceiling, “Replace Toner” message is displayed and the print operation is prohibited when the number of the rotations of the developer roller reaches the upper limit even if toner remains. The upper limit of the number of the rotations of the developer roller is shown in the table below.

Toner cartridge		Upper limit of rotations of the developer roller
Standard	Black	72,450 rotations
	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan	43,470 rotations
High	Black	115,920 rotations
	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan	101,430 rotations
Super High	Black	173,880 rotations
	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan	173,880 rotations

<Cartridge life>

The cartridge life (at the point of ❸ in the figure above), which depends on the upper limit of the number of rotations of the developer roller, varies according to the average number of print pages per job. (See the table below.) The number of printable pages is larger when making continuous prints in one job because deterioration of the developer roller is low.

Memo:

- The number of rotations of the developer roller per A4-size page*:

	Color	Monochrome
First page	42.5 rotations (K, Y, M, C roller)	42.5 rotations (K roller only)
Second page and after (in the case of continuous printing)	11.3 rotations (K, Y, M, C roller)	11.3 rotations (K roller only)

- The number of rotations of the developer roller for each operation*:

	K roller	Y, M, C roller
Warm-up operation	37.0 rotations	35.0 rotations
Adjustment of color registration	83.0 rotations	67.7 rotations
Adjustment of color calibration	142.0 rotations	111.3 rotations
Number of idling rotation when the machine is turned ON (Worst value)	262.0 rotations	214.0 rotations

* Since the number of rotations varies according to individual differences between machines and the environment, consider it as a reference value.

Note:

The numeral values provided in this page are as of August 2010. These values are subject to change without prior notice.

<Relationship between average print page per 1 job and life of toner cartridges>

Average print page (page/job)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Cartridge life (Standard-K)	1,750	2,762	3,421	3,885	4,229	4,494	4,705	4,876
Cartridge life (Standard-YMC)	1,050	1,640	2,018	2,281	2,474	2,622	2,739	2,834
Cartridge life (High-K)	2,800	4,419	5,474	6,216	6,766	7,190	7,528	7,802
Cartridge life (High-YMC)	2,450	3,827	4,708	5,322	5,773	6,118	6,392	6,613
Cartridge life (Super High-K)	4,200	6,628	8,211	9,324	10,149	10,785	11,291	11,703
Cartridge life (Super High-YMC)	4,200	6,560	8,071	9,123	9,896	10,488	10,957	11,337

The developer roller also rotates for the warm-up operation, color registration adjustment operation, and developing bias adjustment operation when the power is turned ON and when the cover is opened or closed. Therefore, when these operations are frequently performed, the life of toner cartridges is shortened. (The table below shows the worst case in which the warm-up operation, color registration adjustment, and developing bias adjustment are performed when the power is turned ON.)

<Cartridge life in the case that the power is turned OFF/ON and adjustment is performed before printing>

Average print page (page/job)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Cartridge life (Standard-K)	244	470	681	877	1,061	1,233	1,395	1,547
Cartridge life (Standard-YMC)	167	319	459	588	708	818	921	1,017
Cartridge life (High-K)	390	752	1,089	1,403	1,697	1,973	2,232	2,475
Cartridge life (High-YMC)	389	745	1,072	1,373	1,651	1,909	2,149	2,373
Cartridge life (Super High-K)	585	1,128	1,633	2,105	2,546	2,959	3,347	3,713
Cartridge life (Super High-YMC)	667	1,277	1,837	2,353	2,831	3,273	3,684	4,067

■ Life of drum unit

<How to read the drum unit life>

- It initially indicates 100% and gradually decreases.
- It indicates 10% when the “Drum End Soon” appears on the LCD.

<How to calculate the drum unit life>

The drum unit life is based on the “drum counter” or the “number of drum rotations.” The drum counter is based on the total printed pages on each drum unit. This total printed pages should be reset every time you replace the drum unit with a new one. (Refer to “2.2 Parts Life Reset Function” in Chapter 5.) Basically this amount is equal to the assured printable pages of the drum unit. If the developing bias voltage correction or color registration adjustment is performed frequently, however, only the number of drum rotations increases, and the “page counter based on the number of drum rotation” exceeds the “drum counter” based on the total printed page.
Refer to the calculation of the drum unit life based on the number of drum rotation below;

<How to calculate the page counter>

The number of drum rotations for the first page printed is about 24.
The number of drum rotations per one page for the second or later page printed (continuous printing) is 3.6.
Page counter based on the number of drum rotations = {Number of drum rotations for the first page printed + [Number of drum rotations per one page for the second or later page printed x (Number of pages in continuous printing - 1)]} / 24
(* The number of drum rotations per one page continuous printing.)
Example: Starts to print when the machine is in the Ready state.

Continuous printing	Page counter based on the number of drum rotations (Pages)
1 page/job	{24 + [3.6 x (1 - 1)]} / 24 = 1
2 pages/job	{24 + [3.6 x (2 - 1)]} / 24 = 1.15
18 pages/job	{24 + [3.6 x (18 - 1)]} / 24 = 3.55

If you leave the machine without printing for a long time, the number of drum rotations is increasing because the developing bias voltage correction and the color registration are performed. If you print one page per one job every time after leaving the machine without printing for a long time, the drum unit life is shorter than usual.
The number of drum rotations required for the developing bias voltage correction = 68 rotations.
Example: Performs the developing bias voltage correction and starts to print after leaving the machine without printing for a long time.

Continuous printing	Page counter based on the number of drum rotations (Pages)
1 page/job	{68 + 24 + [3.6 x (1 - 1)]} / 24 = 3.83
2 pages/job	{68 + 24 + [3.6 x (2 - 1)]} / 24 = 3.98
18 pages/job	{68 + 24 + [3.6 x (18 - 1)]} / 24 = 5.38

The number of drum rotations required for the color registration = 35 rotations
Example: Performs the color registration adjustment and starts to print after leaving the machine without printing for a long time.

Continuous printing	Page counter based on the number of drum rotations (Pages)
1 page/job	{35 + 24 + [3.6 x (1 - 1)]} / 24 = 2.45
2 pages/job	{35 + 24 + [3.6 x (2 - 1)]} / 24 = 2.61
18 pages/job	{35 + 24 + [3.6 x (18 - 1)]} / 24 = 5.03

If the developing bias voltage correction and the color registration are performed continuously, the drum unit life is shorter.

1) Counter information, history information

The counter and history information related to the following item are included. When it reaches the maximum count, each item is no longer counted.

Total Page Count	The total number of printed pages. The maximum count is 1 million pages.
Color Page Count	The total number of printed pages with color toners (Y/M/C). The maximum count is 1 million pages.
Monochrome Page Count	The total number of printed pages with black toner only. The maximum count is 1 million pages.
Image Count Total	The total number of printed pages, and the total number of printed pages on each color (K/Y/M/C). The maximum count is 1million pages for each color.
Total Pages Printed	The total number of printed pages from each of the MP tray, Manual Feed, Tray 1, Tray 2 and the Duplex. The maximum count is 1 million pages. This information is not cleared when the paper feeding kit is replaced.
Total Pages Printed	The total number of printed pages by paper size. Available paper sizes are A4/Letter, Legal/Folio, B5/Executive, Envelope, A5 and Others. The maximum count is 1 million pages.
Total Pages Printed	The total number of printed pages by paper type. Available paper types are Plain/Thin/Recycled, Thick/Thicker/Bond, Envelope/Env.Thick/Env.Thin, Label, Hagaki, and Glossy. The maximum count is 1 million pages.
Total Paper Jams	The number of paper jam occurrence in each of the MP tray, Tray1, Tray 2, Inside, Rear and Duplex. The paper jam occurs when the machine is turned ON is not counted. The maximum count for each item is 65,535 times. Total number of jam occurrences is printed after “Total Paper Jams:.”
Error History	The error history including the latest 10 errors and the number of pages when these errors occur are indicated. The errors such as Cover is Open, Manual Feed, No Paper XX and No Tray XX are not included.
Replace Count	The number of replacement of each of Toner Cartridge (K/Y/M/C), Drum Unit, Belt Unit, PF Kit MP, PF Kit 1, PF Kit 2, Fuser Unit, Laser Unit and Waste Toner. The maximum count for each item is 255 times.

3. ERROR INDICATIONS

This machine includes a self-diagnosis function. If the machine does not work normally it judges that an error has occurred, and indicates the corresponding error message on the LCD, which in turn helps the service men to quickly find out the problem.

3.1 Error Codes

The errors with a mesh background in the table below do not occur in the normal operation. They might occur due to noise around the installation site, change of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
0B	Touch panel no response error.	2-33
0E	Touch panel failure upon start-up of the machine.	2-33
0F	The back cover is open upon duplex printing. (The back cover sensor is OFF.)	2-33
10	Inter-color position alignment adjustment failure. (Error, which cannot be recorded, occurs.)	2-34
11	Inter-color position alignment adjustment failure. (Toner of the color which is being used reached the end of life.)	2-34
12	Inter-color position alignment adjustment failure. (Incorrect measurement value of inter-color position alignment adjustment.)	2-34
16	Paper of unsupported size for duplex printing or paper of different sizes is loaded.	2-35
17	The paper tray 1 is not installed before printing. (The cassette of the T1 paper edge sensor is open.)	2-35
18	The paper tray 2 is not installed before printing. (The cassette of the T2 paper edge sensor is open.)	2-36
19	The drum unit reached the end of life.	2-36

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
1A	Condensation occurred on the laser unit.	2-37
1B	Cyan drum error. (An error occurred after the counter value exceeded the value more than twice as long as the life of the drum.) (Printing is not available until the drum unit is replaced.)	2-37
1C	Magenta drum error. (An error occurred after the counter value exceeded the value more than twice as long as the life of the drum.) (Printing is not available until the drum unit is replaced.)	2-37
1D	Yellow drum error. (An error occurred after the counter value exceeded the value more than twice as long as the life of the drum.) (Printing is not available until the drum unit is replaced.)	2-37
1E	The drum unit will reach the end of life soon.	2-38
1F	More than the specified number of the option trays is installed.	2-38
20	Black laser diode error (K).	2-39
21	Yellow laser diode error (Y).	2-39
22	Magenta laser diode error (M).	2-39
23	Cyan laser diode error (C).	2-39

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
24	Internal temperature sensor error.	2-39
25	Develop drive motor error.	2-40
26	Belt drive motor error.	2-40
27	PF drive motor error.	2-40
28	Drum drive motor error.	2-41
29	Paper eject motor error.	2-41
2A	Develop release motor error.	2-42
2B	Blower error.	2-42
2C	Black Toner/New sensor PCB error.	2-43
2D	Yellow Toner/New sensor PCB error.	2-43
2E	Magenta Toner/New sensor PCB error.	2-43
2F	Cyan Toner/New sensor PCB error.	2-43
30	Erase lamp current value error.	2-43
31	Density sensor error.	2-44
32	Density sensor shutter operation error.	2-44
33	Registration mark R PCB ASSY error.	2-45
34	Registration mark L PCB ASSY error.	2-45
35	Failure in NVRAM of the engine PCB.	2-45
36	Error in the high-voltage power supply PCB while the machine is in the standby mode.	2-45
37	Belt unit temperature sensor error.	2-46
38	External temperature/humidity sensor error.	2-46
39	External temperature/humidity sensor error.	2-46

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
3A	Engine PCB transfer error. (Communication error between the main CPU and sub CPU.)	2-46
3B	Main PCB DRAM access error.	2-47
3C	Main PCB error. (Write error in NVRAM.)	2-47
3D	Main PCB error. (Read error in NVRAM.)	2-47
3E	Main PCB error. (Bus error in NVRAM.)	2-47
3F	Write error in engine firmware.	2-48
40	Error in the high-voltage power supply PCB while the machine is in operation.	2-48
42	High-voltage power supply PCB transfer error.	2-48
43	ASIC error of the main PCB.	2-48
44	The black toner cartridge is not installed.	2-49
45	The yellow toner cartridge is not installed.	2-49
46	The magenta toner cartridge is not installed.	2-49
47	The cyan toner cartridge is not installed.	2-49
48	Black drum unit is at the end of life.	2-50
49	Yellow drum unit is at the end of life.	2-50
4A	Magenta drum unit is at the end of life.	2-50
4B	Cyan drum unit is at the end of life.	2-50

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
4C	The black drum unit will reach the end of life soon.	2-50
4D	The yellow drum unit will reach the end of life soon.	2-50
4E	The magenta drum unit will reach the end of life soon.	2-50
4F	The cyan drum unit will reach the end of life soon.	2-50
50	Drum unit is at the end of life.	2-51
51	MP paper feeding kit is at the end of life.	2-51
52	Paper feeding kit1 is at the end of life.	2-51
53	Paper feeding kit2 is at the end of life.	2-51
54	Fuser unit is at the end of life.	2-51
55	Laser unit is at the end of life.	2-51
56	The fuser cover is open.	2-52
57	Paper is jammed in the duplex paper feed system.	2-52
58	Fuser unit error. (Some kind of fixing error occurs.) (warning)	2-53
59	Fuser unit error. (After the error code 58 occurred, a failure in the fuser unit is detected again upon start-up.)	2-53
5A	High-voltage power supply PCB transfer error.	2-53
5B	It was detected that the length of the paper under printing was less than the specified value.	2-54

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
5C	It was detected that the size of the paper was less than the specified value.	2-54
5D	The belt unit will reach the end of life soon.	2-54
5E	Belt unit is at the end of life.	2-54
5F	The waste toner box near full. (The sensor detected that the waste toner became near full.)	2-55
60	Cyan toner cartridge is at the end of life.	2-55
61	Magenta toner cartridge is at the end of life.	2-55
62	Yellow toner cartridge is at the end of life.	2-55
63	Black toner cartridge is at the end of life.	2-55
64	The cyan toner cartridge will reach the end of life soon.	2-56
65	The magenta toner cartridge will reach the end of life soon.	2-56
66	The yellow toner cartridge will reach the end of life soon.	2-56
67	The black toner cartridge will reach the end of life soon.	2-56
68	Fuser unit error. (The temperature rise is detected even after the halogen heater is turned OFF.)	2-56
69	Fuser unit error. (The connector of the center thermistor is inserted incorrectly.)	2-56

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
6A	Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor does not detect 60 °C within the specified time.)	2-57
6B	Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor does not detect 100 °C within the specified time.)	2-57
6C	Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor detects 270 °C or higher temperature for 1 second.)	2-57
6D	Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor detects 60 °C or lower temperature for 1 second during standby or printing.)	2-57
6E	Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor fails to detect the temperature rise even after the halogen heater is turned ON during printing and 15 second pass.)	2-57
6F	Fuser unit error. (The center and side thermistors detect extremely high temperature.) (Detection of hardware.)	2-58
70	Fuser develop motor error.	2-58
71	Laser unit error.	2-59
72	Beam detecting sensor (Black/ Yellow) error of the laser unit.	2-59
73	Beam detecting sensor (Cyan/ Magenta) error of the laser unit.	2-59
74	The color toner reached the end of life during printing.	2-59
75	Cooling down the inside of the machine to protect it.	2-60
76	Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor detects the sharp temperature rise.)	2-60
78	Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor detects the sharp temperature fall.)	2-60

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
7A	Engine PCB error. (detection of PF drive motor lock error.)	2-60
7B	Engine PCB error.	2-61
7C	Communication error between the engine PCB and main PCB.	2-61
7D	Dirt on drum unit.	2-61
7E	Belt unit is at the end of life. (The operation is stopped.)	2-64
7F	FAX paper size is incorrect. (Menu setting)	2-64
80	FAX paper size is incorrect. (The actually loaded paper is small.)	2-64
81	Incorrect density sensor measurement value when implementing adjustment of color density.	2-65
82	Density patch measurement is not completed normally when implementing adjustment of color density.	2-65
83	Drum unit error. (An drum error occurred after the drum unit reached the end of life.)	2-65
84	Paper jam at the rear section of the machine.	2-66
85	The paper tray 1 is not installed.	2-66
86	The paper tray 2 is not installed.	2-67
87	Toner of the color which is being used reaches the end of life when implementing adjustment of color density.	2-67
88	Paper jam inside the machine.	2-68
89	Unsupported paper is used for duplex printing.	2-68
8A	Paper jam in the paper tray 1.	2-69
8B	Paper jam in the paper tray 2.	2-70
8C	Paper jam in the MP tray.	2-71

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
8D	Paper jam occurred around the back cover at the time when the power was turned ON, or the back cover is open.	2-71
8E	Error in the adjustment of inter-color position alignment result when implementing it.	2-72
8F	Detection of abnormal value of registration sensor sensitivity when implementing adjustment of inter-color position alignment.	2-72
90	The paper size of the MP tray does not match that of the print setting.	2-73
91	The paper size of the paper tray 1 does not match that of the print setting.	2-73
92	The paper size of the paper tray 2 does not match that of the print setting.	2-73
93	No paper in MP tray.	2-73
94	No paper in paper tray 1.	2-73
95	No paper in paper tray 2.	2-73
96	No paper in all trays.	2-73
97	A paper size, which is not supported by the paper tray 1, is specified in the paper size of the data.	2-74
98	A paper size, which is not supported by the paper tray 2, is specified in the paper size of the data.	2-74
99	The tray in which unsupported paper size is loaded is selected for duplex printing.	2-74
9A	No paper is loaded in the MP tray (MP paper empty sensor fails to be turned ON.)	2-74

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
9D	Detection of incorrect registration sensor measurement value when implementing adjustment of inter-color position alignment.	2-75
9E	Toner of the color which is being used reaches the end of life when implementing adjustment of inter-color position alignment.	2-75
9F	An unidentified error occurred.	2-75
A0	Timeout error during waiting for completion of second side scanning data transfer.	2-76
A1	The front cover is open.	2-76
A2	During scanning, 90 cm or longer of a document is detected.	2-77
A3	The document first side rear sensor does not detect the leading edge of a document although the document is fed farther than a designated distance.	2-77
A4	The ADF cover is open.	2-78
A5	Scanning failure upon FAX transmission (First side) (Scanning unit failure for the first time.)	2-78
A6	Scanning failure upon FAX transmission (First side) (Scanning unit failure for the second time or later.)	2-78
A7	Scanning color parameter file failure.	2-79
A8	Scanning color parameter error for recording the image.	2-79
A9	An image signal cannot be detected when an image is scanned. Or, an image signal is too dark.	2-79
AA	ADF cover open detection error.	2-79

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
AB	Scanning resolution change error in the maintenance mode.	2-80
AC	Scanning failure upon FAX transmission (Second side)	2-80
AD	Timeout error during waiting for completion of scanning DMA transfer.	2-80
AE	The document scanner unit fails to detect the home position.	2-81
AF	The white tape cannot be detected.	2-81
B0	Scanning FFC connection failure.	2-81
B1	Dark level offset data level error for scanning.	2-82
B2	Gain control data level error for scanning.	2-82
B3	The scanning area setting left edge detection error. (white tape)	2-82
B4	The scanning area setting right edge detection error. (white tape)	2-82
B5	The scanning area setting reduction detection error. (white tape)	2-82
B6	The scanning area setting enlargement detection error. (white tape)	2-82
B7	A/D converter standard voltage failure; at High side.	2-83
B8	A/D converter standard voltage failure; at Low side.	2-83
B9	Scanning light adjustment error.	2-83

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
BA	Scanning outside light detection error.	2-83
BB	White level data error.	2-84
BC	Scanning failure upon FAX transmission. (Second side)	2-84
BD	Black level data error.	2-84
BE	The scanning area start edge detection error.	2-84
BF	The document is too long for ADF duplex feeding.	2-85
C0	Failure to detect a new black toner cartridge.	2-85
C1	Failure to detect a new yellow toner cartridge.	2-85
C2	Failure to detect a new magenta toner cartridge.	2-85
C3	Failure to detect a new cyan toner cartridge.	2-85
C4	Paper tray 2 pressing plate up/ down error.	2-86
C5	Energization failure of erase lamp.	2-86
C6	Pressure engagement/ disengagement failure of toner cartridge.	2-87
C7	Insufficient memory.	2-87
C8	RAM area for secure data full.	2-87
C9	Defective DIMM is installed.	2-88
CA	USB device overcurrent error.	2-88
CB	The belt unit is not installed.	2-88
CC	The fuser unit is not installed.	2-89
CD	The drum unit is not installed.	2-89

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
CE	The waste toner box is not installed.	2-90
CF	Waste toner box full. (The sensor detects that the waste toner is full.)	2-90
D0	Touch panel initialization failure.	2-91
D1	Modem initialization failed.	2-91
D2-DC	Modem error.	2-91
DE	When the center thermistor is higher than the idle temperature, it is detected that the side thermistor temperature is lower than 60 °C.	2-92
DF	FAX communication error of main PCB.	2-92
E0	Program error. (An error occurred in the ROM checksum.)	2-92
E1	Program error.	2-93
E2	When the center thermistor is lower than the idle temperature, it is detected that the side thermistor temperature is higher than 280 °C.	2-93
E3	Drum position sensor error.	2-93
E4	Run out of paper.	2-94
E6	Write error in EEPROM of the main PCB.	2-94
E7	Main PCB error.	2-94
E8	The scanned data fails to be recorded in the buffer RAM.	2-95
E9	Main PCB error.	2-95
EA	Communication data error upon scanning.	2-95

Error codes	Problem	Refer to:
EB	Read error in EEPROM of the laser unit.	2-96
EC	Fuser fan error.	2-96
ED	Communication with the wireless LAN PCB cannot be established upon startup of the power supply.	2-96
EE	Unavailability of communication after connecting to the wireless LAN PCB is detected.	2-97
EF	The supplied power is unstable.	2-97
F0	USB flash memory does not work properly.	2-98
F1	The dial number is not found.	2-98
F2	The waste toner box near full.	2-98
F3	Main PCB error.	2-99
F4	The waste toner box is at the end of life.	2-99
F5	Main PCB communication error.	2-99
F6	P.C.I error.	2-99
F8	Battery connection error.	2-99
F9	The country code is not entered properly.	2-100
FA	The black drum unit is not installed.	2-100
FB	The yellow drum unit is not installed.	2-100
FC	The magenta drum unit is not installed.	2-100
FD	The cyan drum unit is not installed.	2-100
FE	Detection of incorrect measurement value of density sensor sensitivity calibration.	2-101
FF	Wireless LAN module overcurrent error.	2-101

3.2 Error Messages

The error messages displayed on the LCD of the machine and their description are shown in the table below.

Error message	Description	Error codes	Refer to:
Access Error	The USB device is taken out while data is being processed.	---	
Calibrate	Incorrect density sensor measurement value when implementing adjustment of color density.	81	2-65
	Density patch measurement is not completed normally when implementing adjustment of color density.	82	2-65
	Toner of the color which is being used reaches the end of life when implementing adjustment of color density.	87	2-67
Cartridge Error	Failure to detect a new black toner cartridge.	C0	2-85
	Failure to detect a new yellow toner cartridge.	C1	2-85
	Failure to detect a new magenta toner cartridge.	C2	2-85
	Failure to detect a new cyan toner cartridge.	C3	2-85
Condensation	Condensation occurred on the laser unit.	1A	2-37
Connection Error **Connection Fail**	As the result that an access point is searched, more than one access point is found.	---	
	As the result that an access point is searched, the access point is found, but connection fails to be established.	---	
Cooling Down	Cooling down the inside of the machine to protect it.	75	2-60
Cover is Open	The front cover is open.	A1	2-76
	The fuser cover is open.	56	2-52
DIMM Error	Defective DIMM is installed.	C9	2-88
Disconnected	The other person or other person's fax machine disconnected the line.	---	
Document Jam	The document was not inserted, or fed properly.	A2, A3	2-77
Drum Error	Dirt on drum unit.	7D	2-61

Error message	Description	Error codes	Refer to:
Drum Stop	Drum unit error. (An drum error occurred after the drum unit reached the end of life.)	83	2-65
Duplex Disabled	The back cover is open upon duplex printing. (The back cover sensor is OFF.)	0F 16	2-33 2-35
Fuser Error	Failure in the center thermistor of the fuser unit.	6A 6B 6C 6D 6F 76 78	2-57 2-57 2-57 2-57 2-58 2-60 2-60
Ignore Data	Undecodable data is found during printing. Undecodable PS data is received.	---	
Jam Duplex	Paper is jammed in the duplex paper feed system.	57	2-52
Jam Inside	Paper jam inside the machine.	88	2-68
Jam MP Tray	Paper jam in the MP tray.	8C	2-71
Jam Rear	Paper jam at the rear section of the machine.	84	2-66
Jam Tray 1	Paper jam in the paper tray 1.	8A	2-69
Jam Tray 2	Paper jam in the paper tray 2.	8B	2-70
Log Access Error	Authentication error occurs.	---	
	File access error occurs.	---	
	Server timeout occurs.	---	
	Server time cannot be obtained when SNTP is used.	---	
Low temperature	Room temperature is low.	---	
Machine Error F9	The country code is not entered properly.	F9	2-100
No Belt Unit	The belt unit is not installed.	CB	2-88
No Drum Unit	The drum unit is not installed.	CD	2-89
No HUB Support	USB HOST connection error.	---	
No Paper	No paper in paper tray 1.	94	2-73
	No paper in MP tray.	93	2-73
	No paper in paper tray 2.	95	2-73
	No paper in all trays.	96	2-73

Error message	Description	Error codes	Refer to:
No Toner	The black toner cartridge is not installed.	44	2-49
	The yellow toner cartridge is not installed.	45	2-49
	The magenta toner cartridge is not installed.	46	2-49
	The cyan toner cartridge is not installed.	47	2-49
No Tray	The paper tray 1 is not installed before printing. (The cassette of the T1 paper edge sensor is open.)	17	2-35
	The paper tray 1 is not installed.	85	2-66
	The paper tray 2 is not installed before printing. (The cassette of the T2 paper edge sensor is open.)	18	2-36
	The paper tray 2 is not installed.	86	2-67
No Waste Toner	The waste toner box is not installed.	CE	2-90
Out of Memory	Insufficient memory.	C7	2-87
	RAM area for secure data full.	C8	2-87
	The program update process cannot be performed due to insufficient memory.	---	
Registration	Inter-color position alignment adjustment failure. (Toner of the color which is being used reached the end of life.)	11	2-34
	Inter-color position alignment adjustment failure. (Incorrect measurement value of inter-color position alignment adjustment.)	12	2-34
	Error in the adjustment of inter-color position alignment result when implementing it.	8E	2-72
	Detection of incorrect registration sensor measurement value when implementing adjustment of inter-color position alignment.	9D	2-75
	Toner of the color which is being used reaches the end of life when implementing adjustment of inter-color position alignment.	9E	2-75
Rename the File	There is already a file on the USB flash memory.	---	
Replace Belt	Belt unit is at the end of life. (The operation is stopped.)	7E	2-64
Replace Drum	Drum unit is at the end of life.	19	2-36

Error message		Description	Error codes	Refer to:
Replace Parts	**Belt Unit**	Belt unit is at the end of life.	5D, 5E	2-54
	Drum Unit	Drum unit is at the end of life.	1E, 50	2-38 2-51
	Fuser Unit	Fuser unit is at the end of life.	54	2-51
	Laser Unit	Laser unit is at the end of life.	55	2-51
	PF Kit MP	MP paper feeding kit is at the end of life.	51	2-51
	PF Kit 1	Paper feeding kit1 is at the end of life.	52	2-51
	PF Kit 2	Paper feeding kit2 is at the end of life.	53	2-51
Replace Toner		Each toner cartridge reached the end of life.	60 61 62 63	2-55
		The color toner reached the end of life during printing.	74	2-59
Replace WT Box		Waste toner box full. (The sensor detected that the waste toner became full.)	CF	2-90
Scan Unable XX		Some kind of scanning error.	A5-BF	2-78 2-85
Self-Diagnostic		Fuser unit error. (After the error code 58 occurred, a failure in the fuser unit is detected again upon start-up.)	59	2-53
Short paper		It was detected that the length of the paper under printing was less than the specified value.	5B	2-54
Size Error		A paper size, which is not supported by the paper tray 1, is specified in the paper size of the data.	97	2-74
		A paper size, which is not supported by the paper tray 2, is specified in the paper size of the data.	98	2-74
Size Error DX		The tray in which unsupported paper size is loaded is selected for duplex printing.	99	2-74
		Unsupported paper size is used for duplex printing.	89	2-68

Error message	Description	Error codes	Refer to:
Size Mismatch	The paper size of the MP tray does not match that of the print setting.	90	2-73
	The paper size of the paper tray 1 does not match that of the print setting.	91	2-73
	The paper size of the paper tray 2 does not match that of the print setting.	92	2-73
Small paper	It was detected that the size of the paper was less than the specified value.	5C	2-54
Storage Full	USB device overcurrent error.	CA	2-88
Toner Error	Pressure engagement/disengagement failure of toner cartridge.	C6	2-87
Too Many Files	There are too many files stored on the USB flash memory drive.	---	
Tray 2 Error	Paper tray 2 pressing plate up/down error.	C4	2-86
Unable to Update	Execution of the program update cannot be started because other function is being executed.	---	
Unusable Device	USB device overcurrent error.	CA	2-88
	Unsupported device.	---	
Unusable File	The update process cannot be continued because the data of the program file is incorrect.	---	
WT Box End Soon	The waste toner box near full. (The sensor detected that the waste toner became near full.)	5F	2-55

3.3 Communications Error Code

Code 1	Code 2	Cause	Refer to:
10	08	Wrong number called.	2-137
11	01	No dial tone detected before start of dialing.	2-137
11	02	Busy tone detected before dialing.	2-137
11	03	2nd dial tone not detected.	2-137
11	05	No loop current detected. *1	2-137
11	06	Busy tone detected after dialing or called.	2-137
11	07	No response from the remote station in sending.	2-137
11	10	Unobtainable tone detected after dialing.	2-137
17	07	No response from the calling station in receiving.	2-137
20	01	Unable to detect a flag field.	2-137
20	02	Carrier was OFF for 200 ms or longer.	2-137
20	03	Abort detected (“1” in succession for 7 bits or more).	2-137
20	04	Overrun detected.	2-137
20	05	A frame for 3 seconds or more received.	2-137
20	06	CRC error in answerback.	2-137
20	07	Echo command received.	2-137
20	08	Invalid command received.	2-137
20	09	Command ignored once for document setting or for dumping-out at turn-around transmission.	2-137
20	0A	T5 time-out error	2-137
20	0B	CRP received.	2-137
20	0C	EOR and NULL received.	2-137
32	01	Remote terminal only with V.29 capability in 2,400 or 4,800 bps transmission.	2-137
32	02	Remote terminal not ready for polling.	2-137
32	10	Remote terminal not equipped with password function or its password switch OFF.	2-137
32	11	Remote terminal not equipped with or not ready for confidential mailbox function.	2-137
32	12	Remote terminal not equipped with or not ready for relay broadcasting function.	2-137
32	13	No confidential mail in the remote terminal.	2-137

*1 Available in German models only.

Code 1	Code 2	Cause	Refer to:
32	14	The available memory space of the remote terminal is less than that required for reception of the confidential or relay broad-casting instruction.	2-137
32	18	Remote terminal not equipped with color function.	2-137
40	02	Illegal coding system requested.	2-137
40	03	Illegal recording width requested.	2-137
40	05	ECM requested although not allowed.	2-137
40	06	Polled while not ready.	2-137
40	07	No document to send when polled.	2-137
40	10	Nation code or manufacturer code not correct.	2-137
40	13	Polled by any other manufacturers' terminal while waiting for secure polling.	2-137
40	17	Invalid resolution selected.	2-137
40	20	Invalid full color mode selected.	2-137
50	01	Vertical resolution capability changed after compensation of background color.	2-137
63	01	Password plus “lower 4 digits of telephone number” not coincident.	2-137
63	02	Password not correct.	2-137
63	03	Polling ID not correct.	2-137
74		DCN received.	2-137
80	01	Fallback impossible.	2-137
90	01	Unable to detect video signals and commands within 6 seconds after CFR is transmitted.	2-137
90	02	Received PPS containing invalid page count or block count.	2-137
A0	03	Error correction sequence not terminated even at the final transmission speed for fallback.	2-137
A0	11	Receive buffer empty. (5-second time-out)	2-137
A0	12	Receive buffer full during operation except receiving into memory.	2-137
A0	13	Decoding error continued on 500 lines or more.	2-137
A0	14	Decoding error continued for 10 seconds or more.	2-137
A0	15	Time-out: 13 seconds or more for one-line transmission.	2-137
A0	16	RTC not found or carrier OFF detected for 6 seconds.	2-137
A0	17	RTC found but no command detected for 60 seconds or more.	2-137
A0	19	No video data to be sent.	2-137

Code 1	Code 2	Cause	Refer to:
A8	01	RTN, PIN, or ERR received at the calling terminal. *1	2-137
A9	01	RTN, PIN, or ERR received at the called terminal.*1	2-137
AA	18	Receive buffer full during receiving into memory.	2-137
B0	02	Unable to receive the next-page data.	2-137
B0	03	Unable to receive polling even during turn-around transmission due to call reservation.	2-137
B0	04	PC interface error.	2-137
BF	01	Communication canceled by pressing the **Stop/Exit** button before establishment of FAX communication.*2	2-137
BF	02	Communication canceled by pressing the **Stop/Exit** button after establishment of FAX communication.*2	2-137
BF	03	Transmission canceled due to a scanning error caused by no document or document feed problem in ADF scanning in real time transmission.	2-137
C0	01	No common modulation mode or failed to poll.	2-137
C0	02	Unable to detect JM.	2-137
C0	03	Unable to detect CM.	2-137
C0	04	Unable to detect CJ.	2-137
C0	10	Cannot finish V. 34 negotiation or training.	2-137
C0	11	Modem error detected during V. 34 negotiation or training.	2-137
C0	20	Modem error detected during sending of commands.	2-137
C0	21	Modem error detected during receiving of commands.	2-137
C0	22	Control channel connection time-out.	2-137
C0	30	Modem error detected during sending of video signals.	2-137
C0	31	Modem error detected during receiving of video signals.	2-137
FF	XX	Equipment error (For X X, refer to “3.1 Error Codes” in this chapter.)	2-137

*1 Available in German models only.

*2 Establishment of FAX communication:
FAX communication is established when the calling station receives a DIS (reception capability) signal from the called station and the called station receives a NSS or DCS (communications test) signal from the calling station.

3.4 Error Cause and Remedy

Check the **User Check** items first. If an error cannot be resolved, follow the procedures in numerical order in the Step field.

■ Error code 0B

Touch panel no response error.

<User Check>

Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fine adjustment of touch panel misalignment (for models with a touch panel)	Perform the fine adjustment of touch panel. (Function code 61)
2	Touch panel failure	Replace the LCD unit.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 0E

Touch panel failure upon start-up of the machine.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of LCD unit	Check the harness connection of the LCD unit and reconnect it.
2	LCD unit failure	Replace the LCD unit.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 0F

Duplex Disabled **Close the Back Cover of the machine.**

The back cover is open upon duplex printing. (The back cover sensor is OFF.)

<User Check>

- Close the back cover.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of back cover sensor	Check the harness connection of the back cover sensor ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Back cover damaged	Replace the back cover.
3	Back cover sensor failure	Replace the back cover sensor ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 10

Registration
Registration failed. Press Start, and try again.

Inter-color position alignment adjustment failure. (Error, which cannot be recorded, occurs.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 11

Registration
Registration failed. Press Start, and try again.

Inter-color position alignment adjustment failure.
(Toner of the color which is being used reached the end of life.)

<User Check>

- Replace the toner cartridge of the color displayed on the LCD.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 12

Registration
Registration failed. See Troubleshooting chapter in User's Guide.

Inter-color position alignment adjustment failure.
(Incorrect measurement value of inter-color position alignment adjustment.)

<User Check>

- Replace the cleaner unit with a new one.
- Replace the belt unit with a new one.
- Replace the waste toner box with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of registration mark sensor holder ASSY	Check the harness connection of the registration mark sensor holder ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Registration mark sensor PCB failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 16

Duplex Disabled
Reload paper, then press Start.

Paper of unsupported size for duplex printing or paper of different sizes is loaded.

<User Check>

- Use the A4 or Letter size paper.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Registration rear actuator catching on some position	Correct the position of the registration rear actuator.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 17

No Tray
A Tray is not detected, install Tray 1.

The paper tray 1 is not installed before printing.
(The cassette of the T1 paper edge sensor is open.)

<User Check>

- Open and close the paper tray 1.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	T1 paper edge actuator catching on some position	Check the T1 paper edge actuator and reinstall it.
2	Harness connection failure of T1 paper edge sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T1 paper edge sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
3	T1 paper edge sensor PCB failure	Replace the T1 paper edge sensor PCB ASSY.
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 18

No Tray
A Tray is not detected, install Tray 2.

The paper tray 2 is not installed before printing.
(The cassette of the T2 paper edge sensor is open.)

<User Check>

- Open and close the paper tray 2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	T2 paper edge actuator catching on some position	Check the T2 paper edge actuator and reinstall it.
2	Harness connection failure of T2 sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
3	Harness connection failure of T2 Relay PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 Relay PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
4	T2 sensor PCB ASSY failure	Replace the T2 paper feed frame unit.
5	T2 Relay PCB failure	Replace the T2 Relay PCB ASSY.
6	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
7	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 19

Replace Drum
Open the Front Cover, replace the Drum Unit. Refer to the User's Guide for instructions.

The drum unit reached the end of life.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 1A

Condensation
Leave switched ON. Fully open the front cover. Wait 30 minutes, switch OFF and close cover, then switch ON.

Condensation occurred on the laser unit.

<User Check>

- Open the front and rear covers and leave them for 30 minutes or more with the power ON. After that, close the front and rear covers and turn OFF and ON the power switch.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

Error code 1B (C)

Drum Stop
We cannot guarantee the print quality. Replace the Drum Unit. Refer to the User's Guide for instructions.

Error code 1C (M)

Drum Stop
We cannot guarantee the print quality. Replace the Drum Unit. Refer to the User's Guide for instructions.

Error code 1D (Y)

Drum Stop
We cannot guarantee the print quality. Replace the Drum Unit. Refer to the User's Guide for instructions.

Drum error. (An drum error occurred after the counter value exceeded the value more than twice as long as the life of the drum.) (Printing is not available until the drum unit is replaced.)

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 1E

Replace Parts **Drum Unit**

The drum unit will reach the end of life soon.

<User Check>

- Prepare a new drum unit.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

Error code 1F

Too Many Trays. **Maximum number of optional tray is one. Remove additional trays.**

More than the specified number of the option trays is installed.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ **Error code 20 (K)**

Print Unable 20
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Error code 21 (Y)

Print Unable 21
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Error code 22 (M)

Print Unable 22
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Error code 23 (C)

Print Unable 23
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Laser diode error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

Error code 24

Print Unable 24
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Internal temperature sensor error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of internal temperature sensor	Check the harness connection of internal temperature and reconnect it.
2	Internal temperature sensor failure	Replace the internal temperature sensor.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 25

Print Unable 25
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Develop drive motor error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 26

Print Unable 26
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Belt drive motor error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 27

Print Unable 27
Turn the power off and then back on again.

PF drive motor error.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of PF drive motor	Check the harness connection of the PF drive motor and reconnect it.
2	PF drive motor failure	Replace the PF plate ASSY.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY

■ Error code 28

Print Unable 28
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Drum drive motor error.

<User Check>

- If paper or any other foreign object is affixed to the exposure roller of the drum, remove it.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of drum drive motor	Check the harness connection of the drum drive motor and reconnect it.
2	Drum drive motor failure	Replace the drum drive motor.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 29

Print Unable 29
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Paper eject motor error.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of paper eject motor	Check the harness connection of the paper eject motor and reconnect it.
2	Paper eject motor failure	Replace the paper eject motor.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 2A

Print Unable 2A
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Develop release motor error.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of develop release motor	Check the harness connection of the develop release motor and reconnect it.
2	Develop release motor failure	Replace the develop release motor.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 2B

Print Unable 2B
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Blower error.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of blower	Check the harness connection of the blower and reconnect it.
2	Blower failure	Replace the blower.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 2C (K)

Print Unable 2C
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Error code 2D (Y)

Print Unable 2D
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Error code 2E (M)

Print Unable 2E
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Error code 2F (C)

Print Unable 2F
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Toner/New sensor PCB error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Toner/New sensor PCB failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 30

Print Unable 30
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Erase lamp current value error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 31

Print Unable 31
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Density sensor error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of registration mark sensor holder ASSY	Check the harness connection of the registration mark sensor holder ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Registration mark sensor holder ASSY failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 32

Print Unable 32
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Density sensor shutter operation error.

<User Check>

- Check if there is a scratch, dirt or the like on the belt unit. If there is, replace the belt unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around registration mark sensor shutter	Remove the foreign object.
2	Harness connection failure of registration mark sensor holder ASSY	Check the harness connection of the registration mark sensor holder ASSY and reconnect it.
3	Harness connection failure of density sensor shutter solenoid ASSY	Check the harness connection of the density sensor shutter solenoid ASSY and reconnect it.
4	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Registration mark sensor holder ASSY failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 33

Print Unable 33
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Registration mark R PCB ASSY error.

Error code 34

Print Unable 34
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Registration mark L PCB ASSY error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 35

Print Unable 35
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Failure in NVRAM of the engine PCB.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 36

Print Unable 36
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Error in the high-voltage power supply PCB while the machine is in the standby mode.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 37

Print Unable 37
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Belt unit temperature sensor error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of belt unit temperature sensor	Check the harness connection of the belt unit temperature sensor and reconnect it.
2	Belt unit temperature sensor failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 38

Print Unable 38
Turn the power off and then back on again.

External temperature/humidity sensor error.

Error code 39

Print Unable 39
Turn the power off and then back on again.

External temperature/humidity sensor error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	External temperature/humidity sensor failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
2	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 3A

Print Unable 3A
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Engine PCB transfer error. (Communication error between the main CPU and sub CPU.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure between engine PCB and main PCB	Check the harness connection between the engine PCB ASSY and main PCB ASSY, and reconnect it.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 3B

Print Unable 3B
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Main PCB DRAM access error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 3C

Print Unable 3C
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Main PCB error. (Write error in NVRAM.)

Error code 3D

Print Unable 3D
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Main PCB error. (Read error in NVRAM.)

Error code 3E

Print Unable 3E
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Main PCB error. (Bus error in NVRAM.)

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 3F

Print Unable 3F
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Write error in engine firmware.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 40

Print Unable 40
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Error in the high-voltage power supply PCB while the machine is in operation.

Error code 42

Print Unable 42
Turn the power off and then back on again.

High-voltage power supply PCB transfer error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
2	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 43

Print Unable 43
Turn the power off and then back on again.

ASIC error of the main PCB.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 44 (K)

No Toner
Open the Front Cover, then install Toner Cartridge. Black (K)

Error code 45 (Y)

No Toner
Open the Front Cover, then install Toner Cartridge. Yellow (Y)

Error code 46 (M)

No Toner
Open the Front Cover, then install Toner Cartridge. Magenta (M)

Error code 47 (C)

No Toner
Open the Front Cover, then install Toner Cartridge. Cyan (C)

The toner cartridge of the appropriate color is not installed.

<User Check>

- Install the toner cartridge of the color displayed on the LCD.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Toner/New sensor PCB failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ **Error code 48**

Replace Drum (K)

Black drum unit is at the end of life.

Error code 49

Replace Drum (Y)

Yellow drum unit is at the end of life.

Error code 4A

Replace Drum (M)

Magenta drum unit is at the end of life.

Error code 4B

Replace Drum (C)

Cyan drum unit is at the end of life.

Error code 4C

Drum End Soon (K)

The black drum unit will reach the end of life soon.

Error code 4D

Drum End Soon (Y)

The yellow drum unit will reach the end of life soon.

Error code 4E

Drum End Soon (M)

The magenta drum unit will reach the end of life soon.

Error code 4F

Drum End Soon (C)

The cyan drum unit will reach the end of life soon.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 50

Replace Parts
Drum Unit

Drum unit is at the end of life.

Error code 51

Replace Parts
PF Kit MP

MP paper feeding kit is at the end of life.

Error code 52

Replace Parts
PF Kit 1

Paper feeding kit1 is at the end of life.

Error code 53

Replace Parts
PF Kit 2

Paper feeding kit2 is at the end of life.

Error code 54

Replace Parts
Fuser Unit

Fuser unit is at the end of life.

Error code 55

Replace Parts
Laser Unit

Laser unit is at the end of life.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	The part displayed on the LCD reached the end of life	Replace the part displayed on the LCD and reset the counter of each part. (Refer to "2.2 Parts Life Reset Function" in Chapter 5.)
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 56

Cover is Open
Close the Fuser Cover which can be found behind the Back Cover of the machine.

The fuser cover is open.

<User Check>

- Close the fuser cover properly.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Paper eject actuator catching on some position	Correct the position of the paper eject actuator.
2	Paper eject sensor PCB failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 57

Jam Duplex
Pull out Tray 1 completely. Check inside the machine or open the Back Cover to remove the jammed paper.

Paper is jammed in the duplex paper feed system.

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is jammed. If jammed, remove it.
- Use the A4 or Letter size paper.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around paper eject	Remove the foreign object.
2	Foreign object around duplex feed ASSY	Remove the foreign object.
3	Coming off of back flapper ASSY	Re-assemble the back flapper ASSY.
4	Duplex feed ASSY not assembled correctly	Re-assemble the duplex feed ASSY.
5	Duplex paper guide not assembled correctly	Re-assemble the duplex paper guide.
6	Harness connection failure of paper eject ASSY	Check the harness connection of the paper eject ASSY and reconnect it.
7	Paper eject motor failure	Replace the paper eject motor.
8	Duplex feed ASSY failure	Replace the paper tray 1.
9	Duplex paper guide failure	Replace the paper tray 1.
10	Paper eject ASSY failure	Replace the paper eject ASSY.
11	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
12	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 58

Fuser Error
Turn the power off, then on again. Leave the machine for 15 min.

Error code 59

Self-Diagnostic
Will Automatically Restart within 15 minutes.

Fuser unit error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure between fuser unit connector and paper eject sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection between the fuser unit connector and paper eject sensor PCB ASSY, and reconnect it.
2	Harness connection failure between fuser unit connector and low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection between the fuser unit connector and low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY, and reconnect it.
3	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.
4	Paper eject sensor PCB failure	Replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
5	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 5A

Print Unable 5A
Turn the power off and then back on again.

High-voltage power supply PCB transfer error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 5B

Short paper **Open the Back Cover and then press Start.**

It was detected that the length of the paper under printing was less than the specified value.

Error code 5C

Small paper **Open the Back Cover and then press Start.**

It was detected that the size of the paper was less than the specified value.

<User Check>

- Remove the paper left inside the machine.
- Replace the paper with the specified A4 size or larger size paper.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 5D

Replace Parts **Belt Unit**

The belt unit will reach the end of life soon.

<User Check>

- Prepare a new belt unit.

■ Error code 5E

Replace Parts **Belt Unit**

Belt unit is at the end of life.

<User Check>

- Prepare a new belt unit. Reset the belt counter.
  (Refer to “2.2 Parts Life Reset Function” in Chapter 5.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 5F

WT Box End Soon

The waste toner box near full. (The sensor detected that the waste toner became near full.)

<User Check>

- Prepare a new waste toner box.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Waste toner sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the waste toner sensor.
2	Harness connection failure of waste toner sensor	Check the harness connection of the waste toner sensor and reconnect it.
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 60 (C)

Replace Toner
Open the Front Cover, replace Toner Cartridge. Cyan (C)

Error code 61 (M)

Replace Toner
Open the Front Cover, replace Toner Cartridge. Magenta (M)

Error code 62 (Y)

Replace Toner
Open the Front Cover, replace Toner Cartridge. Yellow (Y)

Error code 63 (K)

Replace Toner
Open the Front Cover, replace Toner Cartridge. Black (K)

Each toner cartridge reached the end of life.

<User Check>

- Replace the toner cartridge of the appropriate color.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, check the harness connections of the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect them.
2	Toner/New sensor PCB failure (Toner empty)	Replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ **Error code 64 (C)**

Toner Low (C) **Prepare New Cyan (C) Toner Cartridge.**

Error code 65 (M)

Toner Low (M) **Prepare New Magenta (M) Toner Cartridge.**

Error code 66 (Y)

Toner Low (Y) **Prepare New Yellow (Y) Toner Cartridge.**

Error code 67 (K)

Toner Low (K) **Prepare New Black (K) Toner Cartridge.**

Each toner cartridge will reach the end of life soon.

<User Check>

- Gently shake the toner cartridge of the appropriate color from side to side and install it again.
- Replace the toner cartridge of the appropriate color.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ **Error code 68**

Print Unable 68 **Turn the power off and then back on again.**

Fuser unit error. (The temperature rise is detected even after the halogen heater is turned OFF.)

Error code 69

Print Unable 69 **Turn the power off and then back on again.**

Fuser unit error. (The connector of the center thermistor is inserted incorrectly.)

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 6A

Print Unable 6A
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor does not detect 60 °C within the specified time.)

Error code 6B

Print Unable 6B
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor does not detect 100 °C within the specified time.)

Error code 6C

Print Unable 6C
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor detects 270 °C or higher temperature for 1 second.)

Error code 6D

Print Unable 6D
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor detects 60 °C or lower temperature for 1 second during standby or printing.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fuser unit connector connection failure	Reconnect the connector of the fuser unit.
2	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.
3	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Paper eject sensor PCB failure	Replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 6E

Print Unable 6E
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor fails to detect the temperature rise even after the halogen heater is turned ON during printing and 15 second pass.)

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 6F

Print Unable 6F
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser unit error.
(The center and side thermistors detect extremely high temperature.) (Detection of hardware.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fuser unit connector connection failure	Reconnect the connector of the fuser unit.
2	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.
3	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Paper eject sensor PCB failure	Replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 70

Print Unable 70
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser develop motor error.

<User Check>

- Open the fuser cover to check if paper is wound around the fuser unit.
- Replace the toner cartridges except the black toner cartridge.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of fuser develop motor	Check the harness connection of the fuser develop motor and reconnect it.
2	Fuser develop motor failure	Replace the fuser develop motor.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 71

Print Unable 71
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Laser unit error.

Error code 72

Print Unable 72
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Beam detecting sensor (Black/Yellow) error of the laser unit.

Error code 73

Print Unable 73
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Beam detecting sensor (Cyan/Magenta) error of the laser unit.

<User Check>

- Open the front and rear covers and leave them for 30 minutes or more with the power ON. After that, close the front and rear covers and turn OFF and ON the power switch.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of laser unit	Check the harness connections (at three locations) of the laser unit and reconnect them.
2	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 74 (This error can be found out only in "Function code 82".)

Replace Toner
Open the Front Cover, replace Toner Cartridge.

The color toner reached the end of life during printing.

<User Check>

- Replace the toner cartridge which reached the end of life with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Toner/New sensor PCB failure (Toner empty)	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 75

Cooling Down
Wait for a while

Cooling down the inside of the machine to protect it.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Internal temperature sensor failure	Replace the internal temperature sensor.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 76

Print Unable 76
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor detects the sharp temperature rise.)

Error code 78

Print Unable 78
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser unit error. (The center thermistor detects the sharp temperature fall.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.
2	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
3	Paper eject sensor PCB failure	Replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 7A

Print Unable 7A
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Engine PCB error. (detection of PF drive motor lock error.)

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 7B

Print Unable 7B
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Engine PCB error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure between engine PCB and main PCB	Check the harness connection between the engine PCB ASSY and main PCB ASSY, and reconnect it.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 7C

Print Unable 7C
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Communication error between the engine PCB and main PCB.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 7D

Drum Error
Slide the Green tab on Drum Unit in each color. Refer to the User's Guide for the procedures.

Dirt on drum unit.

<User Check>

- Clean the corona wire in the drum unit.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt or dust on drum unit electrodes	Clean the electrodes of the drum unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (next page) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Electrodes location of the drum unit and toner cartridge

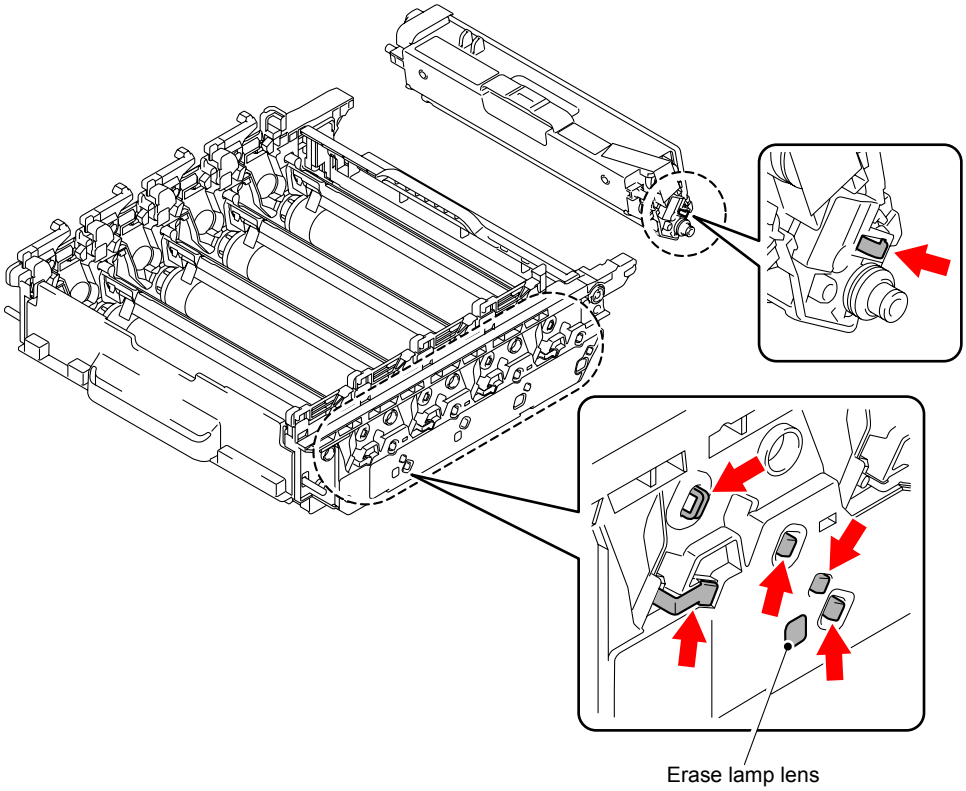


Fig. 2-10

■ Electrodes location of the belt unit

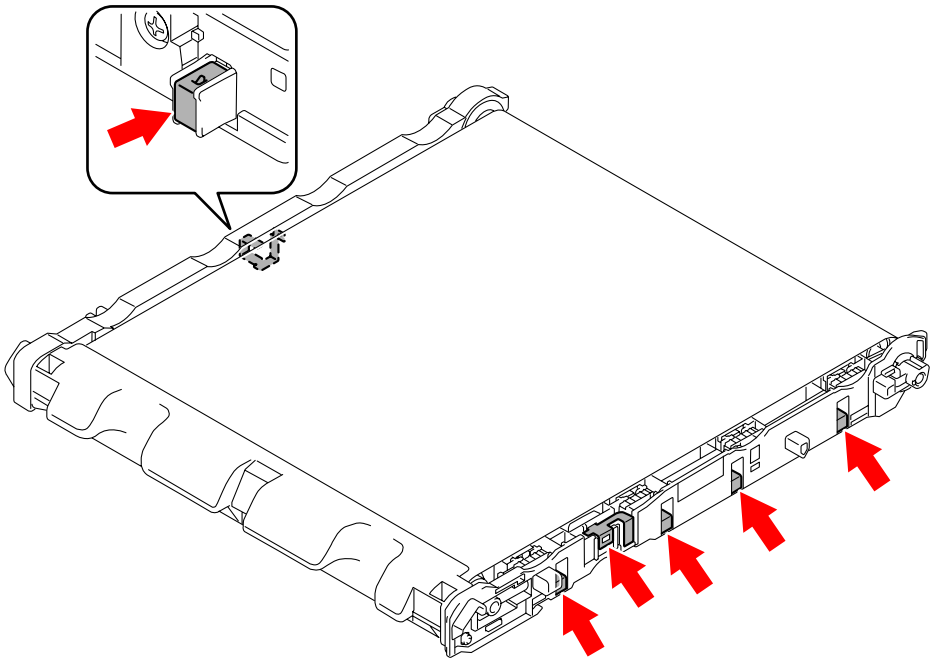


Fig. 2-11

■ Electrodes location of waste toner box

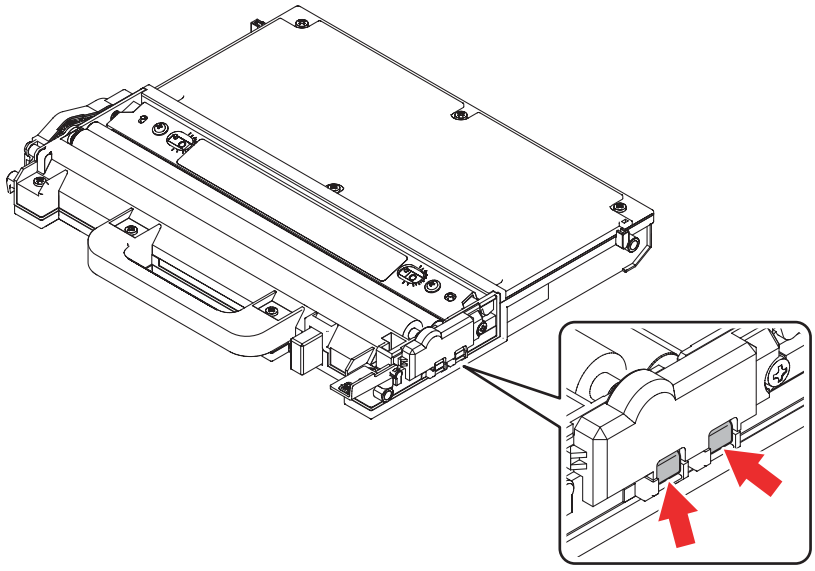


Fig. 2-12

■ Electrodes location of main body

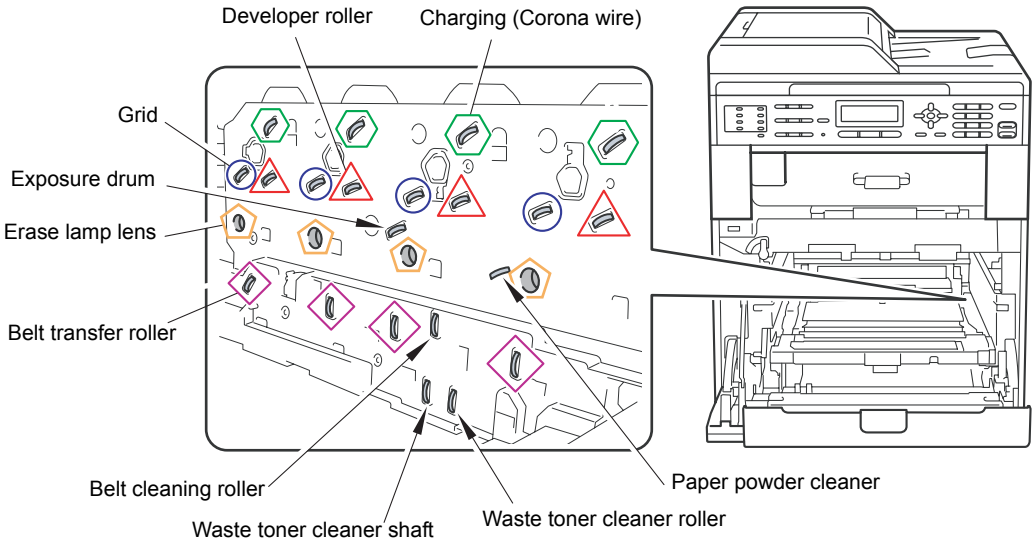


Fig. 2-13

<How to clean the electrodes>

Turn off the power switch. Unplug the machine from the AC power outlet, and leave the machine for a few minutes. Then, wipe the electrodes above carefully with a dry lint-free cloth. Be careful not to change the shapes of the electrodes.

■ Error code 7E

Replace Belt **Open the Front Cover, replace the Belt Unit.**

Belt unit is at the end of life. (The operation is stopped.)

<User Check>

- Replace the belt unit with a new one and reset the counter.
  (Refer to "2.2 Parts Life Reset Function" in Chapter 5.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY

■ Error code 7F

Size mismatch **FAX received. Set correct paper size in menu.**

Fax paper size is incorrect. (Menu setting)

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 80

Size mismatch **Reload correct paper.**

Fax paper size is incorrect. (The actually loaded paper is small.)

<User Check>

- Use the A4 or Letter size paper.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 81

Calibrate
Calibration failed. See Troubleshooting chapter in User's Guide.

Incorrect density sensor measurement value when implementing adjustment of color density.

Error code 82

Calibrate
Calibration failed. Press Start, and try again.

Density patch measurement is not completed normally when implementing adjustment of color density.

<User Check>

- Check if there is a scratch, dirt or the like on the belt unit. If there is, replace the belt unit with a new one.
- Check if the genuine toner cartridges are installed in the correct order of colors.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object is affixed around the density sensor	Remove the foreign object affixed around the density sensor.
2	Density sensor failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 83

Drum Stop
Replace the Drum Unit. Refer to the instructions in the carton of new drum.

Drum unit error. (An drum error occurred after the drum unit reached the end of life.)

<User Check>

- Replace the drum unit with a new one and reset the drum counter.
  (Refer to “2.2 Parts Life Reset Function” in Chapter 5.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 84

Jam Rear
Open the Back Cover and remove the jammed paper.

Paper jam at the rear section of the machine.

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is jammed. If jammed, remove it.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around paper eject	Remove the foreign object.
2	Coming off of back flapper ASSY	Re-assemble the back flapper ASSY.
3	Paper eject actuator malfunction	Re-assemble the paper eject actuator.
4	Harness connection failure of paper eject motor	Check the harness connection of the paper eject motor and reconnect it.
5	Paper eject sensor PCB failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
6	Paper eject motor failure	Replace the paper eject motor.
7	Paper eject ASSY failure	Replace the paper eject ASSY.
8	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
9	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 85

No Tray
A Tray is not detected, install Tray 1.

The paper tray 1 is not installed.

<User Check>

- Check if the paper tray 1 is installed into the machine.
- Check if the paper is jammed in the paper tray 1. If jammed, remove it.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of T1 paper edge sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T1 paper edge sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
2	T1 paper edge sensor PCB failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the T1 paper edge sensor PCB ASSY.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 86

No Tray
A Tray is not detected, install Tray 2.

The paper tray 2 is not installed.

<User Check>

- Check if the paper tray 2 is installed into the machine.
- Check if the paper is jammed in the paper tray 2. If jammed, remove it.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of T2 sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Harness connection failure of T2 Relay PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 Relay PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
3	T2 paper edge sensor PCB failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the T2 paper feed frame unit.
4	T2 Relay PCB failure	Replace the T2 Relay PCB ASSY.
5	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 87

Calibrate
Calibration failed. Insufficient Toner for Calibration.

Toner of the color which is being used reaches the end of life when implementing adjustment of color density.

<User Check>

- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Toner/New sensor PCB failure (Toner empty)	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 88

Jam Inside
Open the Front Cover, pull out the Drum Unit completely and remove the jammed paper.

Paper jam inside the machine.

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is jammed. If jammed, remove it.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of paper eject sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Paper eject actuator catching on some position	Correct catching of the paper eject actuator.
3	Paper eject sensor PCB failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 89

Size Error DX
Specify the correct paper and press Start.

Unsupported paper is used for duplex printing.

<User Check>

- Use the A4 or Letter size paper.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 105 g/m^2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Registration front/rear sensor PCB failure	Check the registration front sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem is found, replace the registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 8A

Jam Tray 1
Remove the jammed paper from Tray 1.

Paper jam in the paper tray 1.

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is jammed in the paper tray 1. If jammed, remove it.
- Check if the paper is loaded into the paper tray 1 correctly.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the paper tray 1 or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Adjust the paper guide corresponding to the paper size.
- Check if the maximum loading capacity of the paper tray is not exceeded.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 105 g/m^2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Paper feeding kit1 worn out	Replace the paper feeding kit1.
3	Registration front sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY.
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 8B

Jam Tray 2
Remove the jammed paper from Tray 2.

Paper jam in the paper tray 2.

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is jammed in the paper tray 2. If jammed, remove it.
- Check if the paper is loaded into the paper tray 2 correctly.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the paper tray 2 or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Adjust the paper guide corresponding to the paper size.
- Check if too much paper is loaded in the tray.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 105 g/m^2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around the front of the paper tray 2	Remove the foreign object.
2	Harness connection failure of T2 sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
3	Harness connection failure of T2 Relay PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 Relay PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
4	T2 separation roller ASSY worn out	Replace the T2 separation roller ASSY.
5	T2 Relay PCB failure	Replace the T2 Relay PCB ASSY.
6	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
7	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 8C

Jam MP Tray
Remove the jammed paper from Multi Purpose Tray and press Start.

Paper jam in the MP tray.

<User Check>

- Check if paper is jammed around the MP tray. If paper is jammed, remove the jammed paper.
- Check if the paper is loaded into the MP tray correctly.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the MP tray or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Adjust the paper guide corresponding to the paper size.
- Check if too much paper is loaded in the tray.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 163 g/m^2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around MP tray	Remove the foreign object.
2	MP paper feeding kit worn out	Replace the MP paper feeding kit.
3	MP registration front sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the MP paper empty/registration front sensor PCB ASSY.
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 8D

Cover is Open
Make sure there is no paper jammed inside the machine and close the Back Cover, then press Start.

Paper jam occurred around the back cover at the time when the power was turned ON, or the fuser cover is open.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 8E

Registration
Registration failed. Press Start, and try again.

Error in the adjustment of inter-color position alignment result when implementing it.

<User Check>

- Check if there is a scratch, dirt or the like on the belt unit. If there is, replace the belt unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of the registration mark L PCB ASSY or registration mark R PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the registration mark sensor holder ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Registration mark sensor holder ASSY failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 8F

Registration
Registration failed. See Troubleshooting chapter in User's Guide.

Detection of abnormal value of registration sensor sensitivity when implementing adjustment of inter-color position alignment.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ **Error code 90**

Size Mismatch **Reload correct paper.**

The paper size of the MP tray does not match that of the print setting.

Error code 91

Size Mismatch **Reload correct paper.**

The paper size of the paper tray 1 does not match that of the print setting.

Error code 92

Size Mismatch **Reload correct paper.**

The paper size of the paper tray 2 does not match that of the print setting.

Error code 93

No Paper **Reload paper in MP Tray.**

No paper in MP tray.

Error code 94

No Paper **Reload paper in Tray 1.**

No paper in paper tray 1.

Error code 95

No Paper **Reload paper in Tray 2.**

No paper in paper tray 2.

Error code 96

No Paper **Load <size> paper in Tray.**

No paper in all trays.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ **Error code 97**

Size mismatch **Reload correct paper.**

A paper size, which is not supported by the paper tray 1, is specified in the paper size of the data.

Error code 98

Size mismatch **Reload correct paper.**

A paper size, which is not supported by the paper tray 2, is specified in the paper size of the data.

Error code 99

Size mismatch DX **Press Job Cancel. Specify the correct paper and load the same size paper as the machine driver setting.**

The tray in which unsupported paper size is loaded is selected for duplex printing.

Error code 9A

Manual Feed **Load Paper**

No paper is loaded in the MP tray. (MP paper empty sensor fails to be turned ON.)

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 9D

Registration **Registration failed. See Troubleshooting chapter in User's Guide.**

Detection of incorrect registration sensor measurement value when implementing adjustment of inter-color position alignment.

<User Check>

- Check if there is a scratch, dirt or the like on the belt unit. If there is, replace the belt unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of the registration mark L PCB ASSY or registration mark R PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the registration mark sensor holder ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Registration mark sensor holder ASSY failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 9E

Registration **Registration failed. Insufficient Toner for Registration.**

Toner of the color which is being used reaches the end of life when implementing adjustment of inter-color position alignment.

<User Check>

- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Toner/New sensor PCB failure (Toner empty)	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.

■ Error code 9F

An unidentified error occurred.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code A0

Scan Unable A0
Remove the original document. Turn the power off, then on again.

Timeout error during waiting for completion of second side scanning data transfer.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the second side scanning CIS.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code A1

Cover is Open
Close the Front Cover.

The front cover is open.

<User Check>

- Close the front cover properly.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of front cover sensor	Check the harness connection of the front cover sensor and reconnect it.
2	Front cover sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the front cover sensor.
3	The member part to press the front cover sensor which is located at the inner left side of the front cover is broken.	Replace the front cover.
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code A2

Document Jam
Clear the scanner jam, then press the Stop Key.

During scanning, 90 cm or longer of a document is detected.

<User Check>

- Check if the document is jammed in the ADF. If it is jammed, remove it.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document first side rear actuator catching on some position	Correct catching of the document first side rear actuator.
2	Document first side rear sensor failure	Replace the document first side rear sensor PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code Error code A3

Document Jam
Clear the scanner jam, then press the Stop Key.

The document first side rear sensor does not detect the leading edge of a document although the document is fed farther than a designated distance.

<User Check>

- Check if the document is jammed in the ADF. If it is jammed, remove it.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document first side rear actuator catching on some position	Correct catching of the document first side rear actuator.
2	Second side rear sensor catching on some position	Correct catching of the second side rear sensor.
3	ADF motor failure	Replace the ADF motor.
4	Document first side rear sensor failure	Replace the document first side rear sensor PCB ASSY.
5	Second side rear sensor failure	Replace the second side rear sensor.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.
7	ADF drive unit failure	Replace the ADF unit.

■ Error code A4

Cover is Open
Close the ADF Cover, then press the Stop Key.

The ADF cover is open.

<User Check>

- Close the ADF cover.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Coming off of document front/ ADF open actuator	Re-assemble the document front/ADF open actuator.
2	Harness connection failure of document front/ADF open sensor PCB	Check the harness connection of the document front/ADF open sensor PCB open and reconnect it.
3	Deformation and/or breakage of ADF cover	Replace the ADF cover ASSY.
4	ADF cover open sensor failure	Replace the document front/ADF open sensor PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code A5

Scan Unable A5
Remove the original document. Turn the power off, then on again.

Scanning failure upon FAX transmission. (First side) (Scanning unit failure for the first time.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Scanning error	Turn the power switch OFF and ON. Then, try scanning again.

■ Error code A6

Scan Unable A6
See Troubleshooting and routine maintenance chapter in User's Guide.

Scanning failure upon FAX transmission. (First side) (Scanning unit failure for the second time or later.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document scanner unit failure (First-side)	Replace the document scanner unit.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code A7

Scan Unable A7
See Troubleshooting and routine maintenance chapter in User's Guide.

Scanning color parameter file failure.

Error code A8

Scan Unable A8
See Troubleshooting and routine maintenance chapter in User's Guide.

Scanning color parameter error for recording the image.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code A9

Scan Unable A9

An image signal cannot be detected when an image is scanned. Or, an image signal is too dark.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code AA

ADF cover open detection error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code AB

Scanner Error

Scanning resolution change error in the maintenance mode.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code AC

Scan Unable AC **Remove the original document. Turn the power off, then on again.**

Scanning failure upon FAX transmission. (Second side)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code AD

Scan Unable AD **Remove the original document. Turn the power off, then on again.**

Timeout error during waiting for completion of scanning DMA transfer.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code AE

Scanner Locked
Open the Document Cover and release scanner lock lever. Press Stop key.

The document scanner unit fails to detect the home position.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code AF

Scanner Unable AF
See Troubleshooting and routine maintenance chapter in User's Guide.

The white tape cannot be detected.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code B0

Scanner Error

Scanning FFC connection failure.
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Incomplete insertion of the second side scanning CIS harness of the document scanner unit	Reinsert the second side scanning CIS harness of the document scanner unit.
2	Incomplete insertion of the harness of the document scanner unit	Reconnect the harness for the document scanner unit correctly.
3	Second side scanning CIS harness of document scanner unit failure	Replace the second side scanning CIS harness.
4	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the second side scanning CIS.
5	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code B1

Scanner Error

Dark level offset data level error for scanning.
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Error code B2

Scanner Error

Gain control data level error for scanning.
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Error code B3

Scanner Error

The scanning area setting left edge detection error. (white tape)
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Error code B4

Scanner Error

The scanning area setting right edge detection error. (white tape)
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.
2	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code B5

Scanner Error

The scanning area setting reduction detection error. (white tape)
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Error code B6

Scanner Error

The scanning area setting enlargement detection error. (white tape)
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code B7

Scanner Error

A/D converter standard voltage failure; at High side.
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Error code B8

Scanner Error

A/D converter standard voltage failure; at Low side.
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.
2	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code B9

Scanner Error

Scanning light adjustment error.
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.
2	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code BA

Scanner Error

Scanning outside light detection error.
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code BB

Scanner Error

White level data error.
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code BC

Scanner Unable BC
See Troubleshooting and routine maintenance chapter in User's Guide.

Scanning failure upon FAX transmission. (Second side)
(Scanning unit failure for the second time or later.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code BD

Scanner Error

Black level data error.
* This error is indicated on the LCD in the maintenance mode.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the second side scanning CIS.
2	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code BE

Scanner Error

The scanning area start edge detection error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code BF

Scan Unable BF
Document is too long for duplex scanning. Press Stop Key.

The document is too long for ADF duplex feeding.

<User Check>

- When you scan a document longer than the specified size (356.0 mm in length), scan the document by dividing it into several pages using the document scanner unit.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document second side rear actuator catching on some position	Correct catching of the document second side rear actuator.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code C0 (K)

Cartridge Error
Put the Black (K) Toner Cartridge back in.

Failure to detect a new black toner cartridge.

Error code C1 (Y)

Cartridge Error
Put the Yellow (Y) Toner Cartridge back in.

Failure to detect a new yellow toner cartridge.

Error code C2 (M)

Cartridge Error
Put the Magenta (M) Toner Cartridge back in.

Failure to detect a new magenta toner cartridge.

Error code C3 (C)

Cartridge Error
Put the Cyan (C) Toner Cartridge back in.

Failure to detect a new cyan toner cartridge.

<User Check>

- Install the toner cartridges into the machine properly.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Power off or front cover opened while detecting a new toner cartridge	Reset the developing bias voltage and developer roller counter. (Refer to "2.1 Developer Roller Counter Reset Function" in Chapter 5.)

■ Error code C4

Tray 2 Error **Take out Tray 2 and push it back in firmly.**

Paper tray 2 pressing plate up/down error.

<User Check>

- Check if the paper tray 2 is installed into the machine.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of T2 plate motor ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 plate motor ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Harness connection failure of T2 Relay PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 Relay PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
3	T2 plate-up detection sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the T2 paper feed frame unit.
4	T2 Relay PCB ASSY failure	Replace the T2 Relay PCB ASSY.
5	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
6	T2 plate motor ASSY failure	Replace the paper tray 2.

■ Error code C5

Energization failure of erase lamp.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code C6

Toner Error
One or more Toner Cartridges are not detected. Pull out and reinsert all 4 Toner Cartridges.

Pressure engagement/disengagement failure of toner cartridge.

<User Check>

- Insert the toner cartridge again.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of develop release motor	Check the harness connection of the develop release motor and reconnect it.
2	Develop release motor failure	Replace the develop release motor.
3	Develop release sensor PCB failure	Replace the develop release sensor PCB ASSY.
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.

■ Error code C7

Out of Memory
Add more Memory.

Insufficient memory.

<User Check>

- Delete the stored data.
- Install additional DIMM.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code C8

Out of Memory
Secure Print Data is full. Press Cancel and delete the previously stored data.

RAM area for secure data full.

<User Check>

- Delete the stored data.
- Limit the registration of secure files within the limit of 10 users and 3 jobs.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code C9

DIMM Error

Defective DIMM is installed.

<User Check>

- Replace the DIMM.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code CA

Unusable Device
Remove the Device. Turn the power off and back on again.

USB device overcurrent error.

<User Check>

- Remove the USB device from the USB direct interface and turn OFF the power. After a while, turn ON the power again.
- Replace the USB device with another one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	USB host relay PCB failure	Replace the USB host relay PCB ASSY.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code CB

No Belt Unit
Open the Front Cover, pull out the Drum Unit completely and install the Belt Unit.

The belt unit is not installed.

<User Check>

- Check if the belt unit is installed into the machine.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of registration mark sensor holder ASSY	Check the harness connection of the registration mark sensor holder ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Density sensor failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code CC

No Fuser Unit
Install the Fuser Unit.

The fuser unit is not installed.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code CD

No Drum Unit
Install the Drum unit.

The drum unit is not installed.

<User Check>

- Check if the drum unit is installed into the machine.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt on the electrode of the drum unit and on the machine	Clean the dirt on the contact points of the both electrodes. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	Bend of electrode contact of main body	Correct the bend of the electrode contact of the main body.
3	Contact failure between the electrode of the high-voltage power supply PCB and that of the machine	Clean the electrodes of the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.

■ Error code CE

No Waste Toner
Install the Waste Toner Box. Refer to the User's Guide for instructions.

The waste toner box is not installed.

<User Check>

- Check if the waste toner box is installed into the machine.
- Replace the waste toner box with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Waste toner sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the waste toner sensor.
2	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code CF

Replace WT Box
Replace the Waste Toner Box. Refer to the User's Guide for instructions.

Waste toner box full. (The sensor detects that the waste toner is full.)

<User Check>

- Replace the waste toner box with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of waste toner sensor	Check the harness connection of the waste toner sensor and reconnect it.
2	Waste toner sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the waste toner sensor.
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code D0

Touch panel initialization failure.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of LCD unit	Check the harness connection of the LCD unit and reconnect it.
2	LCD unit failure	Replace the LCD unit.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code D1

Print Unable D1 **See Troubleshooting and routine maintenance chapter in User's Guide.**

Modem initialization failed.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF and ON the power and check if the machine recovers.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	NCU PCB failure	Replace the NCU PCB ASSY.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code D2-DC

Machine Error **(D2-DC)

Modem error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code DE

Print Unable DE
Turn the power off and then back on again.

When the center thermistor is higher than the idle temperature, it is detected that the side thermistor temperature is lower than 60 °C.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure between paper eject sensor PCB ASSY and fuser unit	Check the harness connection between the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY and fuser unit, and reconnect it.
2	Side thermistor or center thermistor failure	Replace the fuser unit.
3	Paper eject sensor PCB ASSY failure	Replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code DF

Machine Error
Unplug machine, then call Brother.

FAX communication error of main PCB.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code E0

Print Unable E0
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Program error. (An error occurred in the ROM checksum.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Firmware update failure	Upload the latest firmware.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code E1

Print Unable E1
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Program error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code E2

Print Unable E2
Turn the power off and then back on again.

When the center thermistor is lower than the idle temperature, it is detected that the side thermistor temperature is higher than 280 °C.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Heat roller dirty	Clean the heat roller.
2	Harness connection failure between paper eject sensor PCB ASSY and fuser unit	Check the harness connection between the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY and fuser unit, and reconnect it.
3	Side thermistor or center thermistor failure	Replace the fuser unit.
4	Paper eject sensor PCB failure	Replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code E3

Print Unable E3
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Drum position sensor error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of drum position sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the drum position sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Phase displacement of drum gear	Align the drum phase. (Refer to "6. IF YOU REPLACE THE DRUM DRIVE MOTOR" in Chapter 4.)
3	Drum position sensor failure	Replace the drum position sensor PCB ASSY.
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.

■ Error code E4

Run out of paper.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code E6

Print Unable E6 **Turn the power off and then back on again.**

Write error in EEPROM of the main PCB.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code E7

Main PCB error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code E8

The scanned data fails to be recorded in the buffer RAM.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code E9

Print Unable E9 **Turn the power off and then back on again.**

Main PCB error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code EA

Communication data error upon scanning.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code EB

Print Unable EB
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Read error in EEPROM of the laser unit.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure between laser unit and main PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection between the laser unit and main PCB ASSY, and reconnect it.
2	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code EC

Print Unable EC
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Fuser fan error.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of fuser fan	Check the harness connection of the fuser fan and reconnect it.
2	Fuser fan failure	Replace the fuser fan.
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code ED

Print Unable ED
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Communication with the wireless LAN PCB cannot be established upon startup of the power supply. (Wireless LAN model only)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of wireless LAN PCB	Check the harness connection of the wireless LAN PCB and reconnect it.
2	Wireless LAN PCB failure	Replace the wireless LAN PCB.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code EE

Print Unable EE
Turn the power off and then back on again.

Unavailability of communication after connecting to the wireless LAN PCB is detected.
(Wireless LAN model only)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of wireless LAN PCB	Check the harness connection of the wireless LAN PCB and reconnect it.
2	Wireless LAN PCB failure	Replace the wireless LAN PCB.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code EF

Print Unable EF
Turn the power off and then back on again.

The supplied power is unstable.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	The irregular power supply is detected	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY. Reset the irregular power supply detection counter following the procedure described in "5. IF THE MACHINE ERROR EF IS DETECTED AND THE LOW-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSY IS REPLACED" in Chapter 4.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

Note:
The irregular power supply detection error (Machine Error EF) occurs when there is a large fluctuation in the power supply voltage supplied to the machine.
In this case, if the same power supply is used, the same error might occur again even if the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY is replaced.

■ Error code F0

Print Unable F0 **Turn the power off and then back on again.**

USB flash memory does not work properly.

<User Check>

- Replace the USB flash memory.
- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Malfunction of firmware	Rewrite the latest firmware.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code F1

The dial number is not found.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code F2

WT Box End Soon

The waste toner box near full. (The belt cleaner voltage becomes lower than the specified value.)

<User Check>

- Replace the waste toner box with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code F3

Main PCB error.

Error code F4

High Temperature **Decrease room temperature and humidity to allow the machine to operate.**

The waste toner box is at the end of life.

Error code F5

Main PCB communication error.

Error code F6

P.C.I error.

Error code F8

Battery connection error.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code F9

Machine Error F9 **Unplug machine, then call Brother.**

The country code is not entered properly.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Power turned OFF while the function code 74 is being executed and “PARAMETER INTI” is being displayed	Re-enter the country code. (Refer to “1.4.26 Setting by country (Function code 74) in Chapter 5”.)

■ Error code FA (K)

No Toner **Open the Front Cover, then install Toner Cartridge.**

The black drum unit is not installed.

Error code FB (Y)

No Toner **Open the Front Cover, then install Toner Cartridge.**

The yellow drum unit is not installed.

Error code FC (M)

No Toner **Open the Front Cover, then install Toner Cartridge.**

The magenta drum unit is not installed.

Error code FD (C)

No Toner **Open the Front Cover, then install Toner Cartridge.**

The cyan drum unit is not installed.

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Error code FE

Calibrate
Calibration failed. Press Start, and try again.

Detection of incorrect measurement value of density sensor sensitivity calibration.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of registration mark sensor holder ASSY	Check the harness connection of the registration mark sensor holder ASSY and reconnect it.
2	Harness connection failure of density sensor shutter solenoid ASSY	Check the harness connection of the density sensor shutter solenoid ASSY and reconnect it.
3	Registration mark sensor holder ASSY failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
4	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY

■ Error code FF

Unusable Device
Remove the Device. Turn the power off and back on again.

Wireless LAN module overcurrent error. (Wireless LAN model only)

This error does not usually occur in the normal use. The conceivable causes are noise around the installation site, fluctuation of the power supply voltage, and failures in the software.

<User Check>

- Turn OFF the power switch, and turn it ON again after a while.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.5 Paper Feeding Problems

Problems related to paper feeding are end user recoverable if following the User Check items. If the same problem occurs again, follow each procedure in the order of the number described in the Step column in the tables below.

3.5.1 No feeding

■ Paper fails to be supplied from the paper tray 1 (Error code 27, etc)

<User Check>

- Check if the Tray Use setting is fixed to other tray.
- Check if the paper is loaded into the paper tray 1 correctly.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the paper tray 1 or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 105 g/m^2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	T1 paper edge actuator malfunction	Re-assemble the T1 paper edge actuator.
2	Harness connection failure of PF drive motor	Check the harness connection of the PF drive motor and reconnect it.
3	Installation failure of roller holder ASSY	Check the installation of the roller holder ASSY and reinstall it correctly.
4	T1 paper pick-up roller worn out	Replace the paper feeding kit1.
5	T1 paper edge sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the T1 paper edge sensor PCB ASSY.
6	Plate gear damaged	Replace the paper tray 1.
7	T1 solenoid ASSY failure	Replace the T1 solenoid ASSY.
8	PF drive motor failure	Replace the PF plate ASSY.
9	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
10	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

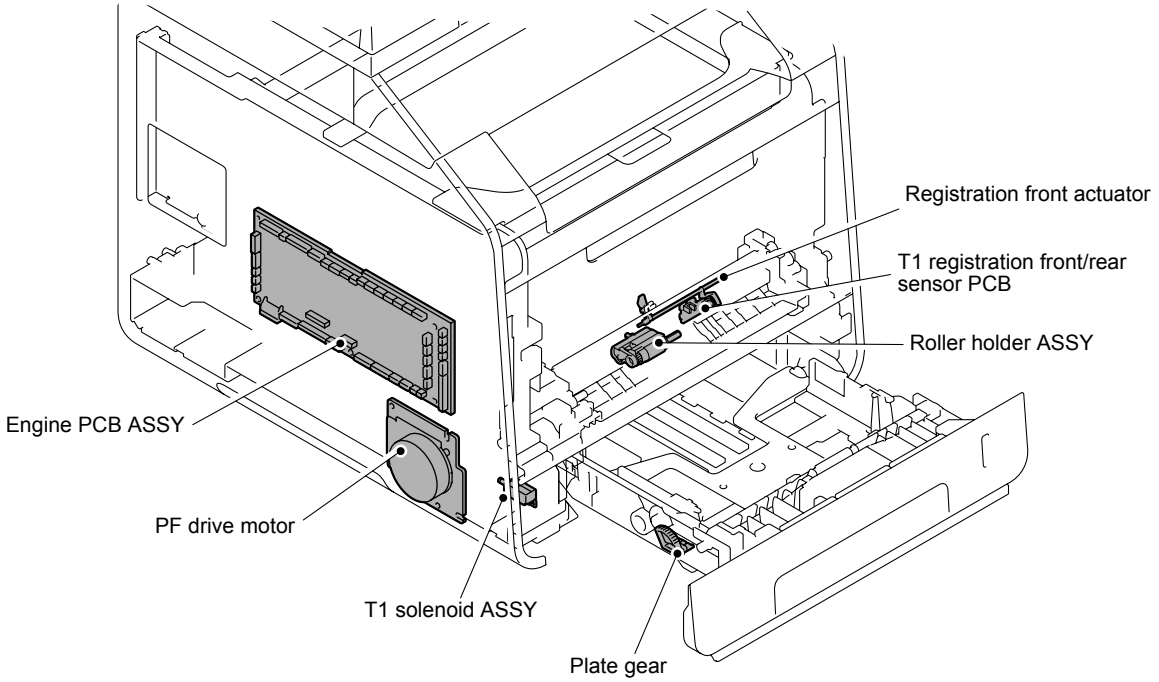


Fig. 2-14

■ Paper fails to be supplied from the paper tray 2 (Error code 27, etc)

<User Check>

- Check if the Tray Use setting is fixed to other tray.
- Check if the paper is loaded into the paper tray 2 correctly.
- Check if the size of the paper is smaller than the specifications.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the paper tray 2 or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 105 g/m^2.
- Check if the paper tray 2 is installed in the machine properly.
  (Check of the connection of the connectors.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	T2 paper edge actuator malfunction	Re-assemble the T2 paper edge actuator.
2	Harness connection failure of plate drive motor	Check the harness connection of the plate drive motor and reconnect it.
3	Harness connection failure of T2 sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
4	Harness connection failure of T2 Relay PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 Relay PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
5	Installation failure of T2 roller holder ASSY	Check the installation of the T2 roller holder ASSY and reinstall it correctly.
6	T2 separation roller ASSY worn out	Replace the T2 separation roller ASSY.
7	Plate gear damaged/Plate drive motor damaged	Replace the paper tray 2.
8	T2 paper edge sensor failure	Replace the T2 paper feed frame unit.
9	T2 Relay PCB ASSY failure	Replace the T2 Relay PCB ASSY.
10	T2 solenoid ASSY failure	Replace the T2 solenoid ASSY.
11	PF drive motor failure	Replace the PF plate ASSY.
12	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
13	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Paper fails to be supplied from the MP tray (Error code 27, etc)

- Check if the Tray Use setting is fixed to other tray.
- Check if the paper is loaded into the MP tray correctly.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 163 g/m^2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Operation failure of the actuator of the MP paper empty sensor	Uninstall and reinstall the actuator of the MP paper empty sensor.
2	Harness connection failure of PF drive motor	Check the harness connection of the PF drive motor and reconnect it.
3	MP paper pick-up roller worn out	Replace the MP paper feeding kit.
4	MP paper empty sensor failure	Replace the MP paper empty/registration front sensor PCB ASSY.
5	MP sector solenoid failure	Replace the MP sector solenoid.
6	PF drive motor failure	Replace the PF plate ASSY.
7	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
8	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.5.2 Double feeding

<User Check>

- Check if paper is properly loaded in each paper tray.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the each paper tray or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 105 g/m^2. (60 to 163 g/m^2 for the MP tray.)
- Set out papers and reload them into the paper tray.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Abrasion of separation pad or separation roller	Replace the appropriate paper feeding kit.

3.5.3 Paper jam

■ Paper jam at the paper tray 1 (Error code 8A)

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is loaded into the paper tray 1 correctly.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the paper tray 1 or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Adjust the paper guide corresponding to the paper size.
- Check if too much paper is loaded in the tray.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 105 g/m^2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around paper tray 1	Remove the foreign object.
2	Harness connection failure of T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
3	Paper feeding kit1 worn out	Replace the paper feeding kit1.
4	Registration front actuator malfunction	Re-assemble the registration front actuator.
5	Registration front sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in “Function code 32”. If any problem occurs, replace the T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY.
6	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
7	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Paper jam at the paper tray 2 (Error code 8B, etc)

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is loaded into the paper tray 2 correctly.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the paper tray 2 or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Adjust the paper guide corresponding to the paper size.
- Check if too much paper is loaded in the tray.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 105 g/m^2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around paper tray 2	Remove the foreign object.
2	Foreign object around paper tray 1	Remove the foreign object.
3	Harness connection failure of T2 sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
4	Harness connection failure of T2 Relay PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the T2 Relay PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
5	T2 paper edge actuator malfunction	Re-assemble the T2 paper edge actuator.
6	T2 separation roller ASSY worn out	Replace the T2 separation roller ASSY.
7	Registration front sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY.
8	T2 Relay PCB failure	Replace the T2 Relay PCB ASSY.
9	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
10	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Paper jam at the MP tray (Error code 8C)

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is loaded into the MP tray correctly.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the MP tray or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Adjust the paper guide corresponding to the paper size.
- Check if too much paper is loaded in the tray.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 163 g/m^2.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around MP tray	Remove the foreign object.
2	MP paper feeding kit worn out	Replace the MP paper feeding kit.
3	MP registration front sensor failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the MP paper empty/registration front sensor PCB ASSY.
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Paper jam around the belt unit (Error code 88, etc.)

<User Check>

- Check if the belt unit is properly installed.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Registration rear actuator malfunction	Re-assemble the registration rear actuator.
2	Paper eject actuator malfunction	Re-assemble the paper eject actuator.
3	Harness connection failure of paper eject sensor PCB ASSY	Check the harness connection of the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
4	Harness connection failure of drum drive motor	Check the harness connection of the drum drive motor and reconnect it.
5	Paper eject sensor PCB failure	Replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
6	Drum drive motor failure	Replace the drum drive motor.
7	Rotation failure of the heat roller	Replace the fuser unit.
8	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
9	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Paper jam in the back cover and paper eject section (Error code 84, etc.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around paper eject	Remove the foreign object.
2	Coming off of back flapper ASSY	Re-assemble the back flapper ASSY.
3	Paper eject actuator malfunction	Re-assemble the paper eject actuator.
4	Harness connection failure of paper eject motor	Check the harness connection of the paper eject motor and reconnect it.
5	Paper eject sensor PCB ASSY failure	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.
6	Paper eject motor failure	Replace the paper eject motor.
7	Paper eject ASSY failure	Replace the paper eject ASSY.
8	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
9	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Paper jam during duplex printing (Error code 57, etc.)

<User Check>

- Use the A4 or letter size recording paper.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around paper eject	Remove the foreign object.
2	Foreign object around duplex feed ASSY	Remove the foreign object.
3	Foreign object around duplex tray	Remove the foreign object.
4	Paper eject actuator malfunction	Re-assemble the paper eject actuator.
5	Coming off of back flapper ASSY	Re-assemble the back flapper ASSY.
6	Harness connection failure of paper eject motor	Check the harness connection of the paper eject motor and reconnect it.
7	Duplex feed ASSY failure	Replace the duplex feed ASSY.
8	Duplex paper guide failure	Replace the paper tray 1.
9	Paper eject motor failure	Replace the paper eject motor.
10	Paper eject ASSY failure	Replace the paper eject ASSY.
11	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
12	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.5.4 Dirt on paper

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is loaded into the paper tray correctly.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the paper tray or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
- Replace the waste toner box with a new one.
- Replace the belt unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fuser unit dirty	Clean the entrance of the fuser unit.
		Clean the pressure roller.
2	Dirt in the paper feed system	Wipe dirt off.
3	Paper eject ASSY dirty	Clean the paper eject ASSY.
4	Waste toner sensor failure	Replace the waste toner sensor.

3.5.5 Wrinkles on paper

<User Check>

- Check if the paper is loaded into the paper tray correctly.
- Turn back the paper loaded in the paper tray or change the orientation of the paper by 180°.
- Check if the thickness of the paper is 60 to 105 g/m^2. (60 to 163 g/m^2 for the MP tray.)
- Switch the envelope levers.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.

3.6 Image Defect Troubleshooting

3.6.1 Image defect examples

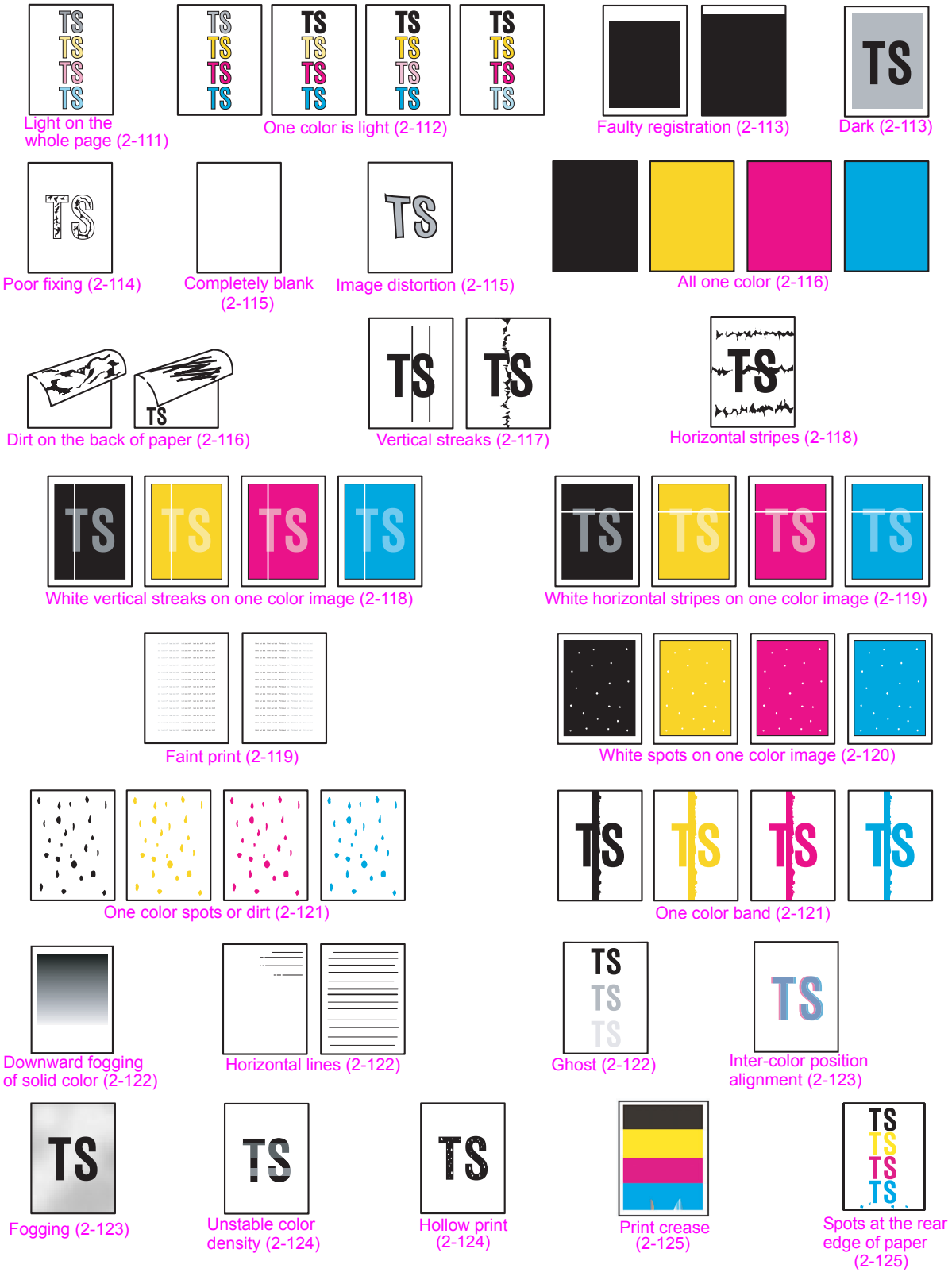


Fig. 2-15

3.6.2 Pitch indicated in roller image

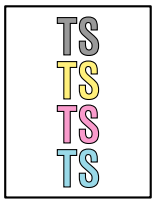
Image defects which occur periodically may be caused by a failure of the roller. By referring to the table below, specify the cause based on the pitch indicated in the image of each roller.

No.	Parts name	The pitch which appears in the image
1	Developer roller	30 mm
2	Exposure drum	94 mm
3	Heat roller in the fuser unit	78.5 mm
4	Pressure roller in the fuser unit	78.5 mm

3.6.3 Troubleshooting image defect

Image defect related problems are user recoverable if following the User Check items. If the same problem occurs, follow each procedure in the order of the number described in the Step column in the tables below.

■ **Light on the whole page**



<User Check>

- Check the machine's environment. High temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity conditions can cause this problem.
- If the whole page is light, toner save mode may be on. Turn off the toner save mode.
- Wipe the scanner windows of the laser unit with a soft, lint-free cloth. (Refer to the figure below.)
- Adjust the color calibration from the control panel.
- Replace the toner cartridge or drum unit with a new one.
- Adjust the color density from the control panel.
- Leave the machine for a while as the power remains ON.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.
4	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
5	Registration mark sensor PCB failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.

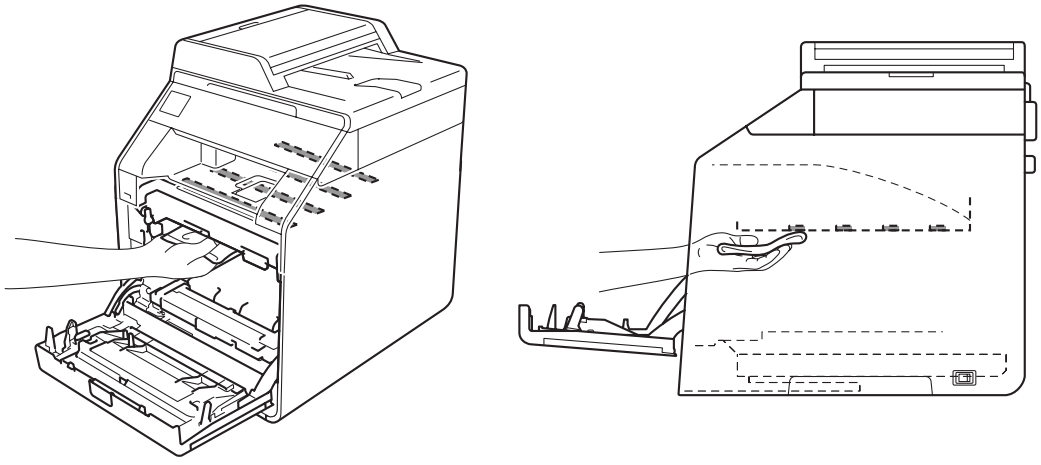
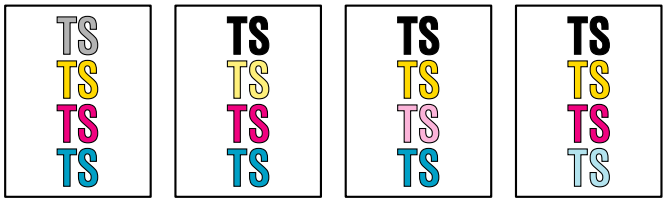


Fig. 2-16

■ One color is light

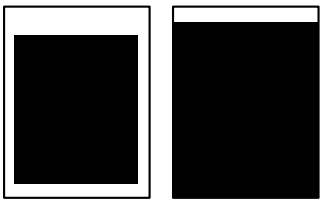


<User Check>

- Open and close the front cover and make print again.
- Check the machine's environment. High temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity conditions can cause this problem.
- Wipe the scanner windows of the laser unit with a soft, lint-free cloth. (Refer to Fig. 2-16 (P2-111))
- Adjust the color density from the control panel.
- Replace the toner cartridge or drum unit with a new one.

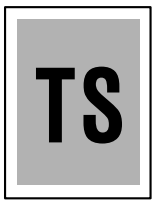
Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt on exposure drum electrode	Clean the electrodes of the drum unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	Dirt on developer roller electrode	Clean the electrodes of the developer roller and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
3	Dirt on belt unit electrode	Clean the electrodes of the belt unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-11 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
4	Toner/New sensor PCB failure	Check the harness connection of the Toner/ New sensor PCB ASSY. Replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.
5	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
6	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
7	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Faulty registration



Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Registration rear actuator catching on some position	Correct catching of the registration rear actuator.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.

■ Dark

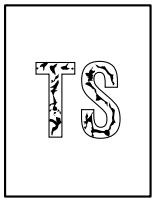


<User Check>

- Check the machine's environment. High temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity conditions can cause this problem.
- Clean the corona wire.
- Replace the toner cartridge or drum unit with a new one.
- Adjust the color density from the control panel.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Corona wire conduction failure	Clean the electrodes of the drum unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	Dirt on belt unit electrode	Clean the electrodes of the belt unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-11 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.
6	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
7	Registration mark sensor PCB failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
8	Toner/New sensor PCB failure	Replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.

■ Poor fixing



<User Check>

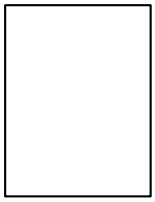
- Use the specified paper.
- Adjust the color calibration from the control panel.
- Adjust the auto registration from the control panel.
- Check the machine's environment. High temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity conditions can cause this problem.
- Replace the belt unit with a new one.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

Memo

You can check this image defect with the function code 71.
(Refer to "1.4.24 Color test pattern (Function code 71)" in Chapter 5.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.
2	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
5	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
6	Toner/New sensor PCB failure	Replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.
7	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Completely blank

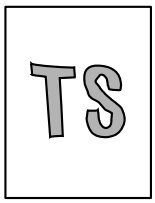


<User Check>

- Replace the belt unit with a new one.
- Replace the toner cartridge or drum unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Developing bias voltage conduction failure	Clean the electrodes of the drum unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	Dirt on developer roller electrode	Clean the electrodes of the developer roller and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Image distortion

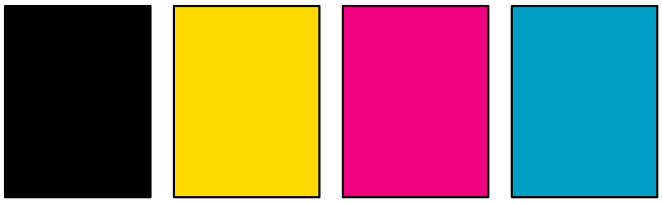


<User Check>

- Replace the belt unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Laser unit assembling failure	Re-assemble the laser unit.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ All one color



<User Check>

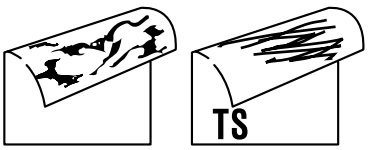
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.

Memo

You can check this image defect with the function code 71.
(Refer to "1.4.24 Color test pattern (Function code 71)" in Chapter 5.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Corona wire failure	Clean the electrodes of the drum unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
3	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Dirt on the back of paper

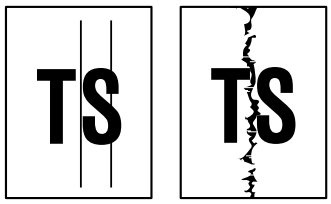


<User Check>

- Clean the belt unit.
- Replace the waste toner box with a new one.
- Replace the belt unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fuser unit dirty	Print approximate 10 pages.
		Replace the fuser unit.
2	Dirt in the paper feed system	Wipe dirt off.
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

■ Vertical streaks



<User Check>

- This problem may occur with noise which is caused by dirt on the corona wire in the drum unit. In this case, clean the corona wire.
- Refer to the User's guide and remove the dirt on the exposure drum using a cotton swab.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

Memo

You can check this image defect with the function code 71.
(Refer to "1.4.24 Color test pattern (Function code 71)" in Chapter 5.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt in the paper feed system	Wipe dirt off.
2	Exposure drum dirty	Refer to "2.5 Drum Cleaning" in Chapter 5 and perform drum cleaning.
3	Bend of tray ground spring	Replace the paper tray.
4	Scratch on the heat roller	Replace the fuser unit.

Note:

When a same pattern is printed continuously, the static charge of the exposure drum is temporarily lowered, and black streaks may appear on paper.

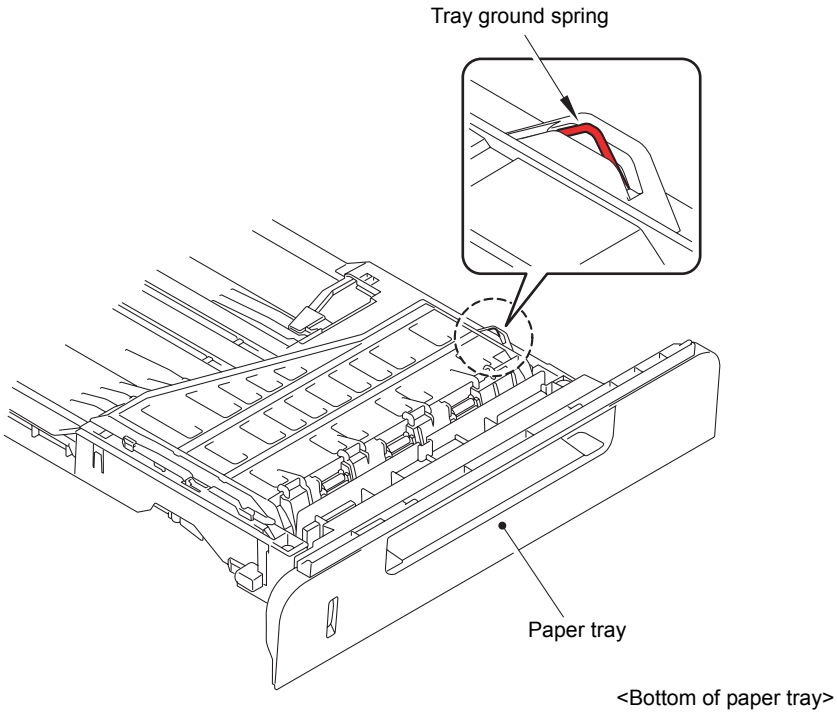
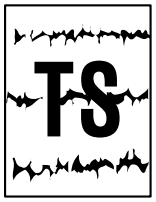


Fig. 2-17

■ Horizontal stripes

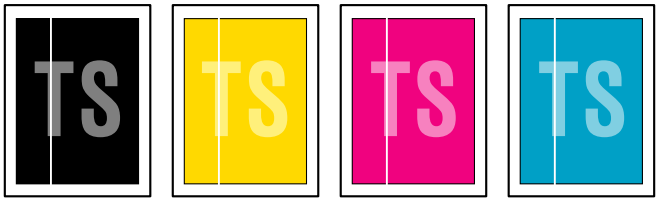


<User Check>

- Clean the inside of the machine and the corona wire in the drum unit.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt on charged electrode	Clean the electrodes of the drum unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	Bend of tray ground spring	Replace the paper tray. (Refer to Fig. 2-17 (P2-117))
3	Toner attached on the develop roller	This problem will disappear by printing approximate 10 pages. If the same problem occurs, replace the toner cartridge.
4	Scratch on the heat roller	Replace the fuser unit.
5	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

■ White vertical streaks on one color image

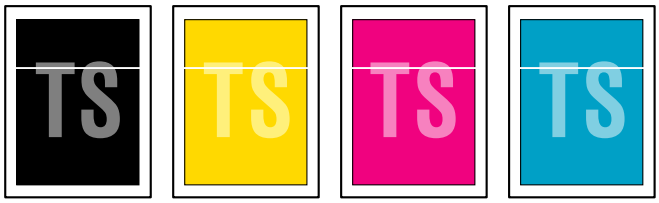


<User Check>

- Check if there is no dust in the gap between the toner cartridge and drum frame.
- Wipe the scanner windows of the laser unit with a soft, lint-free cloth. (Refer to Fig. 2-16 (P2-111))
- Refer to the User's guide and remove the dirt on the exposure drum using a cotton swab.
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
- Check the machine's environment. High temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity conditions can cause this problem.
- Damp (wet) paper might be used. Try to change to freshly unpacked paper.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Condensation	Try to print several pages or leave the machine 2 hours to allow it to reach room temperature.
2	Exposure drum dirty	Refer to "2.5 Drum Cleaning" in Chapter 5 and perform drum cleaning.
3	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.

■ White horizontal stripes on one color image



<User Check>

- The problem may disappear by itself. Try printing multiple pages to clear this problem especially if the machine has not been used for a long time.
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
- The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.

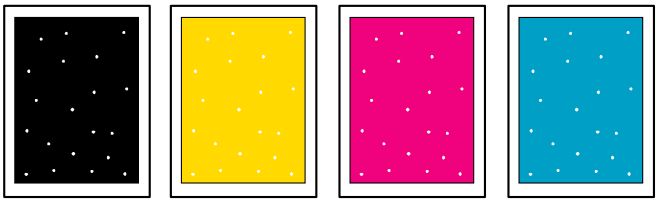
■ Faint print

<User Check>

- Open and close the front cover and make print again.
- Check that the machine is installed on a level surface.
- Wipe the scanner windows of the laser unit with a soft, lint-free cloth. (Refer to Fig. 2-16 (P2-111))
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
2	Toner/New sensor PCB failure	Replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.

■ White spots on one color image



<User Check>

- Toner may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
- Refer to the User's guide and remove the dirt on the exposure drum using a cotton swab.
- The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new one.
- The belt unit may be damaged. Replace the belt unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt on the pinch roller of the paper tray	Refer to the figure below and clean the pinch roller.
2	Exposure drum dirty	Refer to "2.5 Drum Cleaning" in Chapter 5 and perform drum cleaning.
3	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
4	Toner/New sensor PCB failure	Replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.

■ Pinch roller cleaning procedure

Pull out both sides of the pinch roller cover from the ribs to remove the pinch roller cover.
Clean the pinch roller with a brush as rotating the pinch roller in the arrow direction with your fingers.
Remove paper dust accumulated in the paper tray by turning over the paper tray.

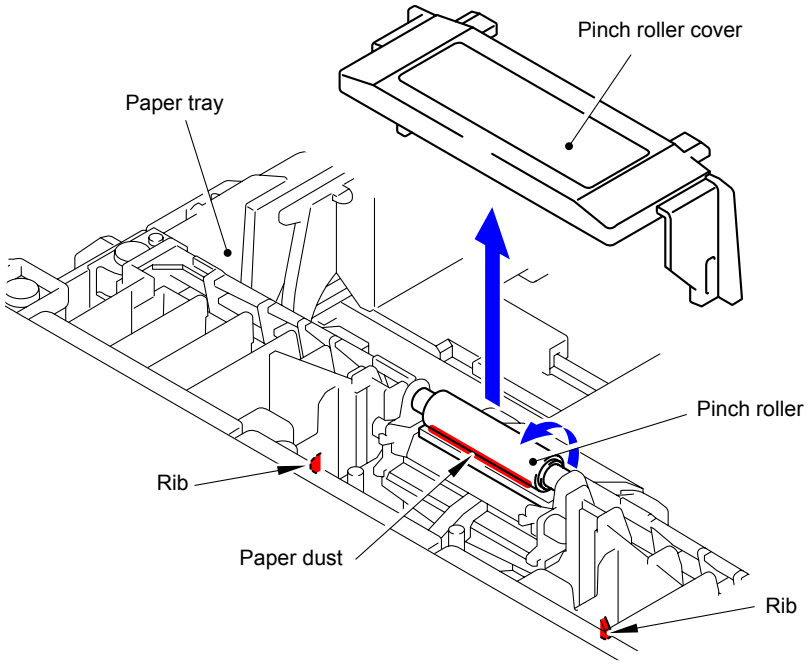
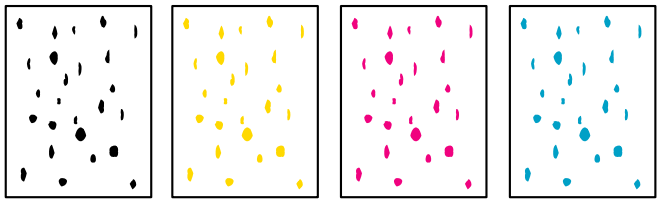


Fig. 2-18

■ One color spots or dirt

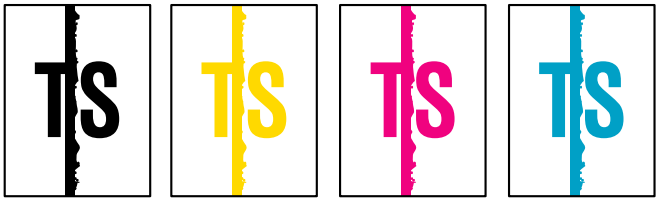


<User Check>

- Damp (wet) paper might be used. Try to changing to freshly unopened paper.
- Toner may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
- Refer to the User's guide and remove the dirt on the exposure drum using a cotton swab.
- The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new one.
- The belt unit may be damaged. Replace the belt unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt on the pinch roller of the paper tray	Refer to Fig. 2-18 (P2-120) and clean the pinch roller.
2	Exposure drum dirty	Refer to "2.5 Drum Cleaning" in Chapter 5 and perform drum cleaning.
3	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.
4	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Toner/New sensor PCB failure	Replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.

■ One color band



<User Check>

- Clean the inside of the machine and the corona wire in the drum unit. If the same problem occurs after cleaning, replace the drum unit with a new one.
- Refer to the User's guide and remove the dirt on the exposure drum using a cotton swab.
- The paper tray ground terminal provided in the machine body may be dirty. Clean the contact with a dry cloth.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Exposure drum dirty	Refer to "2.5 Drum Cleaning" in Chapter 5 and perform drum cleaning.

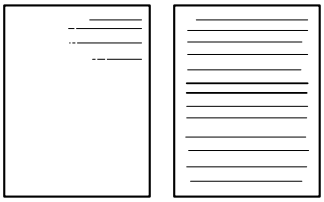
■ Downward fogging of solid color

<User Check>

- Toner may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
2	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Horizontal lines

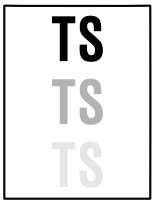


<User Check>

- The paper tray ground terminal provided in the machine body may be dirty. Clean the contact with a dry cloth.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt on charged electrode	Clean the electrodes of the drum unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	Paper tray ground terminal provided in machine body	Correct bending of paper tray ground terminal.
3	Toner attached on the exposure drum	This symptom might disappear after making approximate 10 prints.
4	Scratch on the heat roller	Replace the fuser unit.
5	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

■ Ghost



<User Check>

- Check the machine's environment, conditions such as high humidity may cause this situation to occur.
- Check that the appropriate media type is selected in the printer driver.
- Make a print in the color mode.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Erase lamp lens dirty	Clean the erase lamp lens. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

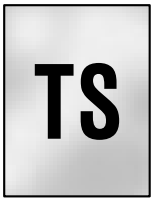
■ Inter-color position alignment

<User Check>

- Implement the adjustment of inter-color position alignment from the control panel.
- Replace the belt unit with a new one.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Phase displacement of drum gear	Align the drum phase. (Refer to "6. IF YOU REPLACE THE DRUM DRIVE MOTOR" in Chapter 4.)
2	Registration mark sensor PCB failure	Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Fogging



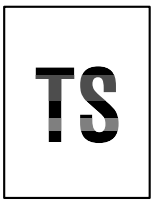
<User Check>

- Do not use acid paper.
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.
- Check the machine's environment. (If the machine is used in the high humidity environment, this symptom is likely to occur.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Toner/New sensor PCB failure	Replace the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY.
2	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.

Note:
This problem often occurs when the drum unit or toner cartridge is nearly at the end of life.

■ Unstable color density

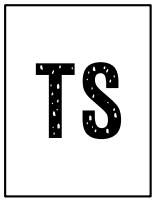


<User Check>

- Make a print on a different type of paper.
- Replace the belt unit with a new one.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.
- Replace the waste toner box with a new one.
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt on drum unit electrode	Clean the electrodes of the drum unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
2	Dirt on toner cartridge electrode	Clean the electrodes of the toner cartridge and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-10 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
3	Dirt on belt unit electrode	Clean the electrodes of the belt unit and main body. (Refer to Fig. 2-11 (P2-62) and Fig. 2-13 (P2-63))
4	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
5	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
6	Laser unit failure	Replace the laser unit.
7	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Hollow print



<User Check>

- Select “Improve Toner Fixing” in the printer driver, or select “Thicker Paper” in Paper Type.
- Check the machine’s environment, conditions such as high humidity and low humidity may cause this situation to occur.
- Make a print on a different type of paper.
- Refer to the User’s guide and remove the dirt on the exposure drum using a cotton swab.
- Replace the drum unit with a new one.
- Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Dirt on the pinch roller of the paper tray	Refer to Fig. 2-18 (P2-120) and clean the pinch roller.
2	Exposure drum dirty	Refer to "2.5 Drum Cleaning" in Chapter 5 and perform drum cleaning.
3	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.

■ Print crease

<User Check>

- Change the paper to thick paper.
- Check if paper is not damp.
- Switch the envelope levers.
- Make prints as lowering the envelope levers while the PR arm covers is drawn out. (Refer to the figure below.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	The pressure of the pressure roller is high	Change the position of the PR arm covers. (Refer to the figure below.)
2	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.

■ Spots at the rear edge of paper

<User Check>

- Check the machine's environment. (If the machine is used in the high humidity environment, this symptom is likely to occur.)
- Make prints as lowering the envelope levers while the PR arm covers is drawn out. (Refer to the figure below.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	The pressure of the pressure roller is high	Change the position of the PR arm covers. (Refer to the figure below.)
2	Fuser unit failure	Replace the fuser unit.

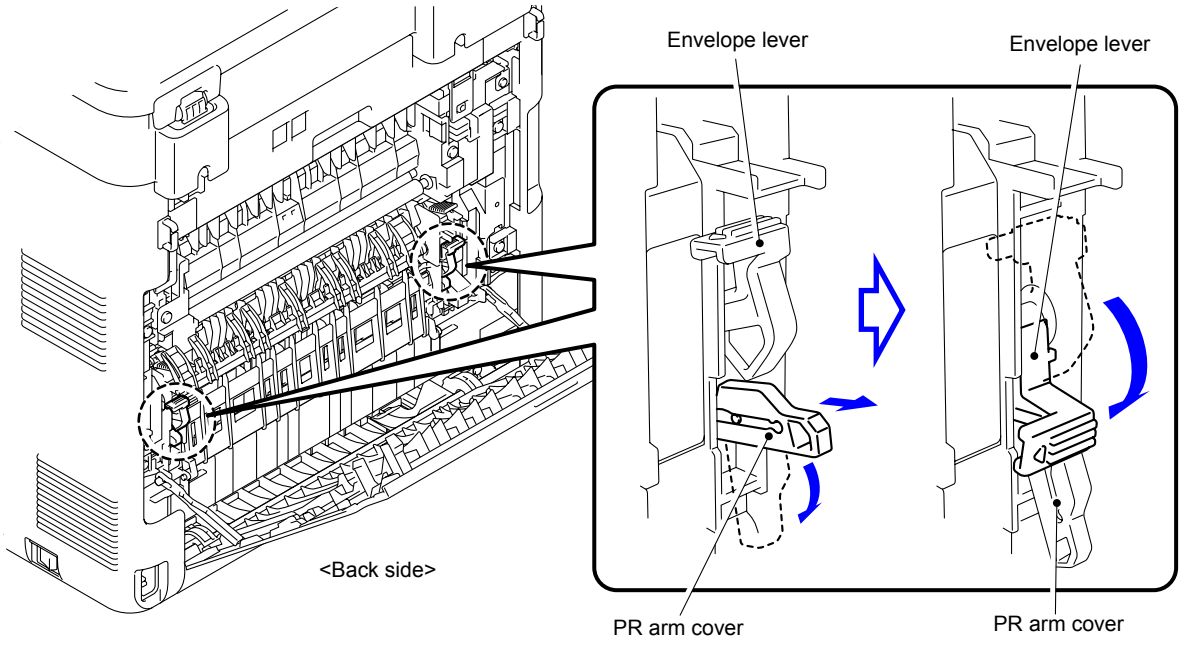


Fig. 2-19

3.7 Software Setting Problems

The end user can solve problems pertaining to software, for instance, print cannot be made from a computer although test print and machine setting print can be made from the machine, by following the User Check items. If the same problem occurs, follow each procedure in the order of the number described in the Step column in the tables below.

3.7.1 Cannot print data

<User Check>

- Check that the USB cable or LAN cable is not damaged.
- Check that the correct machine is selected if you have an interface switching device.
- Check the descriptions on the software setting in the user's guide.
- Restore the settings at factory shipment. (Refer to User's guide.)
- Check the driver setting.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.8 Network Problems

3.8.1 Cannot make a print through network connection (Error code ED, EE)

<User Check>

- Check the descriptions in the network user's guide.
- Restore the settings at factory shipment. (Refer to User's guide.)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of wireless LAN PCB	Check the harness connection of the wireless LAN PCB and reconnect it.
2	Wireless LAN PCB failure	Replace the wireless LAN PCB.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.9 Document Feeding Problems

3.9.1 No feeding

<User Check>

- Check if the document is inserted correctly to the depths.
- Check if the number of the documents complies with the specifications in the specification list. Legal model: 50 sheets or less; A4 model: 35 sheets or less
- Check if the ADF cover is closed.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Document front actuator catching on some position	Correct the position of the document front actuator.
2	ADF open actuator catching on some position	Correct the position of the ADF open actuator.
3	Harness connection failure of ADF motor	Check the harness connection of the ADF motor and reconnect it.
4	Document front sensor or ADF open sensor malfunstion	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in "Function code 32". If any problem occurs, replace the document front/ADF open sensor PCB ASSY.
5	Separate roller failure	Replace the separate roller ASSY.
6	ADF motor failure	Replace the ADF motor.
7	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.9.2 Double feeding

<User Check>

- Check whether the document does not use the paper which is thinner than the specification.
- Fan out the documents so that they will not stick together, and then reload them in the ADF.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Separation rubber worn out	Replace the separation rubber holder ASSY.

3.9.3 Paper jam

■ Paper jam in the ADF cover (Error code A3, etc)

<User Check>

- Check whether the document does not use the paper which is thinner than the specification.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object inside the area around ADF cover	Remove foreign objects inside the area around the ADF cover, if any.
2	Harness connection failure of document first side rear sensor	Check the harness connection of the document first side rear sensor and reconnect it.
3	Harness connection failure of document second side rear sensor	Check the harness connection of the document second side rear sensor and reconnect it.
4	Document first side rear sensor malfunstion	Replace the document first side rear sensor PCB ASSY.
5	Document second side rear sensor malfunstion	Replace the document second side rear sensor PCB ASSY.
6	Breakage of the drive gear	Replace the drive frame ASSY.

■ Paper jam in the ADF (Error code A2, etc)

<User Check>

- Check whether length does not use paper equal to or less than 147.3 mm.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object inside ADF	Remove foreign objects inside the ADF, if any.
2	Document first side rear actuator catching on some position	Correct catching of the document first side rear actuator.
3	Document second side rear actuator catching on some position	Correct catching of the document second side rear actuator.
4	Document first side rear sensor malfunstion	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in “Function code 32”. If any problem occurs, replace the document first side rear sensor PCB ASSY.
5	Document second side rear sensor malfunstion	Check the sensor performance following the procedure described in “Function code 32”. If any problem occurs, replace the document second side rear sensor PCB ASSY.
6	Document feed roller failure	Replece the document feed roller.
7	Breakage of the drive gear	Replece the drive frame ASSY.

■ **Paper jam in the paper eject section**

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Foreign object around paper eject	Remove foreign objects around the paper eject, if any.
2	Breakage of the drive gear	Replece the drive frame ASSY.
3	Eject roller failure	Replece the ADF unit.

3.9.4 Wrinkles

<User Check>

- Check if the document is loaded into the ADF correctly.
- Check whether the document guide matches the document size.
- Check whether the document does not curl.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Separate roller worn out	Replece the separate roller ASSY.
2	Document feed roller failure	Replece the document feed roller ASSY.

3.10 Scanning Image Defect Troubleshooting

3.10.1 Image defect examples

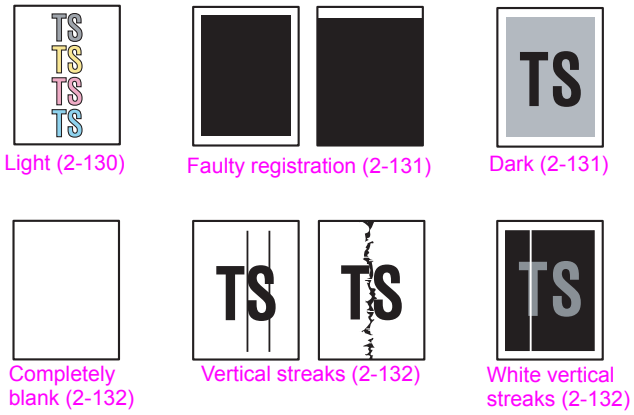
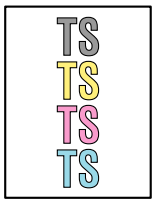


Fig. 2-20

3.10.2 Troubleshooting image defect

■ Light on the page (Error code BB, BC, etc)

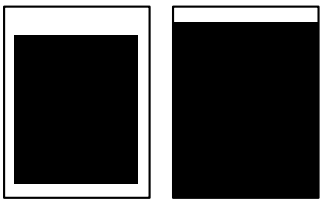


<User Check>

- Check whether the setting of the contrast does not become light.
- Clean the document table glass or ADF glass.
- Clean the CIS glass of the ADF.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	White level data malfunction	Perform the acquisition of white level data. (Function code 55)
2	Document scanner unit (First side) failure	Replace the document scanner unit (First side).
3	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Faulty registration (Error code B3, B4, BE, BF, etc)



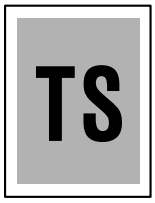
- ADF

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fine adjustment of scan start position misalignment	Perform the fine adjustment of scan start position. (Function code 54)
2	Document first side rear actuator catching on some position	Correct catching of the document first side rear actuator.
3	Document second side rear actuator catching on some position	Correct catching of the document second side rear actuator.
4	Fine adjustment of print start position misalignment	Perform the fine adjustment of print start position. (Function code 45) (Adjustment upon second side print only.)

- Document table

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fine adjustment of scan start position misalignment	Perform the fine adjustment of scan start position. (Function code 54)
2	Document scanner unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.

■ Dark (Error code BB, BC, etc)

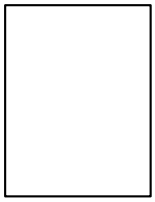


<User Check>

- Check whether the setting of the contrast does not become dark.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Coming off of the shading film in the ADF unit	Re-assemble the shading film in the ADF unit.
2	White level data malfunction	Perform the acquisition of white level data. (Function code 55)
3	CIS unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
4	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Completely blank

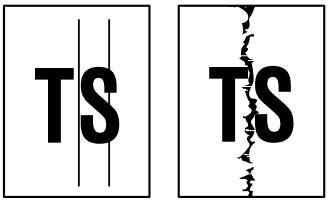


<User Check>

- Check if the first side and second side of the document are reversed.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	CIS unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
2	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

■ Vertical streaks

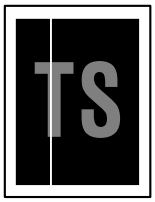


<User Check>

- Check if the ADF glass or document glass is not stained.
- Clean the CIS glass of the ADF.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	CIS unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
2	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.

■ White vertical streaks



<User Check>

- Check if the ADF glass or document glass is not stained.
- Clean the CIS glass of the ADF.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	CIS unit failure	Replace the document scanner unit.
2	Second side scanning CIS failure	Replace the upper document chute ASSY.

3.11 Troubleshooting of the Control Panel

3.11.1 Nothing is displayed on the LCD

<User Check>

- Verify if the power switch is turned off.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	AC cord failure	Replace the AC cord.
2	Connection between main PCB and panel PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and panel PCB ASSY correctly.
3	Connection between main PCB and low-voltage power supply PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY correctly.
4	Power switch holder failure	Replace the power switch holder.
5	LCD or LCD unit failure	Replace the LCD or LCD unit.
6	Panel PCB failure	Replace the panel PCB ASSY.
7	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
8	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
9	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.11.2 The control panel does not work

<User Check>

- Check whether the function lock is not set.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Key sticking	Re-assemble the panel unit.
2	Connection between main PCB and panel PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and panel PCB ASSY correctly.
3	Fine adjustment of touch panel misalignment (for models with a touch panel)	Perform the fine adjustment of touch panel. (Function code 61)
4	Panel PCB failure	Replace the panel PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.11.3 Lamp malfunction

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Key sticking	Re-assemble the panel unit.
2	Connection between main PCB and panel PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and panel PCB ASSY correctly.
3	Fine adjustment of touch panel misalignment (for models with a touch panel)	Perform the fine adjustment of touch panel. (Function code 61)
4	Rubber key failure	Replace the rubber key.
5	Panel PCB failure	Replace the panel PCB ASSY.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.11.4 The touch panel does not work (Touch panel model only)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Fine adjustment of touch panel misalignment (for models with a touch panel)	Perform the fine adjustment of touch panel. (Function code 61)
2	Harness connection failure of touch panel	Check the harness connection of the touch panel and reconnect it.
3	Touch panel failure	Replace the LCD unit.
4	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.12 Troubleshooting of FAX Functions

3.12.1 FAX can't send it

<User Check>

- Verify that the telephone cord is securely inserted into the right socket.
- Check the dial mode setting again.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Connection between main PCB and NCU PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and NCU PCB ASSY correctly.
2	Connection between main PCB and panel PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and panel PCB ASSY correctly.
3	Rubber key connection failure	Replace the rubber key.
4	NCU PCB failure	Replace the NCU PCB ASSY.
5	Panel PCB failure	Replace the panel PCB ASSY.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.12.2 Speed dialing and One-touch dialing can't be used

<User Check>

- Verify that the telephone cord is securely inserted into the right socket.
- Check the dial mode setting again.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Connection between main PCB and NCU PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and NCU PCB ASSY correctly.
2	Connection between main PCB and panel PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and panel PCB ASSY correctly.
3	Rubber key connection failure	Replace the rubber key.
4	NCU PCB failure	Replace the NCU PCB ASSY.
5	Panel PCB failure	Replace the panel PCB ASSY.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.12.3 FAX cannot be transmitted and received.

<User Check>

- Verify that the telephone cord is securely inserted into the right socket.
- Check the dial mode setting again.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Connection between main PCB and NCU PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and NCU PCB ASSY correctly.
2	NCU PCB failure	Replace the NCU PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.12.4 No bell ring

<User Check>

- Set a value other than "0" to the number of bell rings.
- Set a value other than "OFF" to the bell volume.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of speaker	Check the harness connection of the speaker and reconnect it.
2	Connection between main PCB and NCU PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and NCU PCB ASSY correctly.
3	Speaker failure	Replace the speaker unit.
4	NCU PCB failure	Replace the NCU PCB ASSY.
5	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.12.5 Speaker is silent during On-hook dialing

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of speaker	Check the harness connection of the speaker and reconnect it.
2	Speaker failure	Replace the speaker unit.
3	Connection between main PCB and NCU PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and NCU PCB ASSY correctly.
4	Connection between main PCB and panel PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and panel PCB ASSY correctly.
5	NCU PCB failure	Replace the NCU PCB ASSY.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.12.6 Dialing function does not switch between “Tone” and “Pulse”

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Connection between main PCB and NCU PCB	Connect the connector between the main PCB ASSY and NCU PCB ASSY correctly.
2	NCU PCB failure	Replace the NCU PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.12.7 A communication error occurs

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	NCU PCB failure	Replace the NCU PCB ASSY.
2	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.12.8 Reception mode cannot be changed

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	The Distinctive ring mode is set to ON	Turn OFF the Distinctive ring mode.

3.12.9 Caller ID are not displayed

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.13 Others Problems

3.13.1 The machine is not turned ON, or the LCD indication does not appear

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	AC cord failure	Replace the AC cord.
2	Harness connection failure of panel PCB ASSY	Reconnect the panel PCB ASSY harness.
3	Harness connection failure of LCD	Reconnect the LCD harness.
4	LCD failure	Replace the LCD unit.
5	Power switch holder failure	Replace the power switch holder.
6	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
7	Panel PCB failure	Replace the panel PCB ASSY.
8	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
9	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
10	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.13.2 The fan does not work (Error code 2B, EC)

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of the appropriate fan	Reconnect the harness of the appropriate fan correctly.
2	Failure of the appropriate fan	Replace the appropriate fan.
3	Engine PCB failure	Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
4	High-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
5	Low-voltage power supply PCB failure	Replace the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
6	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.13.3 The USB direct interface does not work (Error code CA, etc)

<User Check>

- Check if the data is supported device.
- Replace the USB memory and check if the interface works.
- Turn OFF and ON the power.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Harness connection failure of USB host relay PCB	Check the harness connection of the USB host relay PCB ASSY and reconnect it.
2	USB host relay PCB failure	Replace the USB host relay PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.13.4 The room temperature is high or low

<User Check>

- Adjust the room temperature to 10 °C to 30 °C.
- Check if the exhaust opening is blocked.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Internal temperature thermistor failure	Replace the Internal temperature thermistor.
2	External temperature/ humidity sensor failure	Replace the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
3	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

3.13.5 The specified tray is incorrect

<User Check>

- Specify the tray correctly.

Step	Cause	Remedy
1	Main PCB failure	Replace the main PCB ASSY.

CHAPTER 3
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

CHAPTER 3
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

This chapter describes procedures for disassembling and assembling the machine with relates notes. The provided disassembly order flow enables you to take in the quickest way to get an involved part at a glance.
At the start of disassembling, you can check the disassembly order flow which guides you through a shortcut to get to the part.
This chapter also covers screw tightening torques and lubrication points where the specified lubrication should be applied when the machine is assembled.

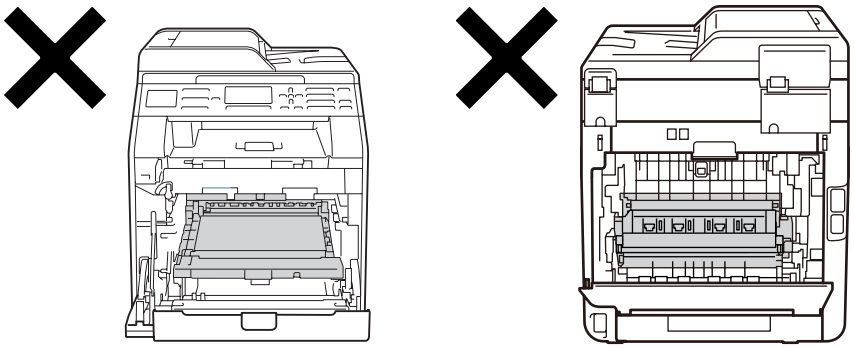
CONTENTS

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

To avoid creating secondary problems by mishandling, follow the warnings and precautions below during maintenance work.

WARNING

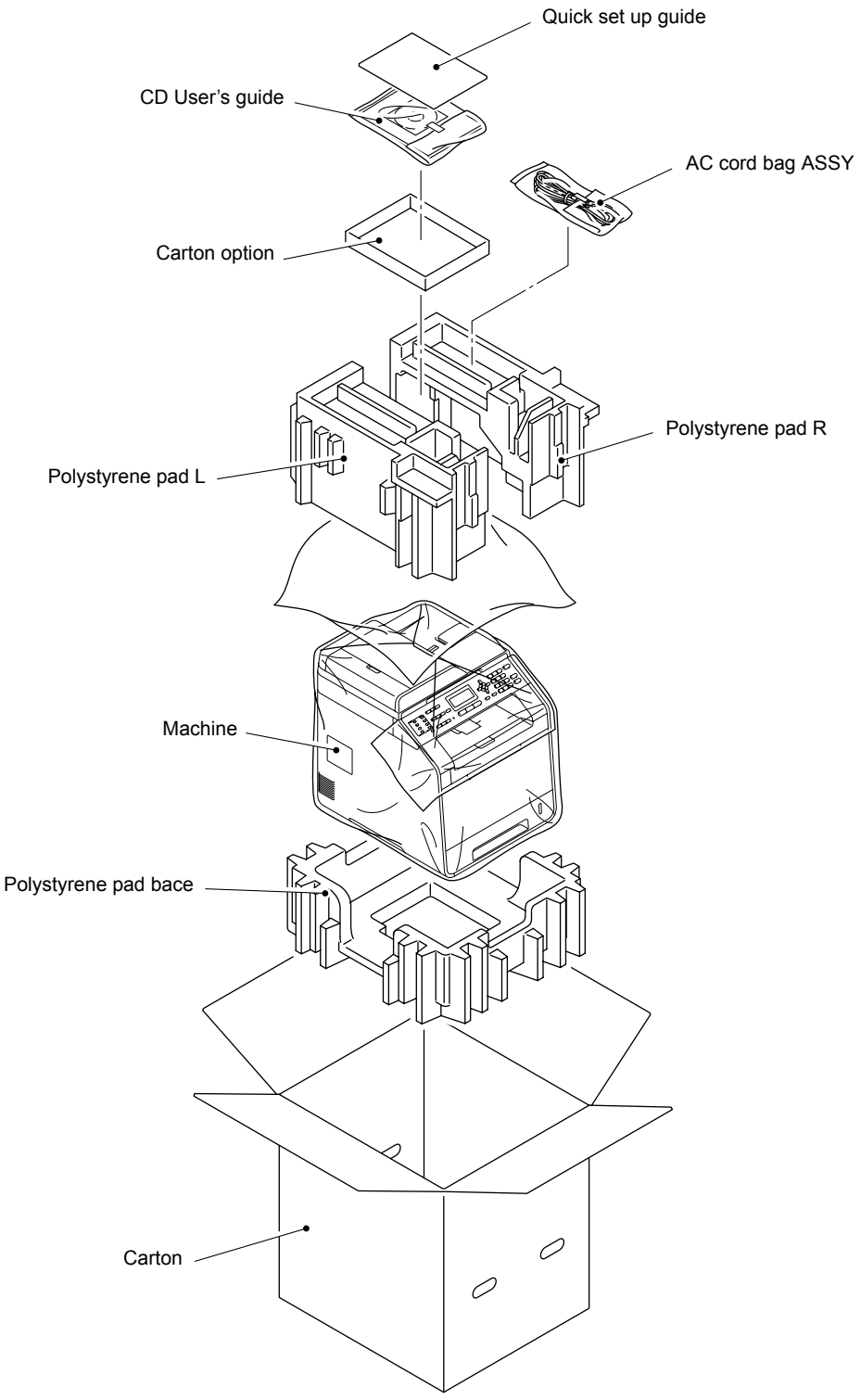
Some parts inside the machine are extremely hot immediately after the machine is used. When opening the front cover or back cover to access any parts inside the machine, never touch the shaded parts shown in the following figures.



Caution:

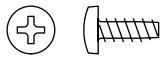
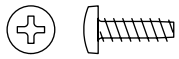
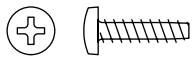
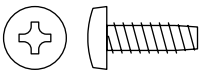
- Be careful not to lose screws, washers, or other parts removed.
- Be sure to apply grease to the gears and applicable positions specified in this chapter.
- When using soldering irons or other heat-generating tools, take care not to accidentally damage parts such as wires, PCBs and covers.
- Static electricity charged in your body may damage electronic parts. When transporting PCBs, be sure to wrap them in conductive sheets.
- When replacing the PCB and all the other related parts, put on a grounding wrist band and perform the job on a static mat. Also take care not to touch the conductor sections on the flat cables or on the wire harness.
- After disconnecting flat cables, check that each cable is not damaged at its end or shortcircuited.
- When connecting flat cables, do not insert them at an angle. After insertion, check that the cable are not at an angle.
- When connecting or disconnecting cable connectors, hold the connector body, not the cables. If the connector has a lock, release the connector lock first to release it.
- After a repair, check not only the repaired portion but also all connectors. Also check that other related portions are functioning properly before operational checks.
- Violently closing the top cover without mounting the toner cartridge and the drum unit can damage this product.

2. PACKING

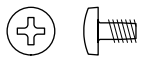
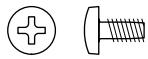


3. SCREW CATALOGUE

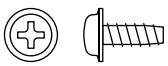
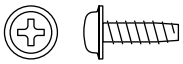
Taptite bind B

Taptite bind B M3x8	
Taptite bind B M3x10	
Taptite bind B M3x12	
Taptite bind B M4x12	

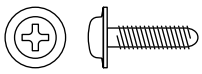
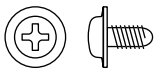
Taptite bind S

Taptite bind S M3x5	
Taptite bind S M3x6	

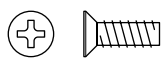
Taptite cup B

Taptite cup B M3x8	
Taptite cup B M3x10	

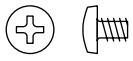
Taptite cup S

Taptite cup S M3x12	
Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	

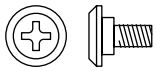
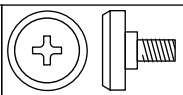
Taptite flat B

Taptite flat B M3x10	

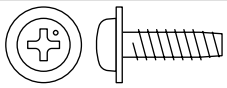
Screw bind

Screw bind M3x4	

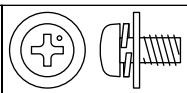
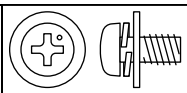
Shoulder screw

Shoulder screw	
Shoulder screw M3	

Taptite pan

Taptite pan B M4x14	

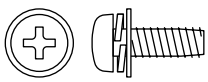
Screw pan (S/P washer)

Screw pan (S/P washer) M3.5x6	
Screw pan (S/P washer) M4x8	
Screw pan (S/P washer) M4x8 DB	

Taptite pan (S/P W)

Taptite pan (S/P W) B M3x10	

Taptite pan (washer)

Taptite pan (washer) B M4x12 DA	

4. SCREW TORQUE LIST

Note:
For verifying the shape of each screw, refer to "3. SCREW CATALOGUE" in this chapter.

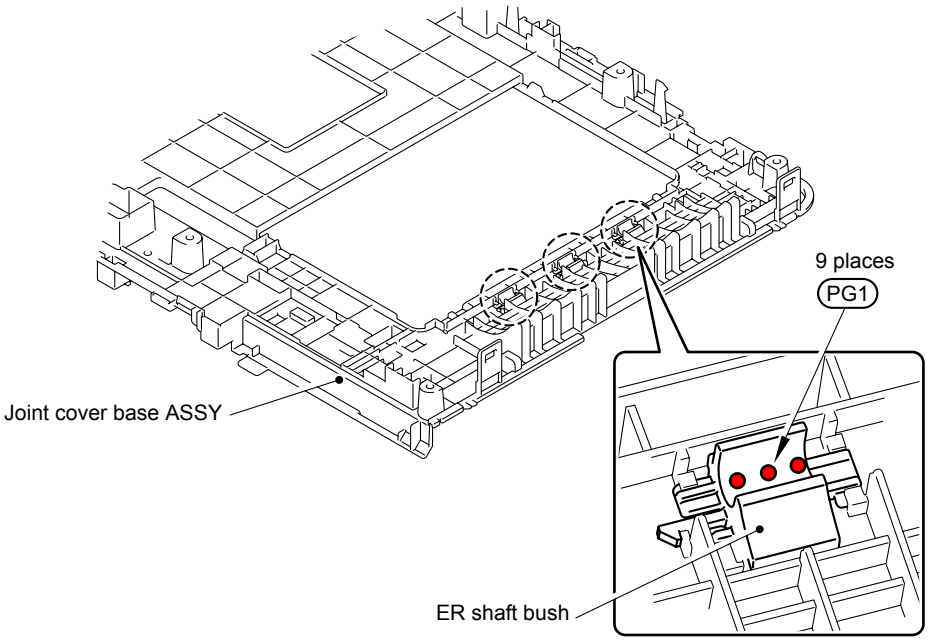
Location of screw	Screw type	Q' ty	Tightening torque N²m(kgf²cm)
Fuser cover L	Taptite bind S M3x8	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Fuser cover R	Taptite bind S M3x8	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Fuser unit	Taptite pan B M4x14	2	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
Side cover L	Taptite bind S M3x8	3	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
	Taptite bind B M4x12	1	0.90±0.10 (9±1)
Side cover R ASSY	Taptite bind S M3x8	3	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
	Taptite bind B M4x12	1	0.90±0.10 (9±1)
Duplex feed ASSY	Taptite bind B M3x12	2	0.40±0.05 (4±0.5)
Front cover arm L	Taptite bind B M4x12	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Front cover arm R	Taptite bind B M4x12	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Main shield cover plate ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	7	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
FB FG harness ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
ADF FG harness ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Scanner unit	Taptite bind B M4x12	2	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
Hinge ASSY L	Taptite cup S M3x12	3	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
Hinge R	Taptite cup B M3x10	1	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
Hinge arm R	Taptite cup B M3x10	3	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
Upper document chute ASSY	Taptite cup B M3x10	6	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
Lower chute ASSY	Taptite cup B M3x10	6	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
	Taptite cup S M3x6	1	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
ADF motor	Screw pan (S/P washer) M3x6	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Grip cover	Taptite cup B M3x10	2	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
Panel unit generic	Taptite cup B M3x10	4	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
Joint cover top	Taptite bind B M4x12	8	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
NCU FG harness ASSY	Screw pan (S/P washer) M3.5x6	1	0.40±0.05 (4±0.5)
NCU unit	Taptite bind B M4x12	2	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
NCU shield cover	Screw pan (S/P washer) M3.5x6	1	0.40±0.05 (4±0.5)
NCU PCB ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	2	0.50±0.05 (5±0.5)
Back cover upper	Taptite bind B M4x12	4	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
Joint cover	Taptite bind B M4x12	1	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
USB host relay PCB ASSY	Taptite bind B M4x12	2	0.60±0.05 (6±0.5)
Joint cover base ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x8	7	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
	Taptite bind B M4x12	2	0.80±0.10 (8±1)

Location of screw	Screw type	Q' ty	Tightening torque N²m(kgf²cm)
Main PCB ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	4	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Engine PCB ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	3	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Main shield plate	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	3	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Top beam	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	2	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Scanner holder	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	5	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Develop release motor	Taptite bind S M3x6 SR	2	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Panel cable rack	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Grand plate	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
	Taptite pan (washer) B M4x12DA	1	0.50±0.05 (5±0.5)
Top drive ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	9	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
	Taptite bind B M4x12	1	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
Drum drive motor	Screw bind M3x4	3	0.50±0.05 (5±0.5)
Registration solenoid ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Top drive cover	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	3	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Mono solenoid ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Fuser develop motor ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	4	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
PF plate ASSY	Taptite bind B M4x12	3	0.60±0.10 (6±1)
	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
PF cleaner drive ASSY	Taptite bind B M4x12	2	0.60±0.10 (6±1)
T1 solenoid ASSY	Taptite bind B M3x8	1	0.35±0.05 (3.5±0.5)
Paper eject ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	5	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
Paper eject motor	Taptite bind S M3x6	2	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
AC inlet	Taptite flat B M3x10	1	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
Low-voltage power supply unit	Screw pan (S/P washer) M4x8	2	0.90±0.10 (9±1)
	Taptite cup S M3x8	2	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
	Taptite cup B M3x12	2	0.40±0.05 (4±0.5)
	Taptite pan (washer) B M4x12DA	4	0.90±0.10 (9±1)
	Screw pan (S/P washer) M4x8	1	0.90±0.10 (9±1)
Low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY	Taptite bind B M3x8	4	0.35±0.05 (3.5±0.5)
Registration mark sensor holder ASSY	Taptite bind B M3x10	2	0.40±0.05 (4±0.5)
Shutter solenoid	Taptite bind B M3x10	1	0.55±0.05 (5.5±0.5)
MP upper cover ASSY	Taptite bind B M3x8	2	0.40±0.10 (4±1)
MP paper empty/registration front sensor PCB ASSY	Taptite bind B M3x8	1	0.40±0.10 (4±1)
PF ASSY	Taptite bind B M4x12	2	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
	Shoulder screw	1	0.70±0.10 (7±1)
T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB holder	Taptite bind B M3x10	1	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
MP sector solenoid	Taptite bind B M3x8	1	0.40±0.10 (4±1)

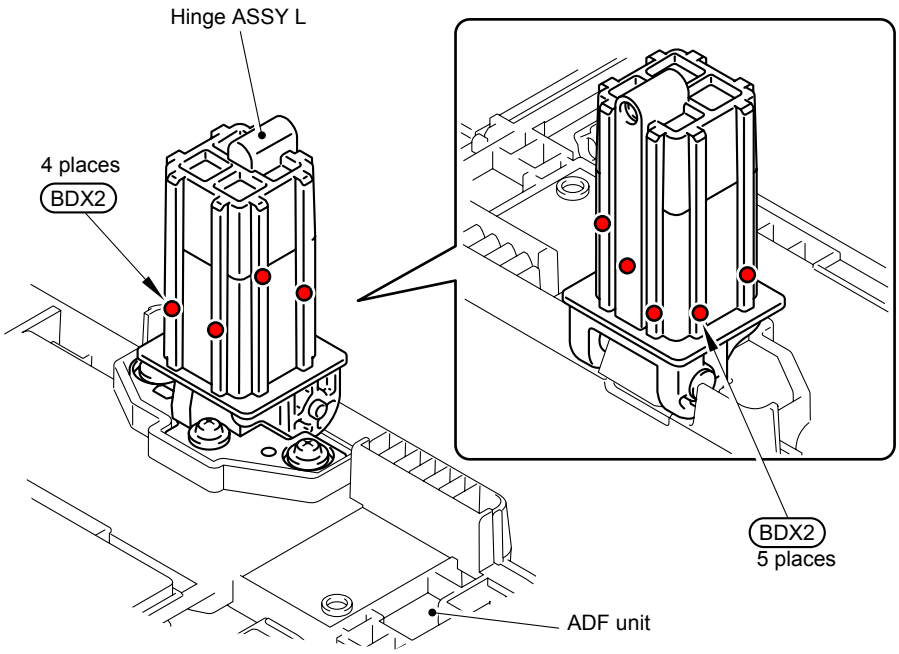
Location of screw	Screw type	Q' ty	Tightening torque N²m(kgf²cm)
MP drive frame	Taptite bind B M3x10	3	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
High-voltage power supply shield ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	2	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
T2 cover rear	Taptite cup S M3x10 SR	2	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
T2 cover left	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	2	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
T2 cover right	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	2	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
T2 relay PCB ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
T2 solenoid holder ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	1	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
T2 solenoid holder	Screw flanged M3x3.5	1	0.50±0.10 (5±1)
T2 beam F ASSY	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	5	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
T2 frame L unit	Taptite bind B M4x10	1	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
T2 beam front	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	2	0.80±0.10 (8±1)
T2 beam rear	Taptite cup S M3x6 SR	4	0.80±0.10 (8±1)

5. LUBRICATION

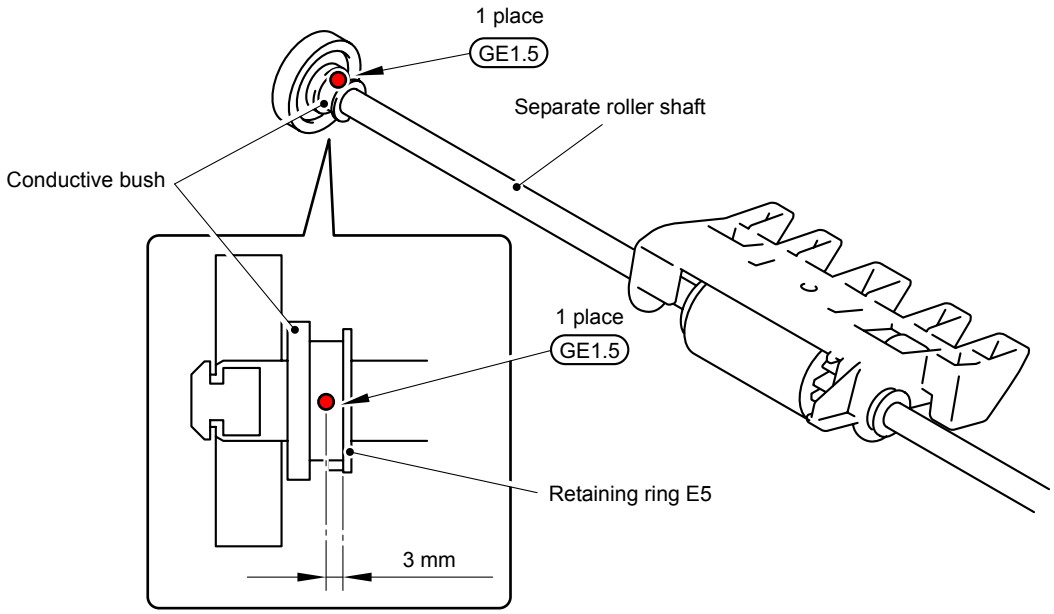
The kind of the lubricating oil (Maker name)	Lubrication point	Quantity of lubrication
MOLYKOTE PG-661 (W) (Dow Corning)	ER shaft bush	1 mm dia. ball (PG1)
BDX313 (A) (Kanto Kasei)	Hinge ASSY L	2 mm dia. ball (BDX2)
FLOIL GE-676 (Kanto Kasei)	Separate roller shaft	1.5 mm dia. ball (GE1.5)
	Document feed roller shaft	1.5 mm dia. ball (GE1.5)



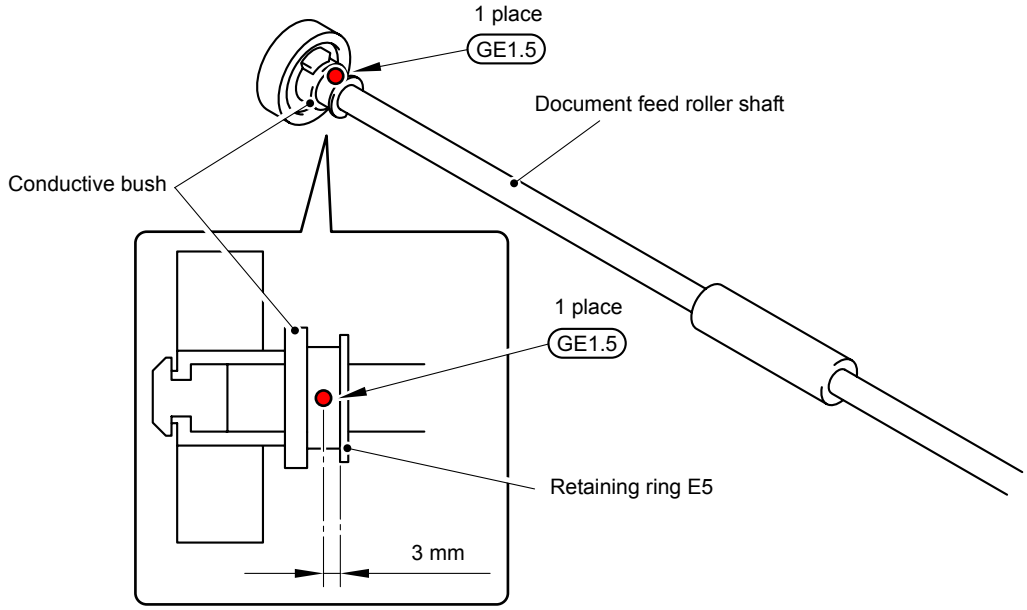
PG1: MOLYKOTE PG-661 (W) (1 mm dia. ball)



BDX2: BDX313 (A) (2 mm dia. ball)



GE1.5: FLOIL GE-676 (1.5 mm dia. ball)



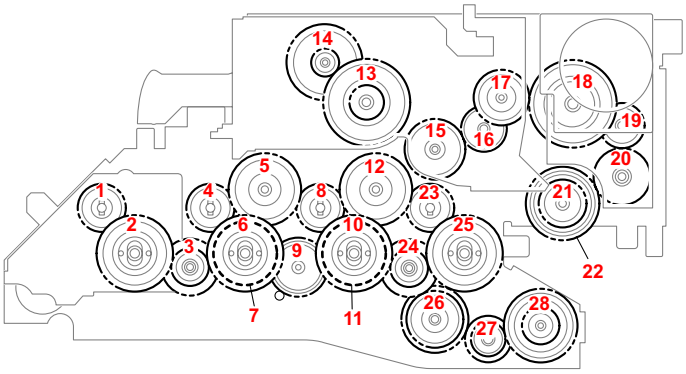
GE1.5: FLOIL GE-676 (1.5 mm dia. ball)

6. OVERVIEW OF GEARS

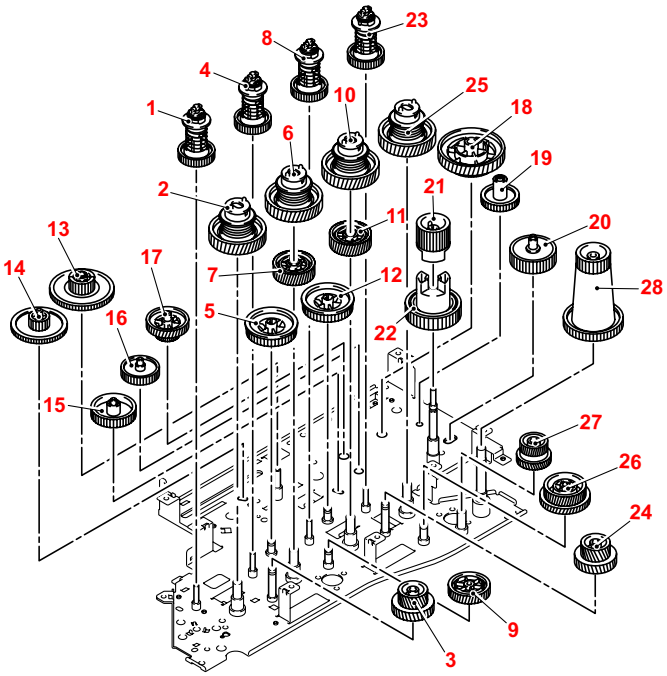
When ordering spare parts, please refer to Parts reference list.

■ Top drive ASSY

<Development view>



<Layout view>



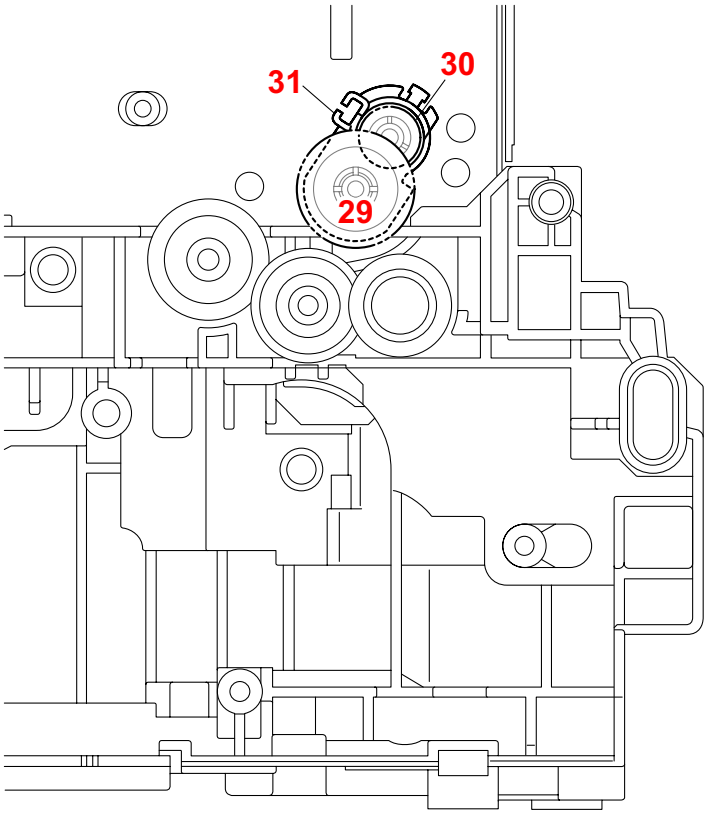
<Name of gears>

1	LY0192	Develop joint gear Z48	15	LY0213	Gear Z60
2	LY0196	Drum coupling gear Z52	16	LY0217	Gear Z50
3	LY0197	Drum double idle gear Z64-26	17	LY0214	Gear Z63-30
4	LY0192	Develop joint gear Z48	18	LY0231	Gear Z100-47
5	LY0194	Develop idle gear Z66	19	LY0212	Gear Z37
6	LY0196	Drum coupling gear Z52	20	LY0211	Gear Z45
7	LY0198	Drum idle gear Z64	21	LY0233	Fuser drive gear Z25
8	LY0192	Develop joint gear Z48	22	LY0216	Gear Z55
9	LY0199	Drum idle gear Z64 first	23	LY0192	Develop joint gear Z48
10	LY0196	Drum coupling gear Z52	24	LY0197	Drum double idle gear Z64-26
11	LY0198	Drum idle gear Z64	25	LY0196	Drum coupling gear Z52
12	LY0194	Develop joint gear Z48	26	LY0203	Belt idle gear Z64-75
13	LY0220	Gear Z54-18	27	LY0202	Belt idle gear Z52-40
14	LY0219	Gear Z90-18	28	LY0201	Belt drive gear 25-80

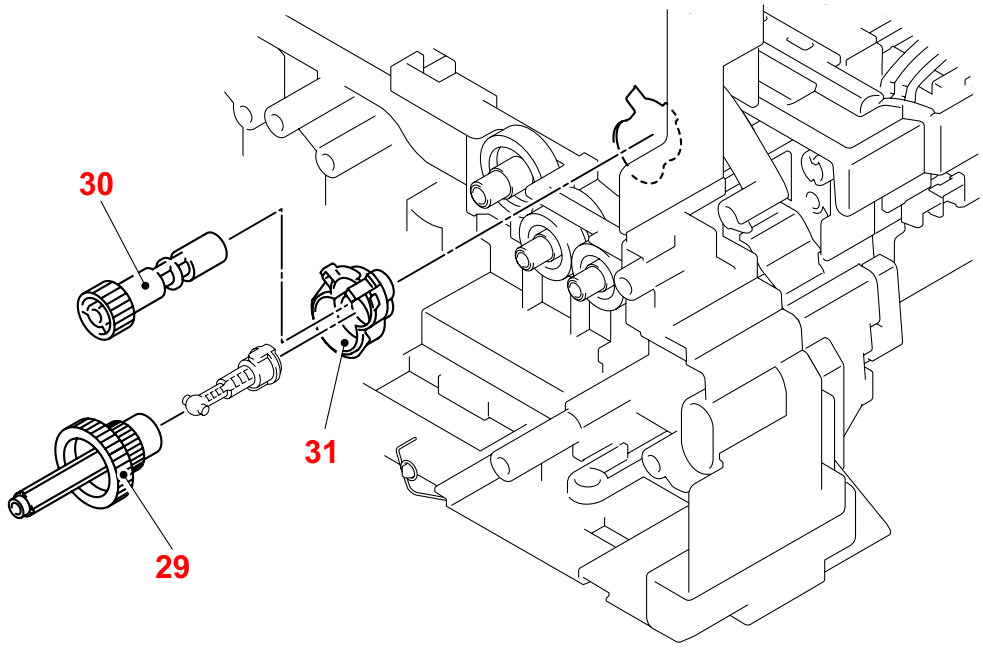
* These parts are subject to change without notice.

■ PF ASSY

<Development view>



<Layout view>



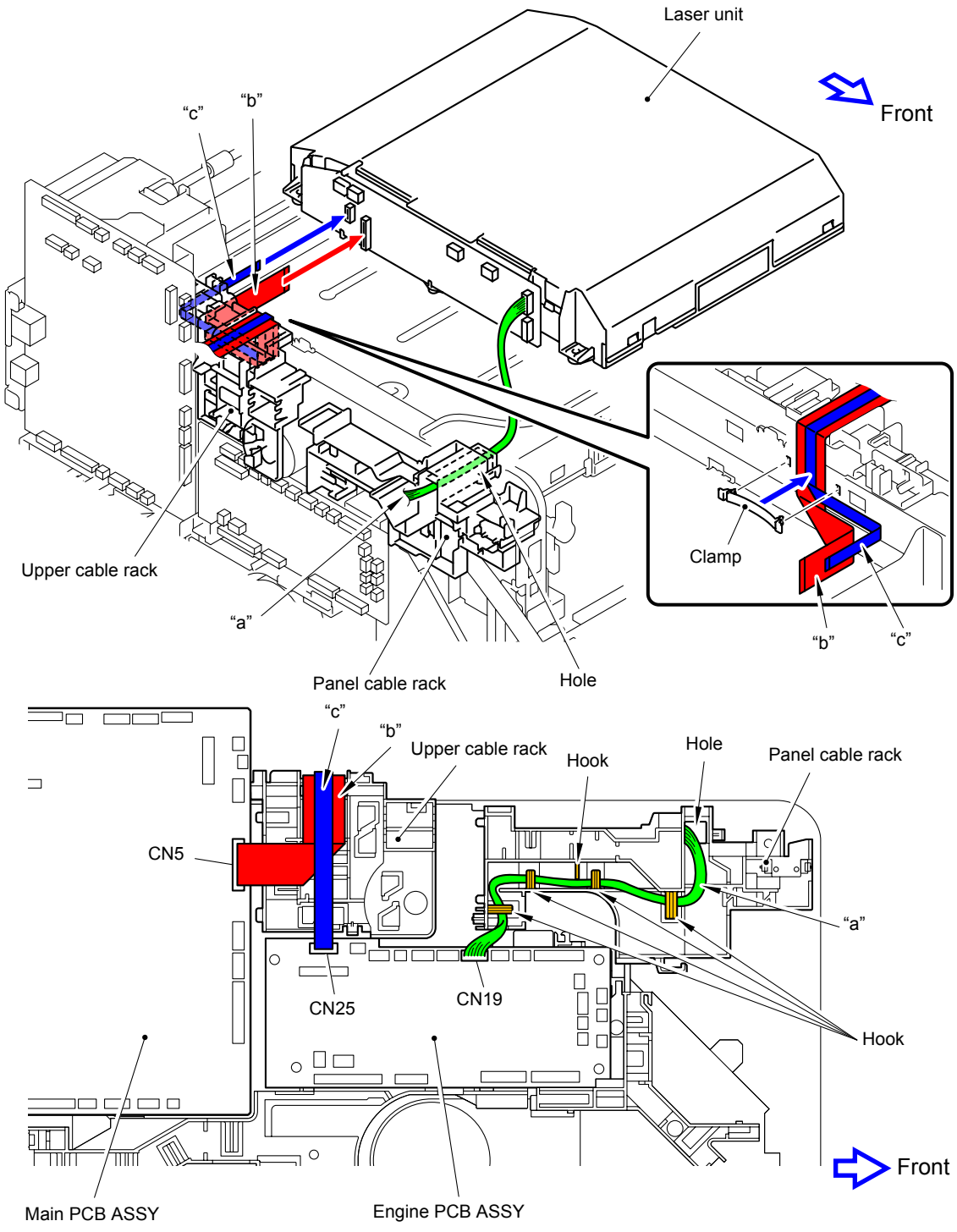
<Name of gears>

29	LU5132	Registration gear	31	LY0298	Registration/Pinch roller gear bush
30	LY0299	Pinch roller drive gear			

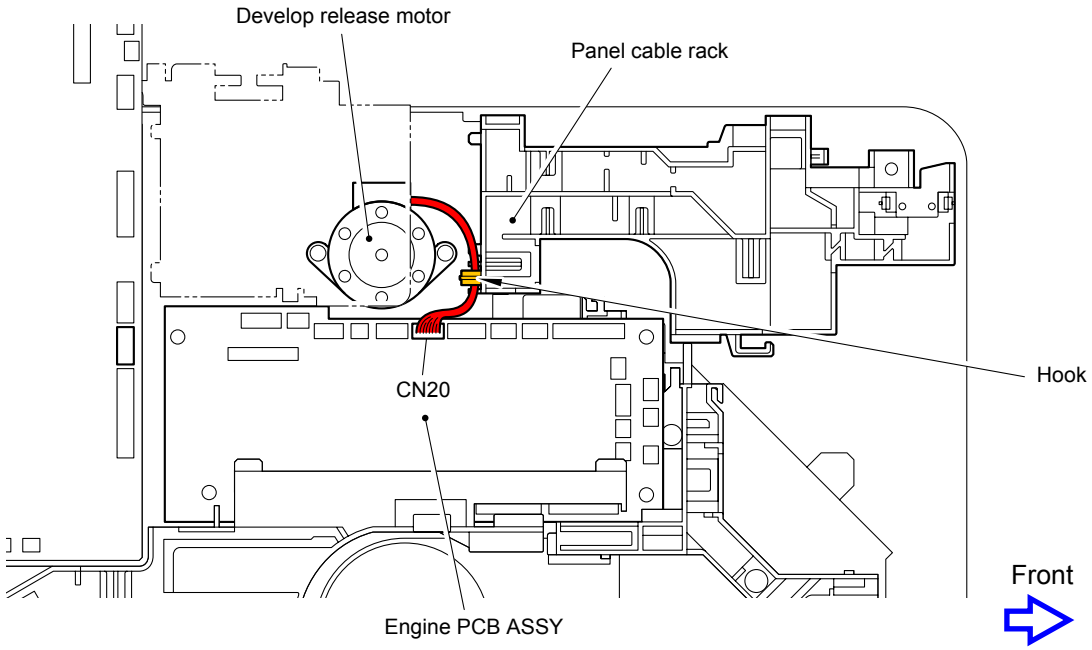
* These parts are subject to change without notice.

7. HARNESS ROUTING

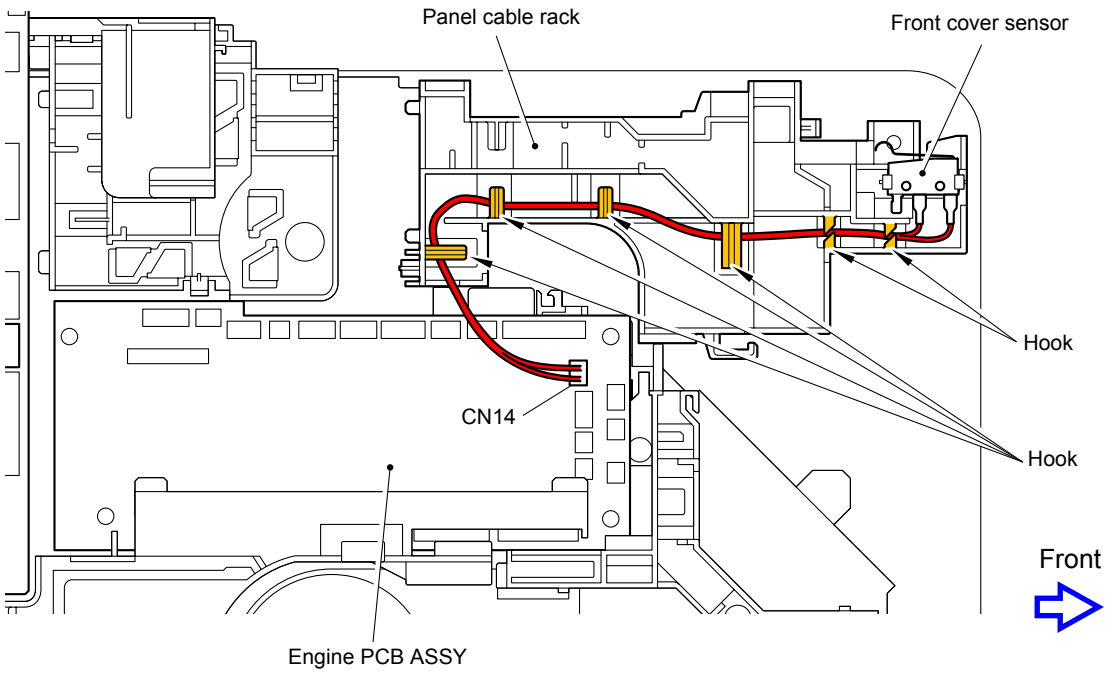
1 Laser Unit



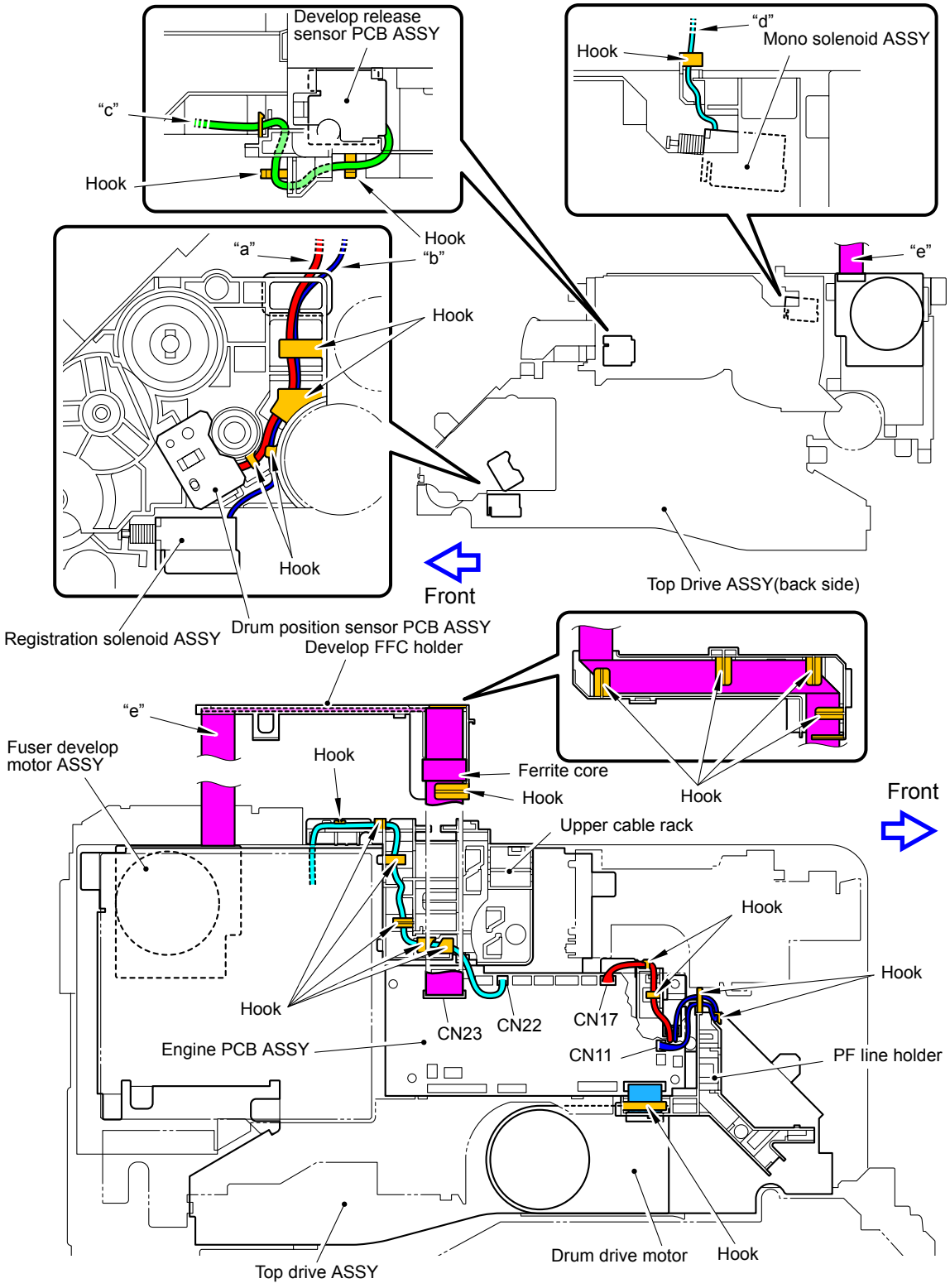
2 Develop Release Motor



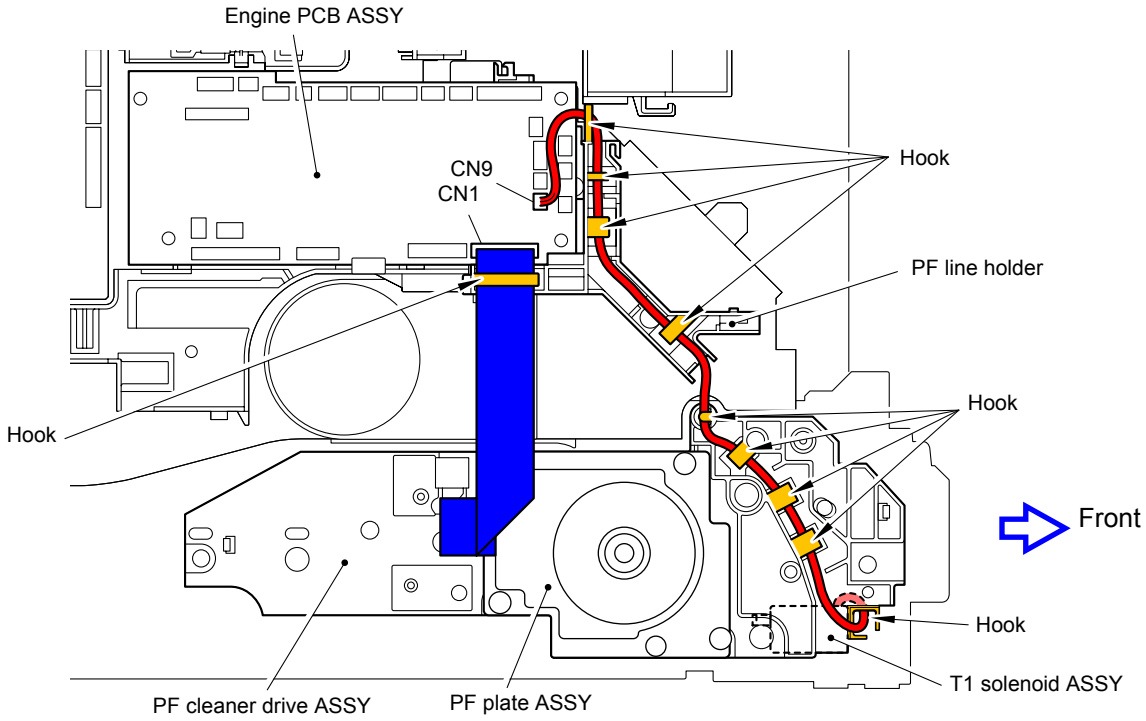
3 Front Cover Sensor



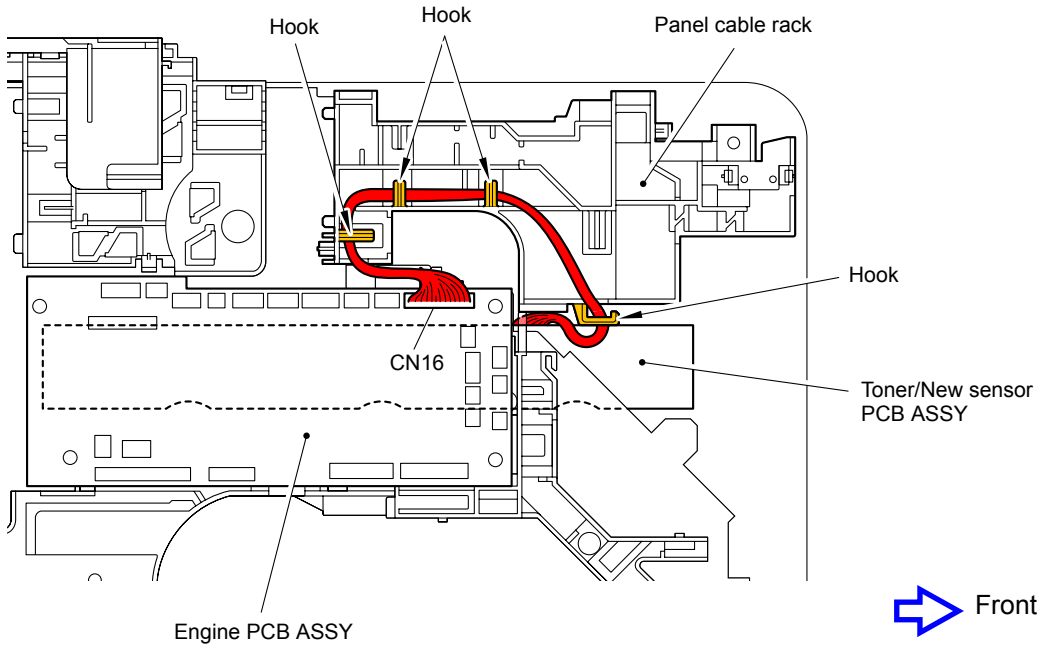
4 Top Drive ASSY



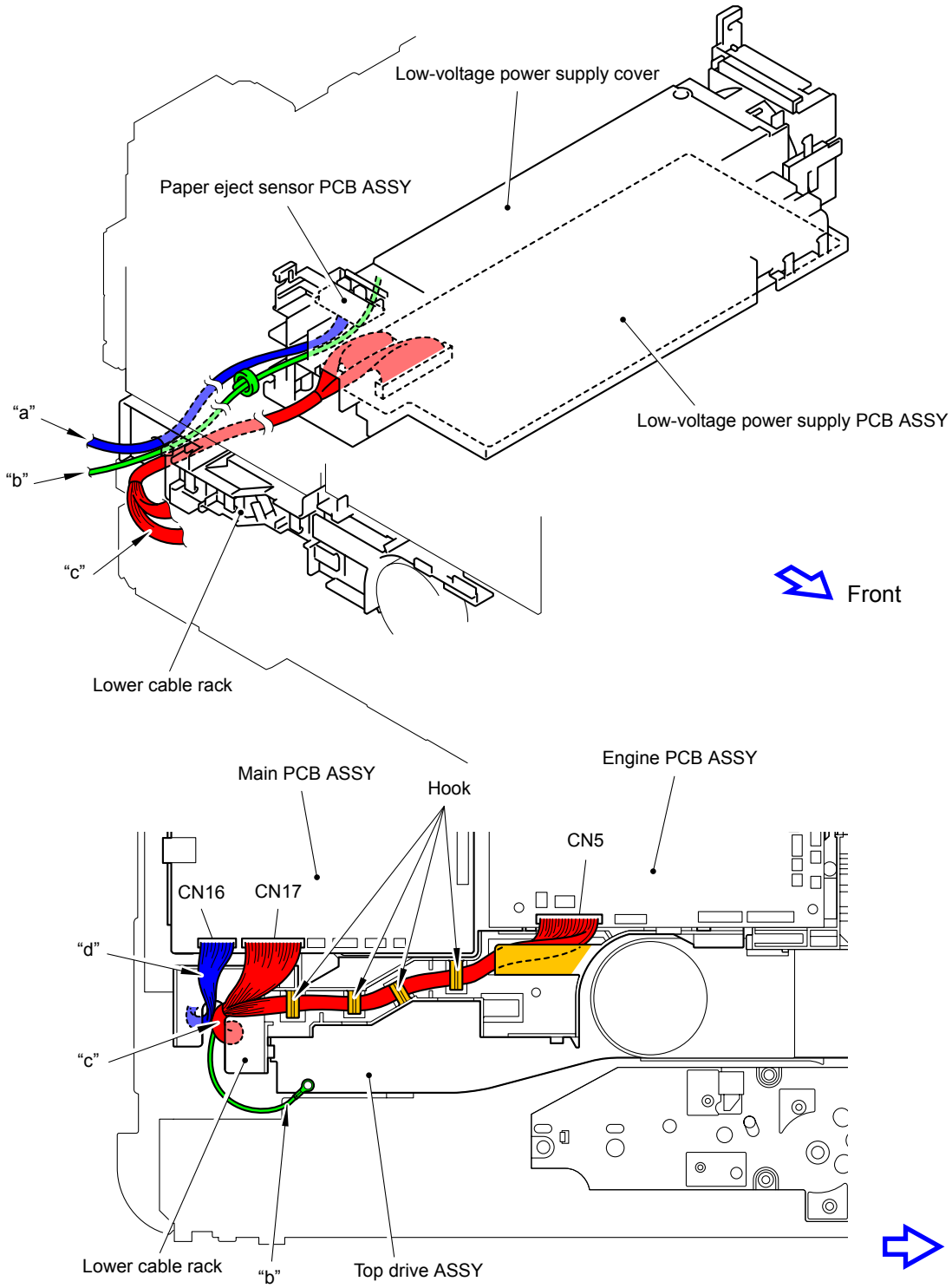
5 PF Plate ASSY



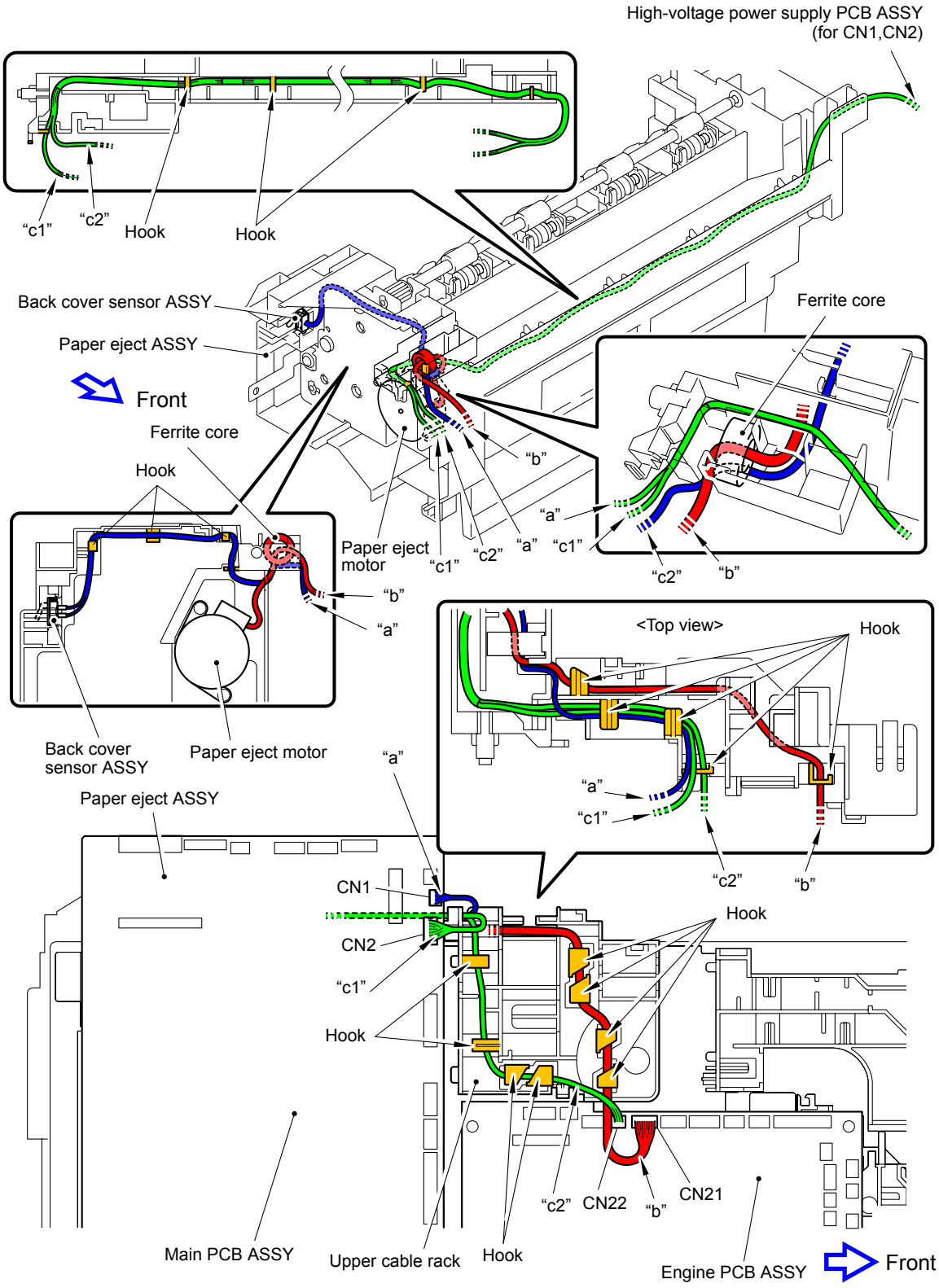
6 Toner/New Sensor PCB ASSY



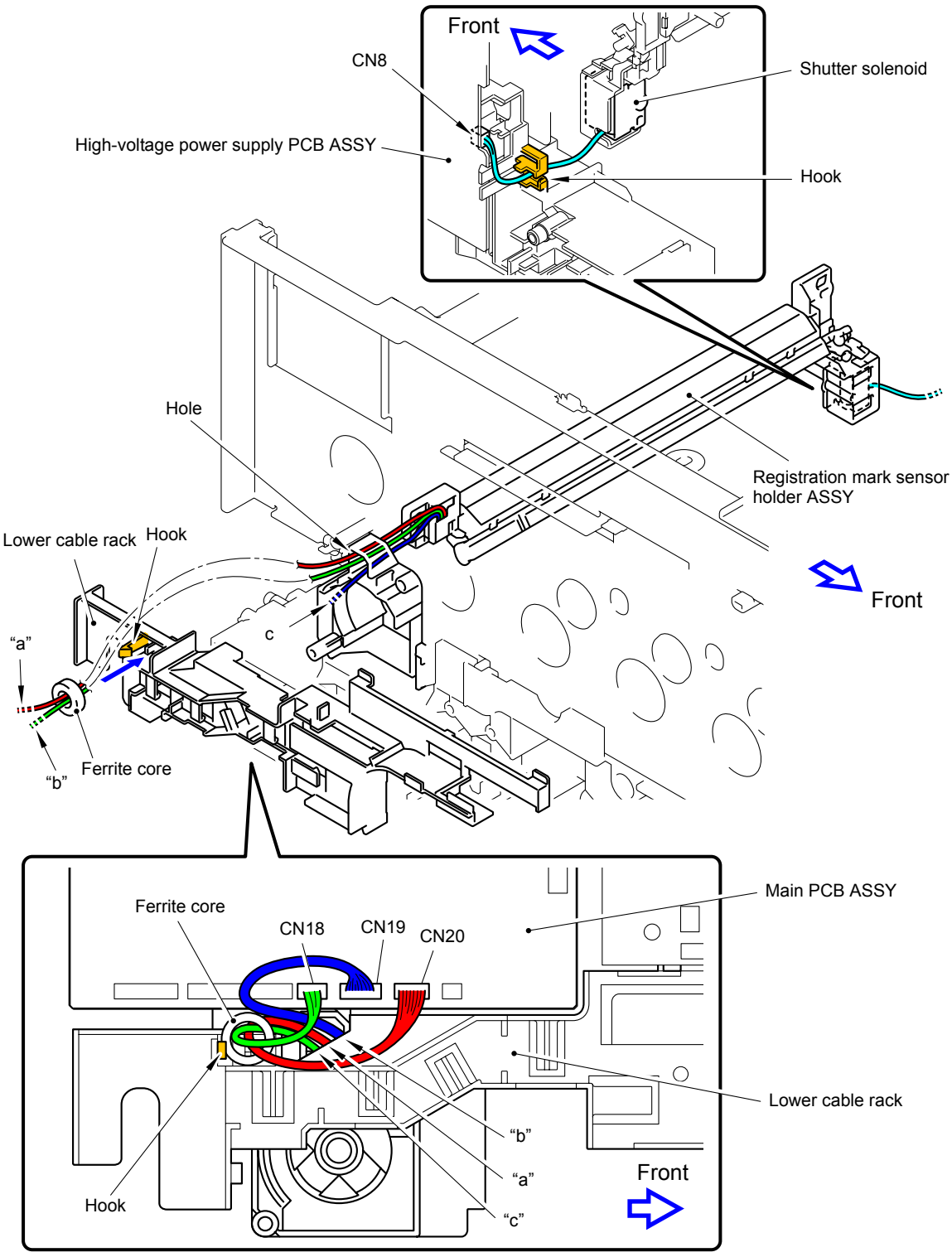
7 Low-voltage Power Supply PCB ASSY



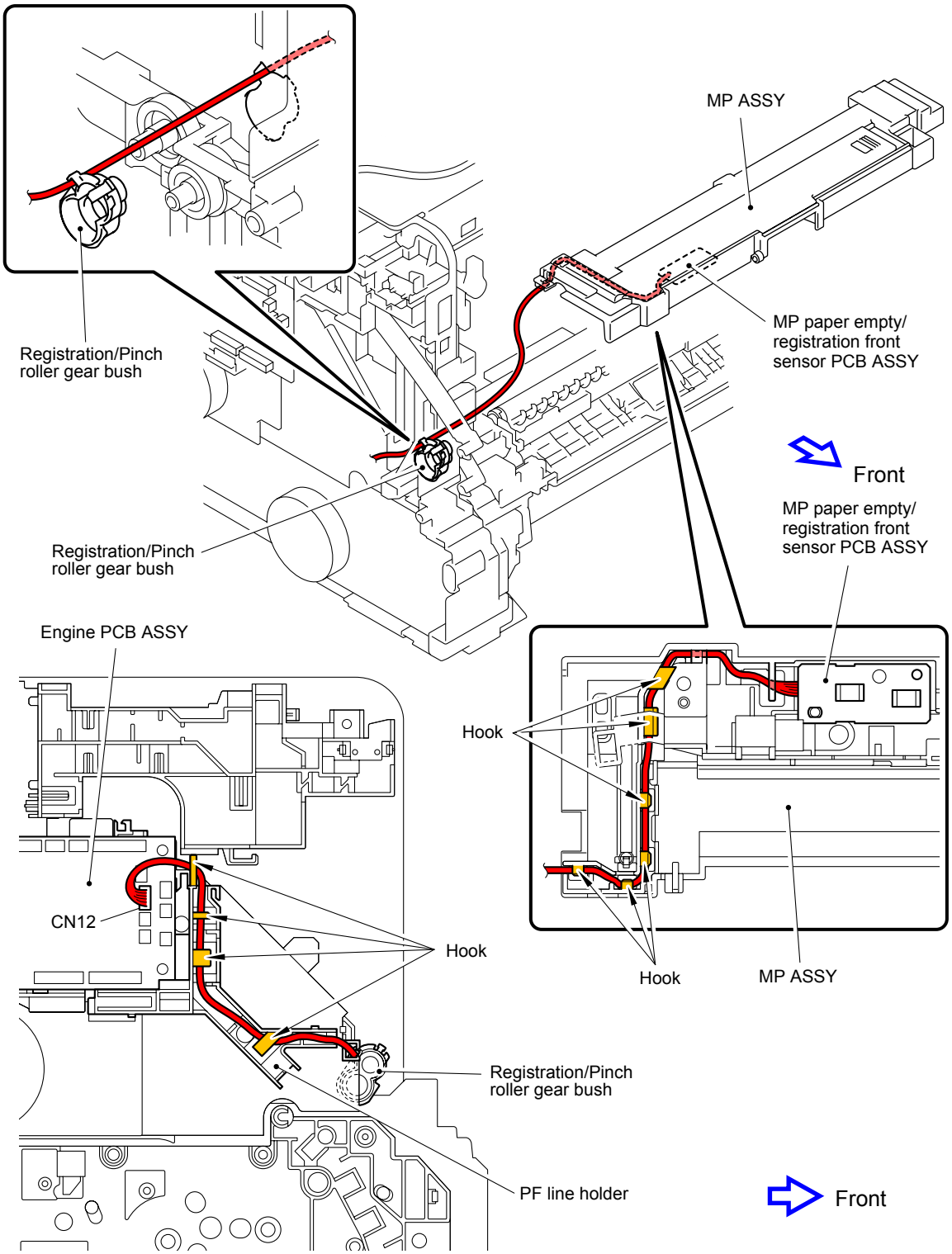
8 Paper Eject ASSY



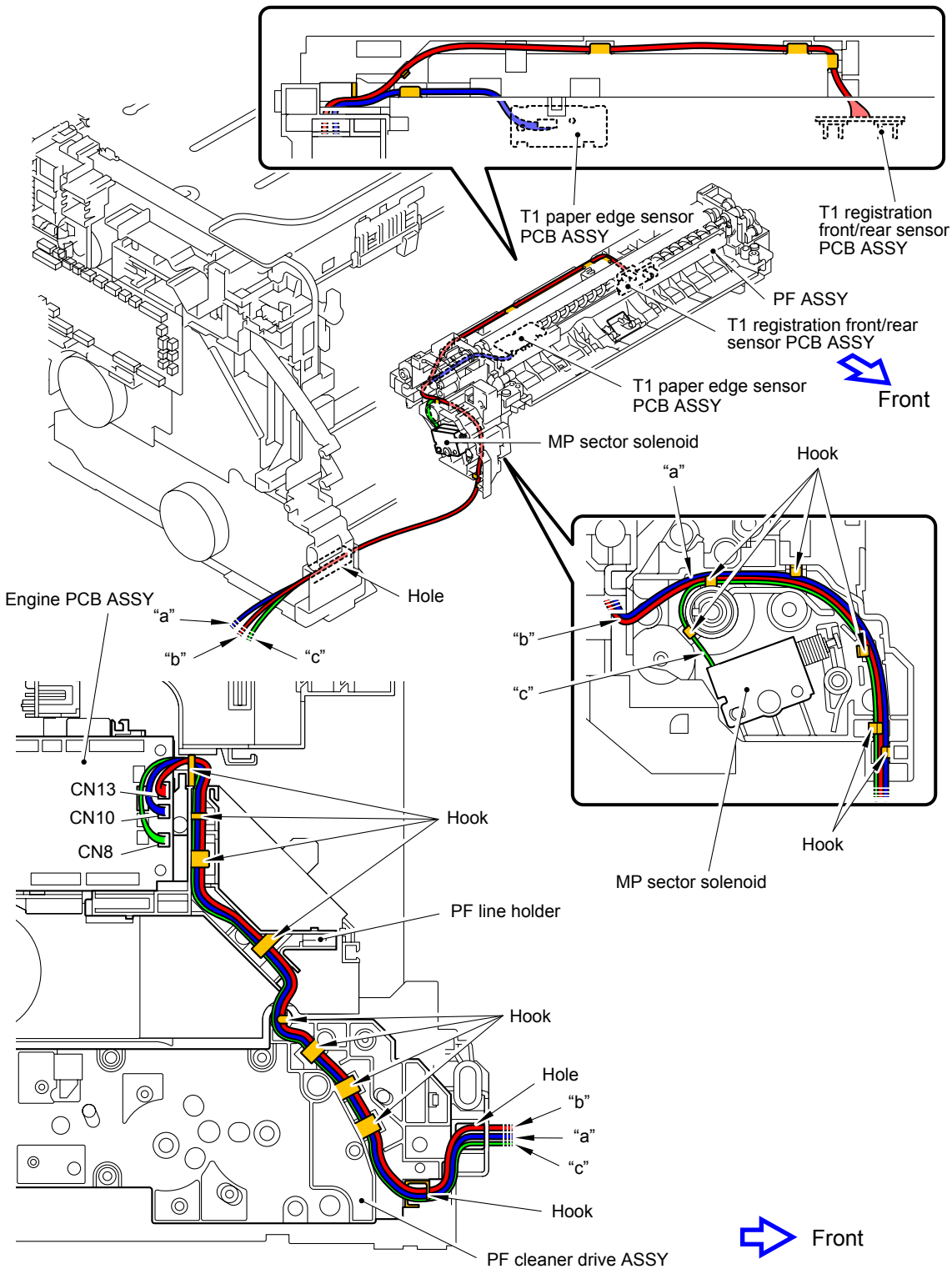
9 Registration Mark Sensor Holder ASSY



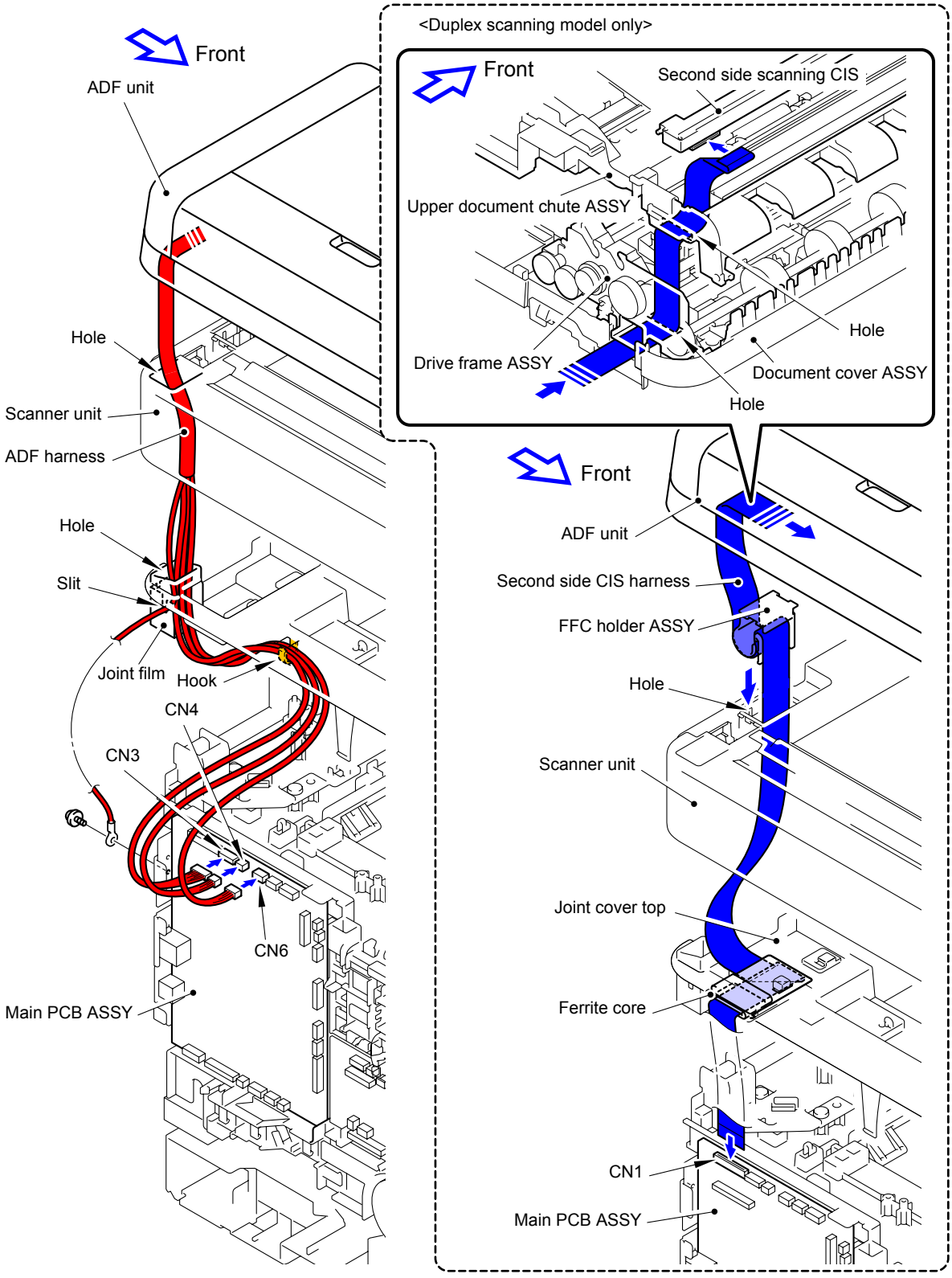
10 MP Paper Empty/Registration Front Sensor PCB ASSY



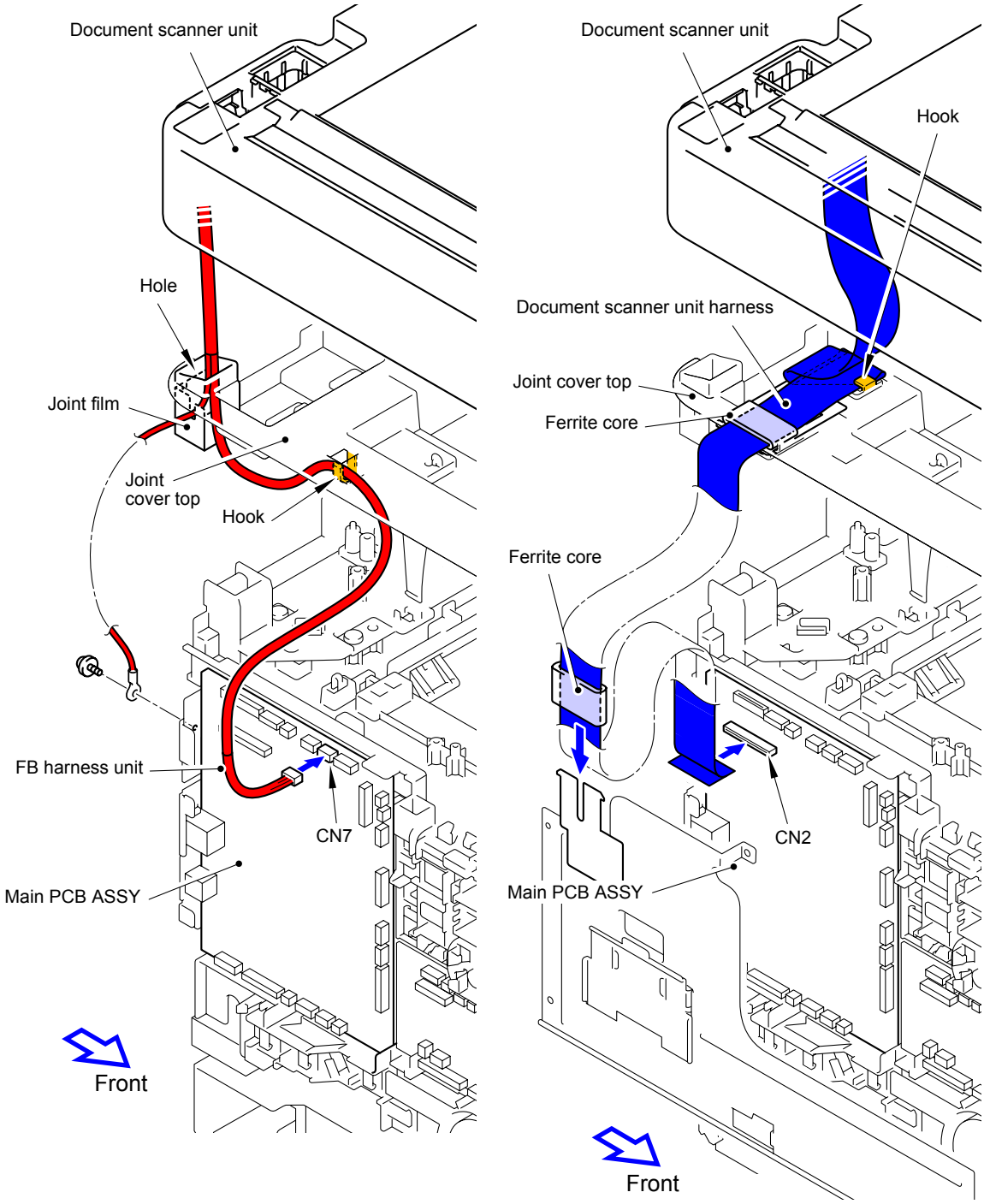
11 PF ASSY



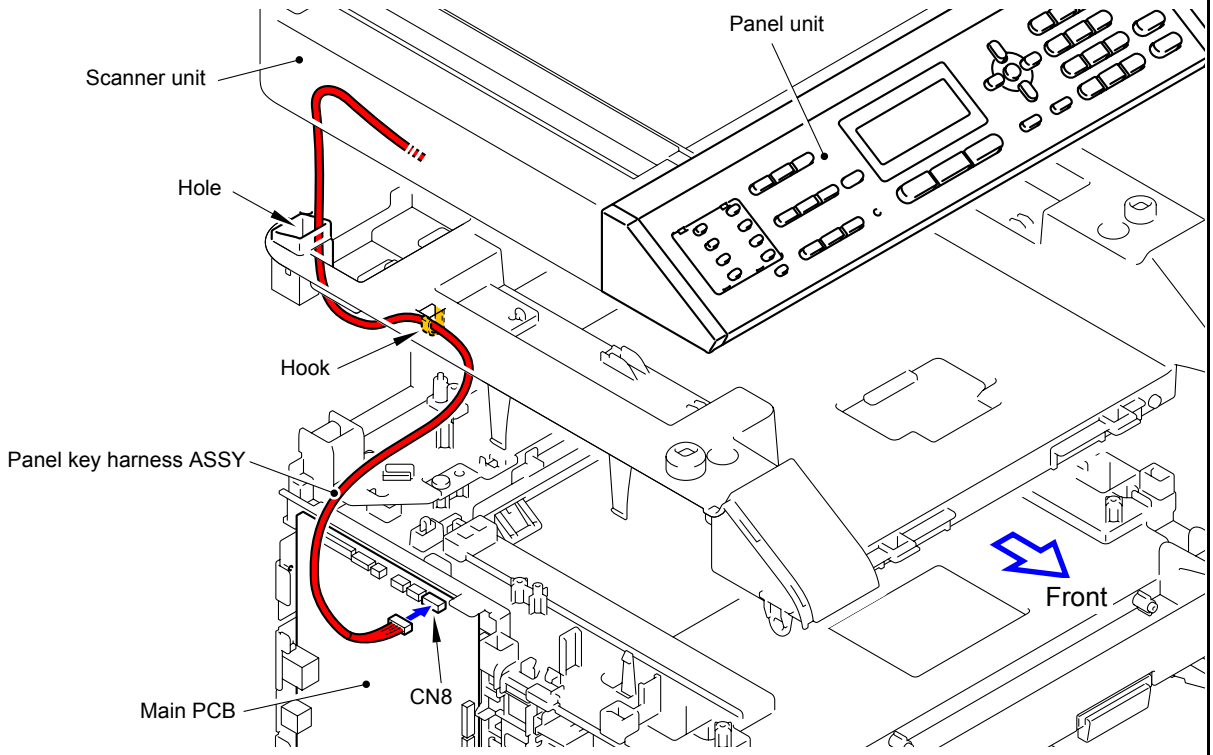
12 ADF



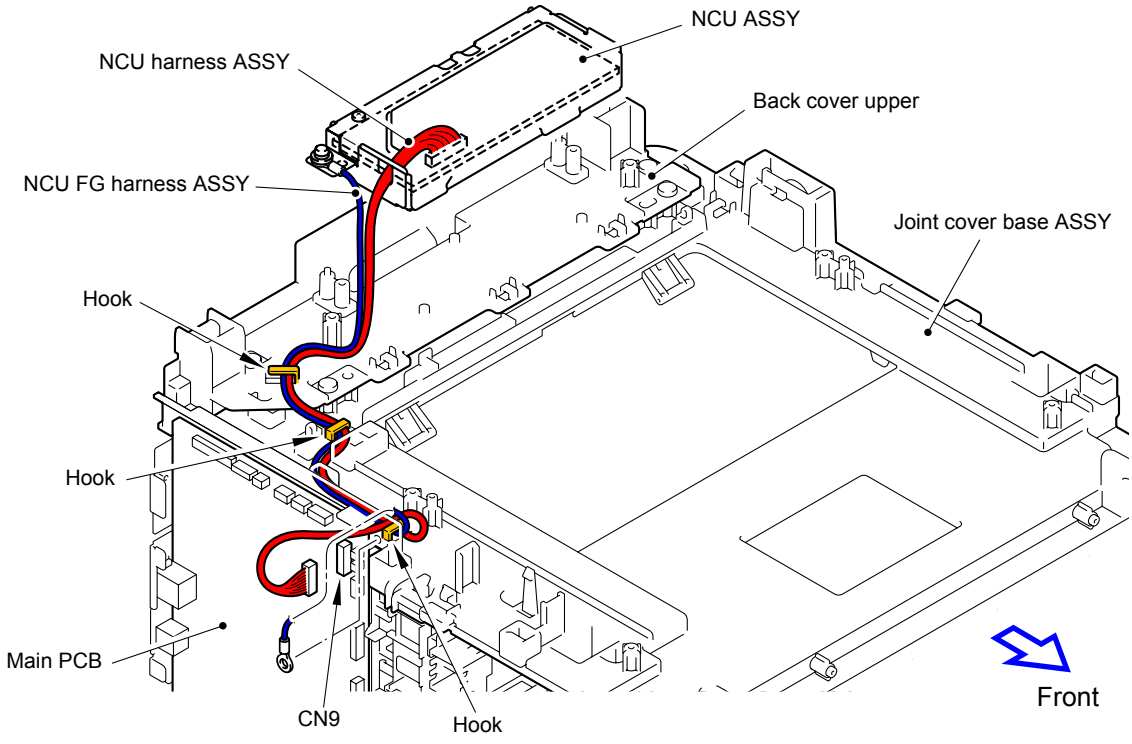
13 Document Scanner



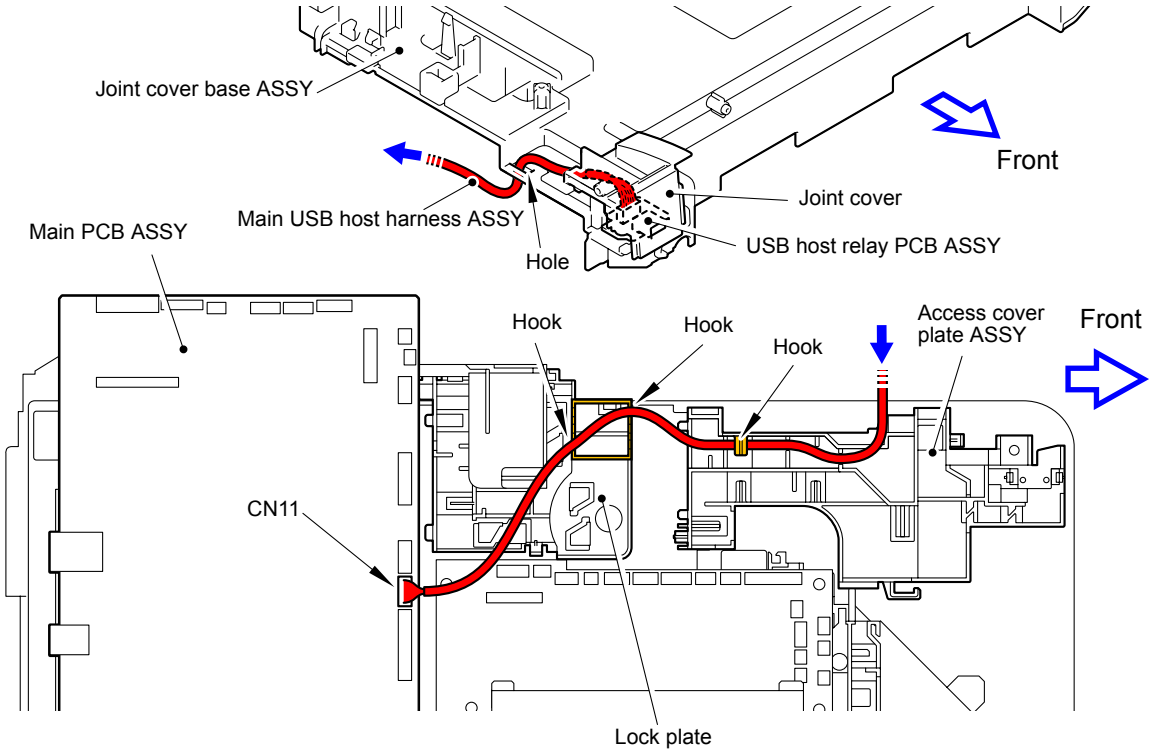
14 Panel Unit



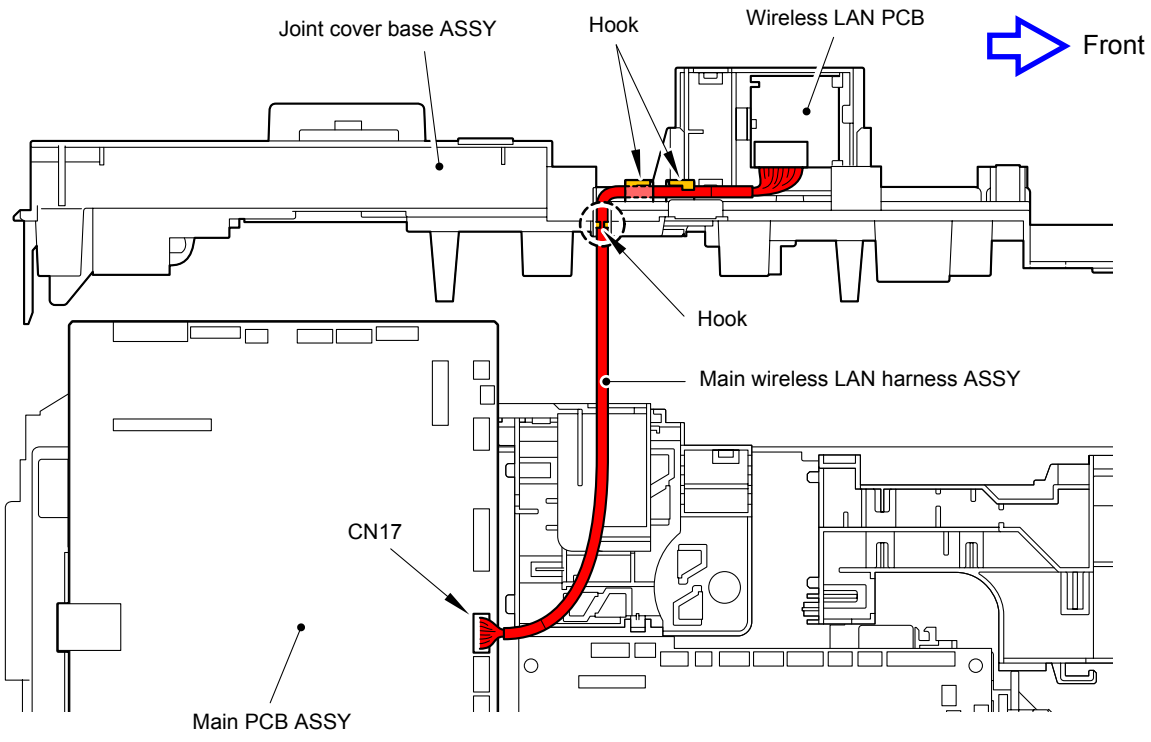
15 NCU



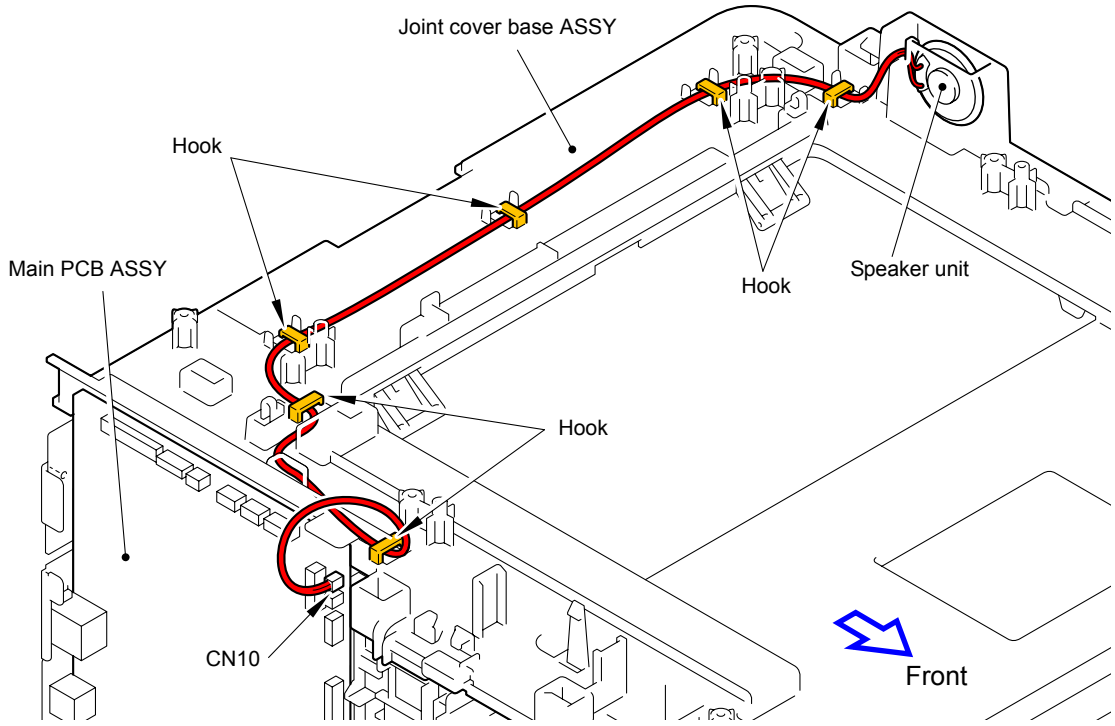
16 USB



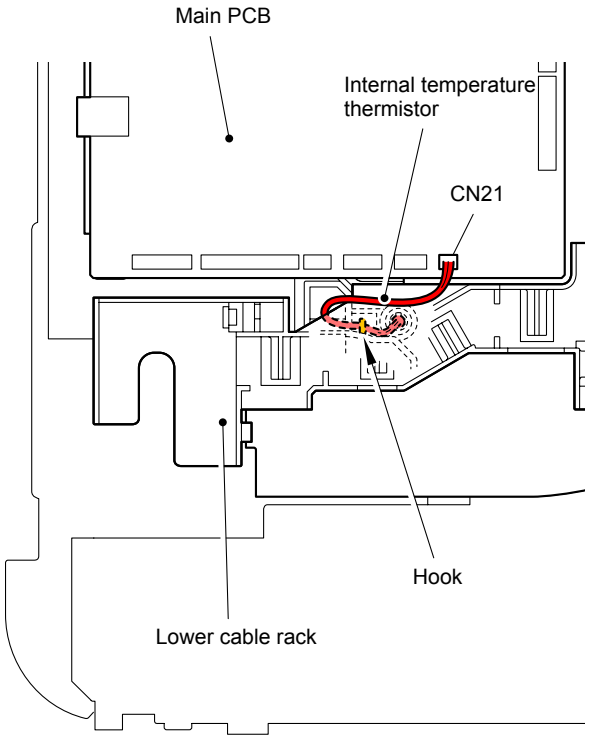
17 Wireless LAN PCB

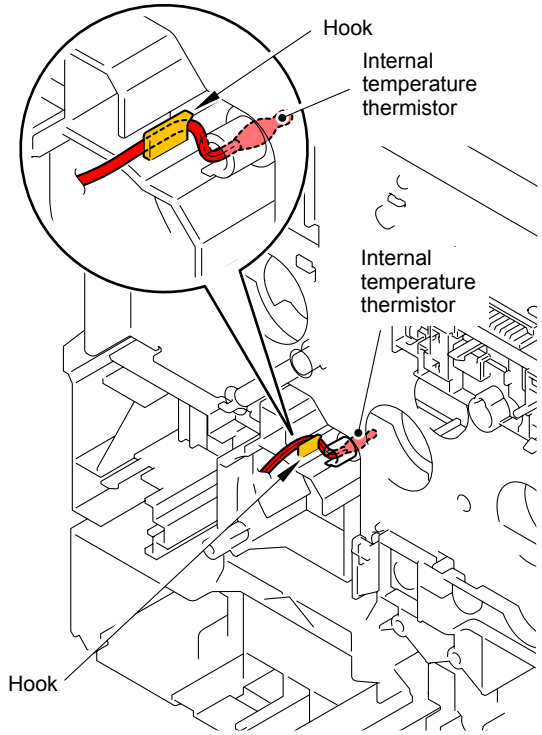


18 Speaker



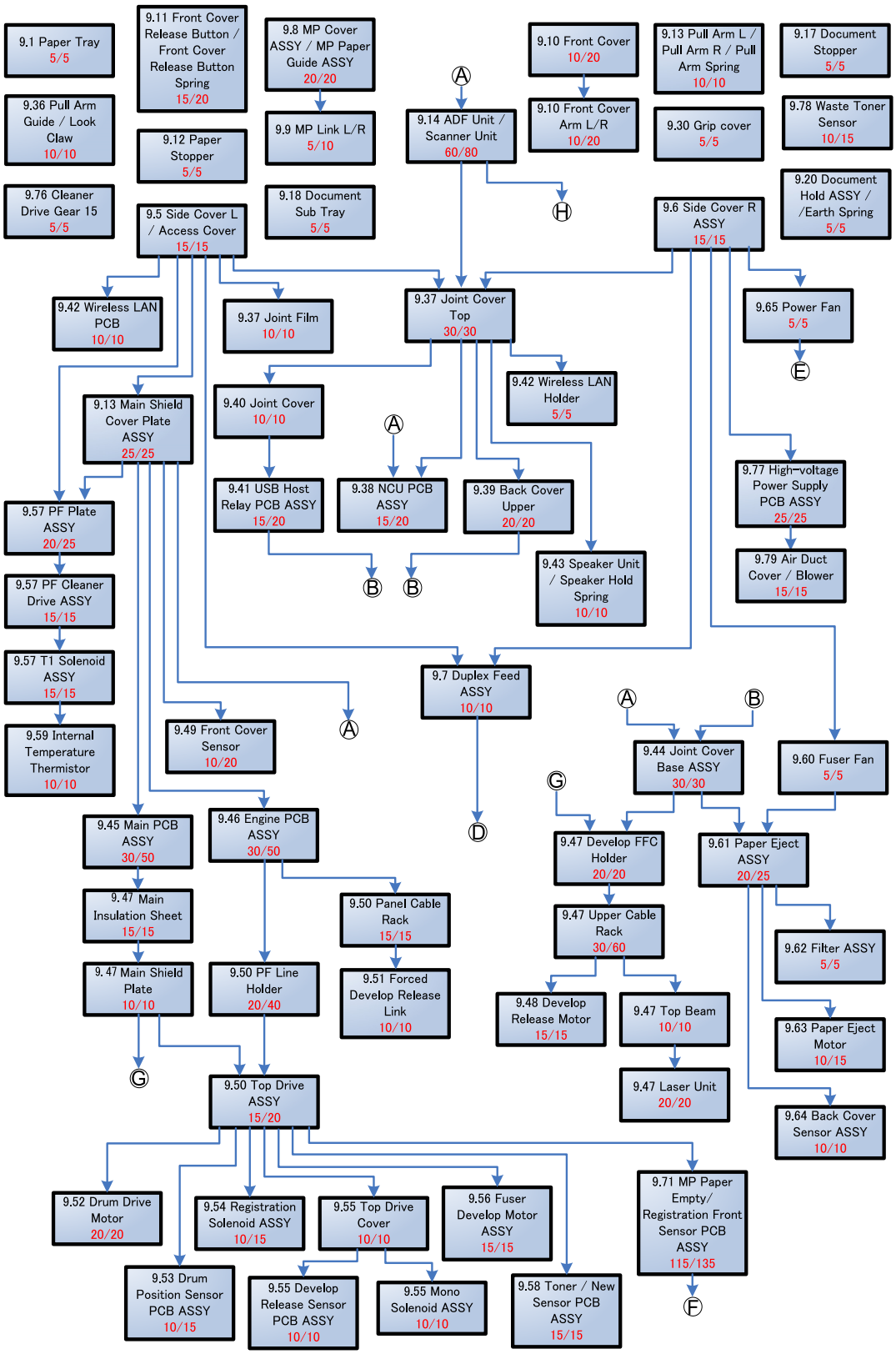
19 Internal Temperature Thermistor

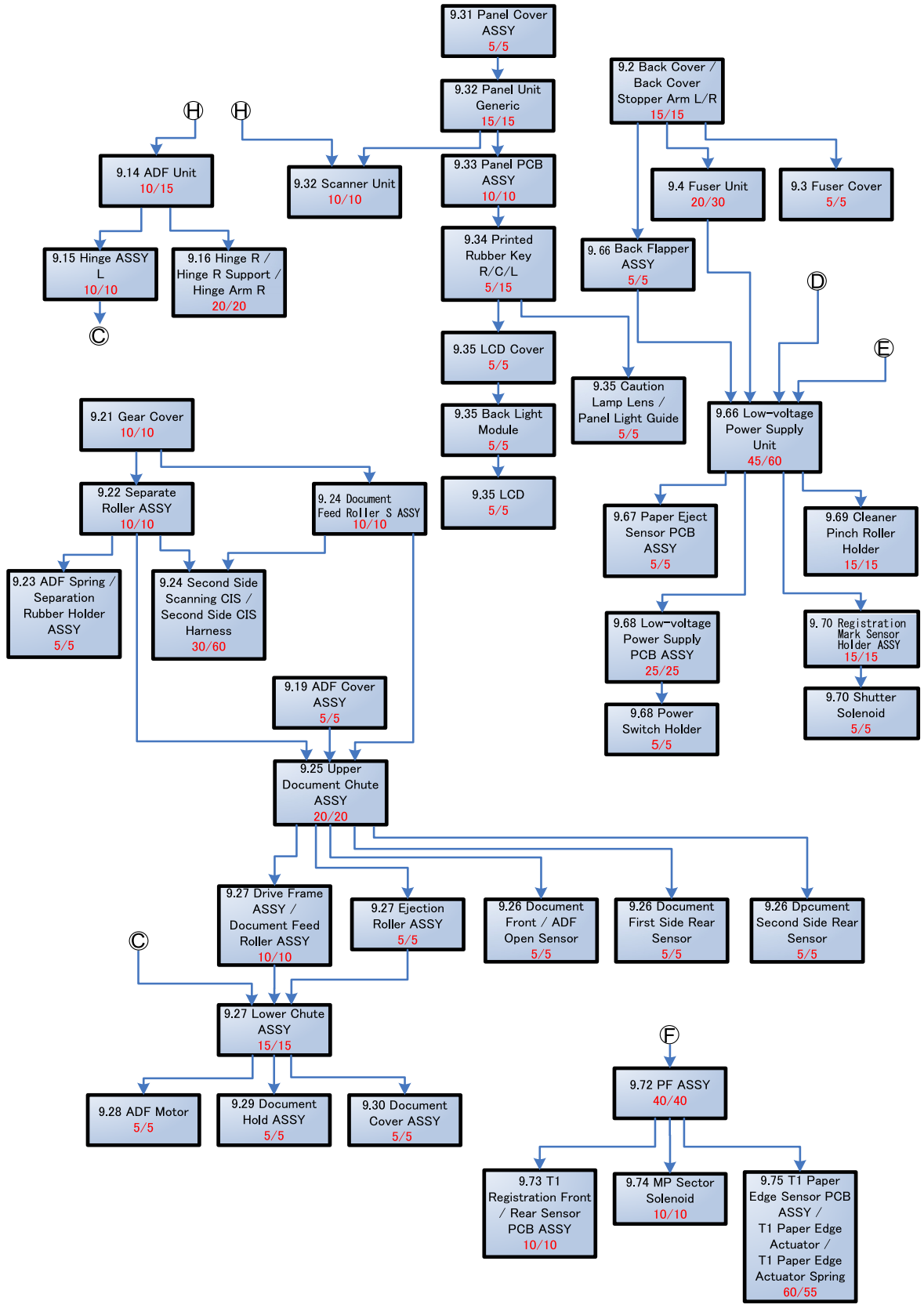




8. DISASSEMBLY FLOW

Disassembly / Re-Assembly (second)




9.31 Panel Cover ASSY 5/5
9.32 Panel Unit Generic 15/15
9.2 Back Cover / Back Cover Stopper Arm L/R 15/15
Ⓗ
Ⓗ
9.14 ADF Unit 10/15
9.32 Scanner Unit 10/10
9.33 Panel PCB ASSY 10/10
9.4 Fuser Unit 20/30
9.3 Fuser Cover 5/5
9.15 Hinge ASSY L 10/10
9.16 Hinge R / Hinge R Support / Hinge Arm R 20/20
9.34 Printed Rubber Key R/C/L 5/15
9. 66 Back Flapper ASSY 5/5
Ⓒ
Ⓓ
Ⓔ
9.35 LCD Cover 5/5
9.35 Caution Lamp Lens / Panel Light Guide 5/5
9.66 Low-voltage Power Supply Unit 45/60
9.21 Gear Cover 10/10
9.35 Back Light Module 5/5
9.35 LCD 5/5
9.22 Separate Roller ASSY 10/10
9. 24 Document Feed Roller S ASSY 10/10
9.67 Paper Eject Sensor PCB ASSY 5/5
9.69 Cleaner Pinch Roller Holder 15/15
9.23 ADF Spring / Separation Rubber Holder ASSY 5/5
9.24 Second Side Scanning CIS / Second Side CIS Harness 30/60
9.68 Low-voltage Power Supply PCB ASSY 25/25
9. 70 Registration Mark Sensor Holder ASSY 15/15
9.19 ADF Cover ASSY 5/5
9.68 Power Switch Holder 5/5
9.70 Shutter Solenoid 5/5
9.25 Upper Document Chute ASSY 20/20
9.27 Drive Frame ASSY / Document Feed Roller ASSY 10/10
9.27 Ejection Roller ASSY 5/5
9.26 Document Front / ADF Open Sensor 5/5
9.26 Document First Side Rear Sensor 5/5
9.26 Dpcument Second Side Rear Sensor 5/5
Ⓒ
9.27 Lower Chute ASSY 15/15
Ⓕ
9.72 PF ASSY 40/40
9.28 ADF Motor 5/5
9.29 Document Hold ASSY 5/5
9.30 Document Cover ASSY 5/5
9.73 T1 Registration Front / Rear Sensor PCB ASSY 10/10
9.74 MP Sector Solenoid 10/10
9.75 T1 Paper Edge Sensor PCB ASSY / T1 Paper Edge Actuator / T1 Paper Edge Actuator Spring 60/55

9. DISASSEMBLY PROCEDURE

■ Preparation

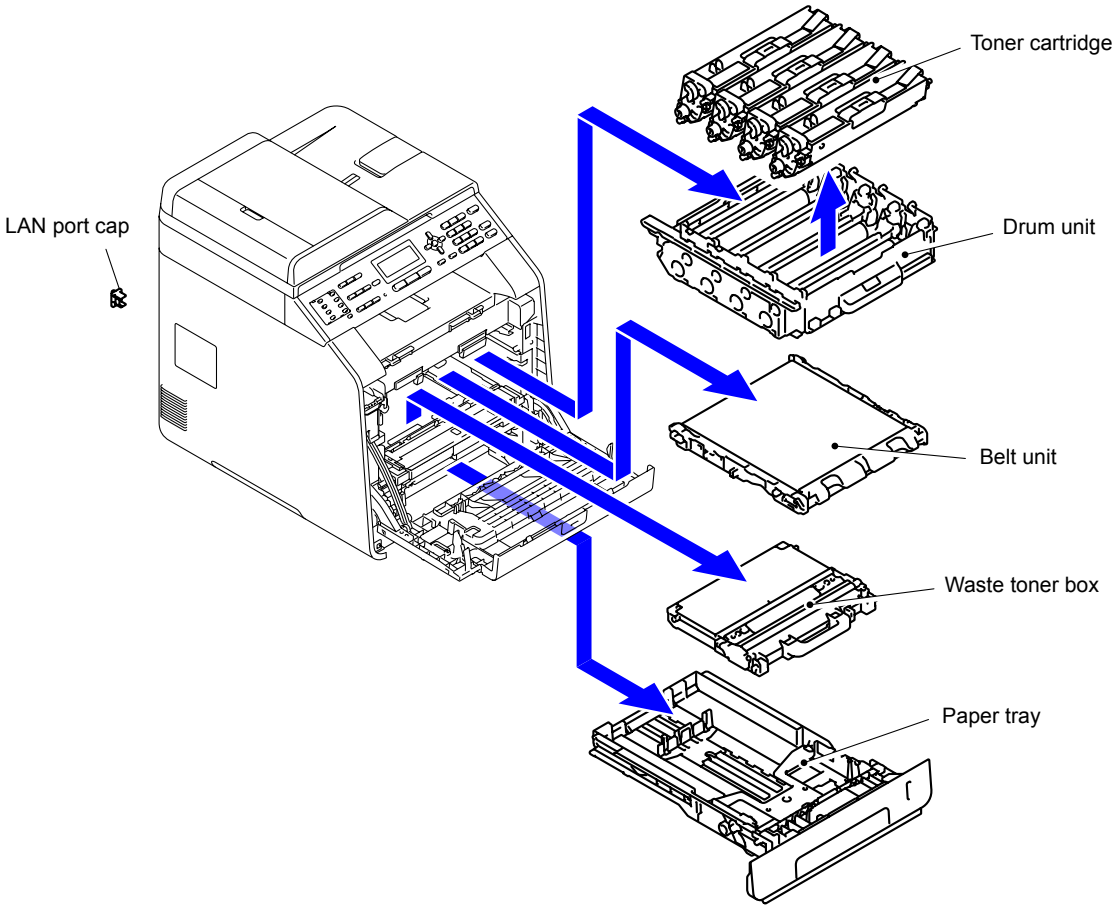
Prior to proceeding with the disassembly procedure,

(1) Unplug

- the AC cord,
- the USB cable, if connected,
- the LAN cable, if connected, and
- USB flash memory drive, if connected.
- LAN port cap

(2) Remove

- the Paper tray,
- the Toner cartridge,
- the Drum unit,
- the Belt unit, and
- the Waste toner box.



9.1 Paper Tray

(1) Release the Hook to remove the T1 separation pad holder ASSY from the Paper tray.

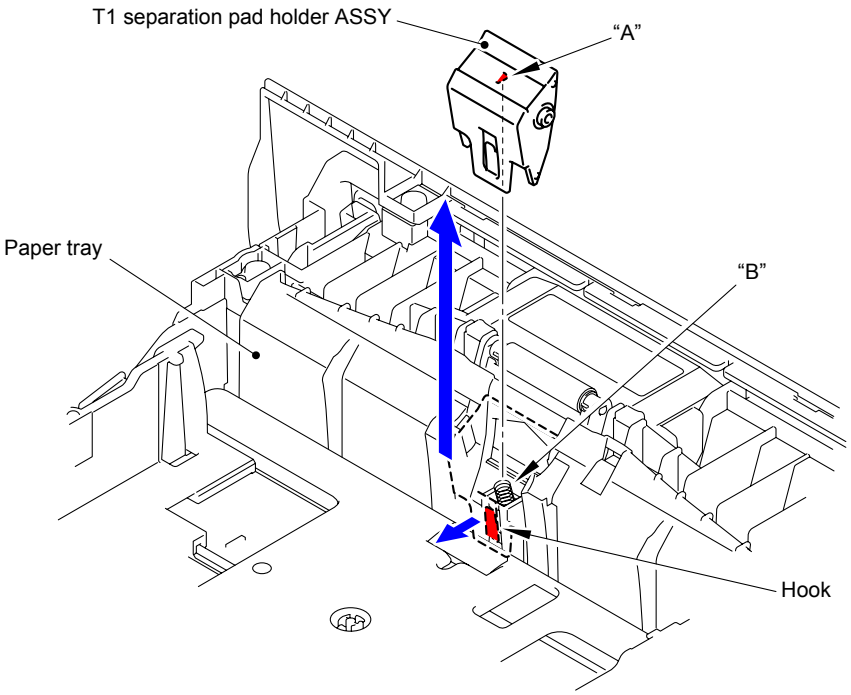


Fig. 3-1

Assembling Note:
Mount the T1 separation pad holder ASSY in a way that "A" of the T1 separation pad holder ASSY is inserted into "B" of the T1 separation pad spring.

(2) Remove the T1 separation pad spring from the Paper tray.

Note:
Be careful not to lose the T1 separation pad spring.

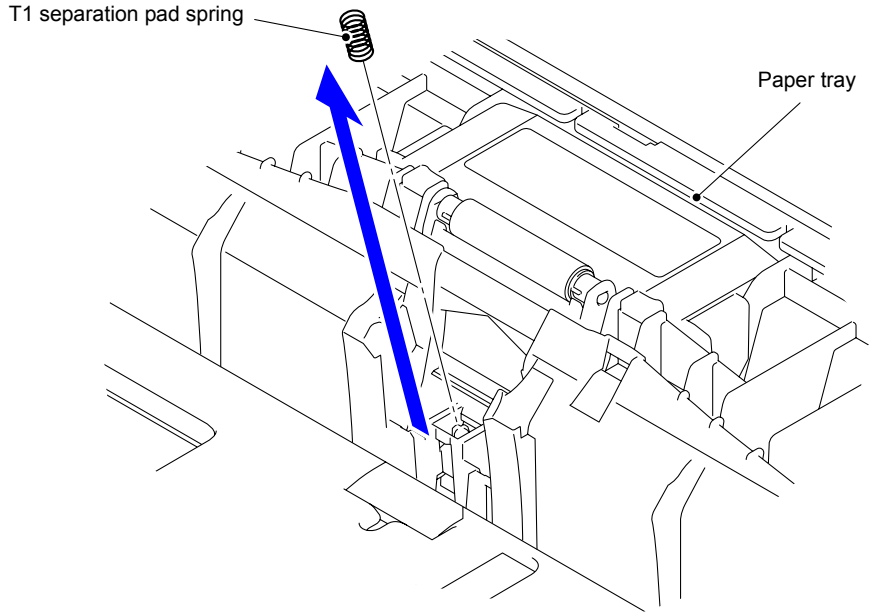


Fig. 3-2

9.2 Back Cover/Back Cover Stopper Arm L/R

(1) Open the Back cover.

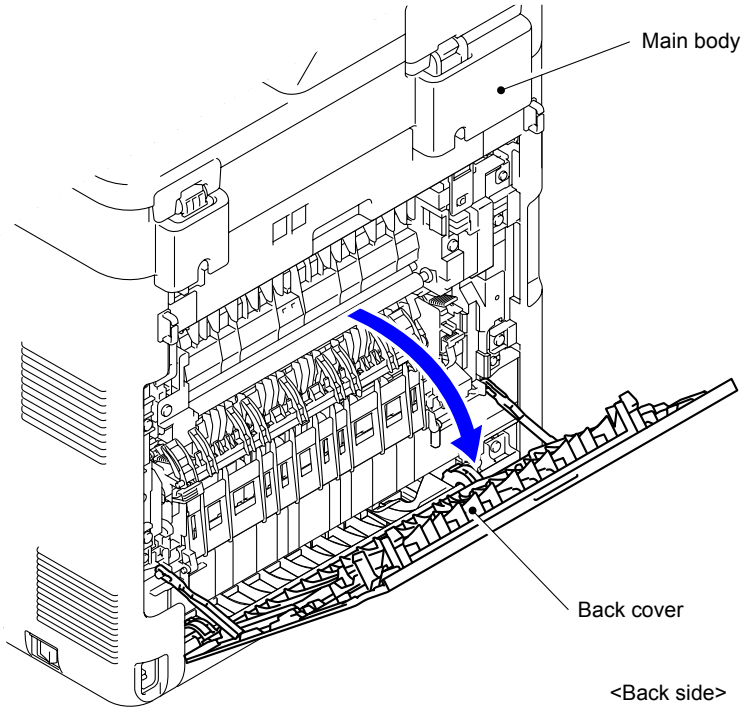


Fig. 3-3

(2) Remove the Back cover stopper arm L and R from the Main body.

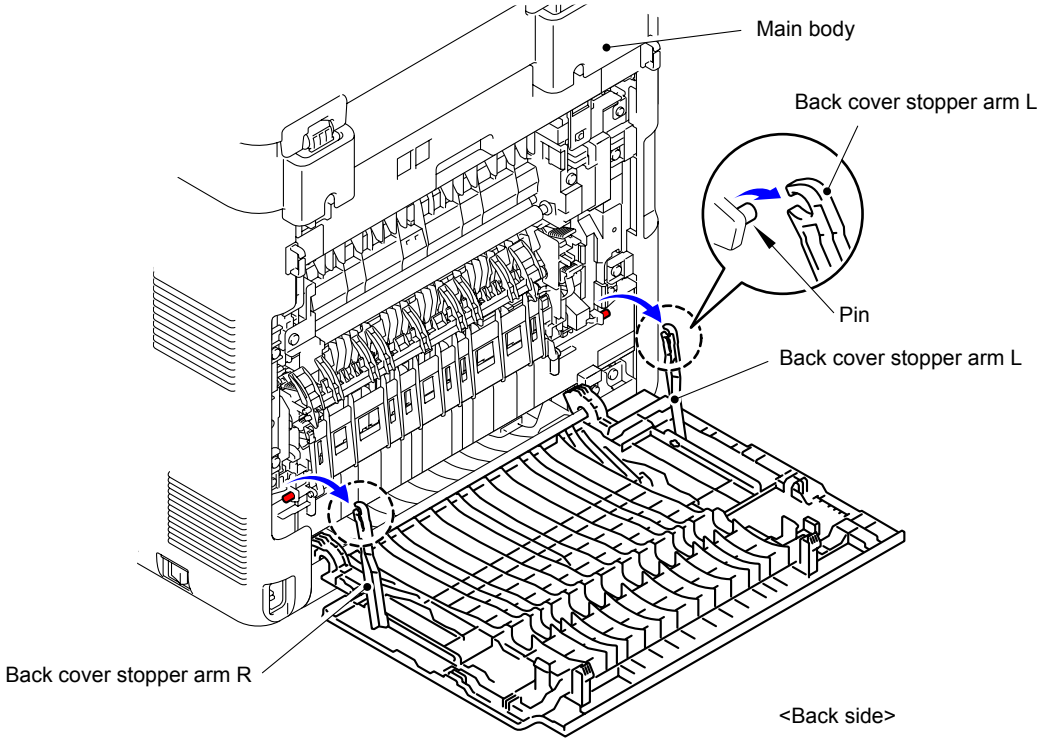


Fig. 3-4

(3) Remove the Shaft of the Back cover from the Bush on the right side of the Main body.

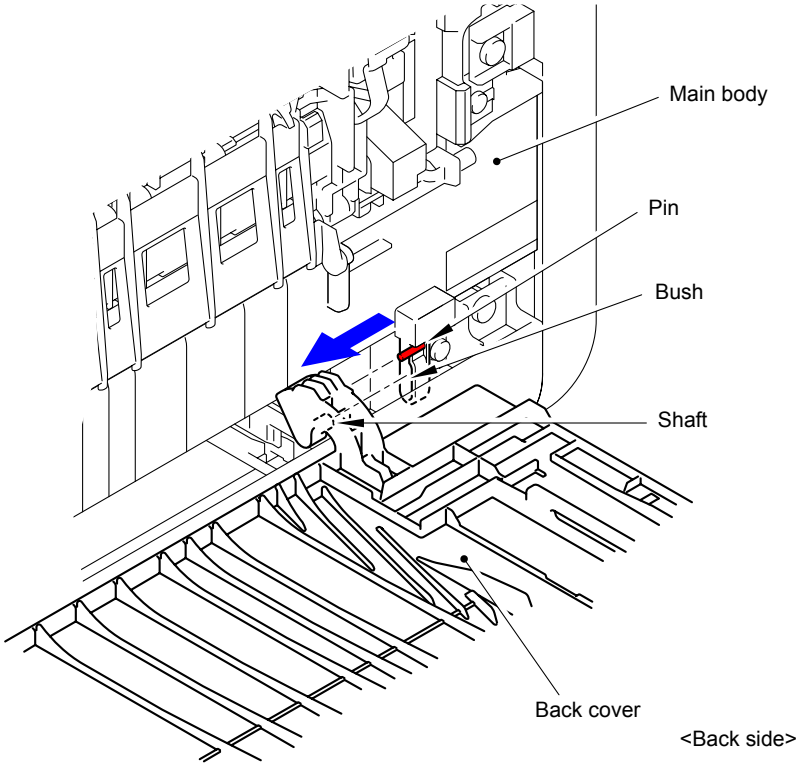


Fig. 3-5

(4) Remove the Back cover.

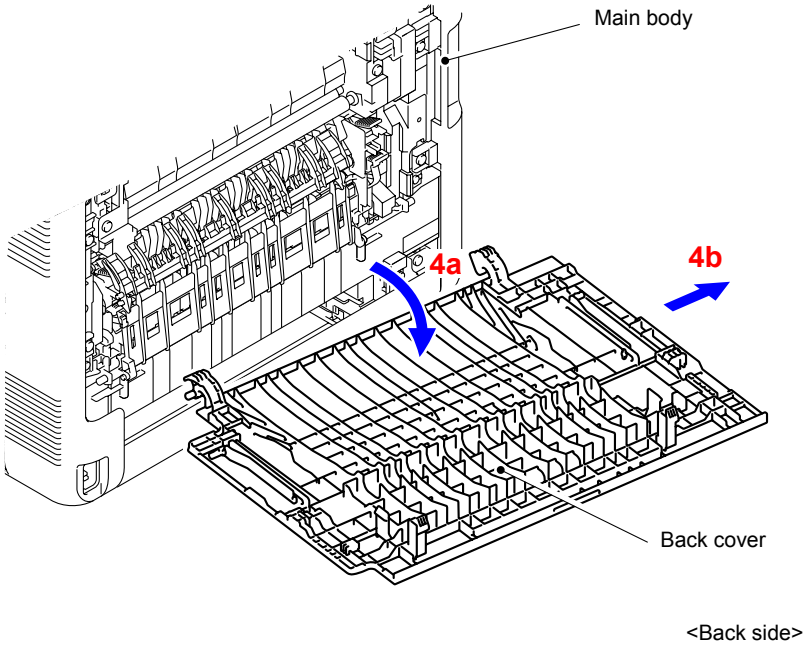


Fig. 3-6

(5) Remove the Back cover stopper arm L and R from the Back cover.

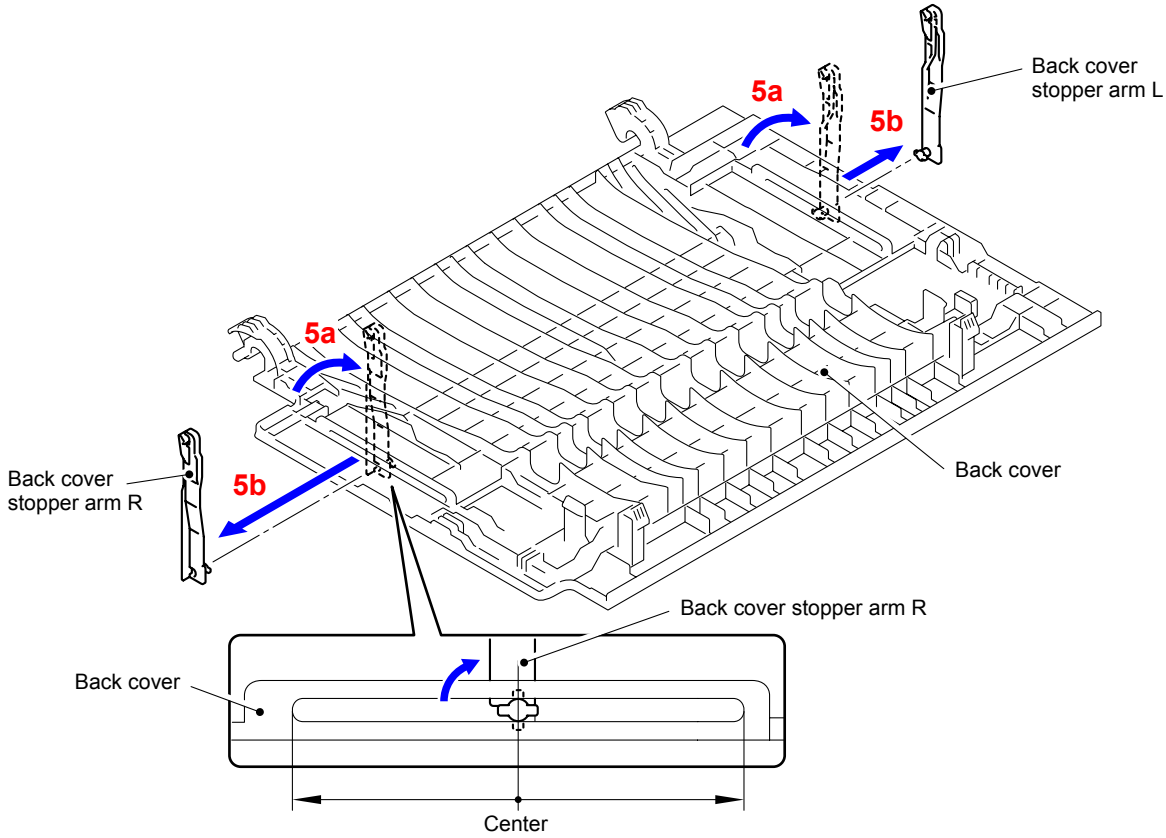


Fig. 3-7

9.3 Fuser Cover

(1) Open the Back flapper ASSY.

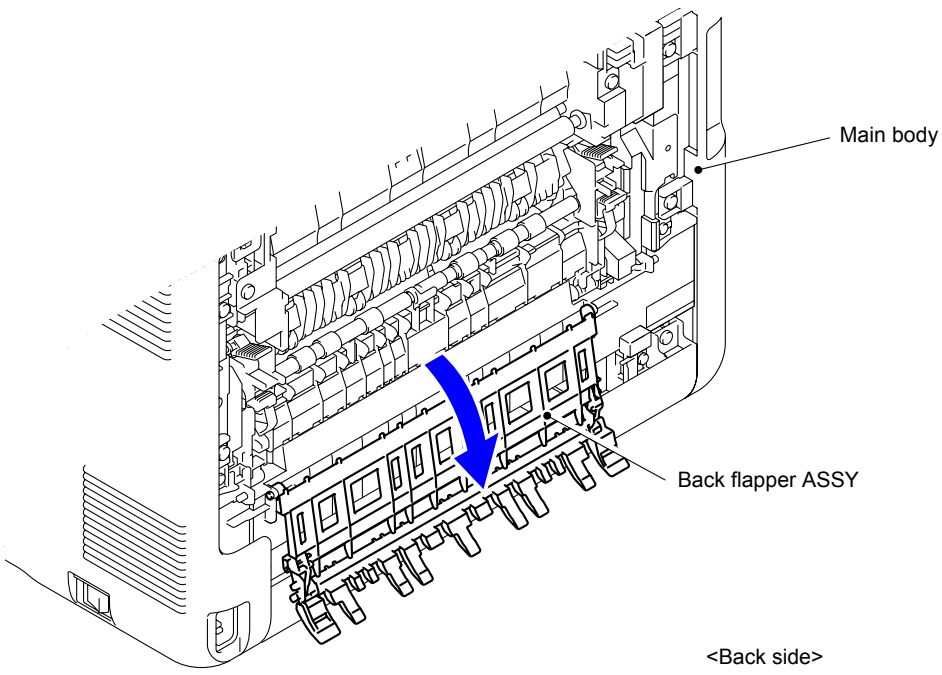


Fig. 3-8

(2) Release of the Fuser cover lock lever L and R and open the Fuser cover ASSY.

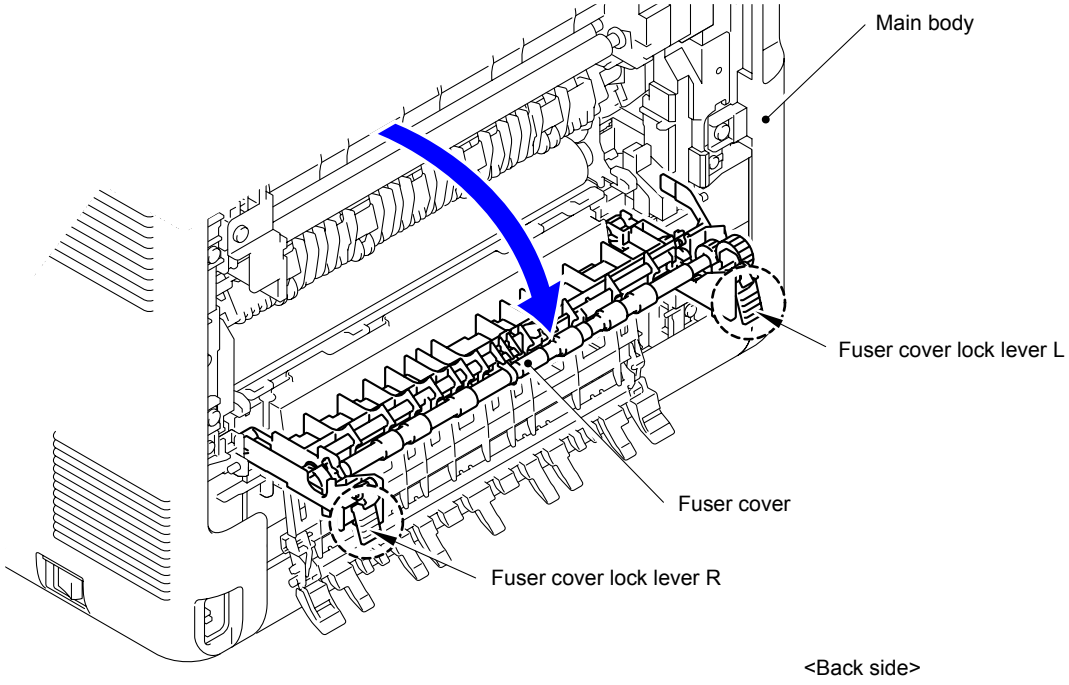


Fig. 3-9

(3) Remove the Taptite bind S M3x8 screw from the Fuser cover L.

(4) Release the Hook to remove the Fuser cover L from the Main body.

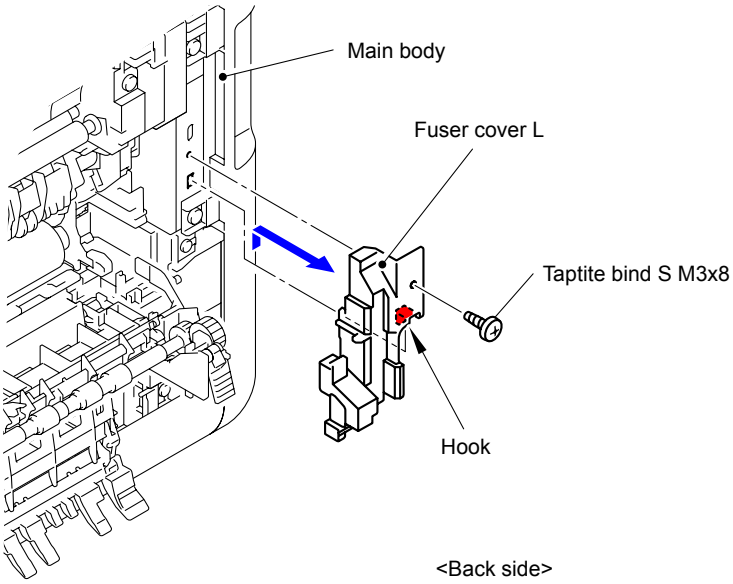


Fig. 3-10

(5) Slide the Fuser cover in the direction of the arrow 5a to remove it to the front.

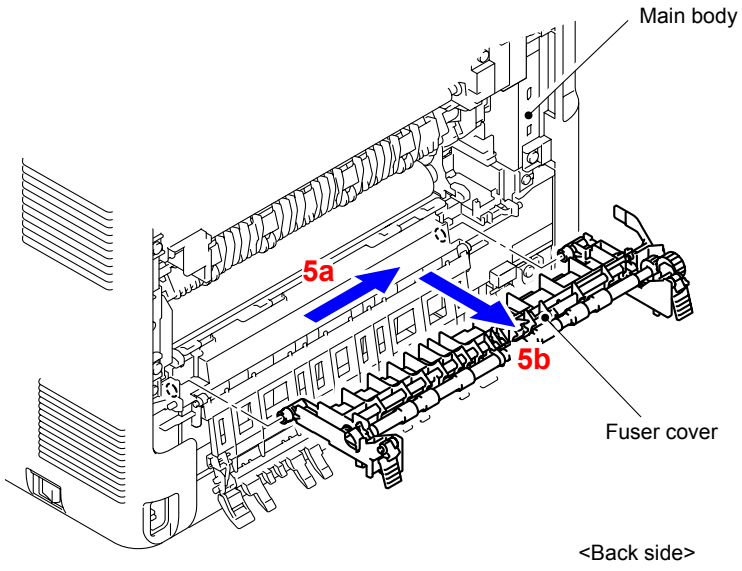


Fig. 3-11

9.4 Fuser Unit

(1) Remove the Taptite bind S M3x8 screw from the Fuser cover R.

(2) Release the Hook to remove the Fuser cover R from the Main body.

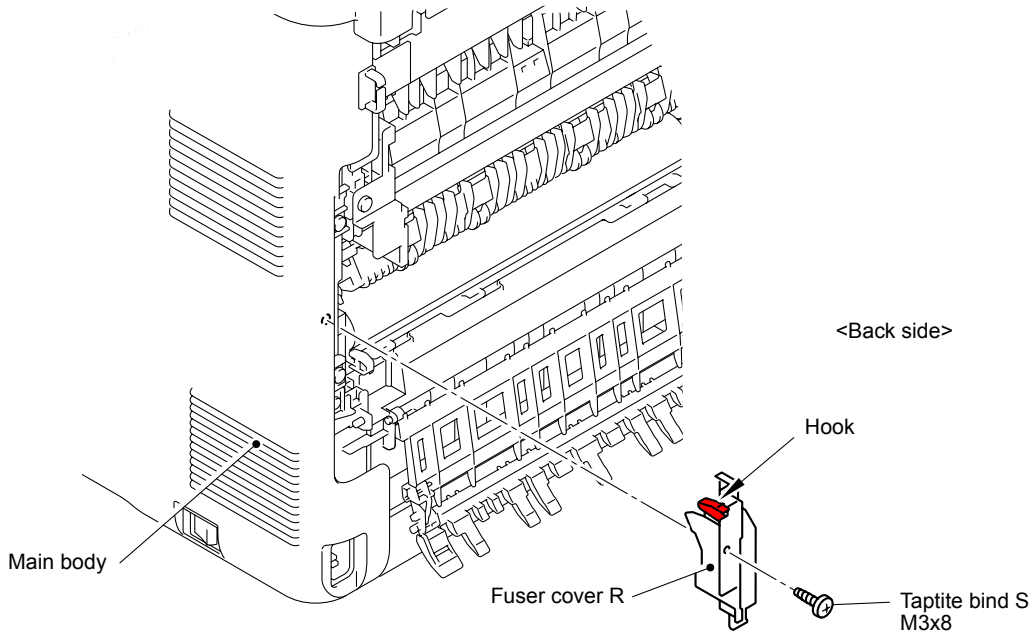


Fig. 3-12

(3) Disconnect the two Connectors (CN1, CN2) from the Paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.

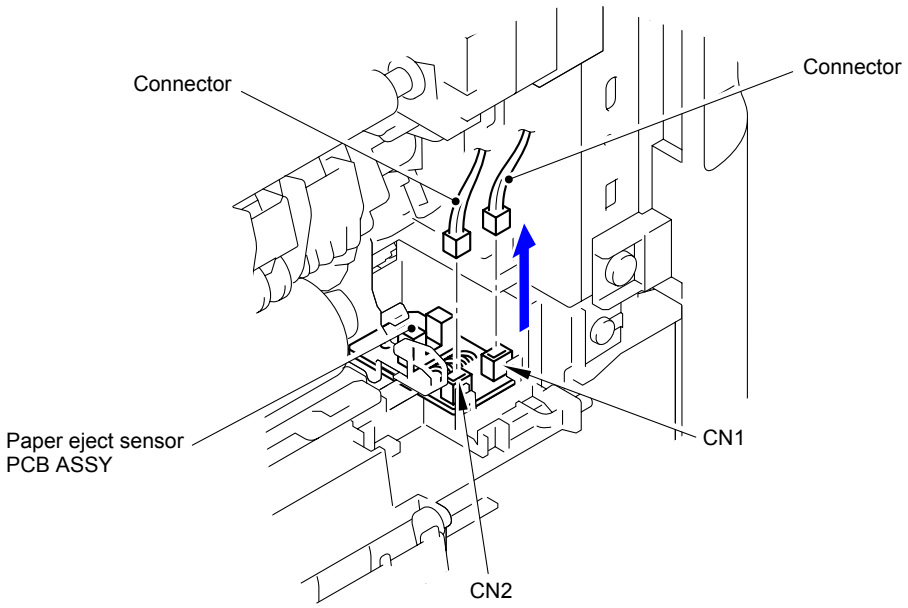


Fig. 3-13

(4) Disconnect the Electrode terminal from the Fuser unit.

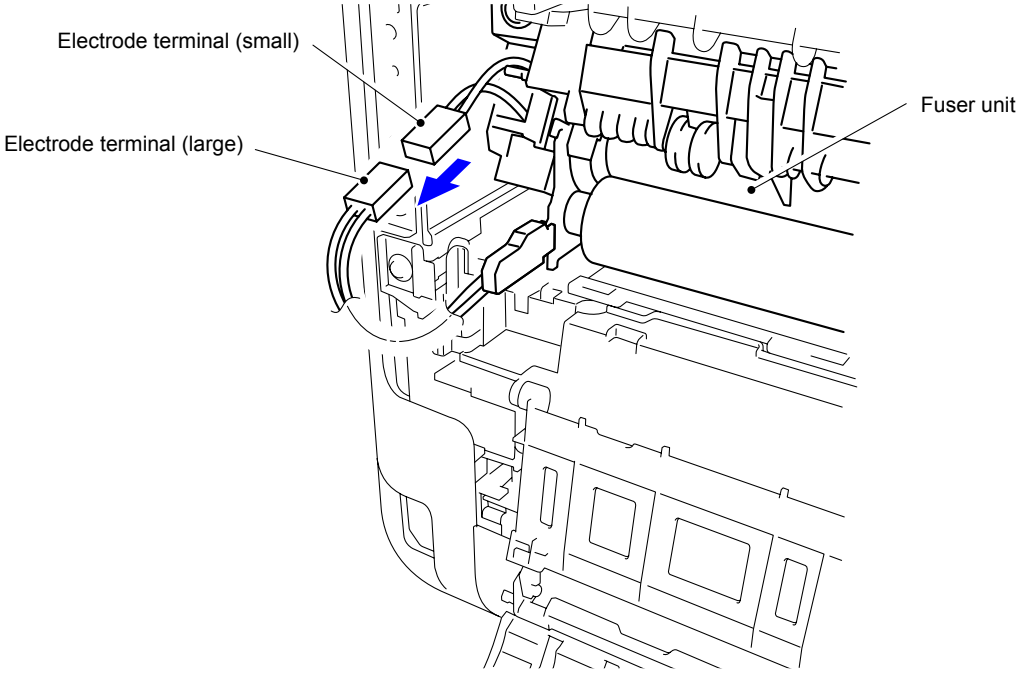


Fig. 3-14

(5) Remove the two Taptite pan B M4x14 screws to remove the Fuser unit from the Main body.

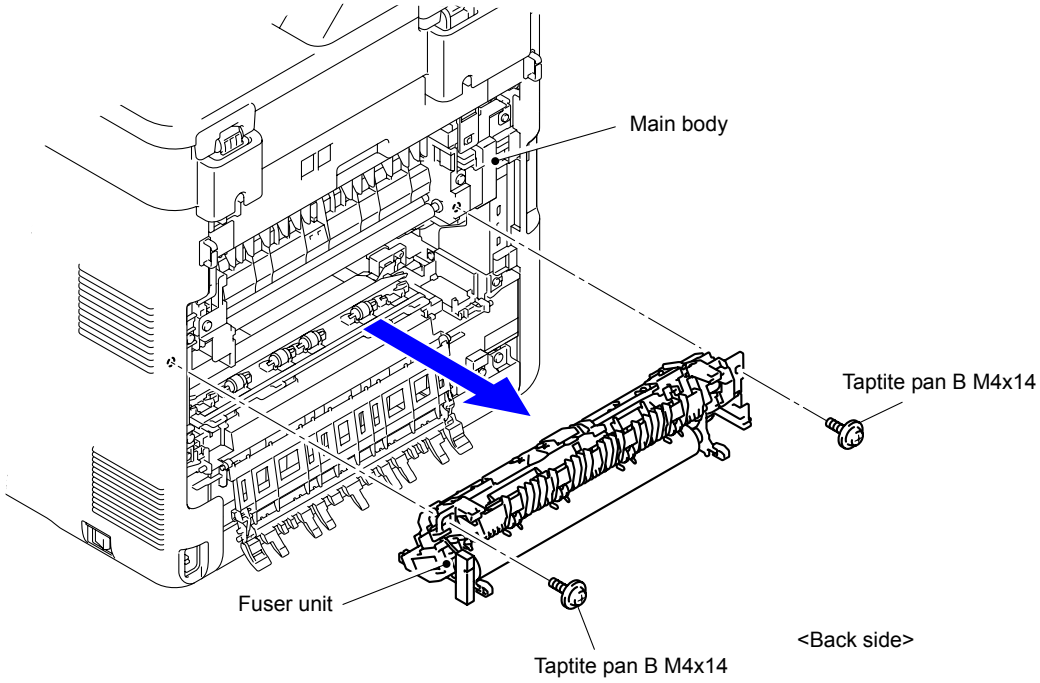


Fig. 3-15

Note:

- Do not apply a physical impact or vibration to the Fuser unit.
- Do not touch the roller and electrodes as shown in the figure below to prevent breakage of the Fuser unit.

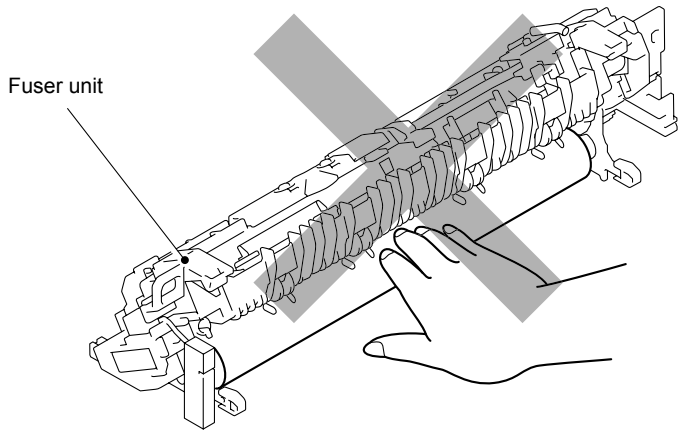


Fig. 3-16

9.5 Side Cover L/Access Cover

(1) Open the Front cover.

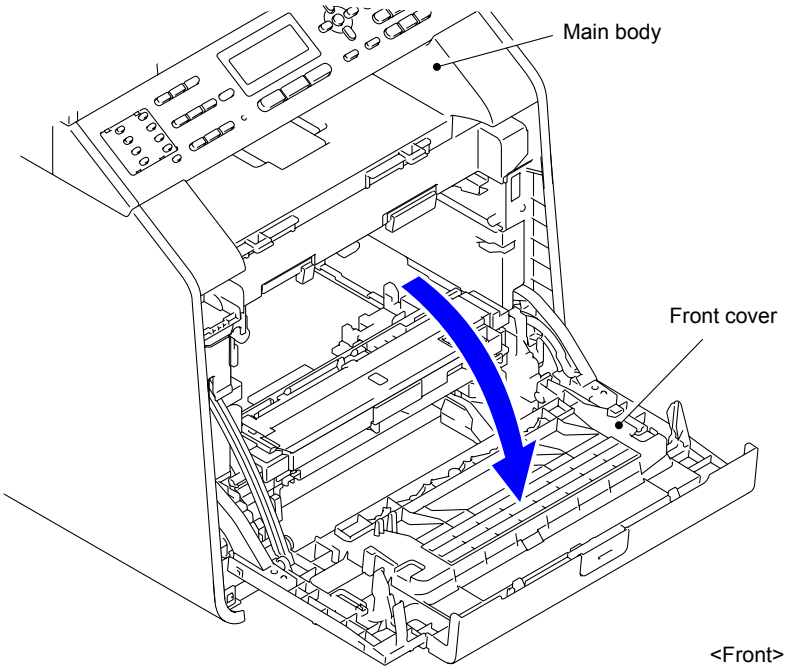


Fig. 3-17

(2) Remove the Taptite bind S M3x8 screw from the front of the Side cover L.

(3) Remove the Taptite bind B M4x12 screw from the side of the Side cover L.

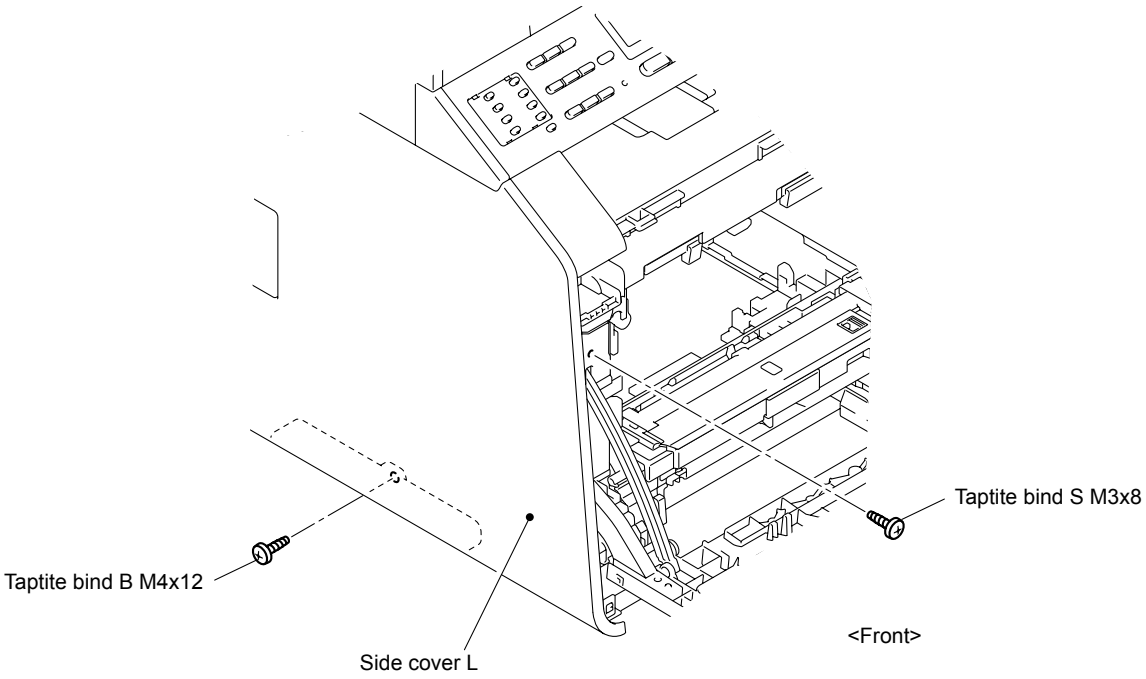


Fig. 3-18

(4) Remove the two Taptite bind S M3x8 screws from the back of the Side cover L.

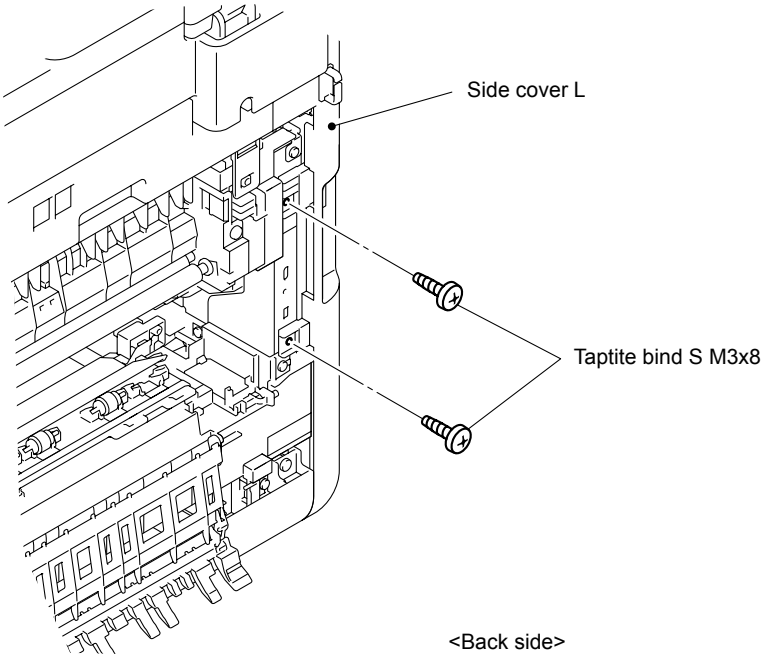


Fig. 3-19

(5) Release the Hooks 1 and 2 at the same time, and then release the Hooks 3 to 6 in numerical order. Release the Hook 7. Release the Hooks 8 and 9 to remove the Side cover L from the Main body.

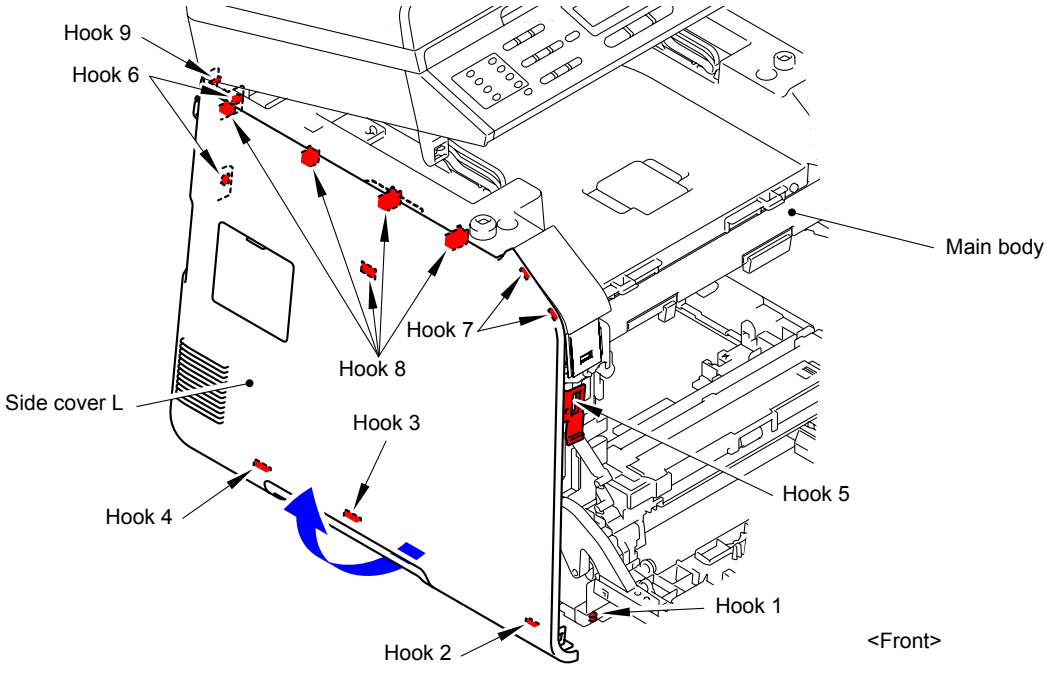


Fig. 3-20

* Inside of Side cover L

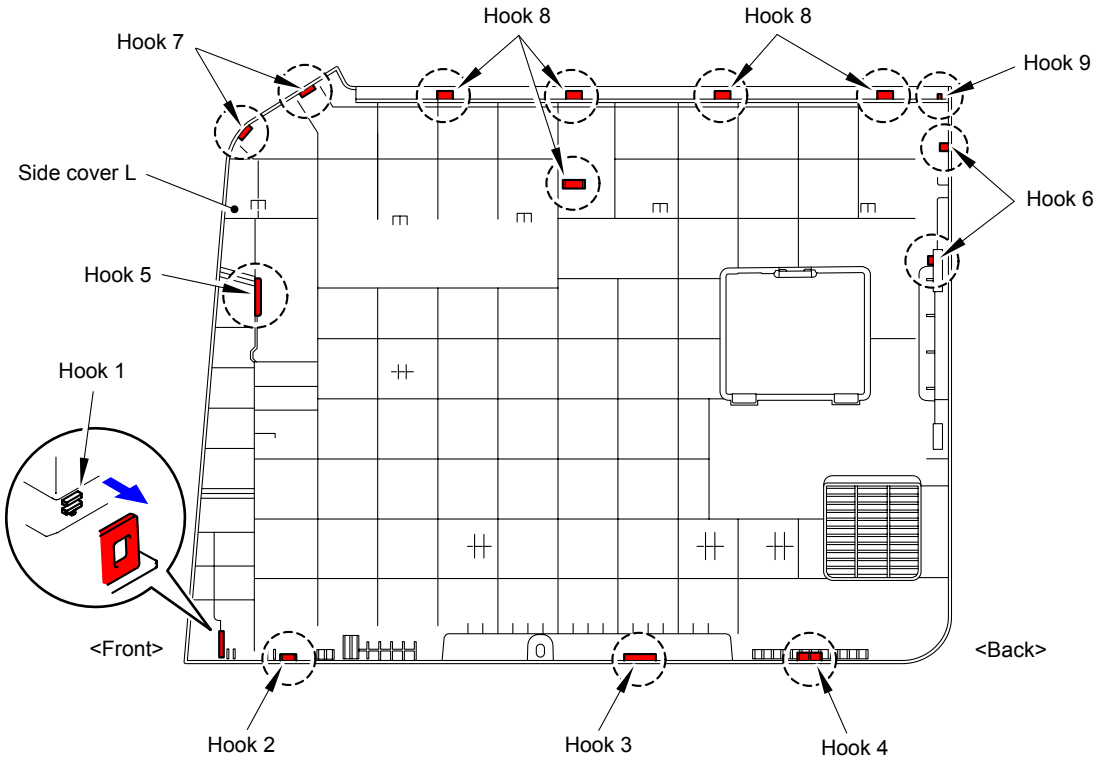


Fig. 3-21

(6) Remove the Access cover from the Side cover L.

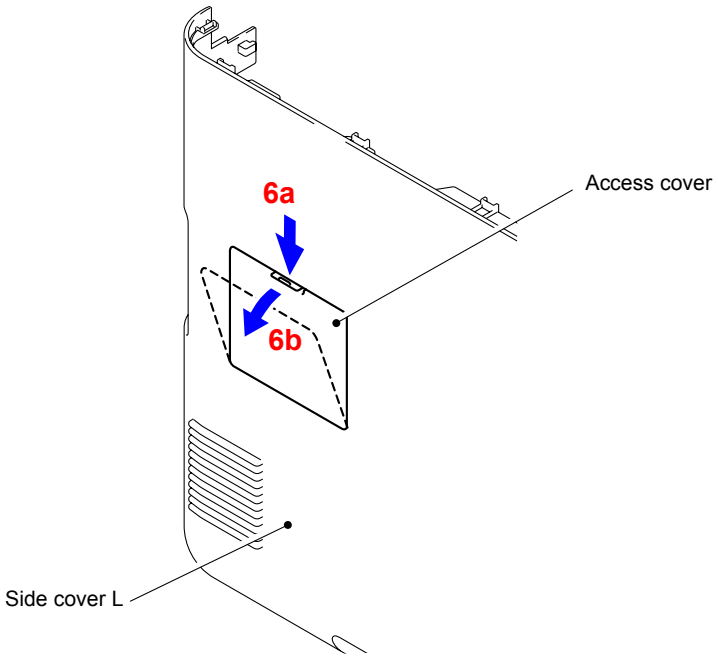


Fig. 3-22

9.6 Side Cover R ASSY

(1) Remove the Taptite bind S M3x8 screw from the front of the Side cover R ASSY.

(2) Remove the Taptite bind B M4x12 screw from the side of the Side cover R ASSY.

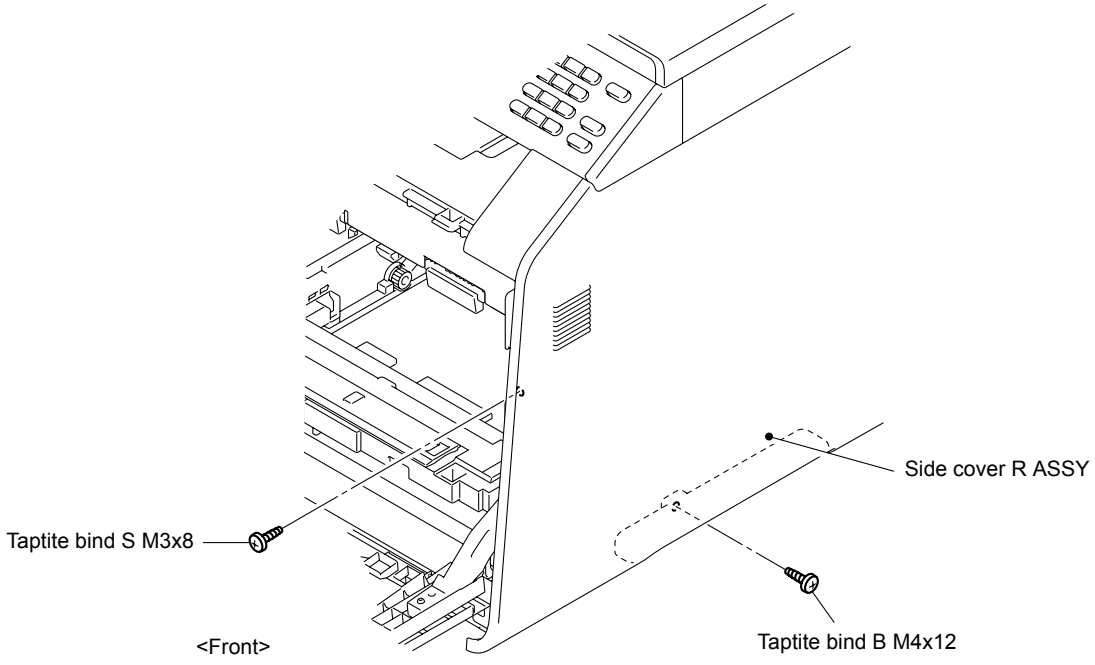


Fig. 3-23

(3) Remove the two Taptite bind S M3x8 screws from the back of the Side cover R ASSY.

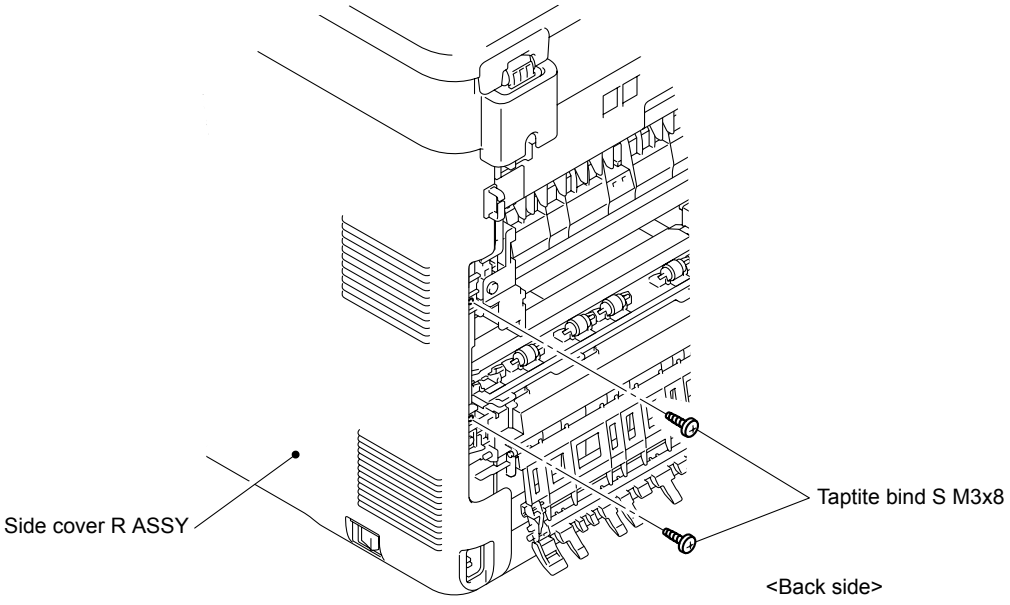


Fig. 3-24

(4) Release the Hooks 1 and 2 at the same time, and then release the Hooks 3 to 6 in numerical order. Release the Hook 7. Release the Hooks 8 and 9 to remove the Side cover R ASSY from the Main body.

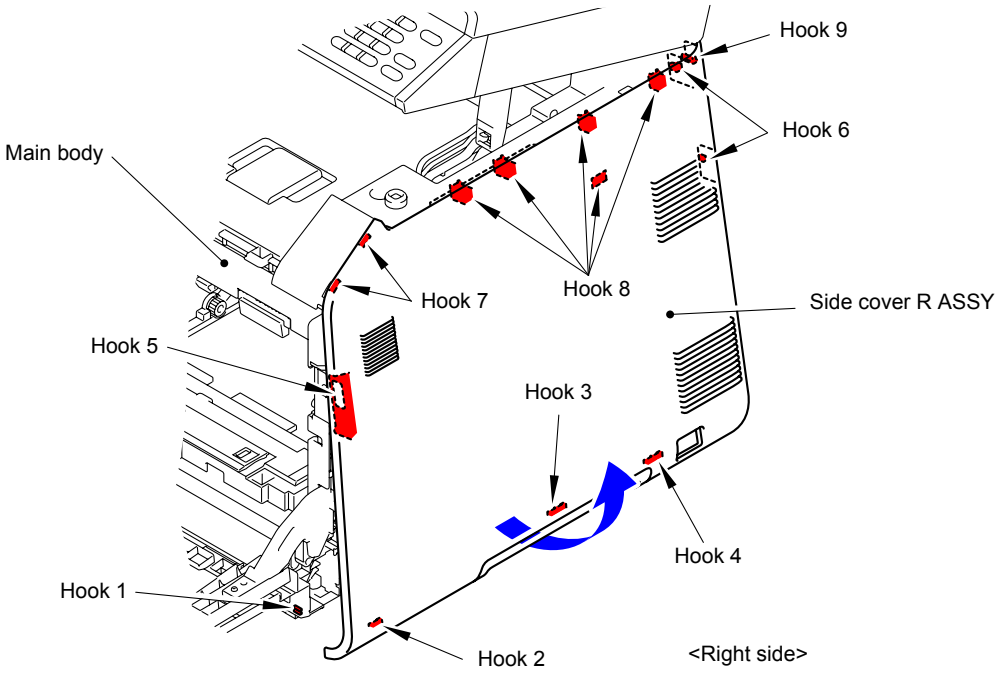


Fig. 3-25

* Inside of Side cover R ASSY

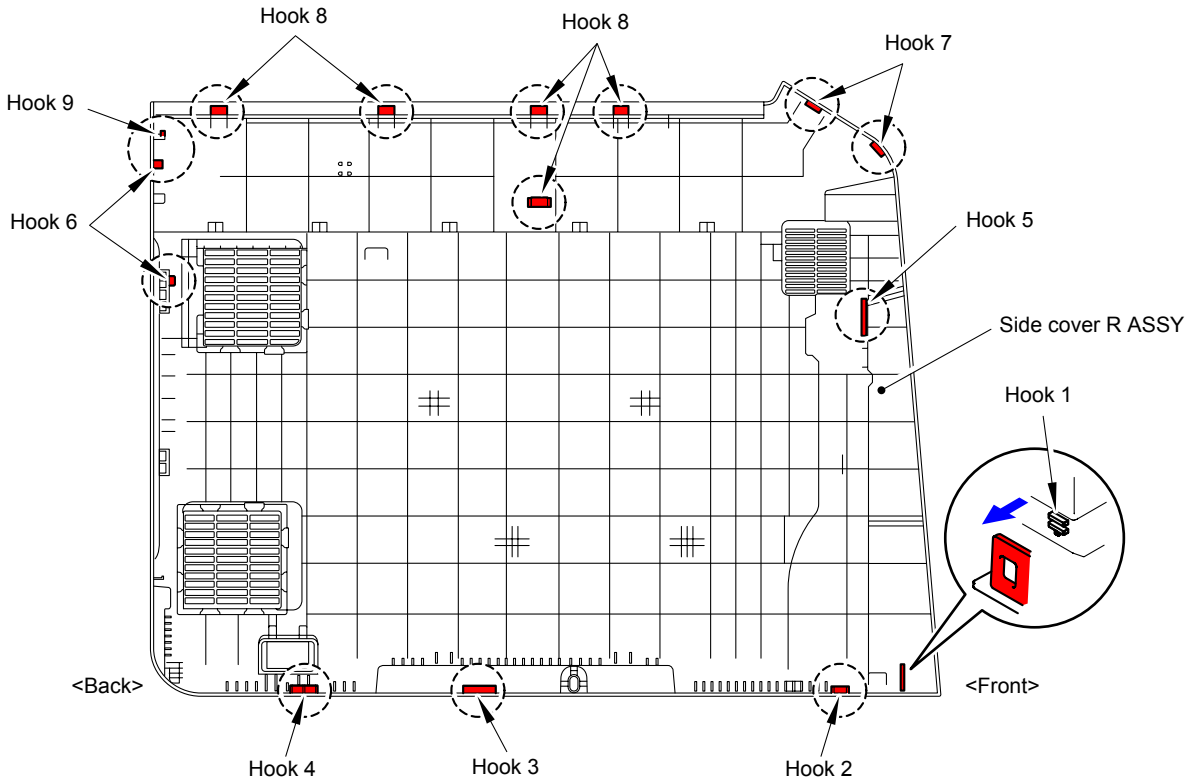


Fig. 3-26

9.7 Duplex Feed ASSY

(1) Remove the two Taptite bind B M3x12 screws to remove the Duplex feed ASSY from the Main body.

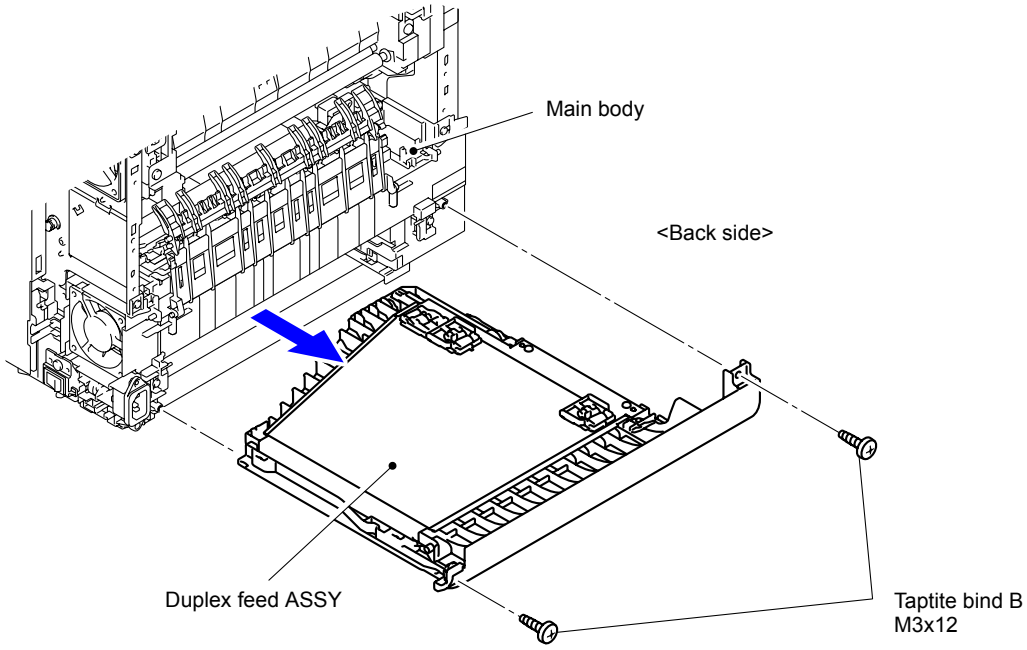


Fig. 3-27

9.8 MP Cover ASSY/MP Paper Guide ASSY

(1) Close the Front cover.

(2) Open the MP cover ASSY.

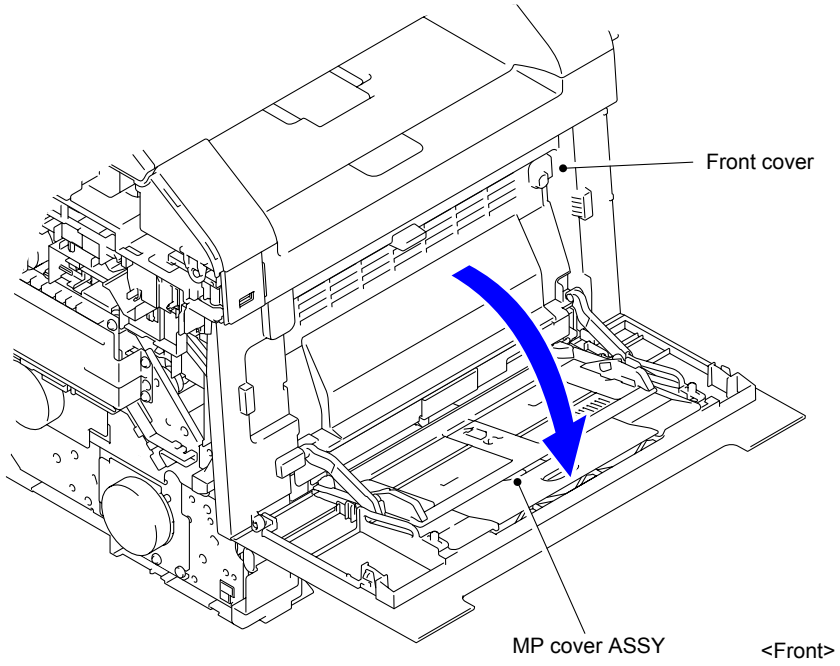


Fig. 3-28

(3) Remove the Pin of the MP link L and R from the MP cover ASSY.

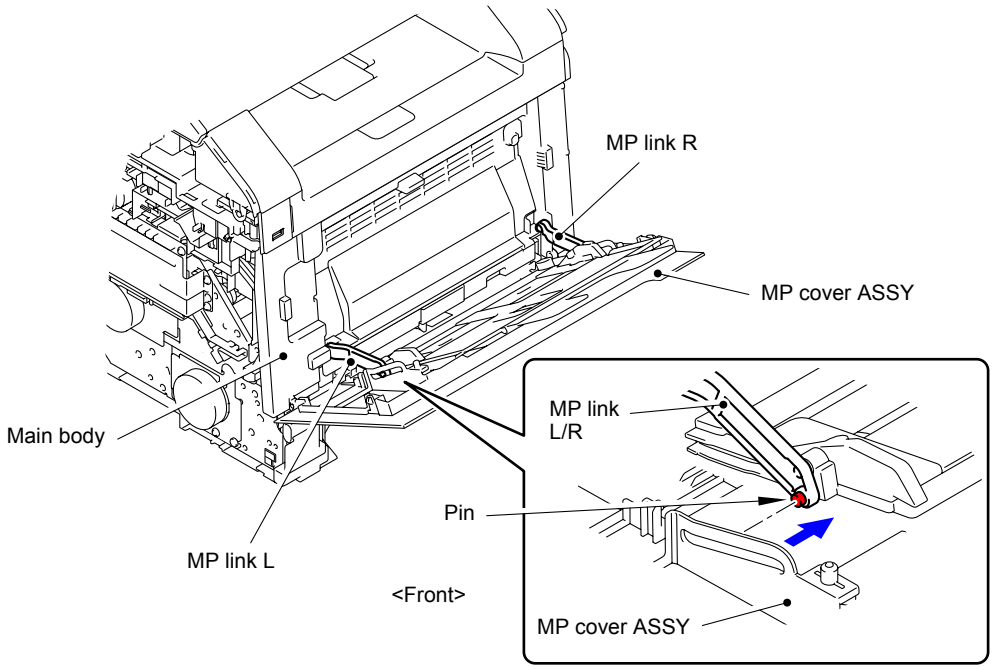


Fig. 3-29

(4) Remove the Pin of the MP link L and R from the MP paper guide ASSY.

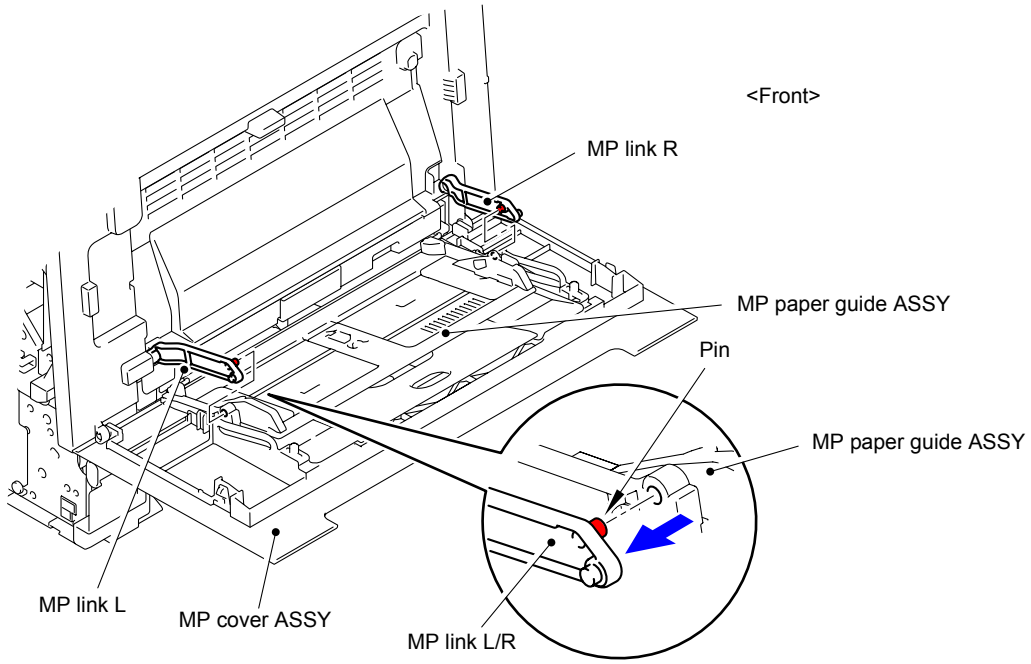


Fig. 3-30

(5) Remove the MP paper guide ASSY from the MP cover ASSY.

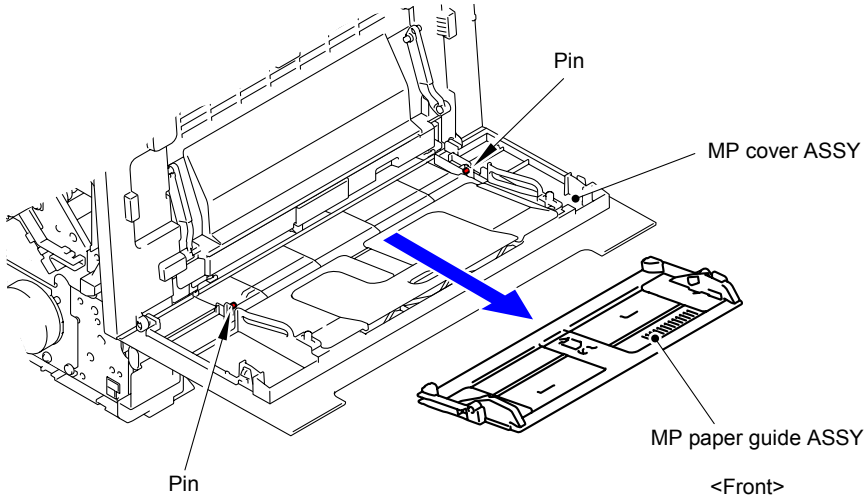


Fig. 3-31

(6) Remove the two Pins to remove the MP cover ASSY from the Front cover.

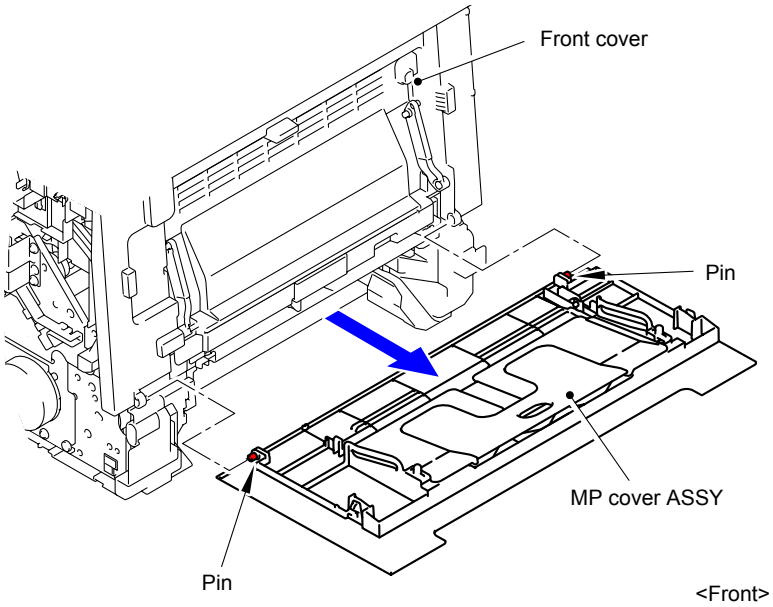


Fig. 3-32

9.9 MP Link L/R

(1) Remove the MP link L and R from the Front cover.

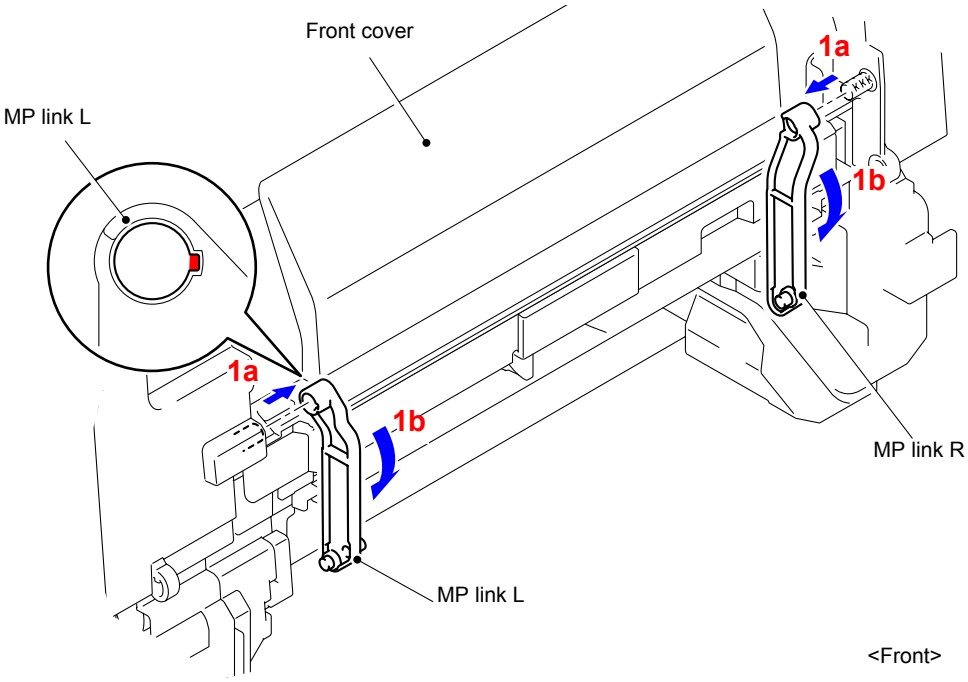


Fig. 3-33

9.10 Front Cover Arm L/R

(1) Open the Front cover.

(2) Release the Hook to remove the Forced develop release link from the Front cover.

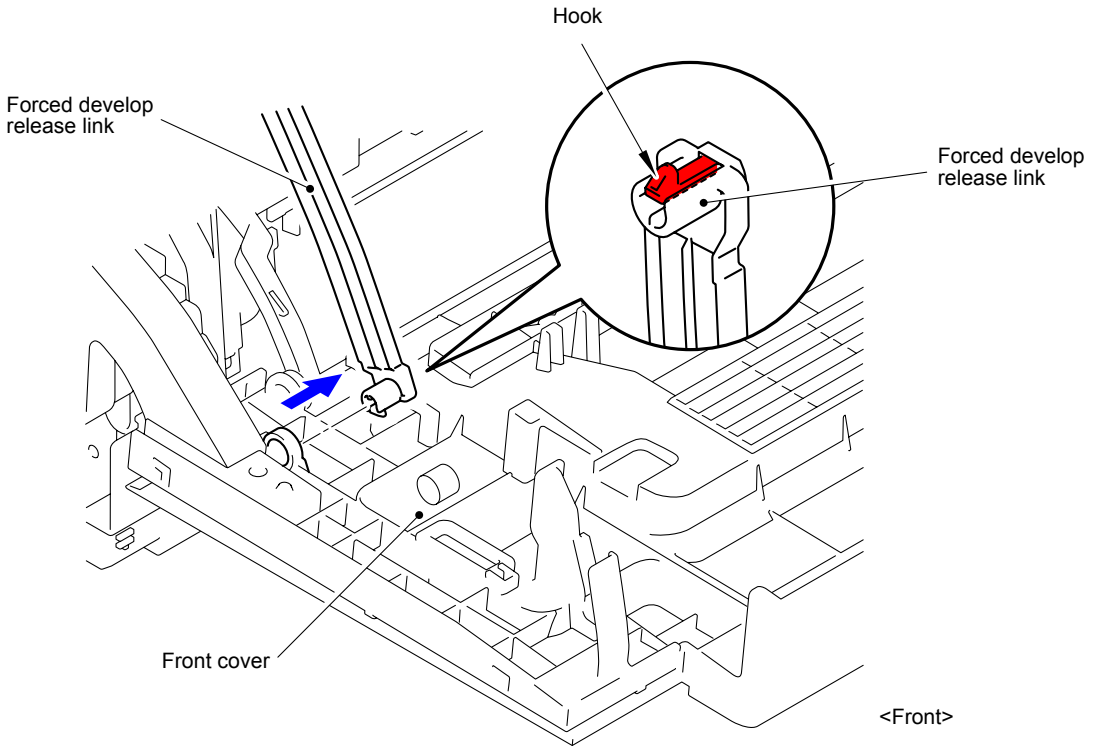


Fig. 3-34

(3) Release the Hook to remove the Joint release link from the Front cover.

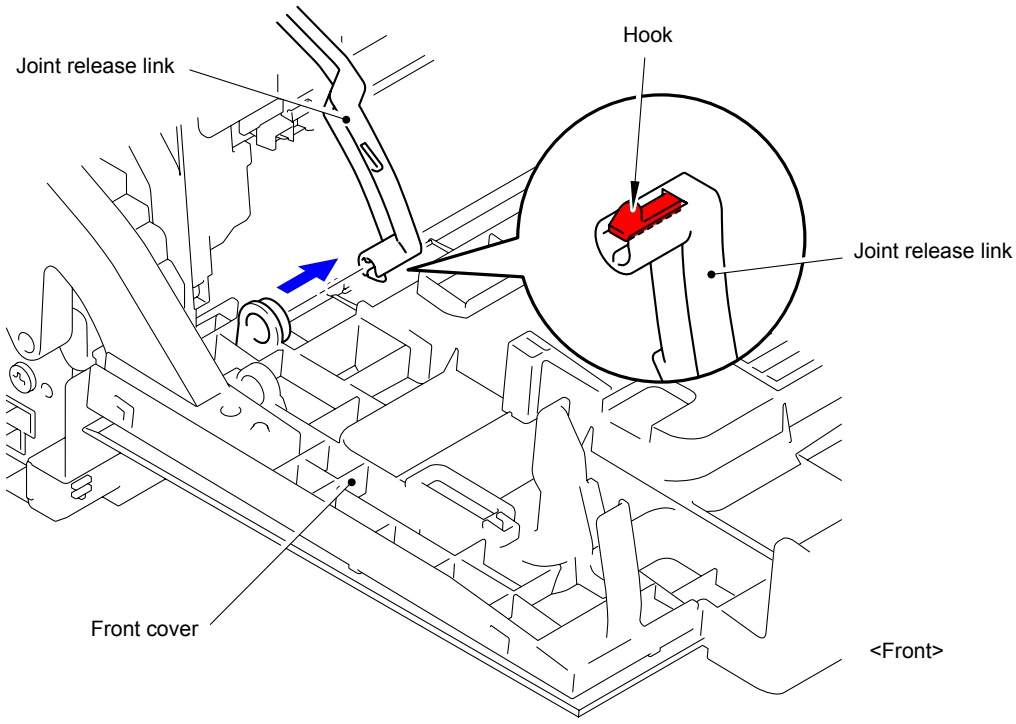


Fig. 3-35

(4) Remove the Front cover from the Main body.

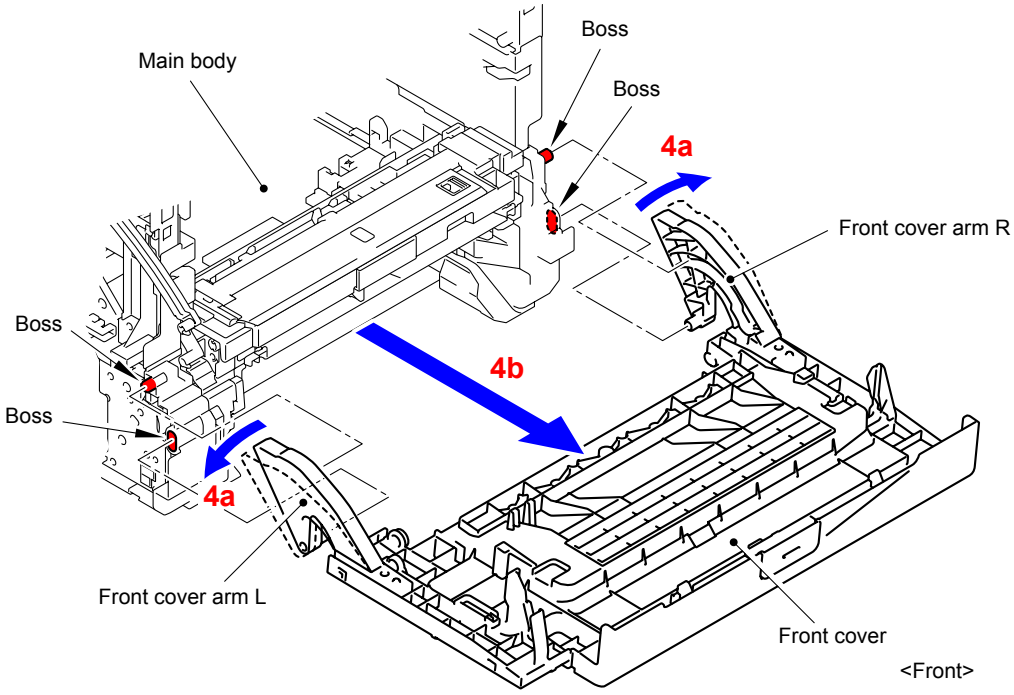


Fig. 3-36

(5) Remove the Taptite bind B M4x12 screw from the Front cover arm L.

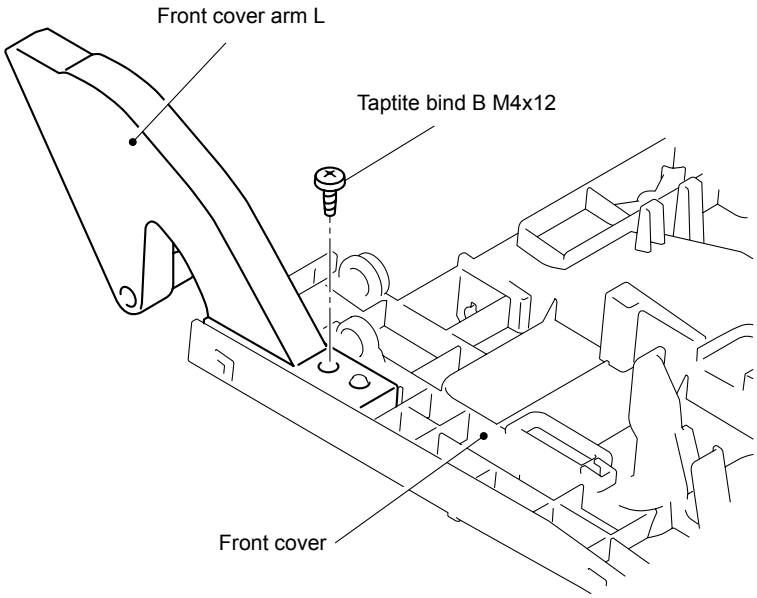


Fig. 3-37

(6) Release the Hook to remove the Front cover arm L from the Front cover.

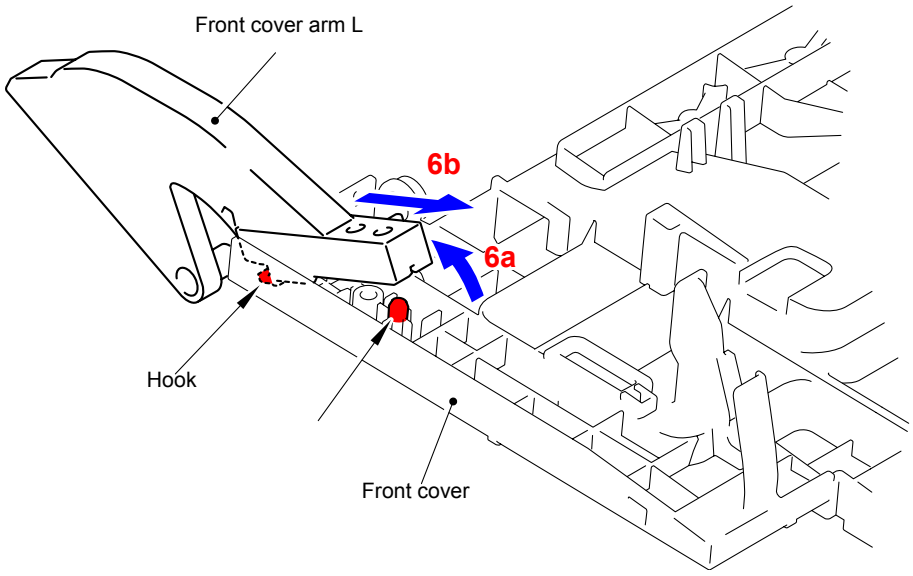


Fig. 3-38

(7) Remove the Taptite bind B M4x12 screw from the Front cover arm R.

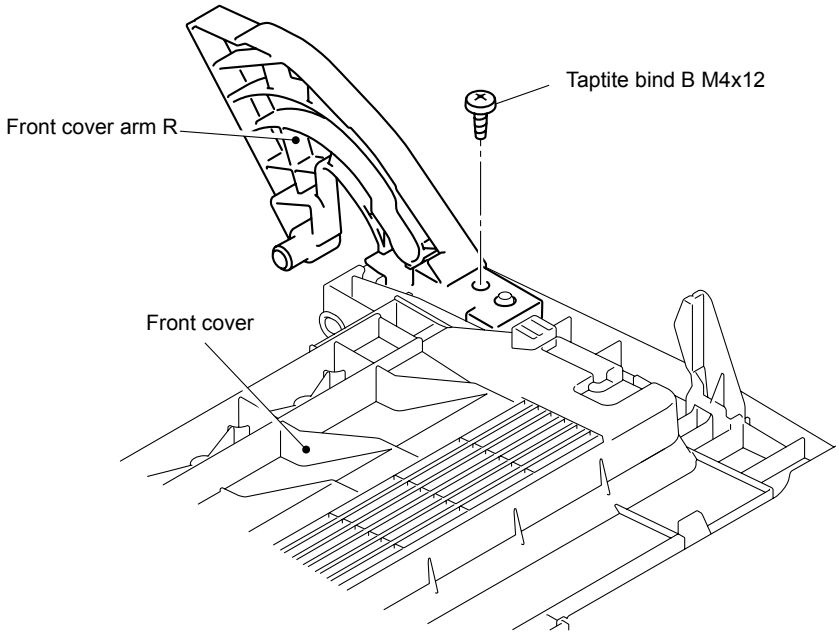


Fig. 3-39

(8) Release the Hook to remove the Front cover arm R from the Front cover.

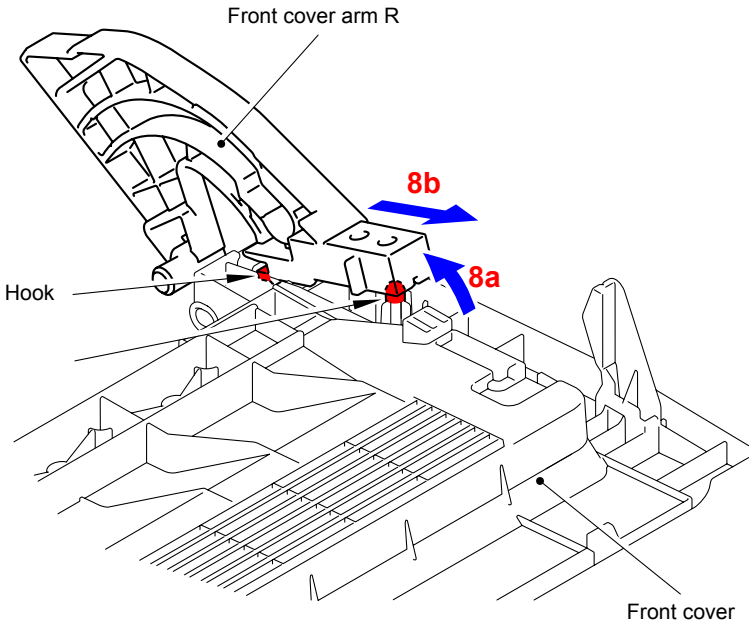


Fig. 3-40

9.11 Front Cover Release Button/Front Cover Release Button Spring

(1) Fasten the Hook of the Front cover release button to the Rib of the Front cover.

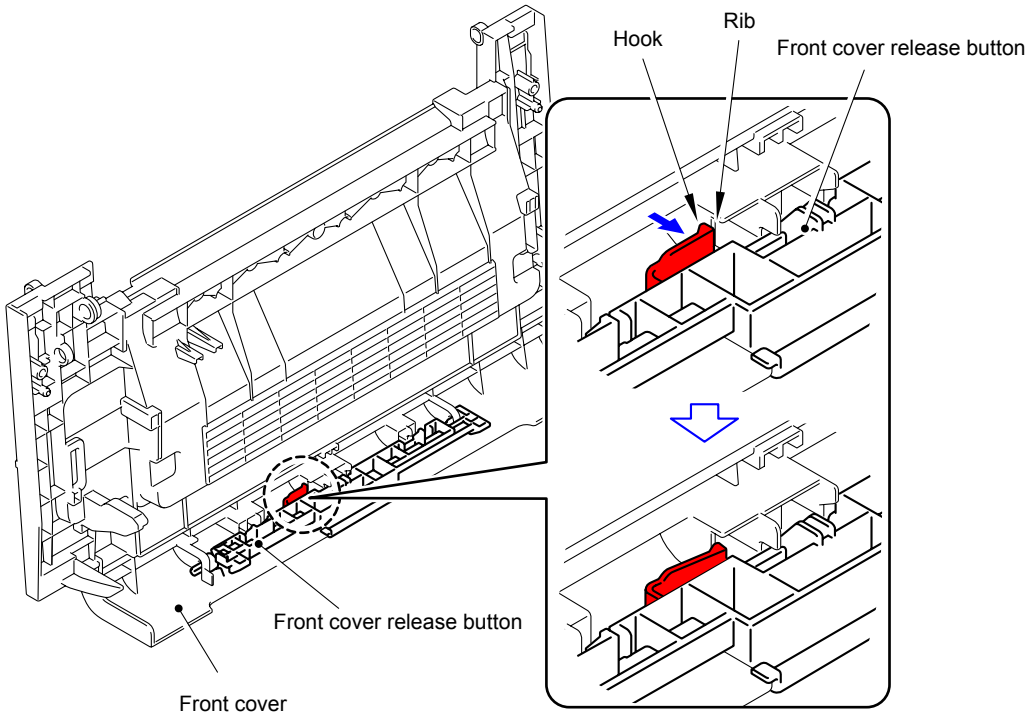


Fig. 3-41

(2) Tilt the Front cover release button in the direction of the arrow 2.

(3) Slide it in the direction of the arrow 3 to remove the shaft, and then remove the Front cover release button from the Front cover.

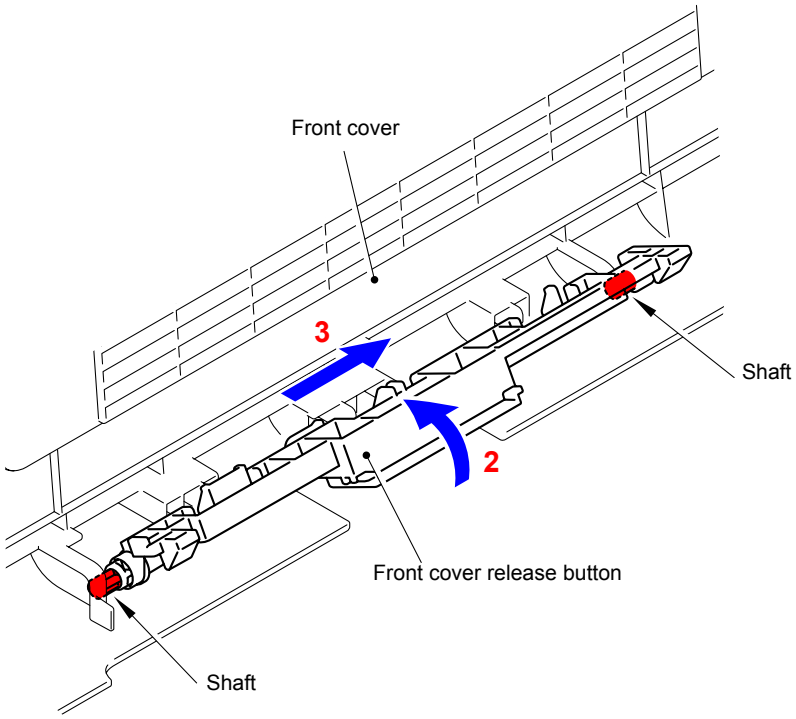


Fig. 3-42

(4) Remove the Front cover release button spring from the Front cover release button.

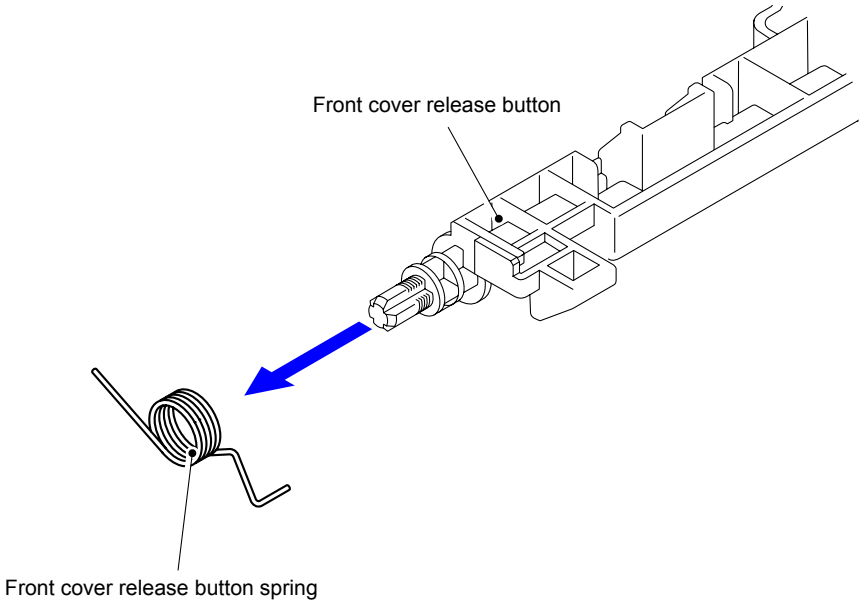


Fig. 3-43

Assembling Note:
When assembling the Front cover release button spring, assemble “A” and “B” as shown in the figure.

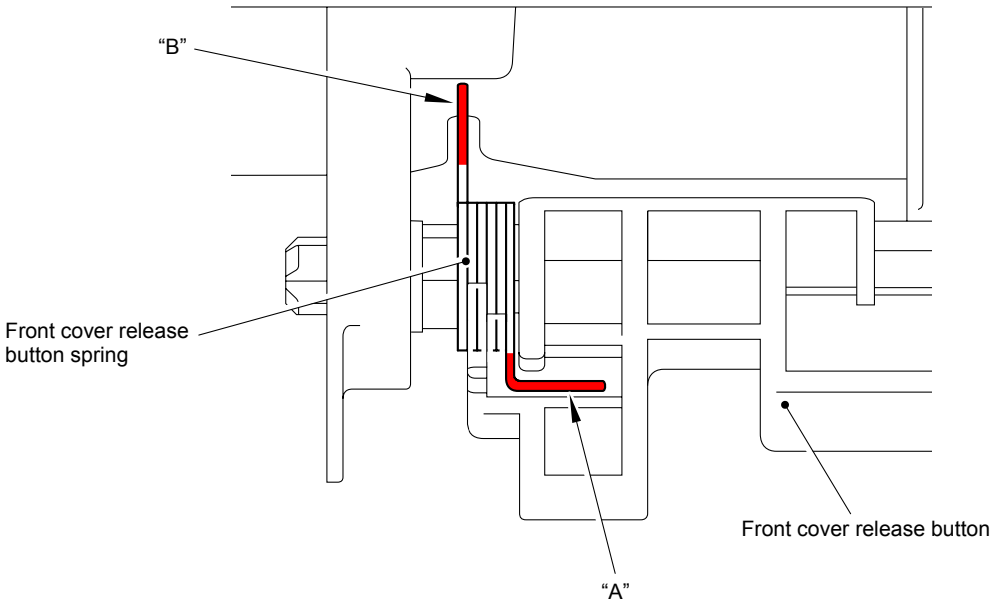


Fig. 3-44

9.12 Paper Stopper

(1) Open the Scanner unit.

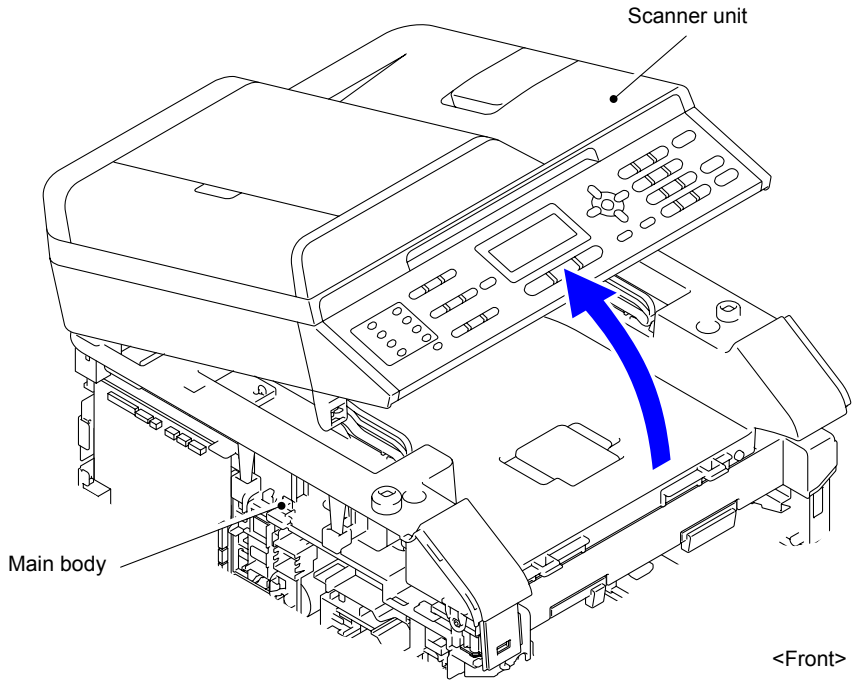


Fig. 3-45

(2) Remove the two Pins to remove the Paper stopper from the Joint cover top.

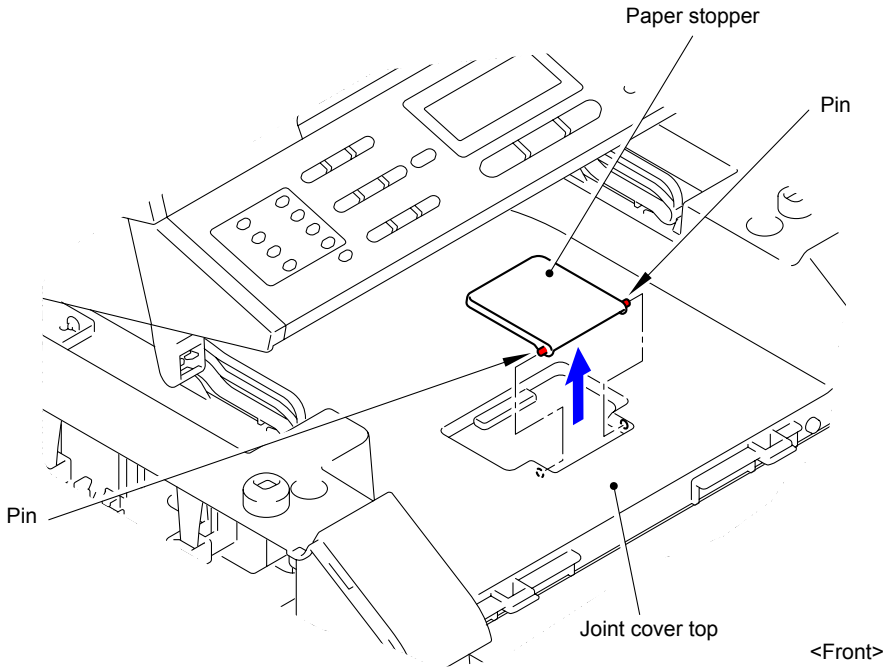


Fig. 3-46

9.13 Pull Arm L/Pull Arm R/Pull Arm Spring

(1) Open the Pull arm L and Pull arm R to release the Hooks from the joint of the Scanner unit.

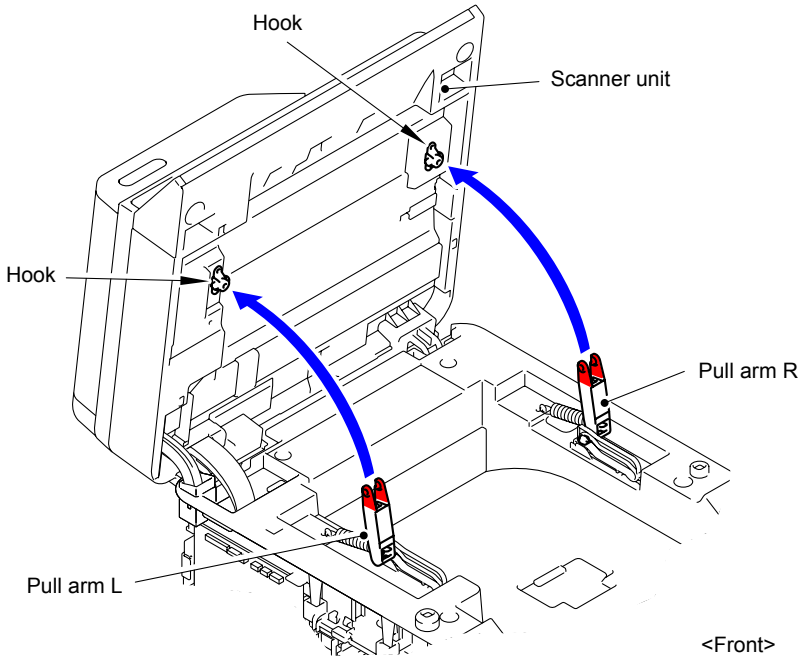


Fig. 3-47

(2) Remove the Pull arm L and Pull arm spring from the Pull arm guide L.

(3) Remove the Pull arm R and Pull arm spring from the Pull arm guide R.

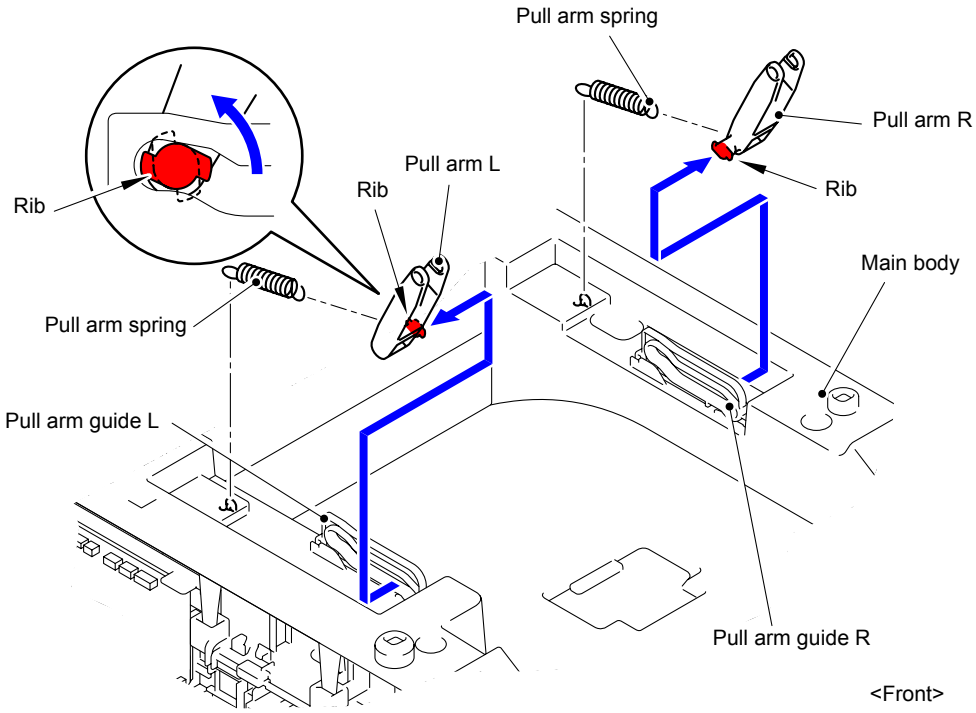


Fig. 3-48

9.14 ADF Unit

(1) Remove the Ferrite core 1 from the FFC film.

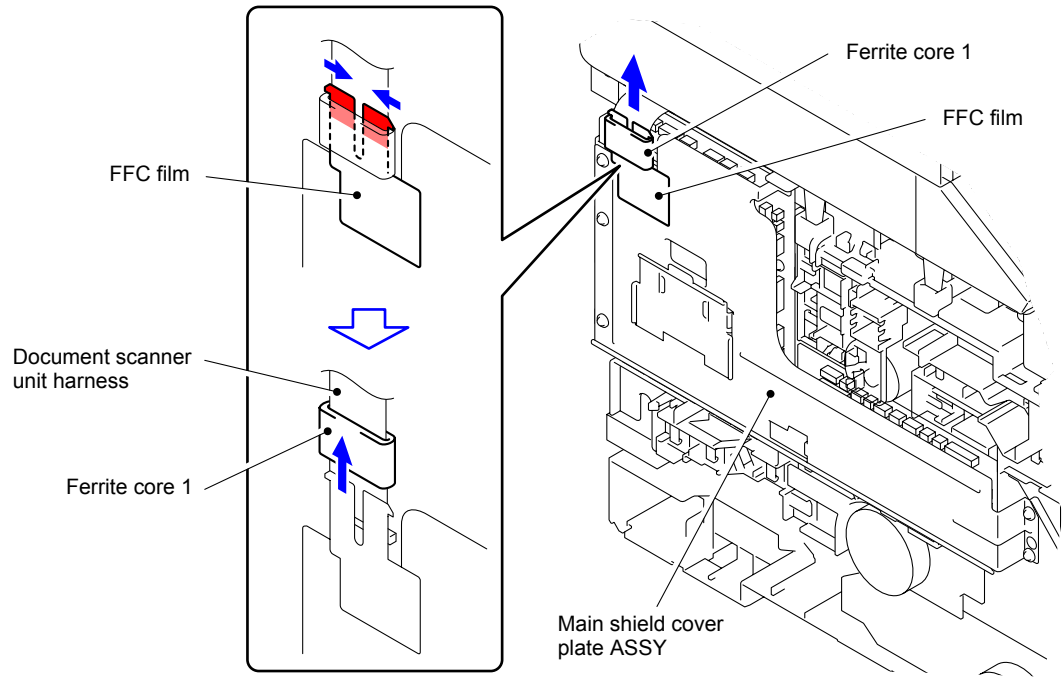


Fig. 3-49

(2) Remove the seven Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Main shield cover plate ASSY from the Main body.

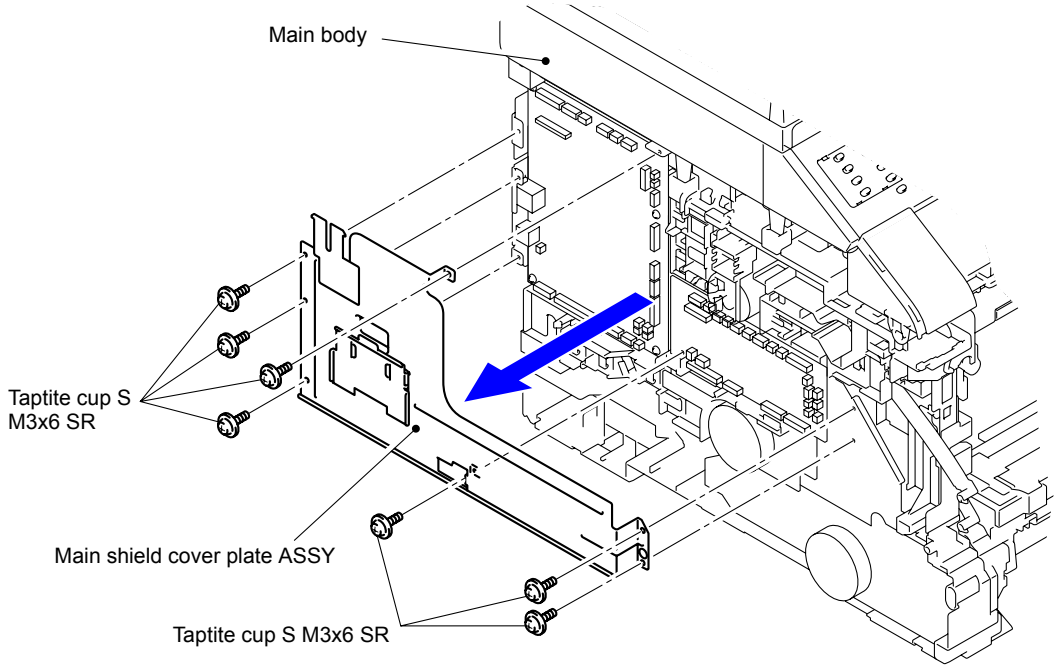


Fig. 3-50

(3) Remove one Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw each for the FB FG harness ASSY and ADF FG harness ASSY to remove them from the Main body.

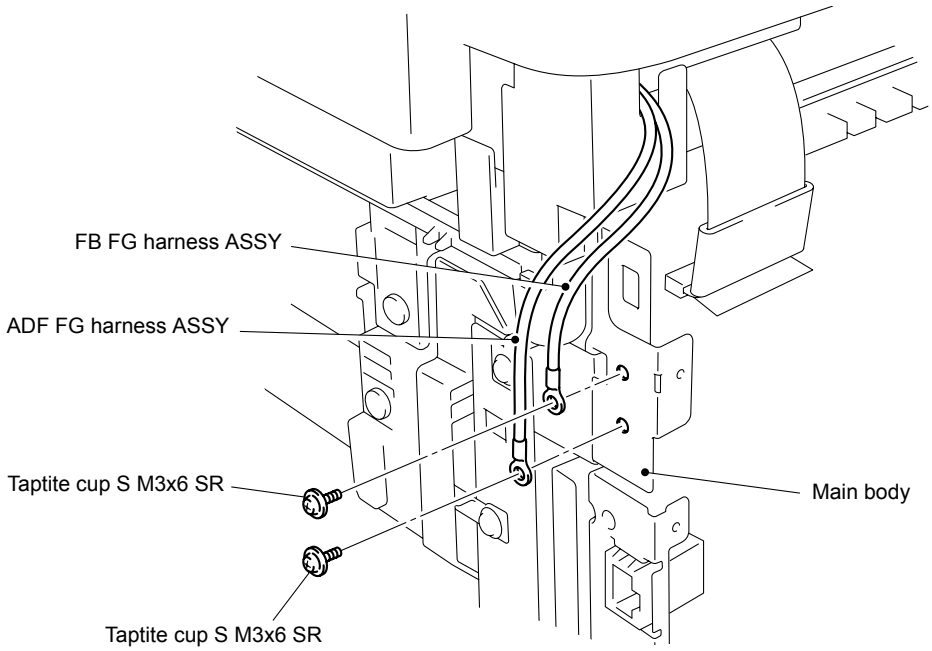


Fig. 3-51

(4) Disconnect the five Connectors (CN3, CN4, CN6, CN7, and CN8) and two Flat cables (CN1 and CN2) from the Main PCB ASSY.

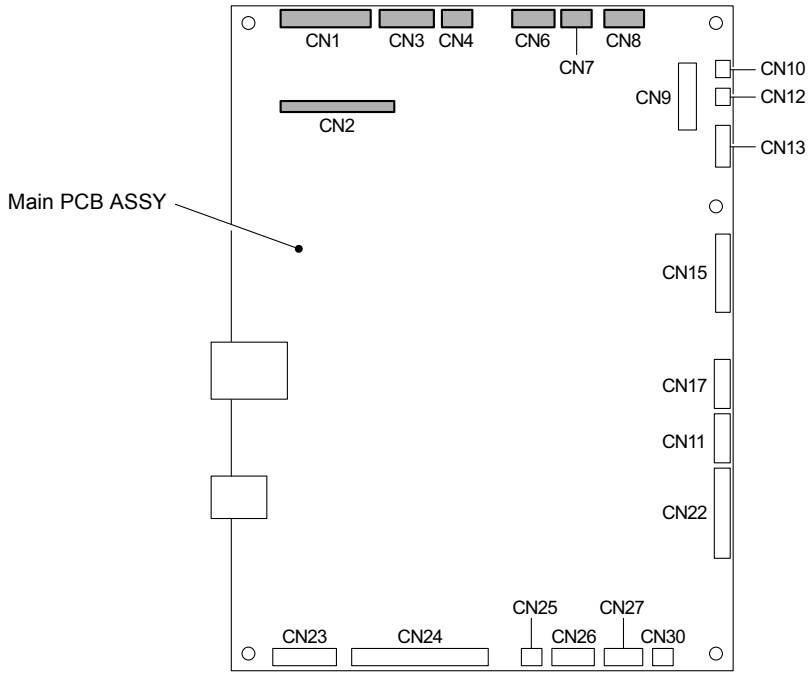


Fig. 3-52

(5) Open the Scanner unit. Remove the Ferrite core 1 from the Document scanner unit harness.

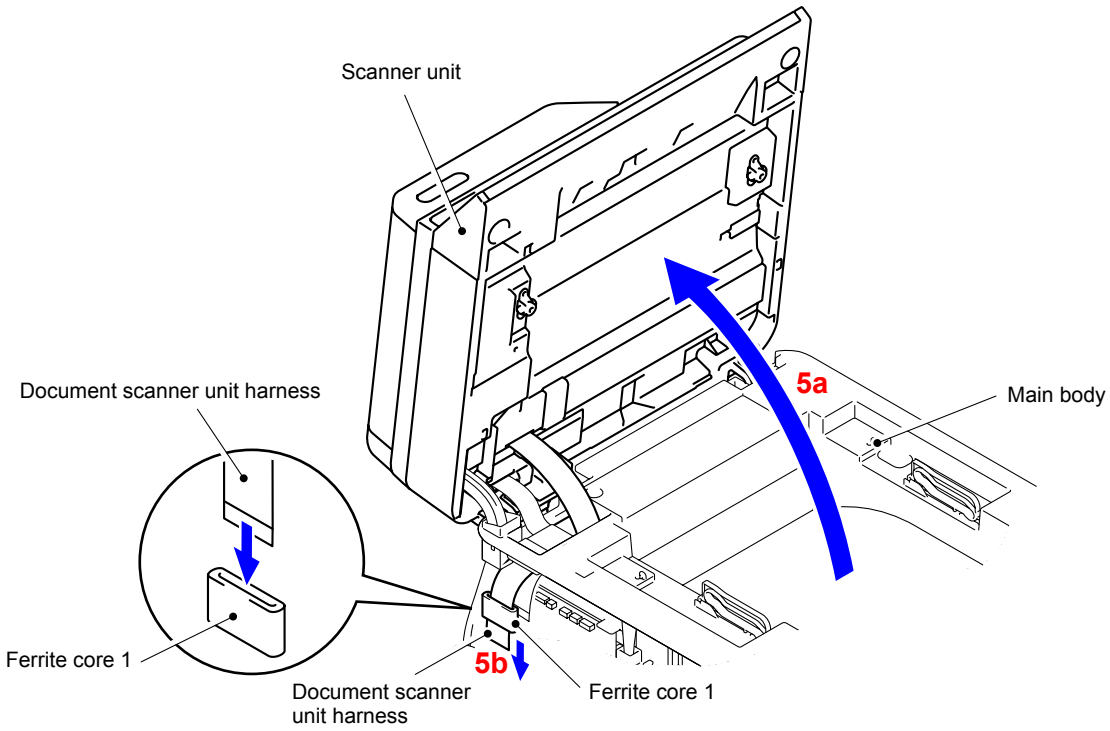


Fig. 3-53

(6) Remove the Document scanner unit harness and Second side CIS harness from the Ferrite core 2 and 3 attached to the Film.

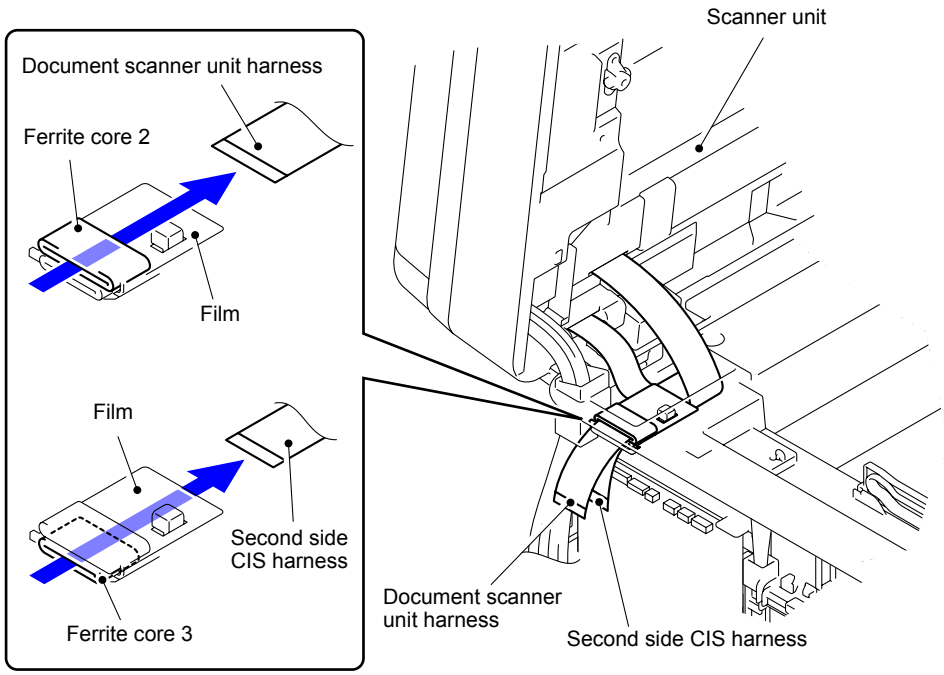


Fig. 3-54

(7) Remove the Harness from the Hook to take it out from the Hole in the Joint cover top.

(8) Take out the FB FG harness ASSY and ADF FG harness ASSY from the Hole in the Joint cover top.

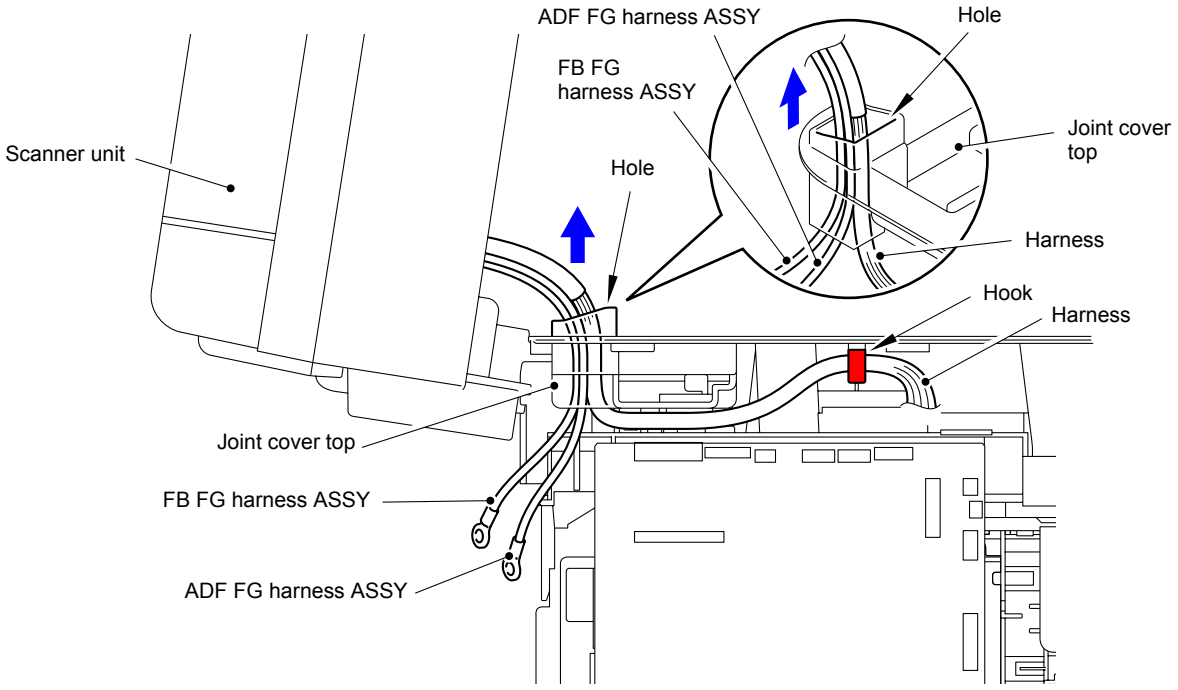


Fig. 3-55

(9) Change the angle of the Scanner unit as shown in the figure to remove it from the Main body.

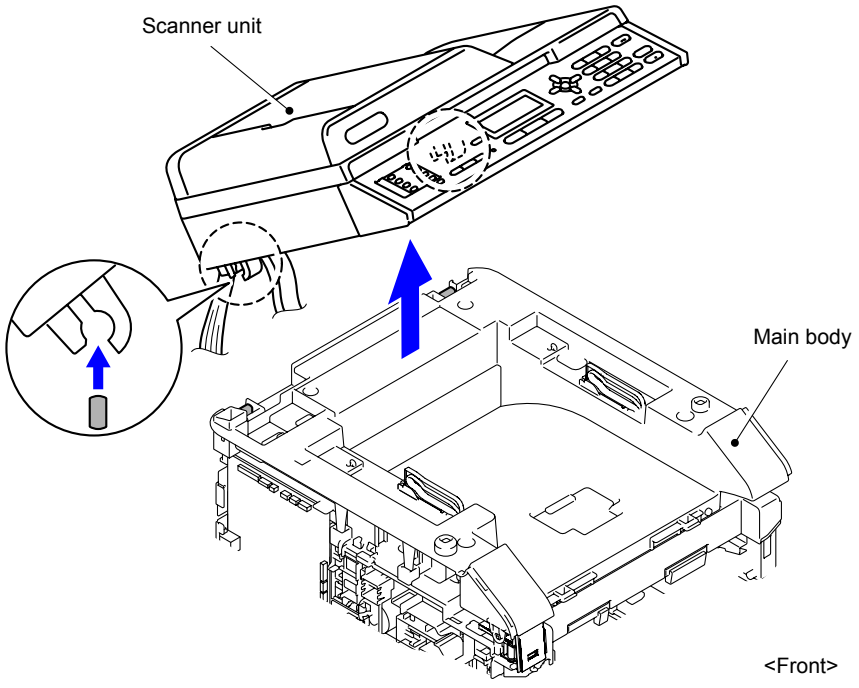


Fig. 3-56

(10) Remove the two Taptite bind B M4x12 screws to open the ADF unit.

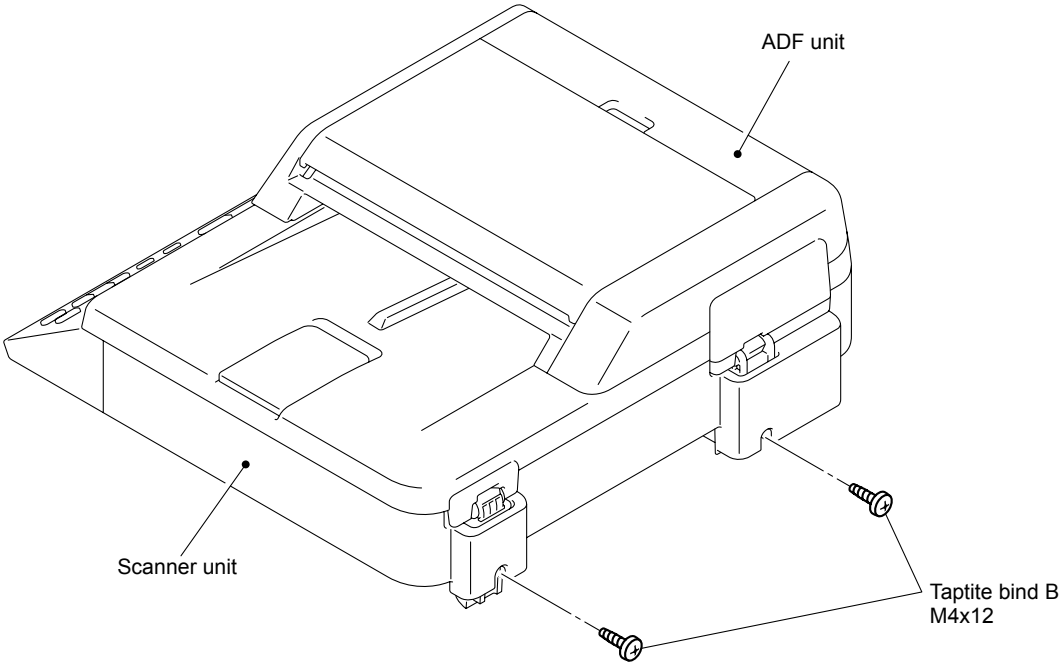


Fig. 3-57

(11) Lift the ADF unit until the Hinge ASSY L and Hinge R are removed from the Scanner unit.

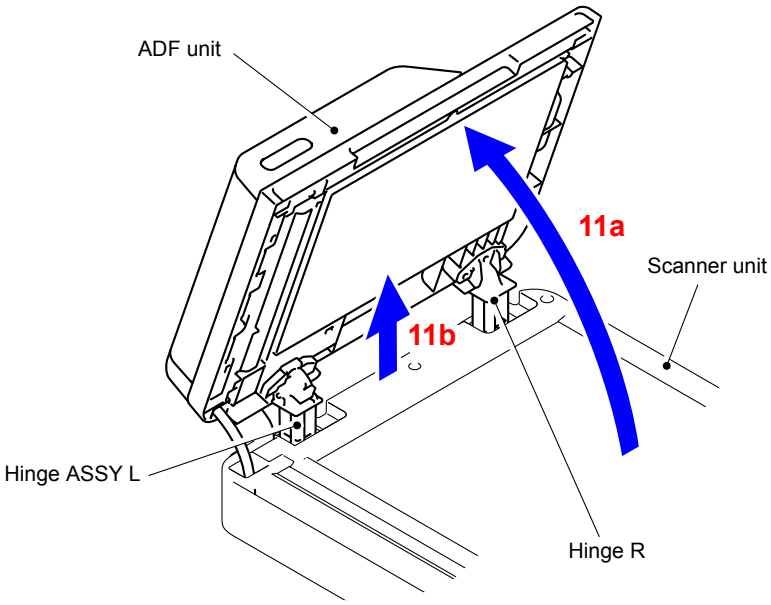


Fig. 3-58

(12) Release the three Hooks to remove the FFC holder ASSY from the Scanner unit.

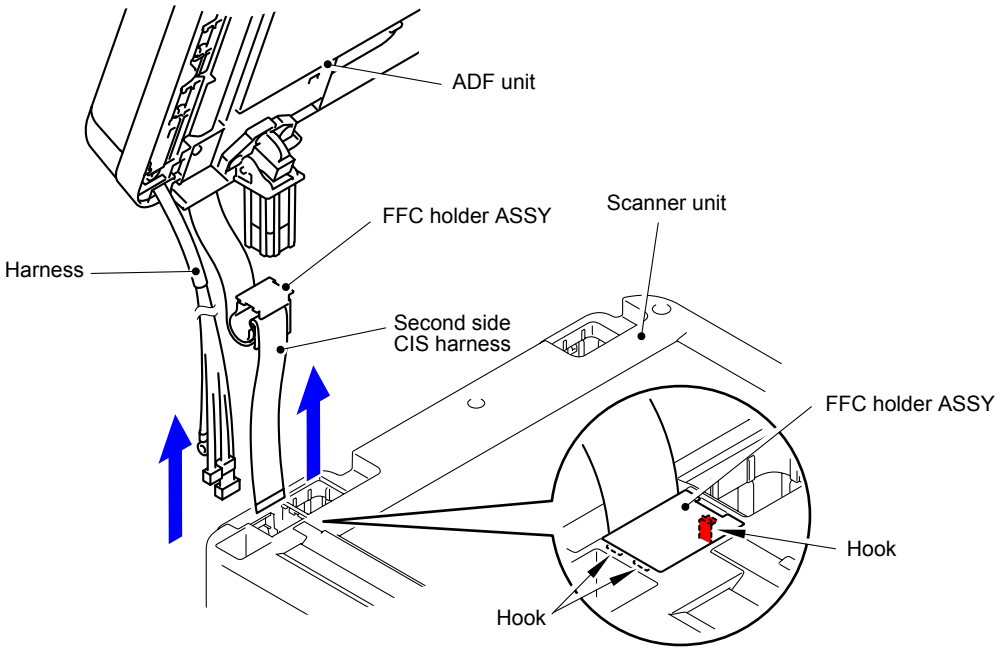


Fig. 3-59

Assembling Note:
When the Scanner unit is replaced, be sure to fold and assemble the Document scanner unit harness as shown in the figure.

<A4 Model>

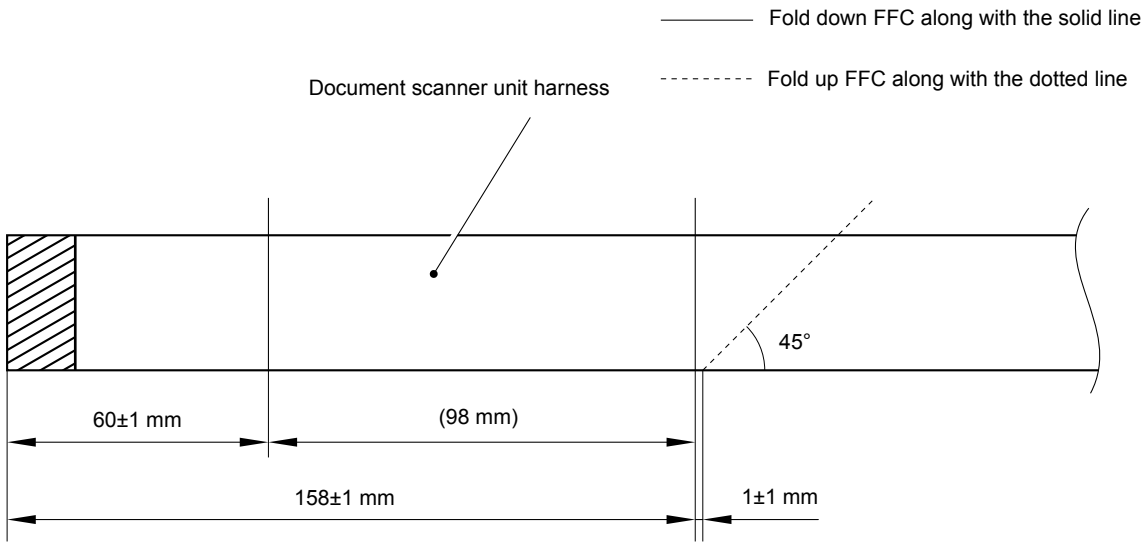


Fig. 3-60

<Legal Model>

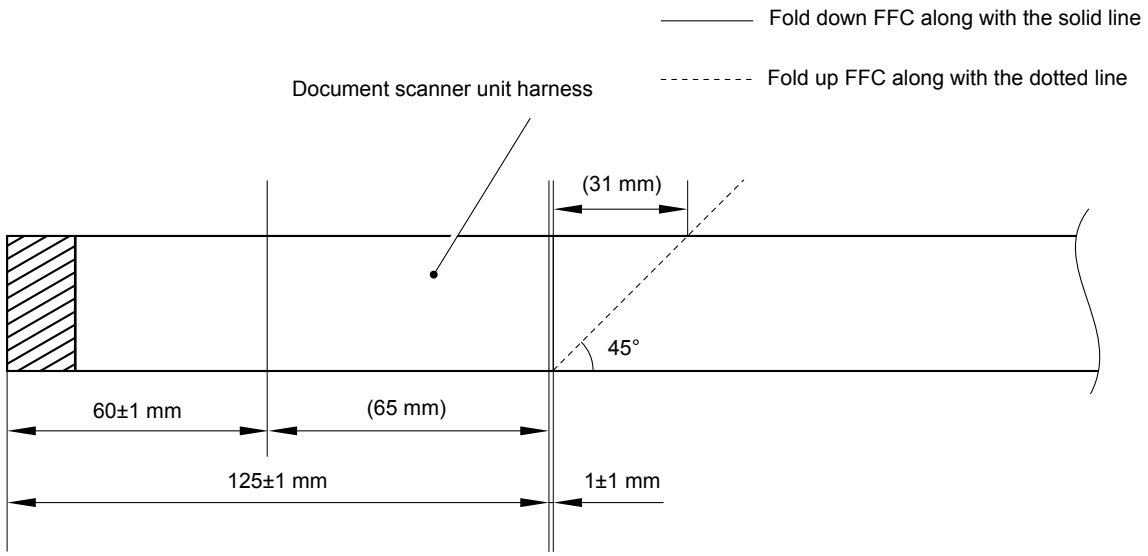


Fig. 3-61

Harness routing: Refer to " 12 ADF", " 13 Document Scanner", and " 14 Panel Unit"

9.15 Hinge ASSY L

(1) Turn the ADF unit upside down.

(2) Remove the three Taptite cup S M3x12 screws to remove the Hinge ASSY L from the ADF unit.

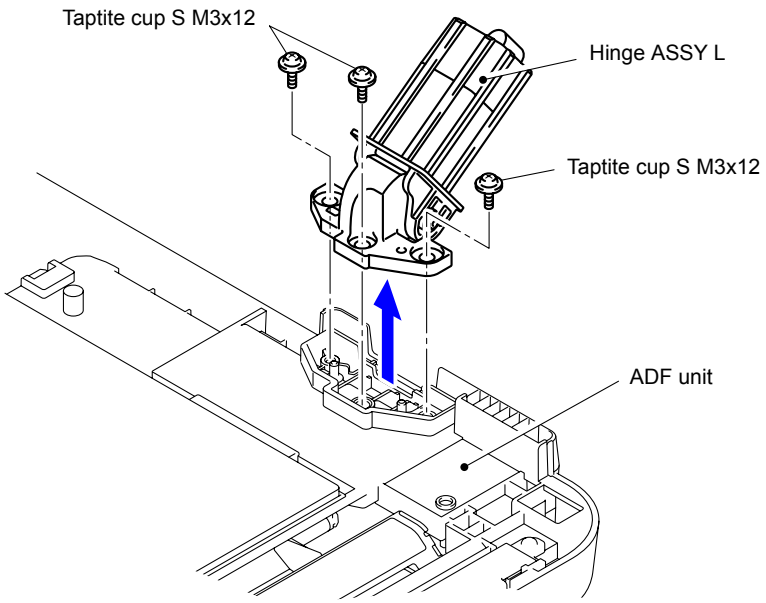


Fig. 3-62

9.16 Hinge R/Hinge R Support/Hinge Arm R

(1) Remove the Taptite cup B M3x10 screw to remove the Hinge R and Hinge R support from the ADF unit.

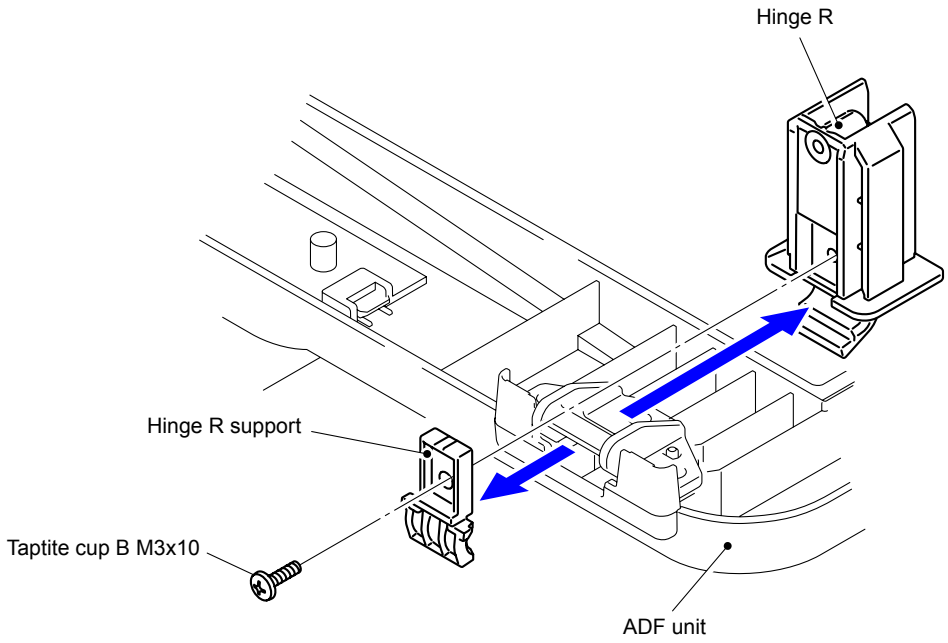


Fig. 3-63

(2) Remove the three Taptite cup B M3x10 screws to remove the Hinge arm R from the ADF unit.

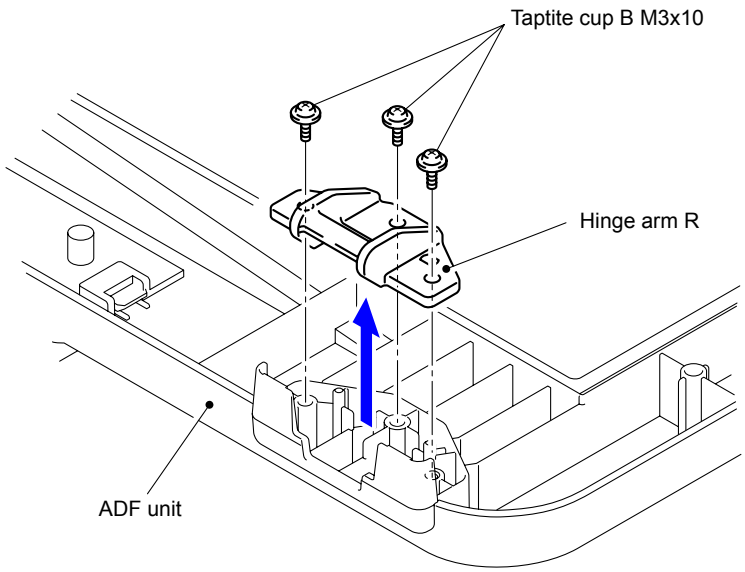


Fig. 3-64

9.17 Document Stopper

(1) Return the ADF unit to the original position.

(2) Remove the two Pins to remove the Document stopper from the ADF unit.

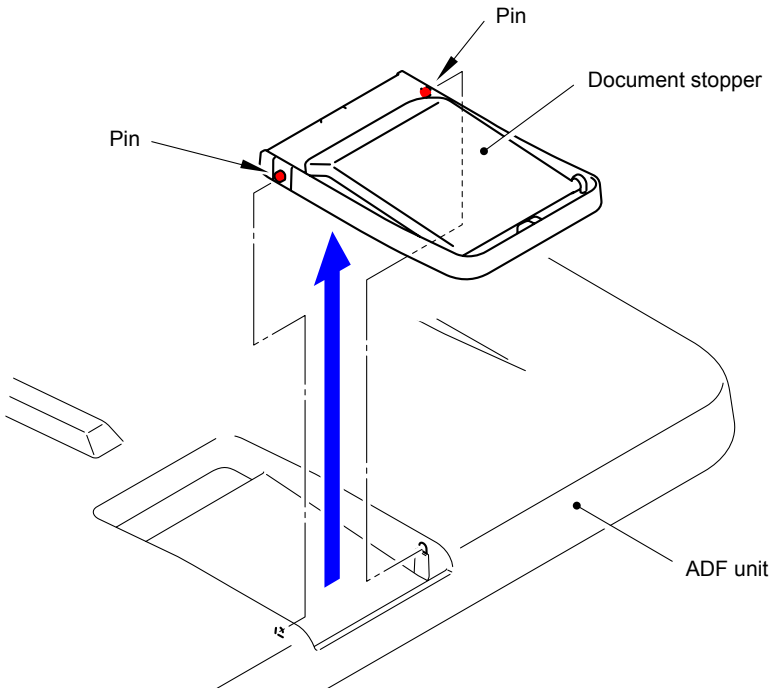


Fig. 3-65

9.18 Document Sub Tray

(1) Open the Document sub tray.

(2) Remove the two Pins to remove the Document sub tray from the ADF unit.

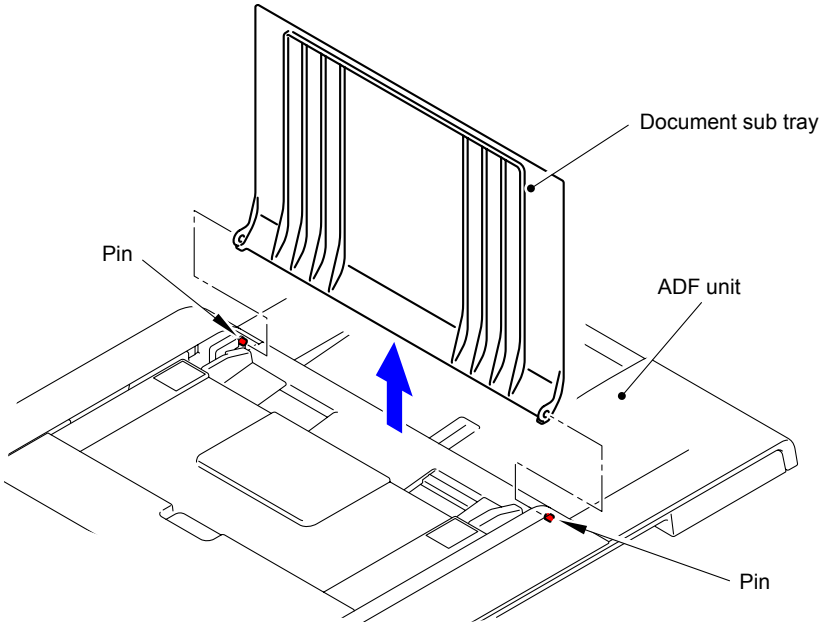


Fig. 3-66

9.19 ADF Cover ASSY

(1) Open the ADF cover ASSY.

(2) Remove the two Pins to remove the ADF cover ASSY from the ADF unit.

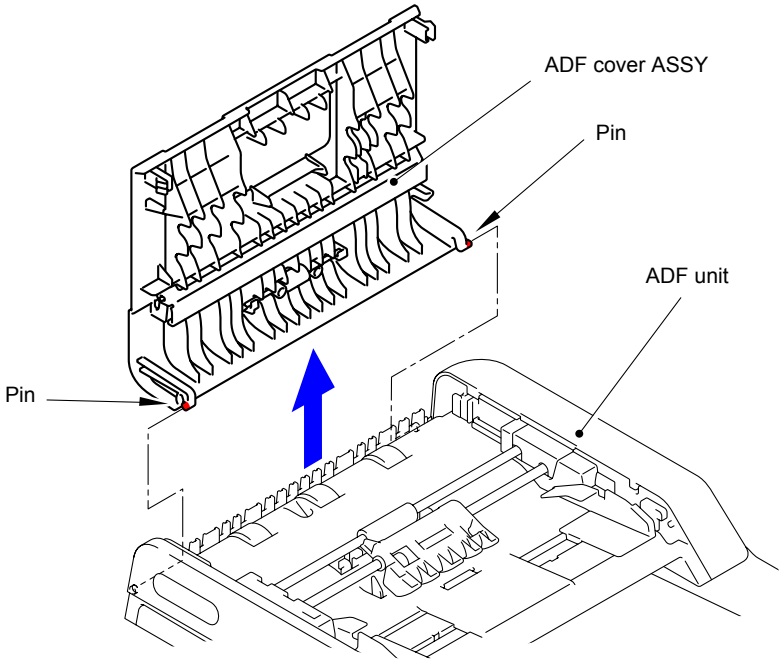


Fig. 3-67

9.20 Document Hold ASSY/Earth Spring

(1) As pressing the Document hold ASSY, slide it in the direction of the arrow 1b.

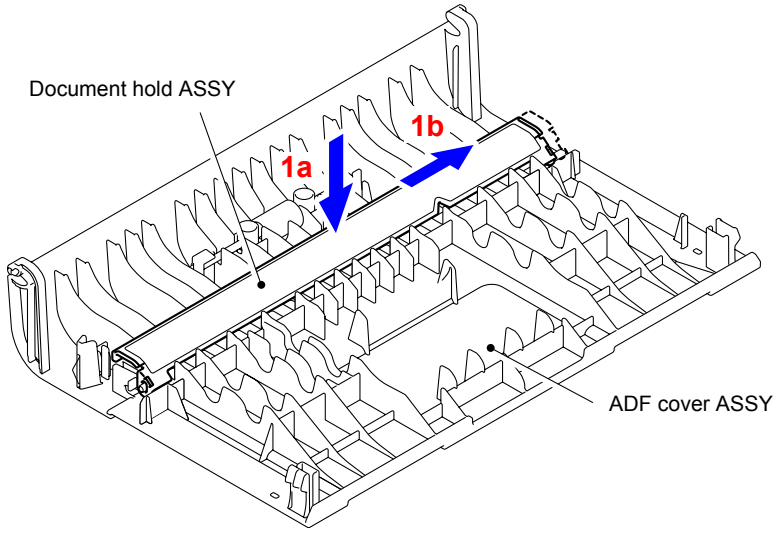


Fig. 3-68

(2) Remove the Pin "a" from the Hook of the Document hold ASSY to remove the Document hold ASSY from the ADF cover ASSY.

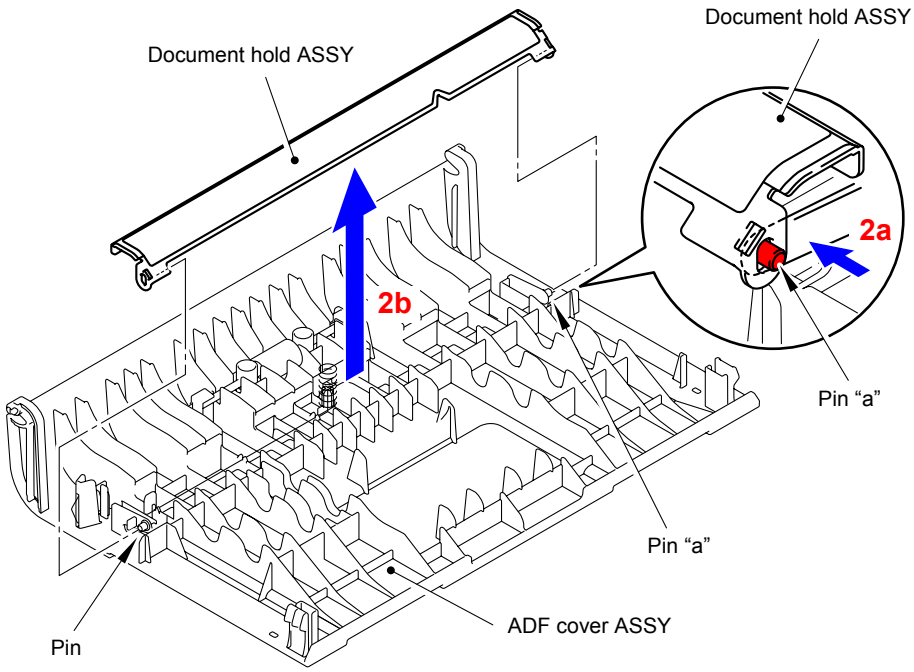


Fig. 3-69

(3) Remove the Earth spring from the ADF cover ASSY.

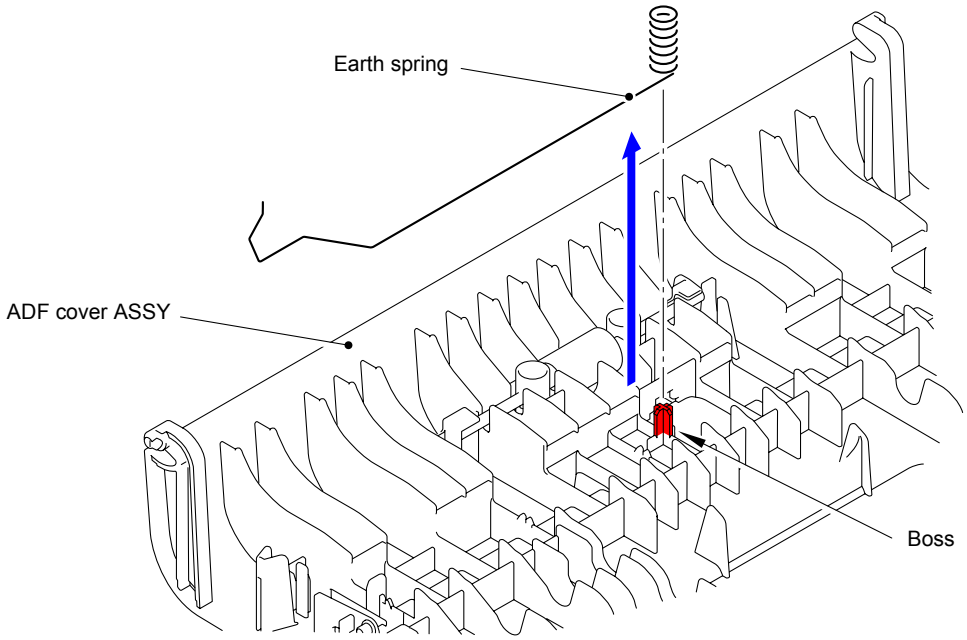


Fig. 3-70

Assembling Note:
When assembling the Earth spring, be sure to assemble it as shown in the figure below.

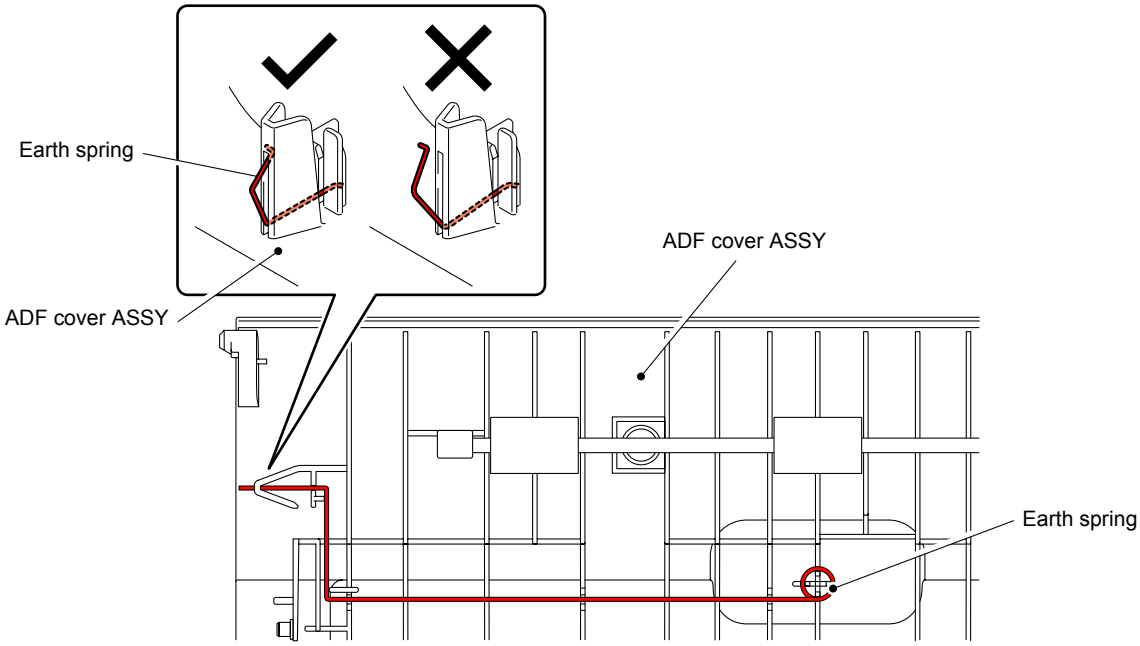


Fig. 3-71

9.21 Gear Cover

(1) Release the two Hooks of the ADF unit.

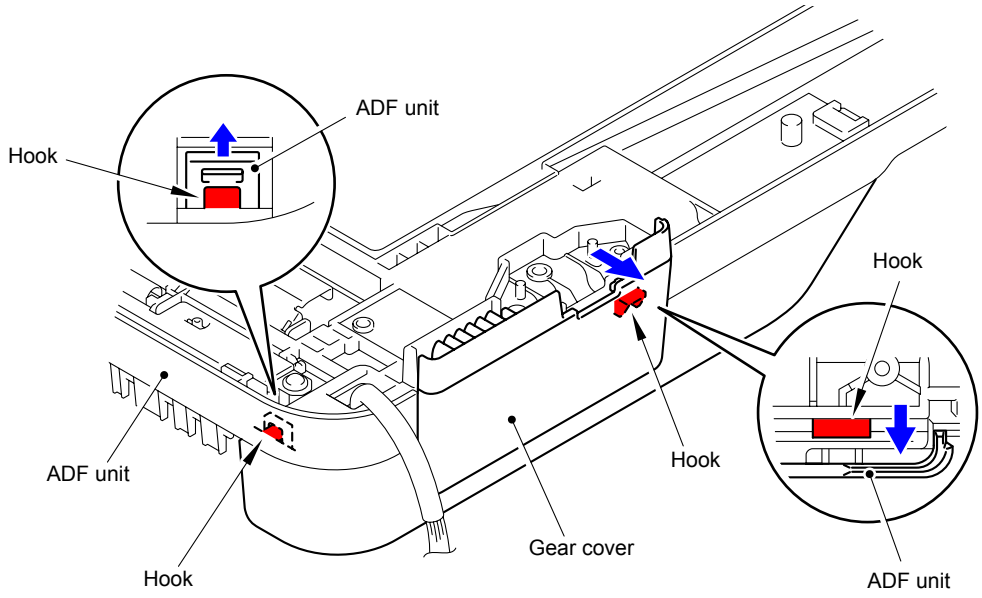


Fig. 3-72

(2) Remove the Gear cover from the ADF unit.

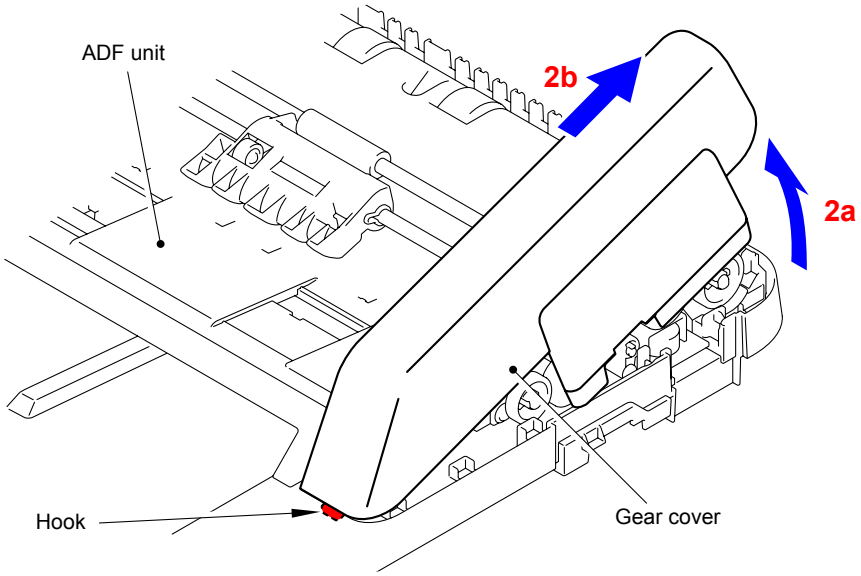


Fig. 3-73

9.22 Separate Roller ASSY

(1) Rotate the Conductive bush to release the lock.

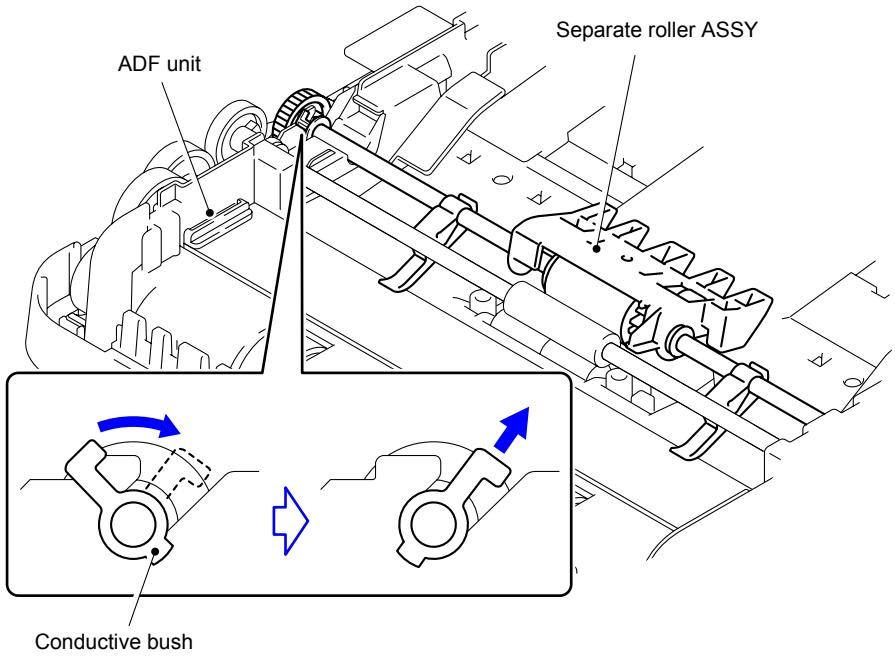


Fig. 3-74

(2) Remove the shaft end at the opposite side to remove the Separate roller ASSY from the ADF unit.

Note:
When removing the Separate roller ASSY, be careful not to damage the Flap ADF.

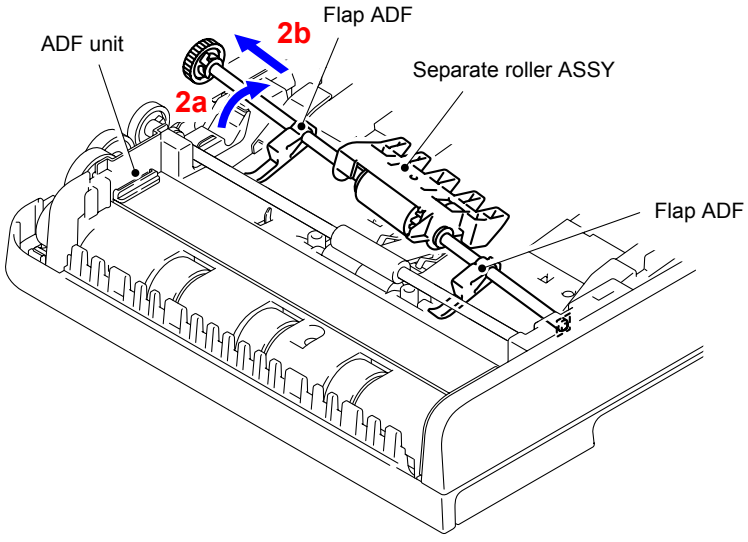


Fig. 3-75

Assembling Note:

When assembling the Separate roller ASSY, be sure to assemble it in a way that the Flap ADF comes under the Document feed roller S ASSY.

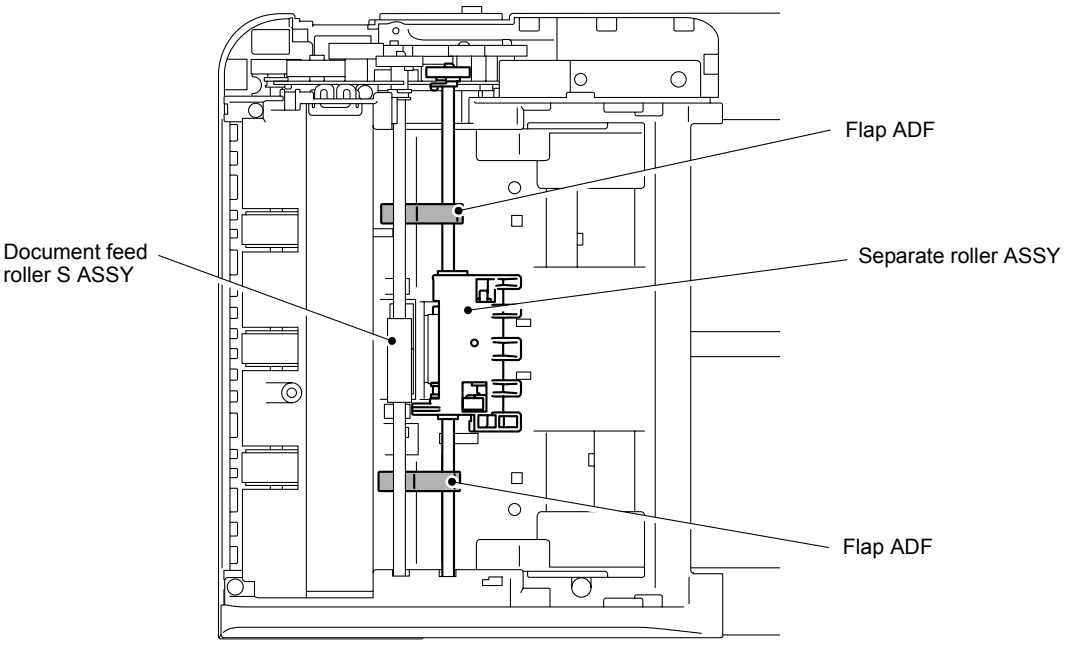


Fig. 3-76

9.23 ADF Spring/Separation Rubber Holder ASSY

(1) Remove the two Pins to remove the Separation rubber holder ASSY from the Upper document chute ASSY.

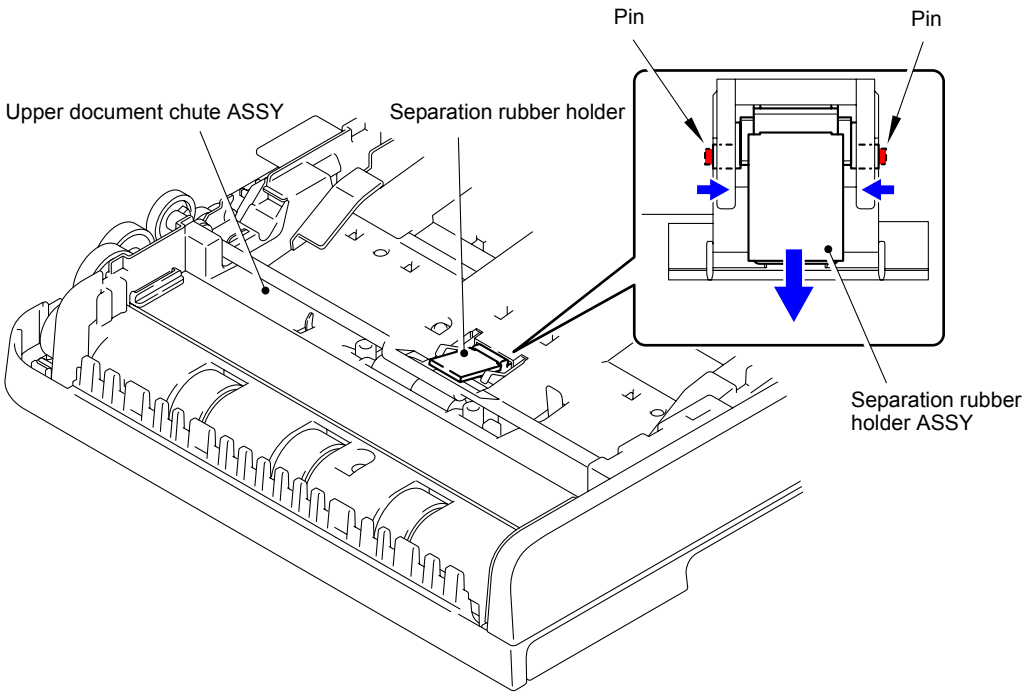


Fig. 3-77

(2) Remove the ADF spring from the Upper document chute ASSY.

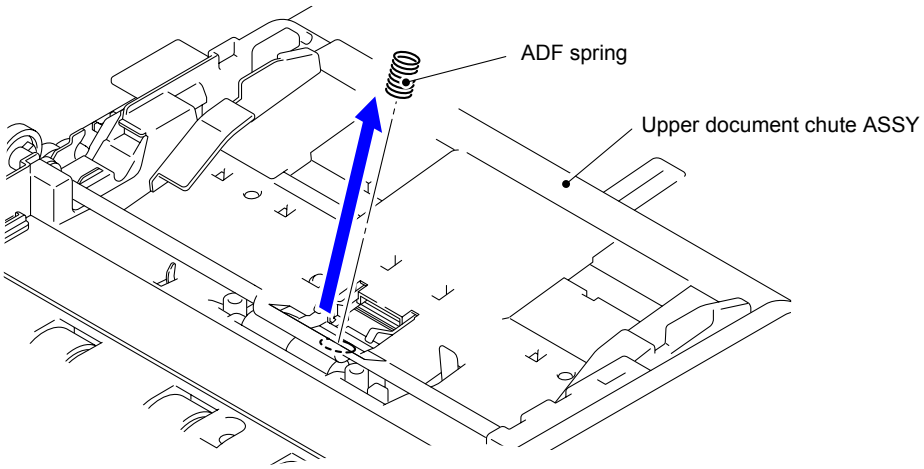


Fig. 3-78

Assembling Note:

There are cases where the ADF spring enters the Upper document chute ASSY from the mounting hole of the Separation rubber holder ASSY. In this case, remove the Upper document chute ASSY from the ADF unit and take out the ADF spring. In the case that the Upper document chute ASSY has been removed, be sure to assemble the ADF spring and Separation rubber first, and then assemble the Upper document chute ASSY to the ADF unit.

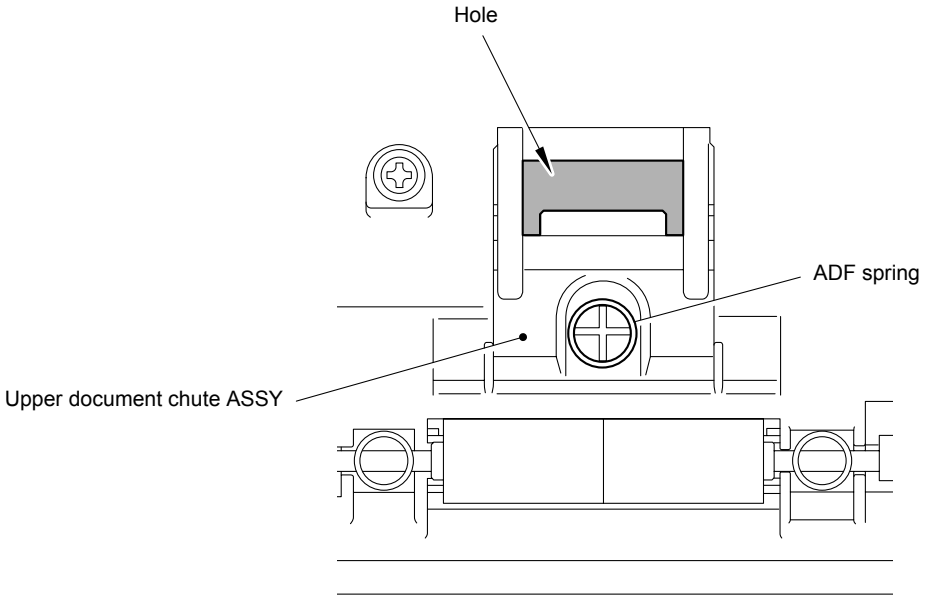


Fig. 3-79

9.24 Second Side Scanning CIS/Second Side CIS Harness

Note:
Disassemble it in a place without dust.

(1) Rotate the Conductive bush to release the lock.

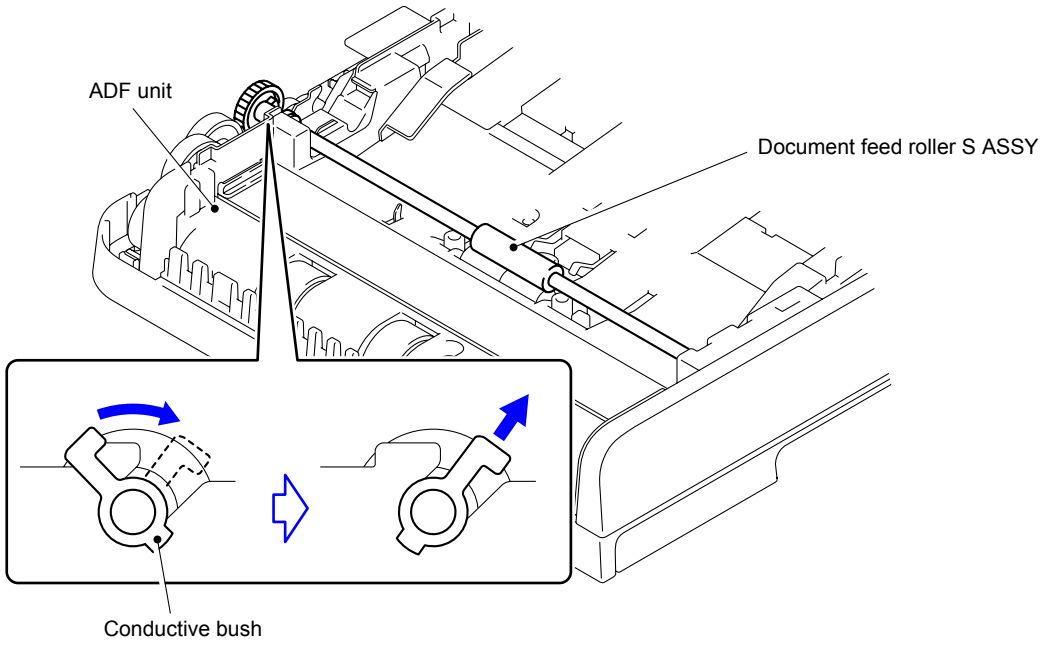


Fig. 3-80

(2) Remove the shaft end at the opposite side to remove the Document feed roller S ASSY from the ADF unit.

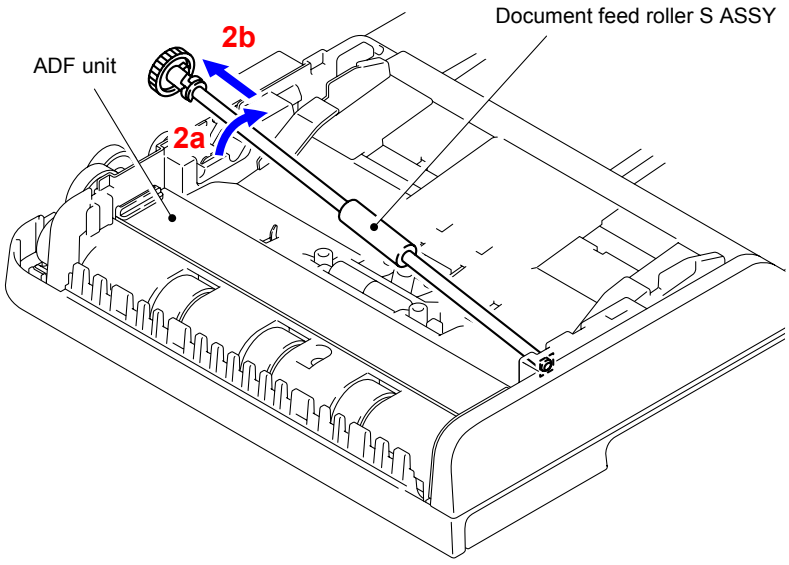


Fig. 3-81

(3) Release the two Hooks to remove the Cover glass stopper from the ADF unit.

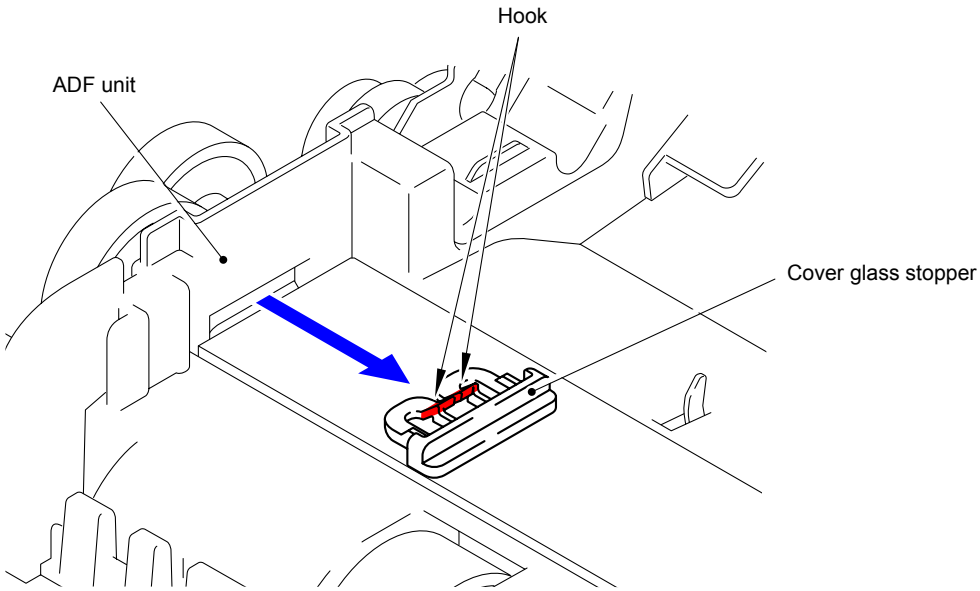


Fig. 3-82

(4) Remove the Cover glass from the ADF unit.

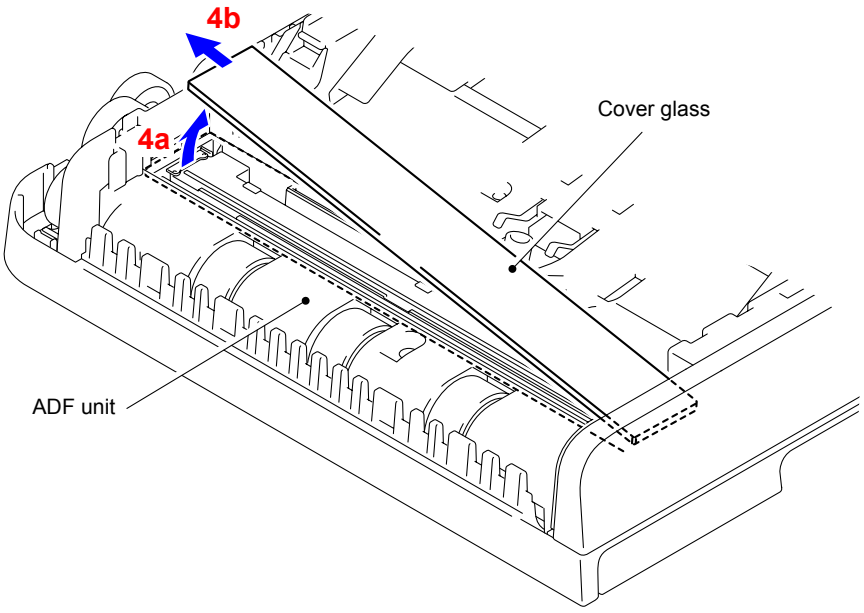


Fig. 3-83

(5) Remove the CIS spacer from the both ends of the Second side scanning CIS.

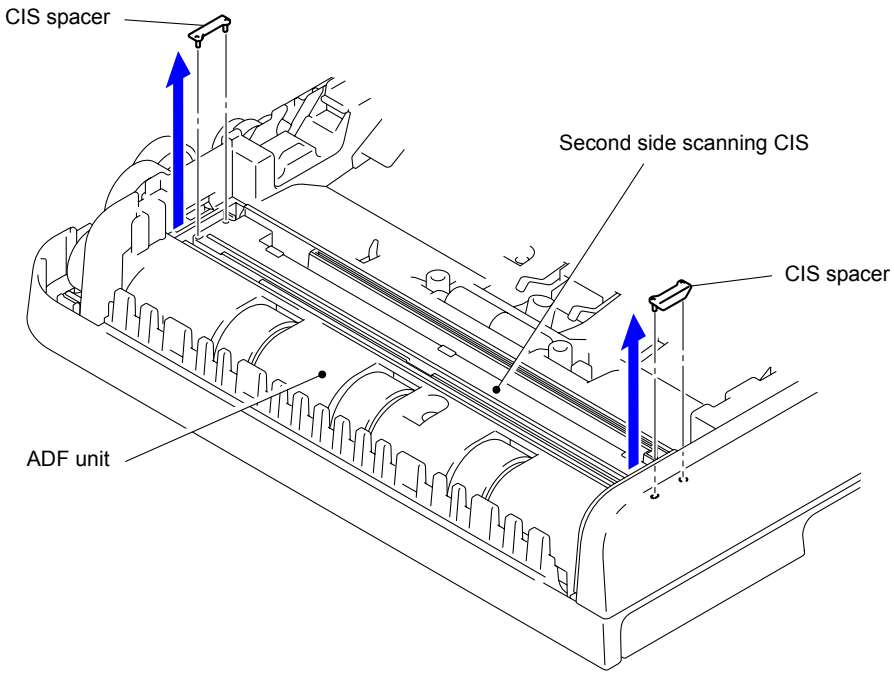


Fig. 3-84

(6) Lift the Second side scanning CIS to remove the Second side CIS harness.

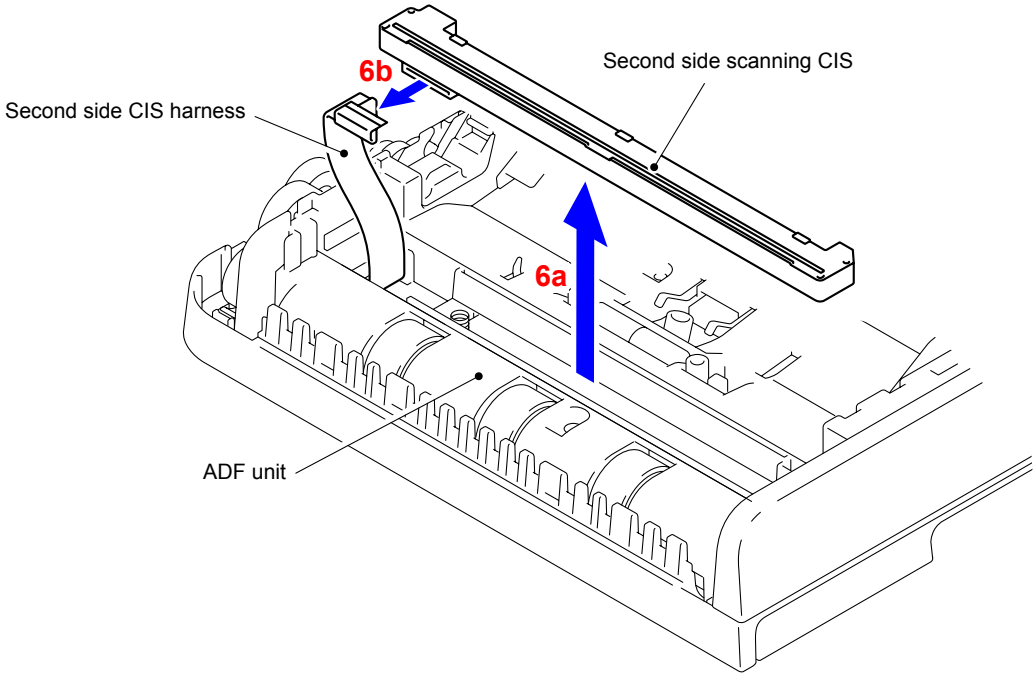


Fig. 3-85

(7) Remove the two CIS spring from the ADF unit.

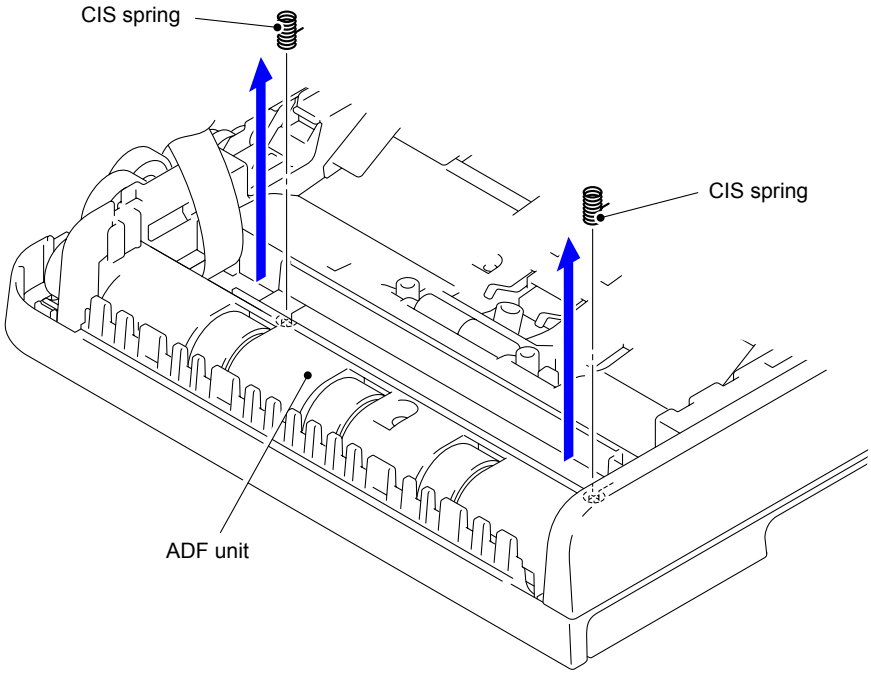


Fig. 3-86

(8) Remove the Second side CIS harness from the ADF unit.

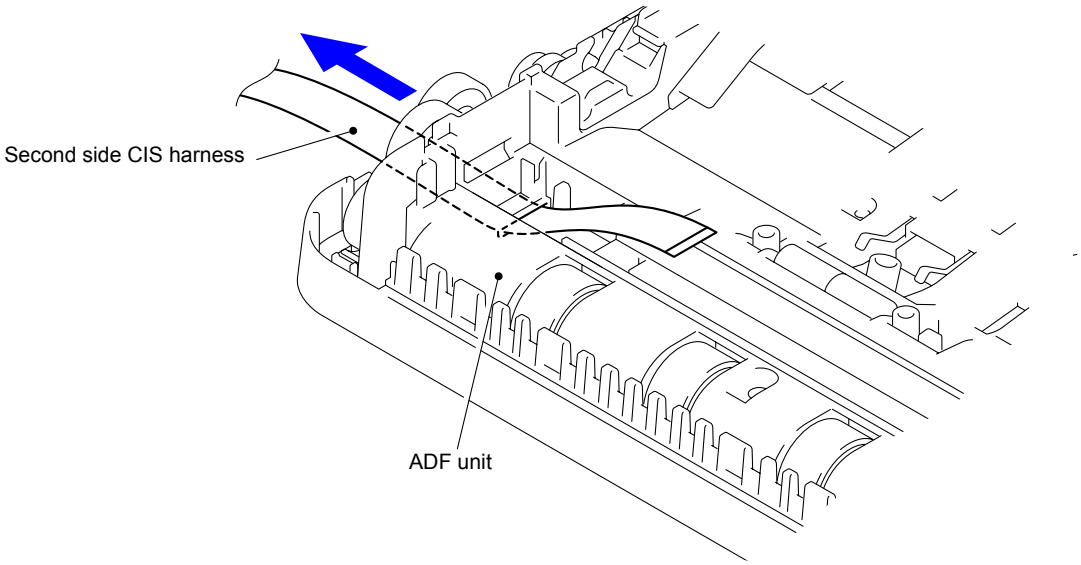


Fig. 3-87

Assembling Note:

Since the Second side CIS harness might be broken when you remove it from the FFC holder ASSY, be sure to replace it with a new Second side CIS harness. When assembling a new Second side CIS harness, be sure to assemble it in accordance with the following procedure.

< Installing procedure>

(1) Fold the Second side CIS harness at the Second side CIS side as shown in the how-to-fold figure below.

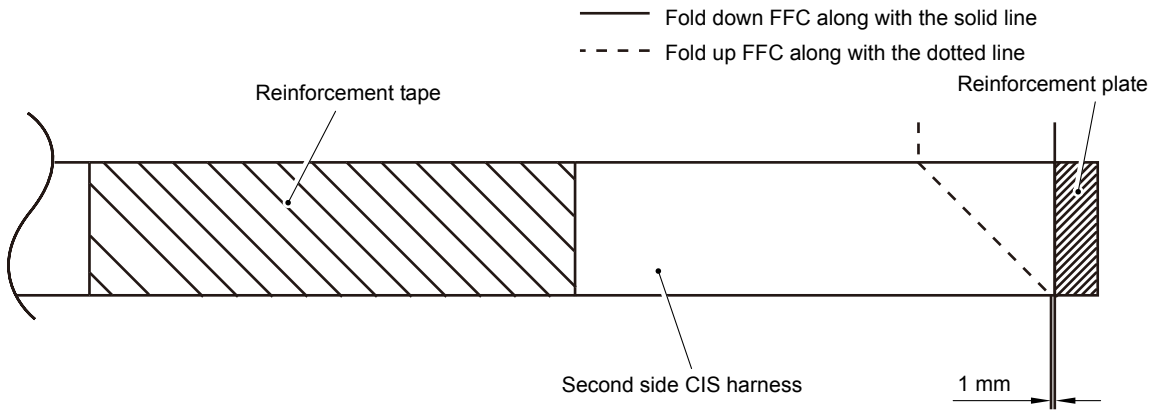


Fig. 3-88

(2) Mount the Second side CIS harness at the Second side CIS side to the Second side scanning CIS.

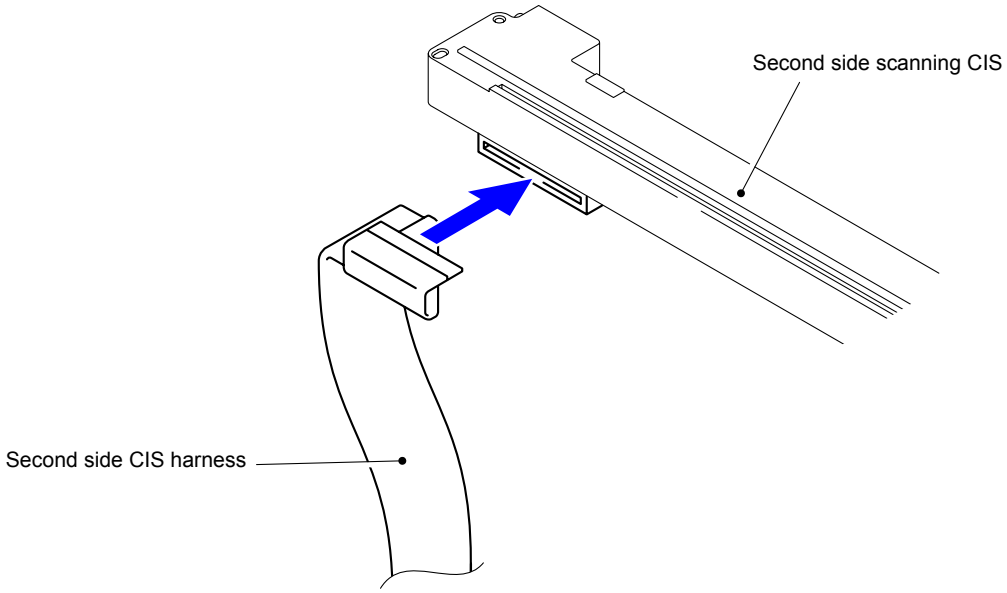


Fig. 3-89

(3) Pass the Second side CIS harness through the ADF unit.

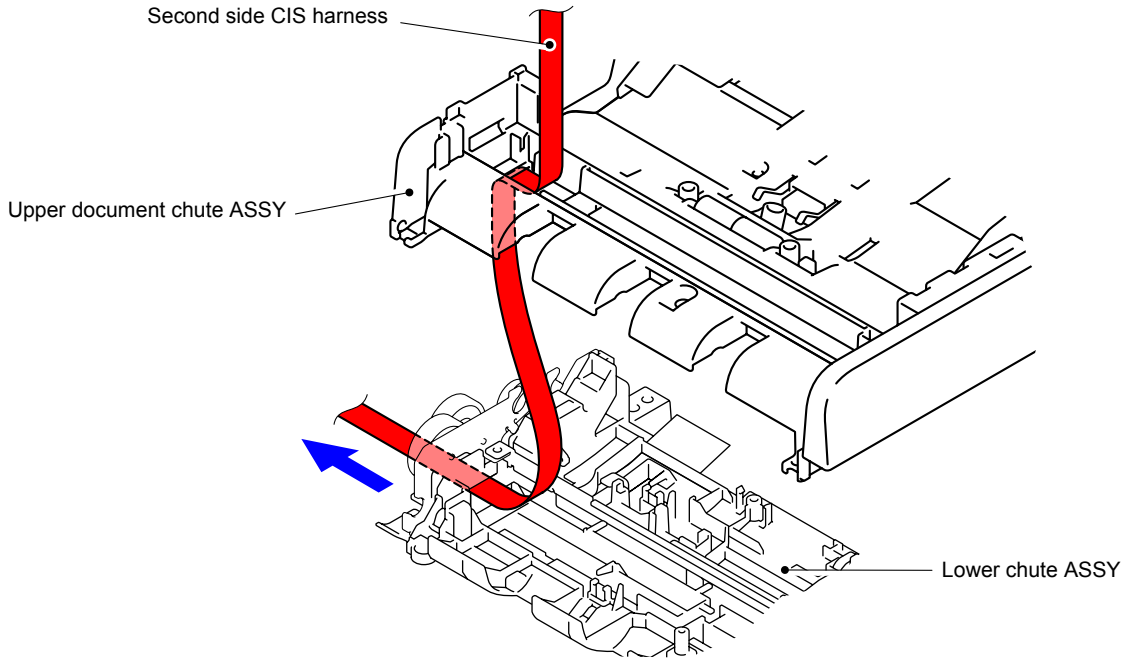


Fig. 3-90

(4) Affix double-sided adhesive tape to the FFC holder ASSY as shown in the figure below. (If the double-sided adhesive tape has already been affixed, be sure to remove it, and then affix new double-sided adhesive tape.)

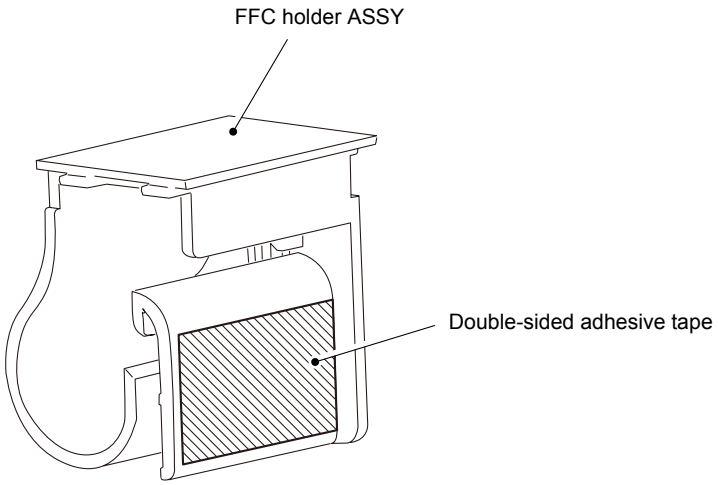


Fig. 3-91

(5) Fold the Second side CIS harness at the position 200 mm away from the Second side scanning CIS side.

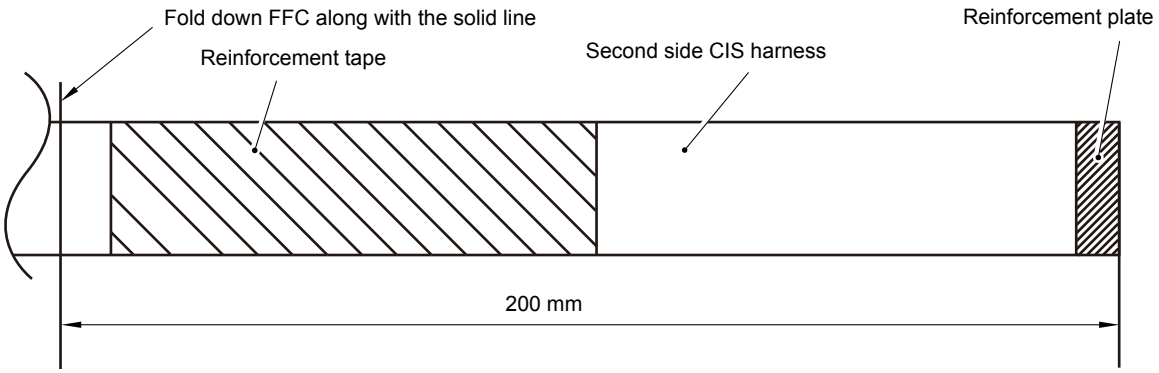


Fig. 3-92

(6) Align the Second side CIS harness to the angle of the Rib of the FFC holder ASSY and pass it through the FFC holder ASSY as shown in the figure below, and then affix it to the double-sided adhesive tape affixed to the FFC holder ASSY.

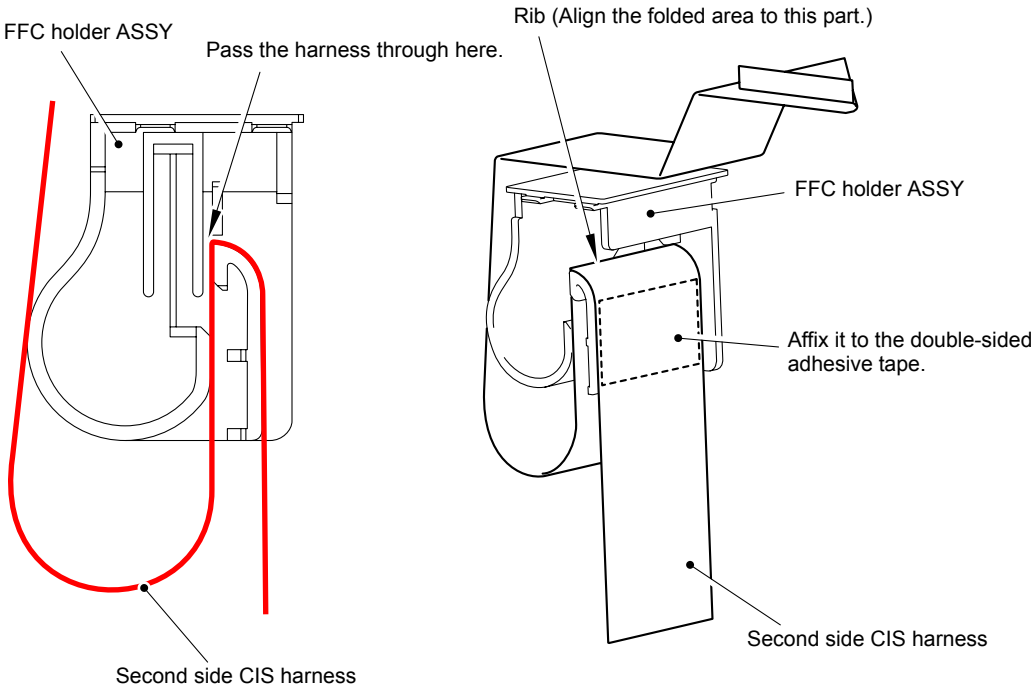


Fig. 3-93

(7) Pass the Second side CIS harness through the Document scanner unit.

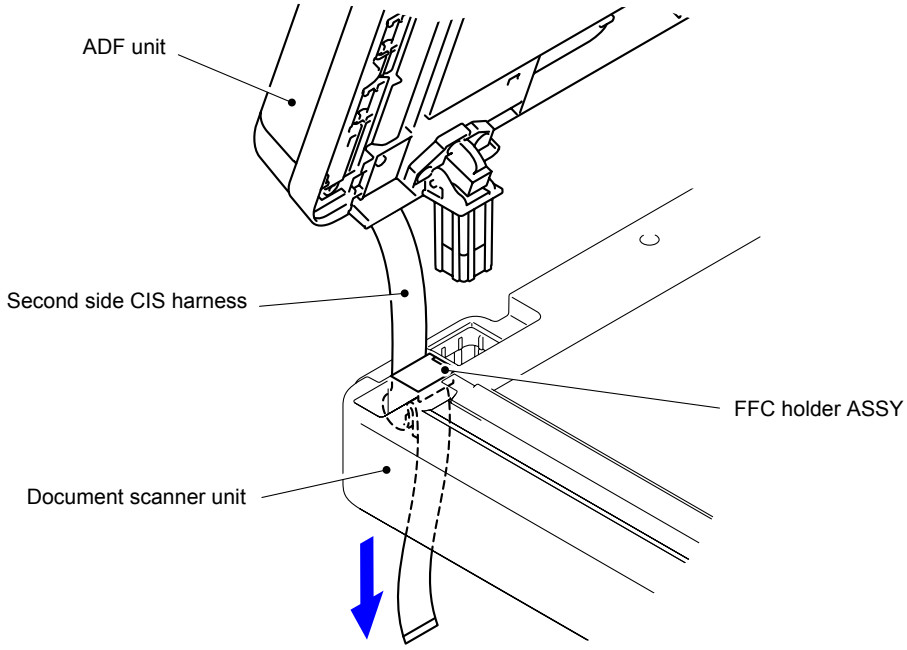


Fig. 3-94

(8) Fold the Second side CIS harness at the Main PCB ASSY side.

<A4 Model>

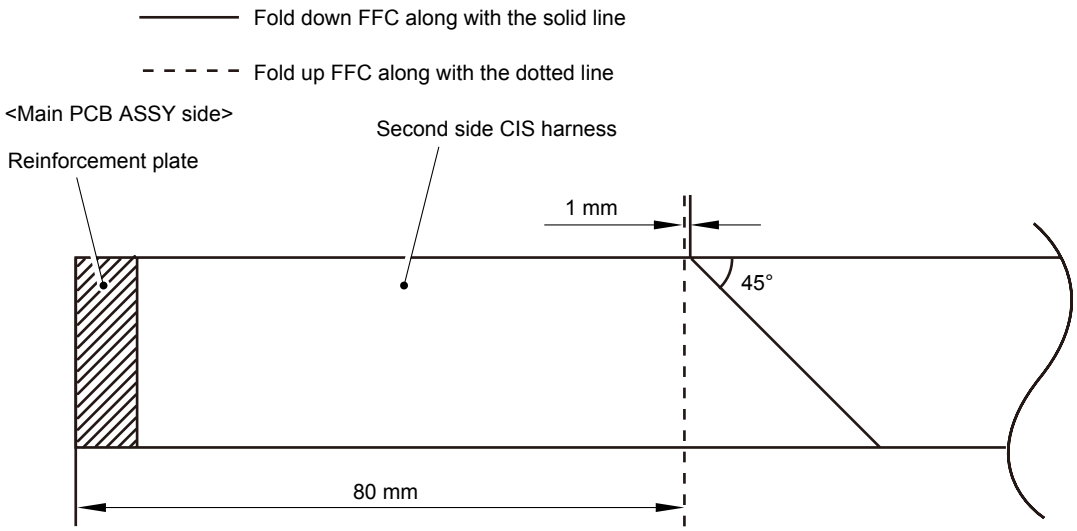


Fig. 3-95

<Legal Model>

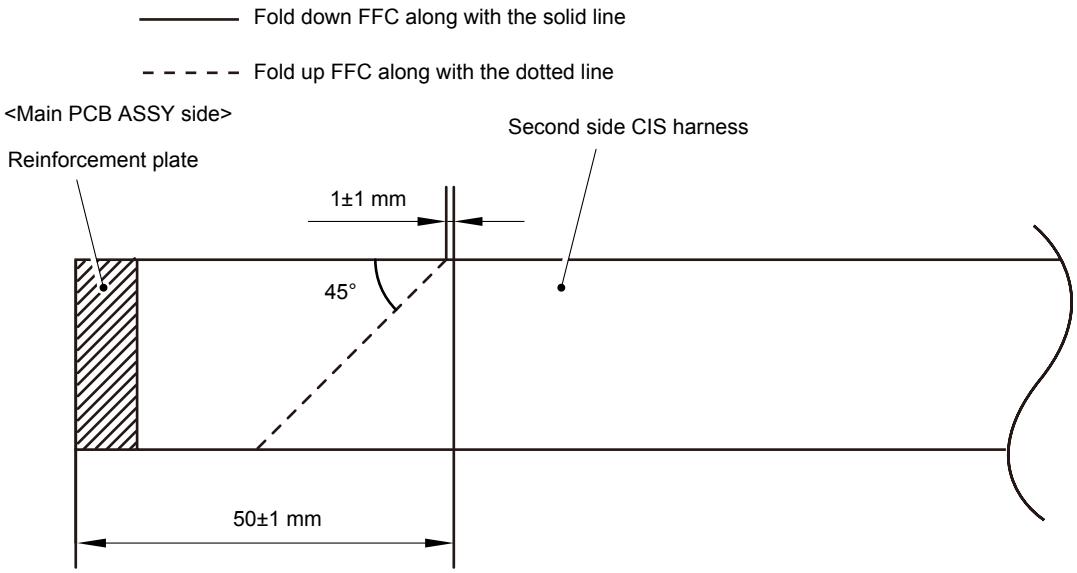


Fig. 3-96

(9) Mount the Second side CIS harness at the Main PCB ASSY side to the Main PCB ASSY.

9.25 Upper Document Chute ASSY

(1) Turn the ADF unit upside down.

(2) Remove the Taptite cup B M3x10 screw from the ADF unit.

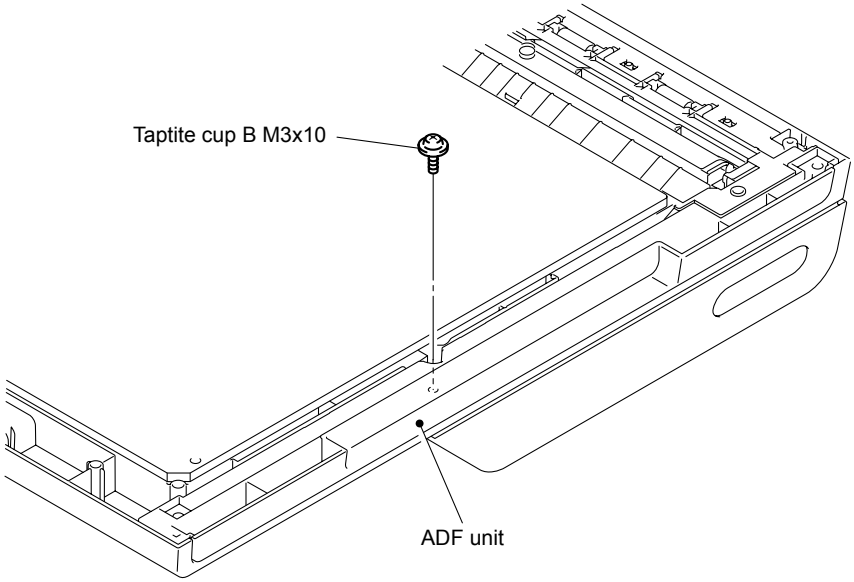


Fig. 3-97

(3) Return the ADF unit to the original position.

(4) Remove the five Taptite cup B M3x10 screws from the Upper document chute ASSY.

(5) Remove the Upper document chute ASSY from the ADF unit.

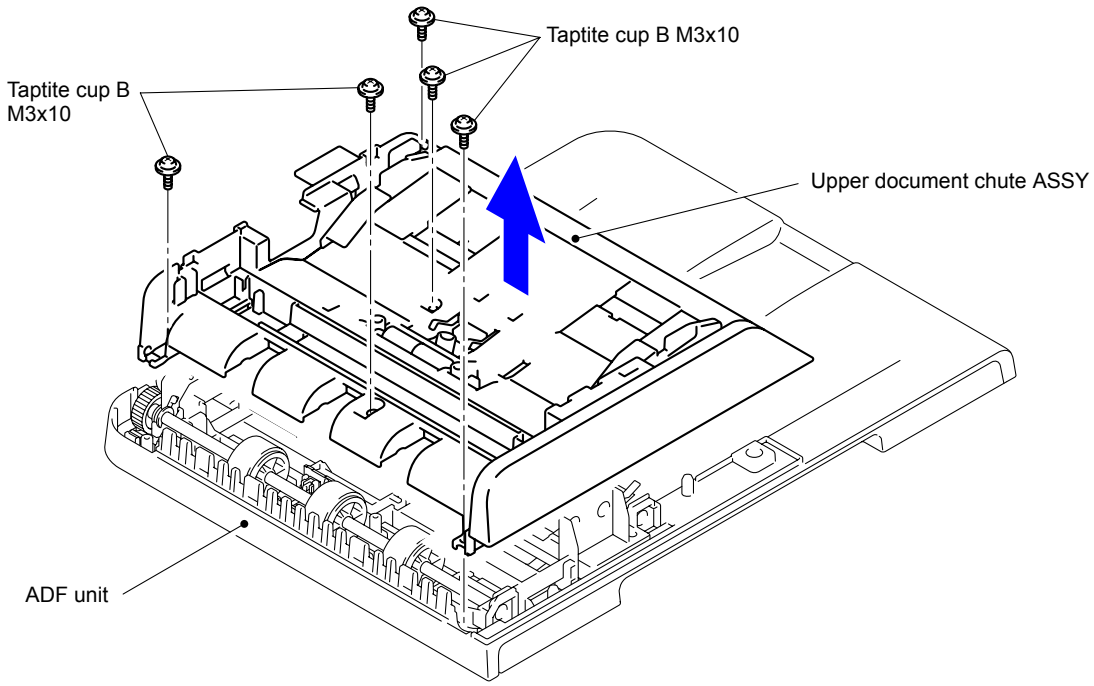


Fig. 3-98

9.26 Document Front/ADF Open Sensor/ Document First Side Rear Sensor/ Document Second Side Rear Sensor

Memo:
This part can be replaced without disassembling Second side scanning CIS.

(1) Shift the Upper document chute ASSY to the position shown in the figure so that it will not interfere with the work.

Note:
Be careful not to damage the Flat cable.

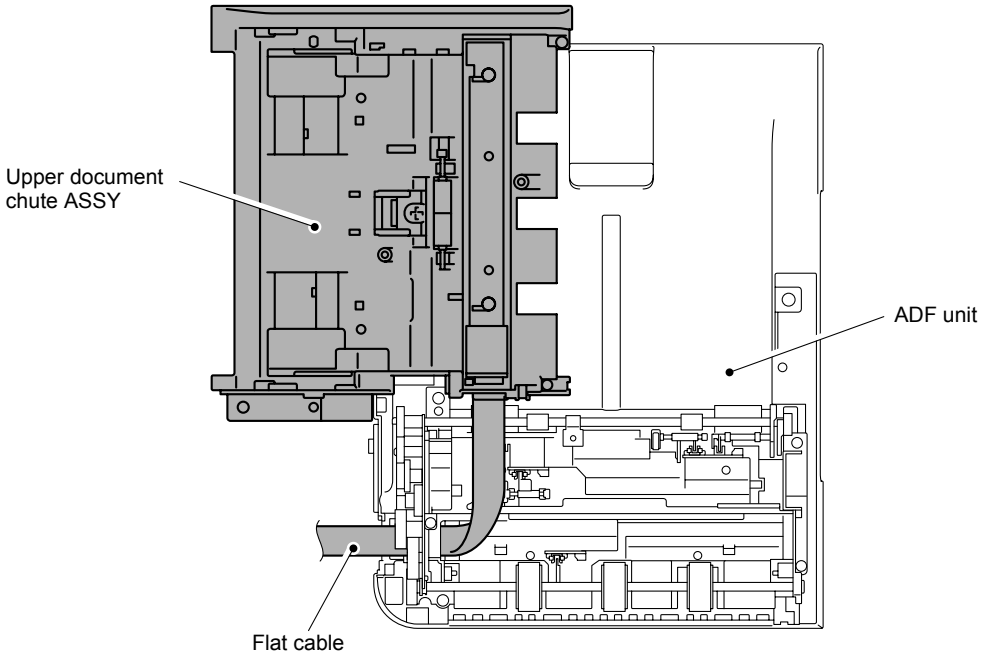


Fig. 3-99

(2) Push and open the Rib to remove the Document front/ADF open sensor from the Lower document chute.

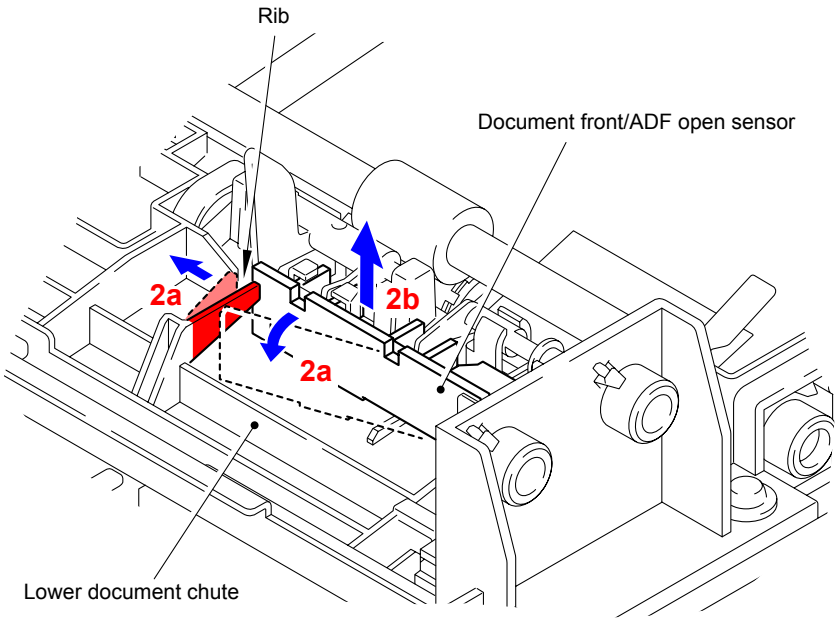


Fig. 3-100

(3) Disconnect the Connector from the Document front/ADF open sensor.

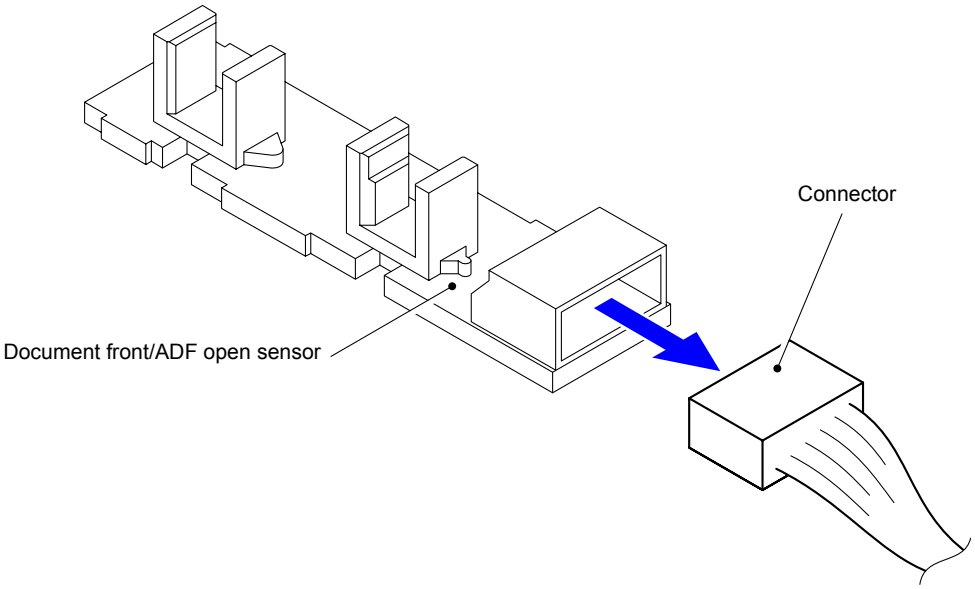


Fig. 3-101

(4) Lift the film, and then push and open the Rib to remove the Document second side rear sensor from the Lower document chute.

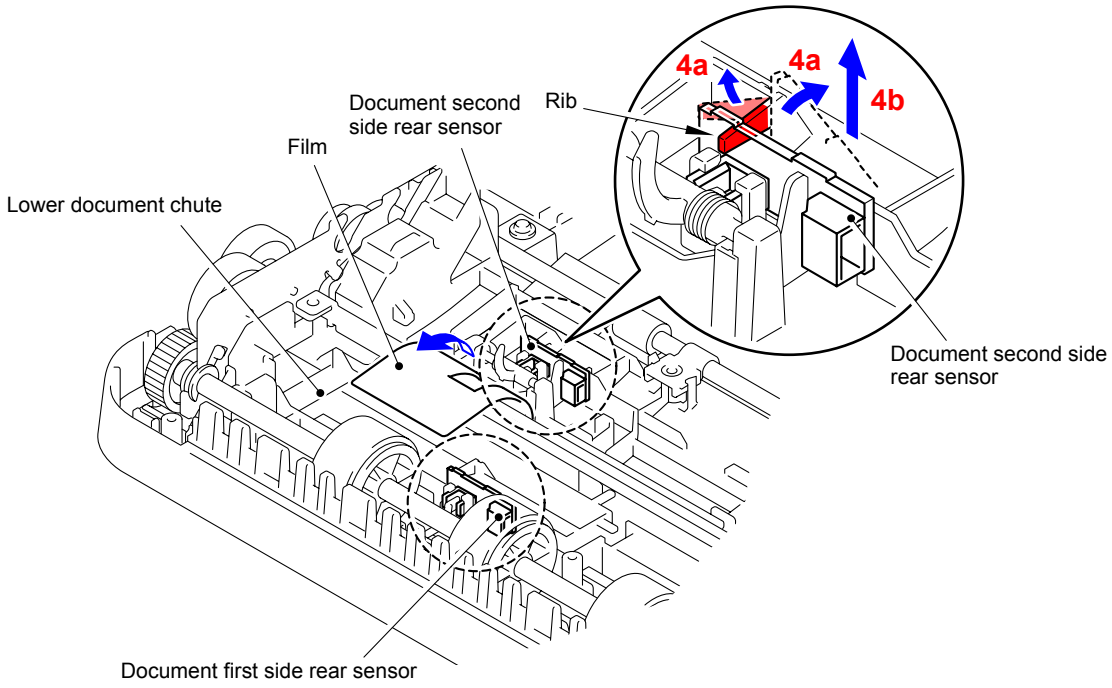


Fig. 3-102

(5) Disconnect the Connector from the Document second side rear sensor.

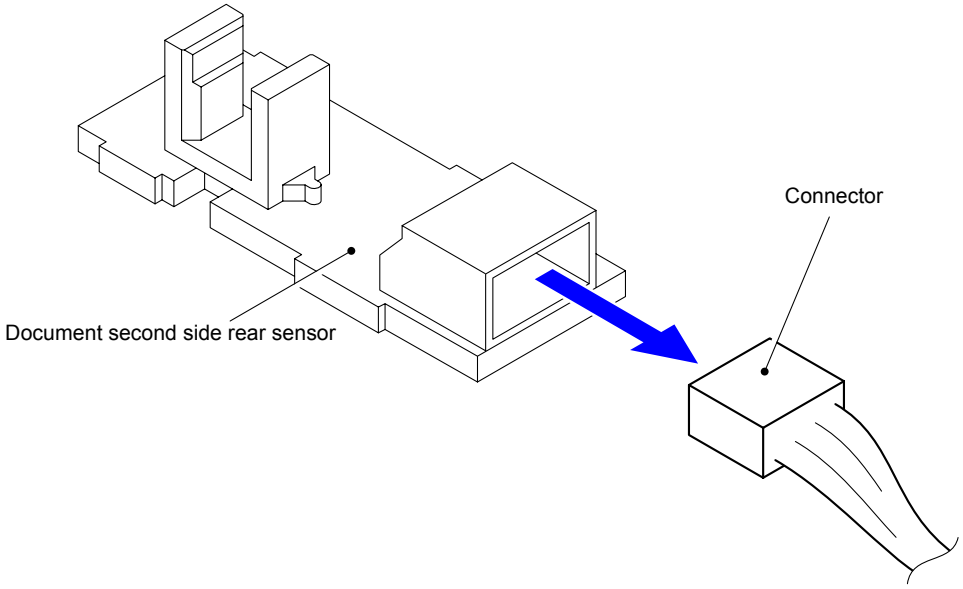


Fig. 3-103

(6) Disconnect the Connector from the Document first side rear sensor in the same way.

9.27 Drive Frame ASSY/Document Feed Roller ASSY

(1) Remove the Ejection roller bush from the Ejection roller ASSY.

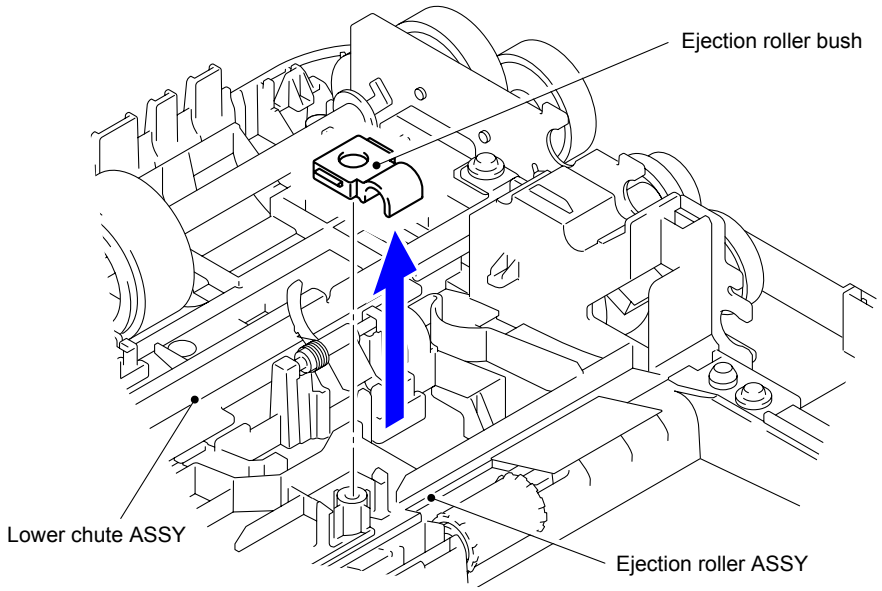


Fig. 3-104

(2) Rotate the Conductive bush to release the lock.

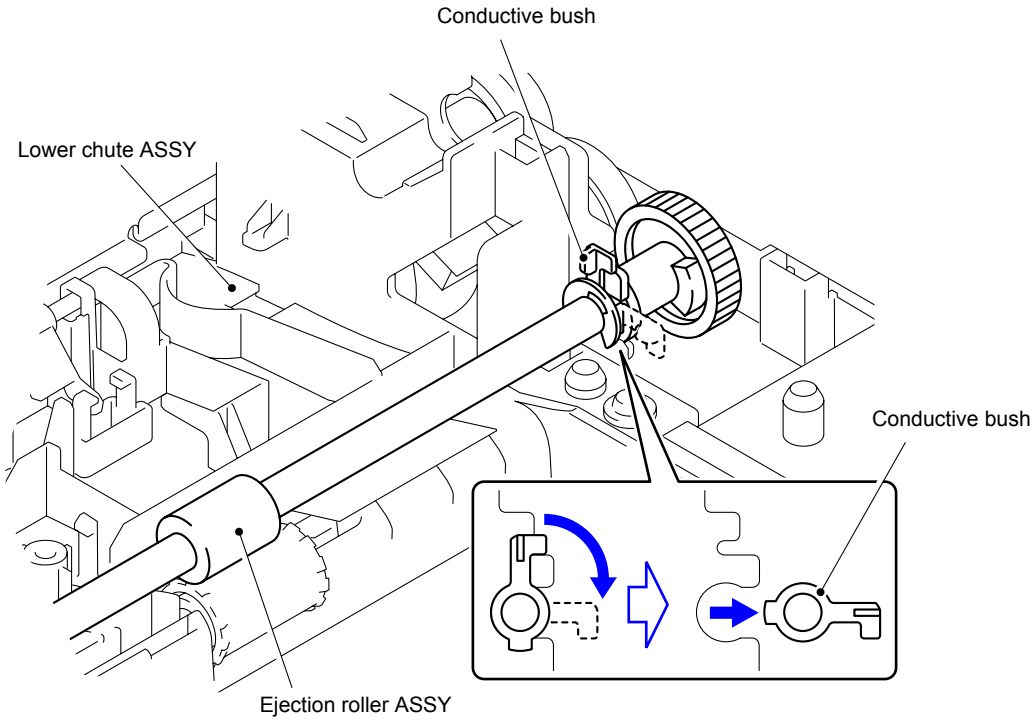


Fig. 3-105

(3) Remove the shaft end at the opposite side to remove Ejection roller ASSY from the Lower chute ASSY.

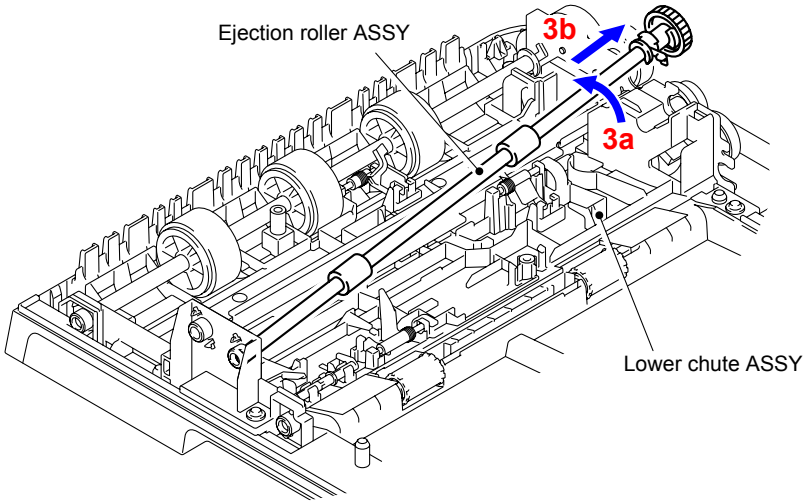


Fig. 3-106

(4) Remove the three Taptite cup B M3x10 screws from the Lower chute ASSY.

(5) Release the Hook to remove the Lower chute ASSY from the Document cover ASSY.

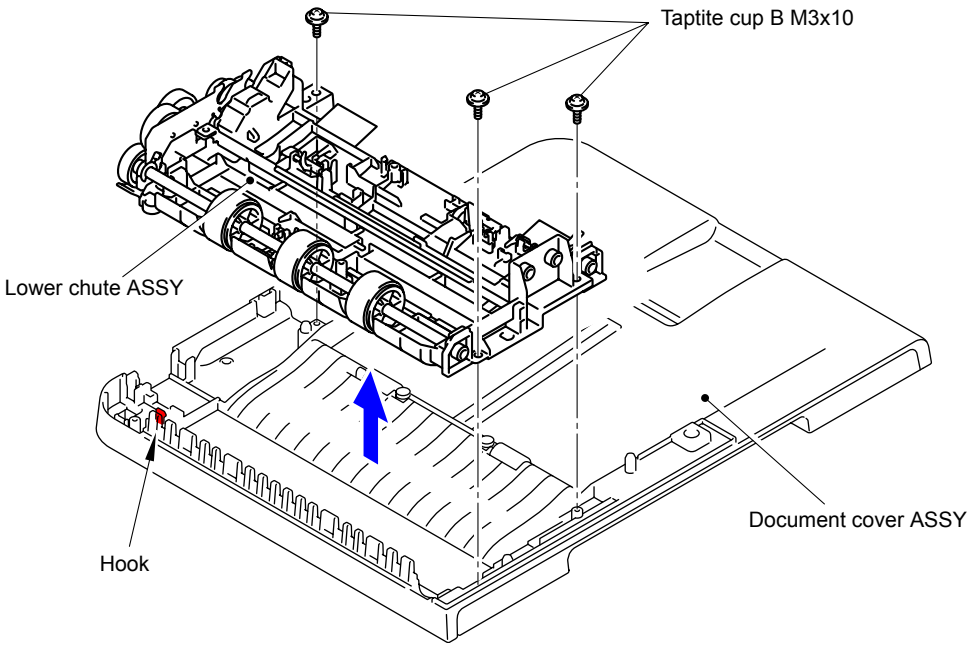


Fig. 3-107

(6) Release the Pin of the Conductive bush and rotate it to the position shown in the figure.

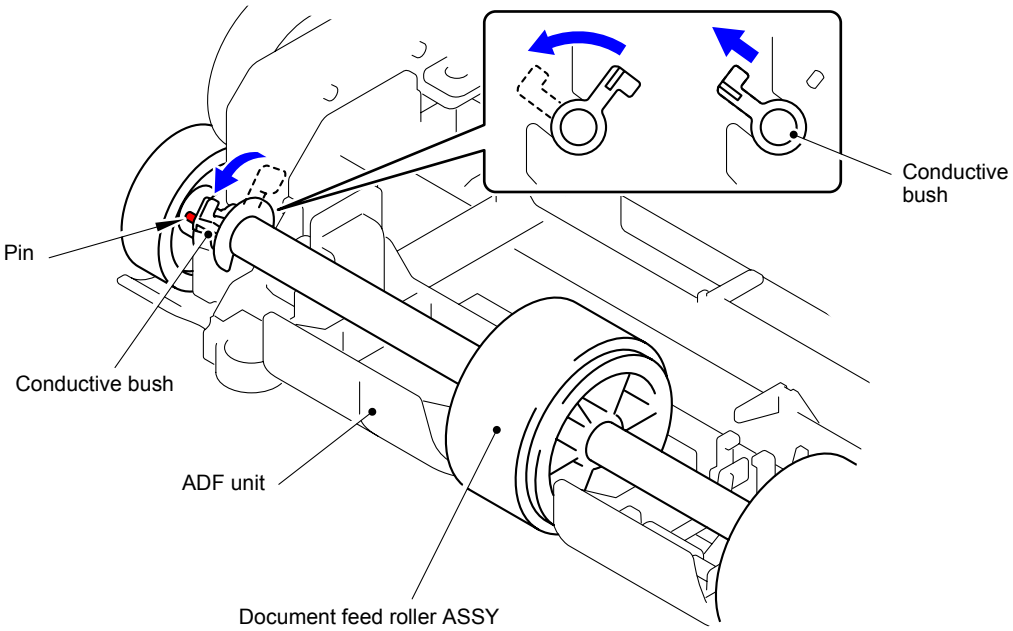


Fig. 3-108

(7) Remove the shaft end at the opposite side to remove the Document feed roller ASSY from the Lower chute ASSY.

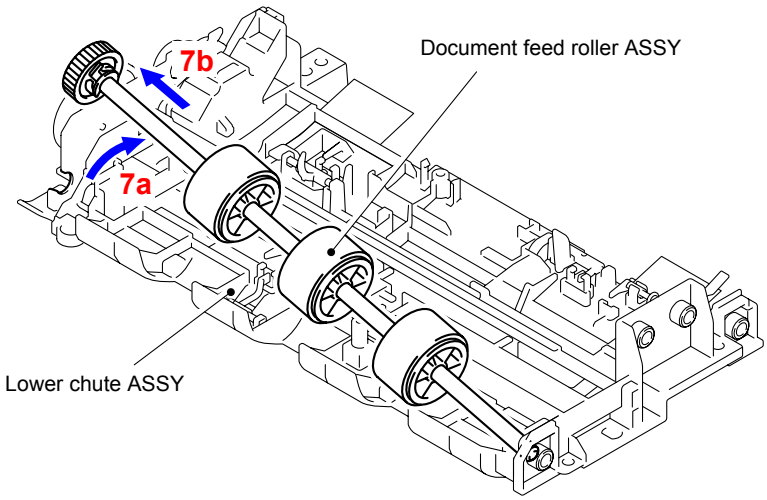


Fig. 3-109

(8) Remove the Taptite cup S M3x6 screw from the Lower chute ASSY.

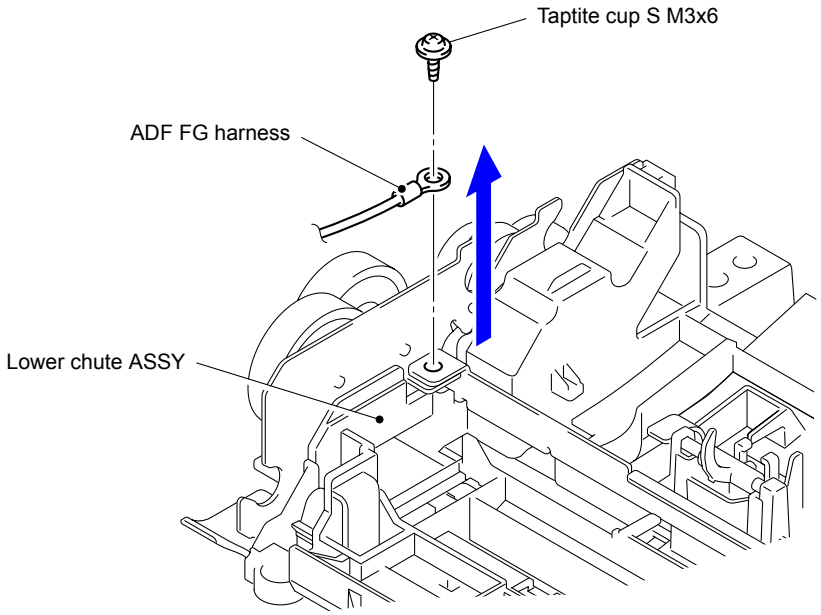


Fig. 3-110

(9) Remove the three Taptite cup B M3x10 screws to remove the Drive frame ASSY from the Lower chute ASSY.

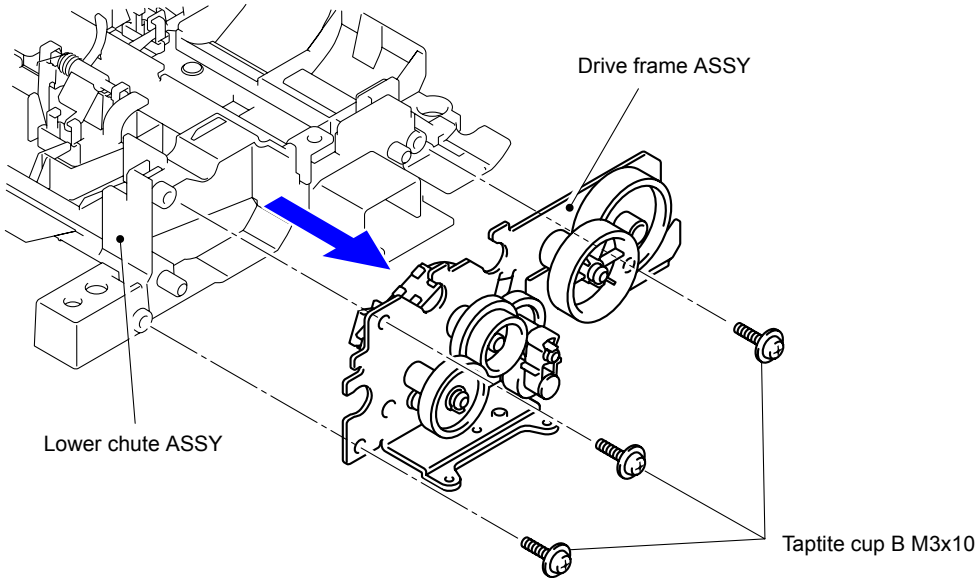


Fig. 3-111

(10) Disconnect the Connector from the ADF motor.

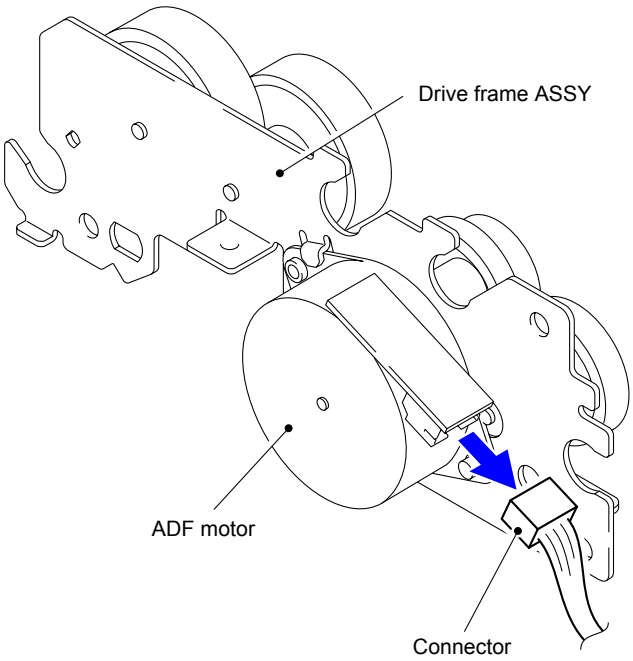


Fig. 3-112

9.28 ADF Motor

(1) Release the Hook to remove the Gear 43 from the Drive frame ASSY.

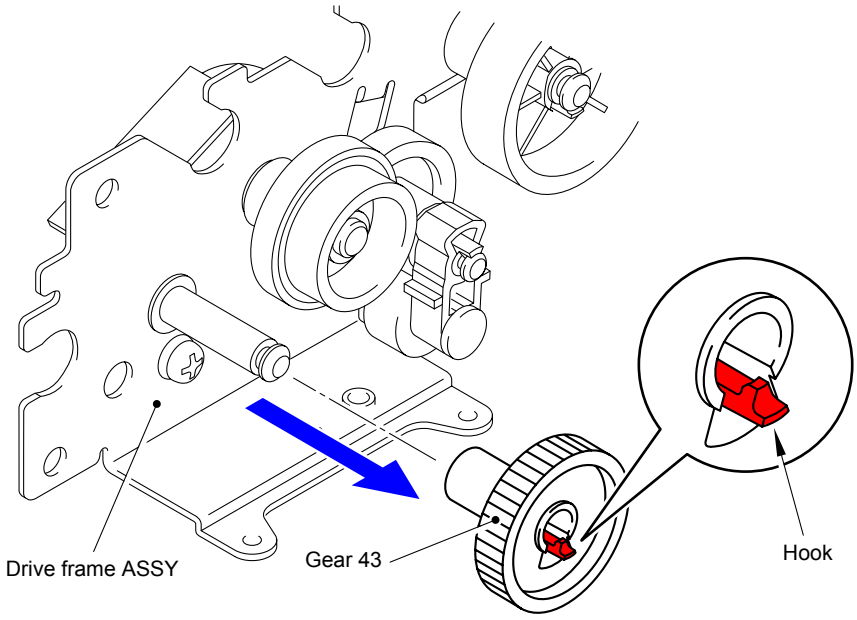


Fig. 3-113

(2) Remove the Screw pan (S/P washer) M3x6 screw to remove the ADF motor from the Drive frame ASSY.

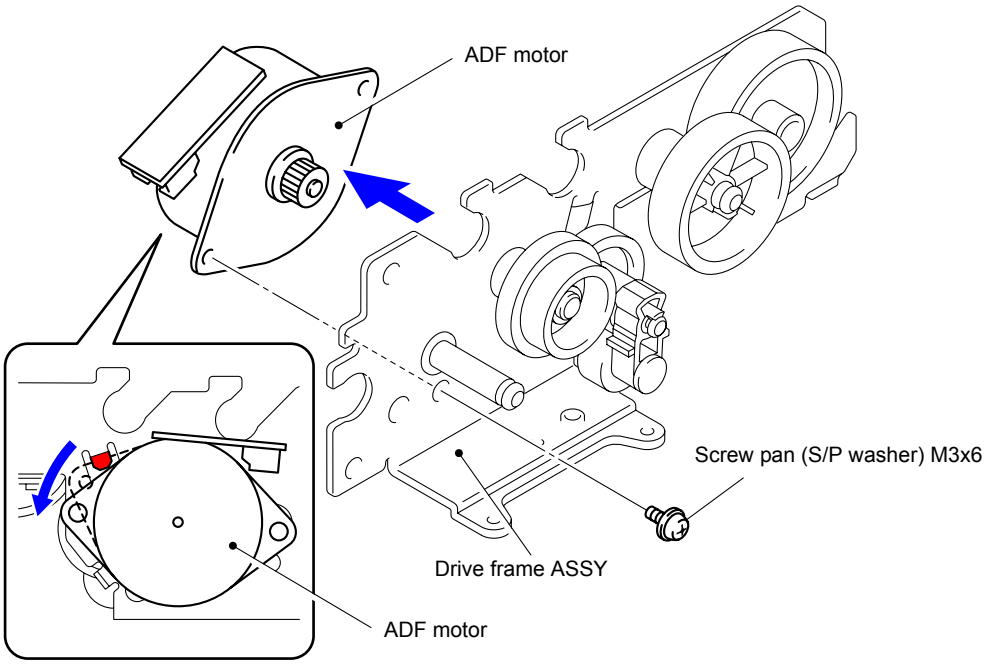


Fig. 3-114

9.29 Document Hold ASSY

(1) Turn the Lower chute ASSY upside down.

(2) Remove the two Pins to remove the Document hold ASSY from the Lower chute ASSY.

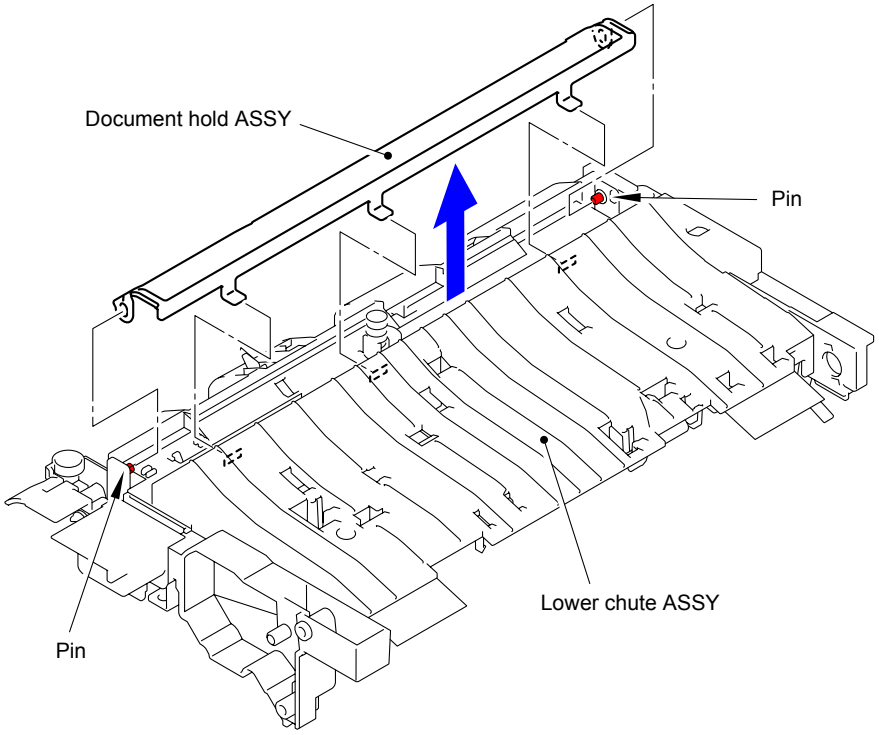


Fig. 3-115

9.30 Document Cover ASSY/Grip Cover

(1) Turn the Document cover ASSY upside down.

(2) Remove the two Taptite cup B M3x10 screws to remove the Grip cover from the Document cover ASSY.

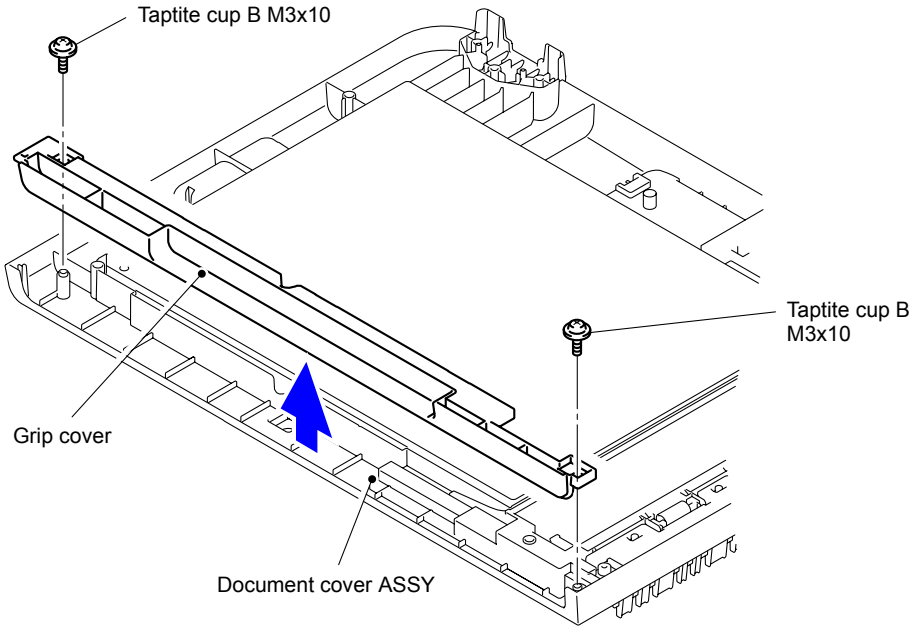


Fig. 3-116

9.31 Panel Cover ASSY

(1) Release the eight Hooks to remove the Panel cover ASSY from the Scanner unit.

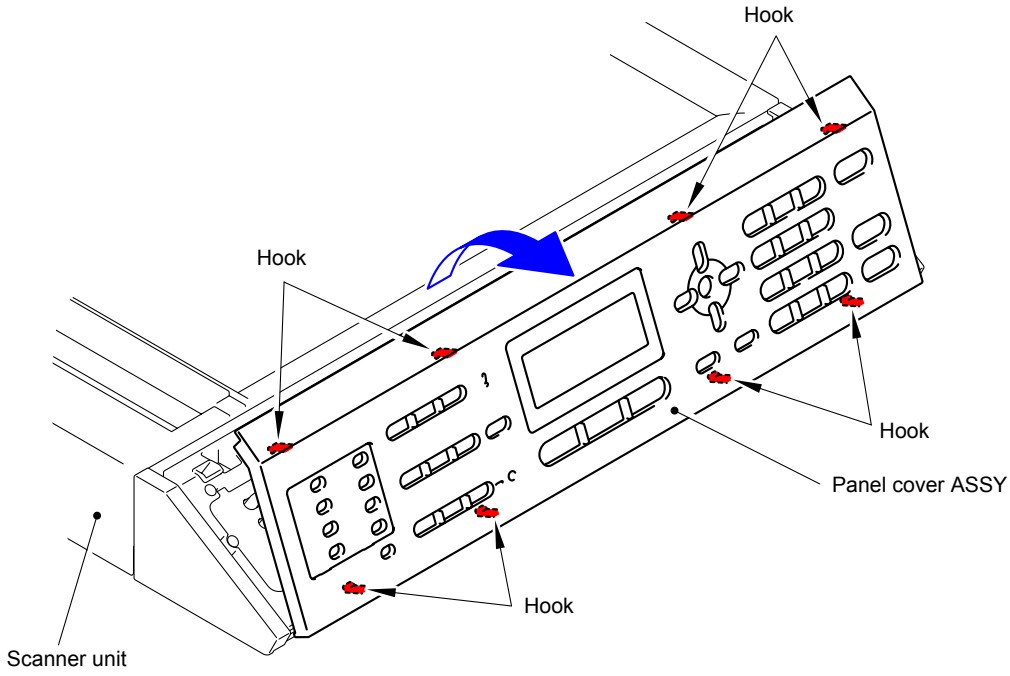


Fig. 3-117

9.32 Scanner Unit/Panel Unit Generic

(1) Remove the four Taptite cup B M3x10 screws from the Panel unit generic.

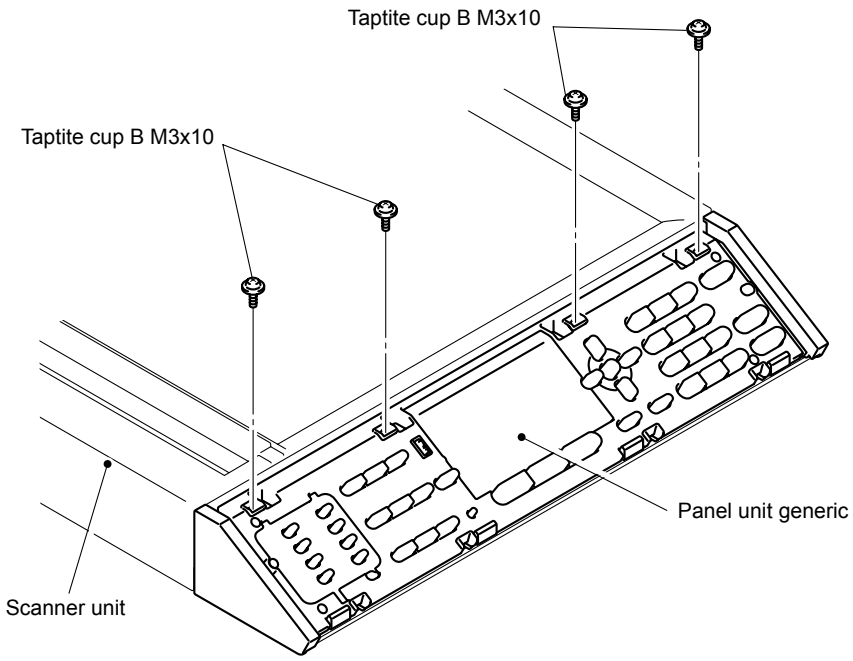


Fig. 3-118

(2) Release the four Hooks to remove the Panel unit generic from the Scanner unit.

Note:
Be careful not to pull the Panel unit generic strongly because the Harness is connected to it.

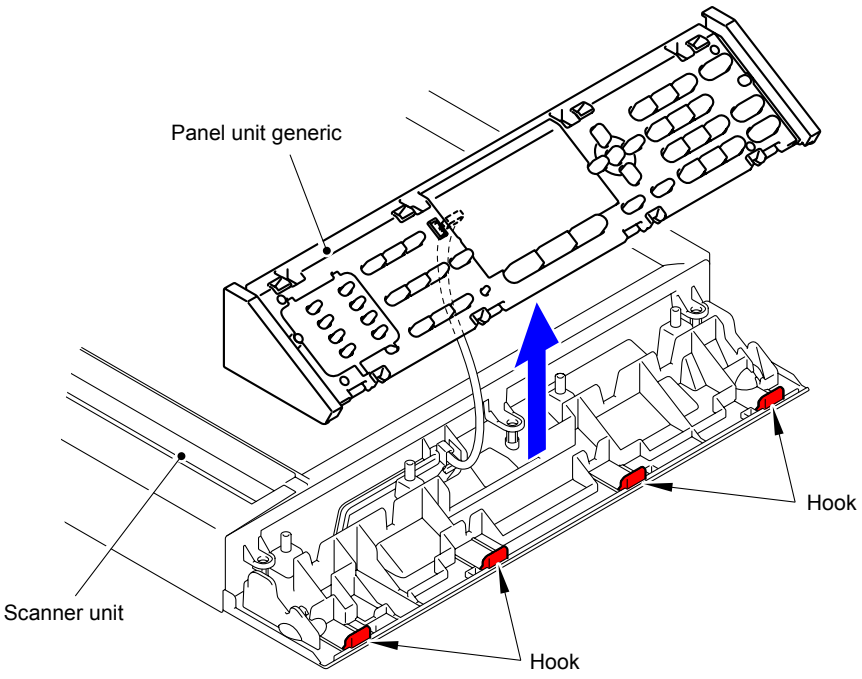


Fig. 3-119

(3) Disconnect the Connector (CN4) from the Panel PCB ASSY.

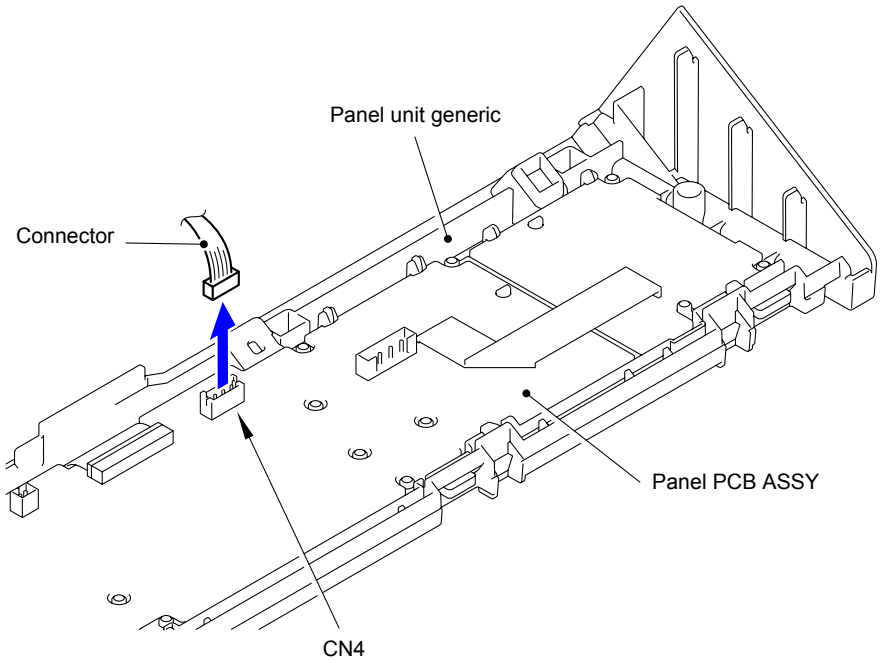


Fig. 3-120

9.33 Panel PCB ASSY

(1) Disconnect the Connector (CN2) and Flat cable (CN3) from the Panel PCB ASSY.

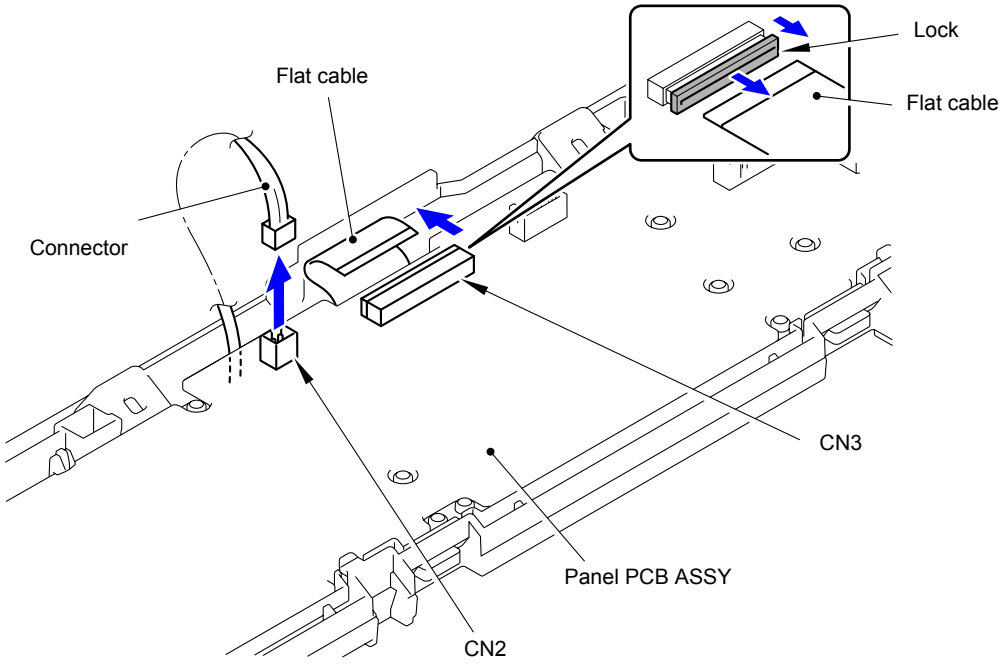


Fig. 3-121

(2) Release the ten Hooks to remove the Panel PCB ASSY from the Panel unit generic.

Note:
The Panel PCB ASSY consists of two PCBs, and they are connected with a Flat cable. Be sure to remove the two PCBs at the same time because the Flat cable might get broken if you remove the PCBs.

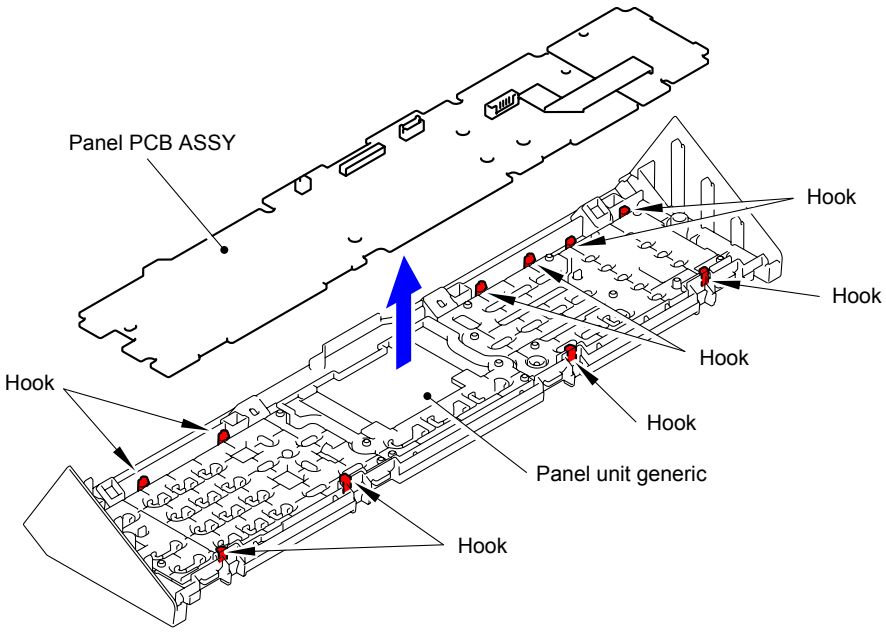


Fig. 3-122

9.34 Printed Rubber Key R/C/L

(1) Remove the Printed rubber key C from the Panel cover generic.

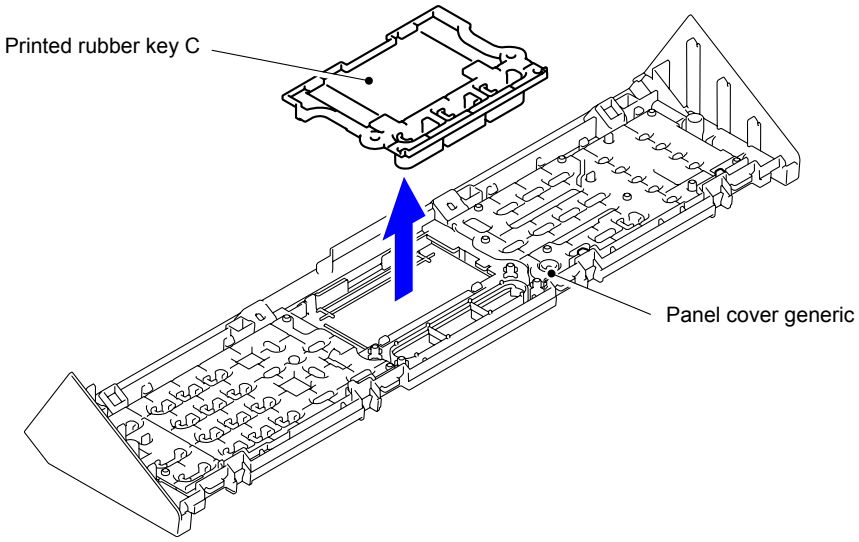


Fig. 3-123

(2) Remove the Printed rubber key L and R from the Panel cover generic.

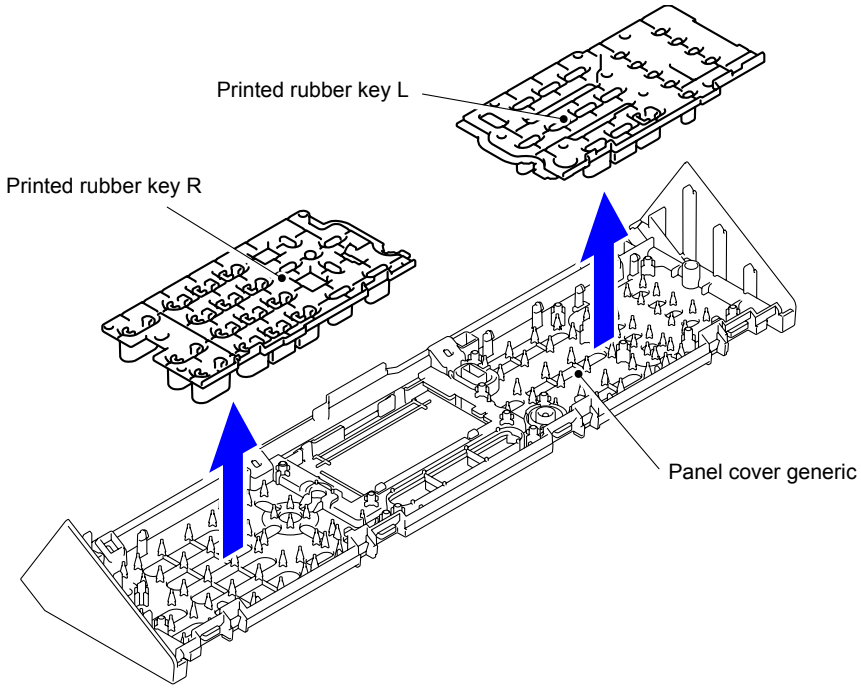


Fig. 3-124

Assembling Note:

- Upon assembling, assemble the Printed rubber key L and Printed rubber key R first, and then assemble the Printed rubber key C.
- Check if it is firmly inserted into the Positioning pin.

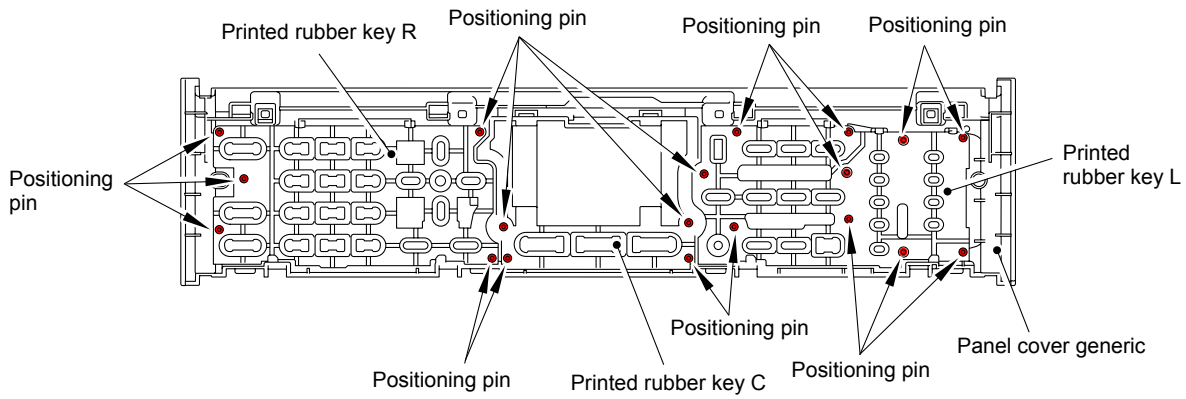


Fig. 3-125

9.35 LCD/Back Light Module/LCD Cover

(1) Remove the Panel light guide and Caution lamp lens from the Panel cover generic.

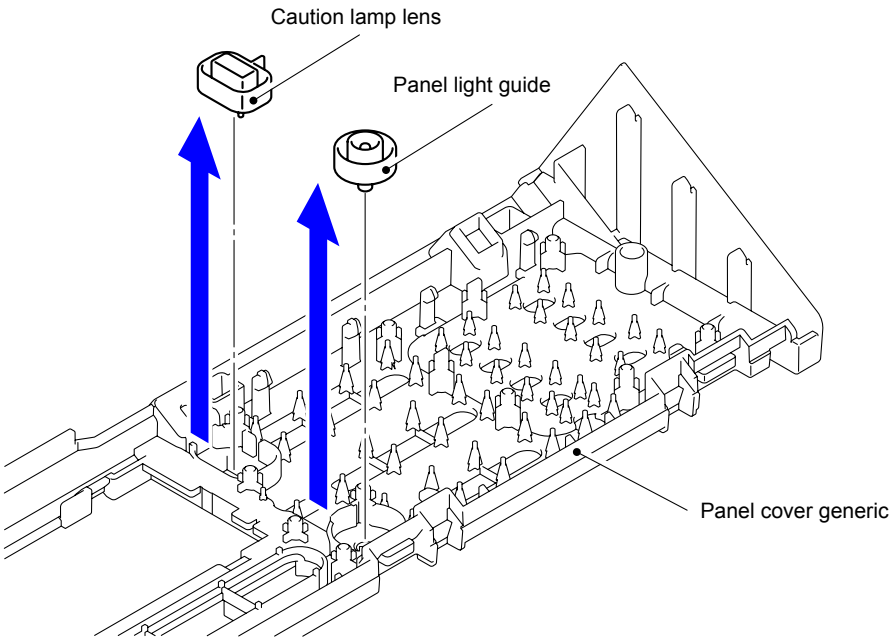


Fig. 3-126

(2) Release the four Hooks to remove the LCD cover from the Panel cover generic.

> **Note:**
> Be careful because there are cases where the LCD and Back light module come off at the same time.

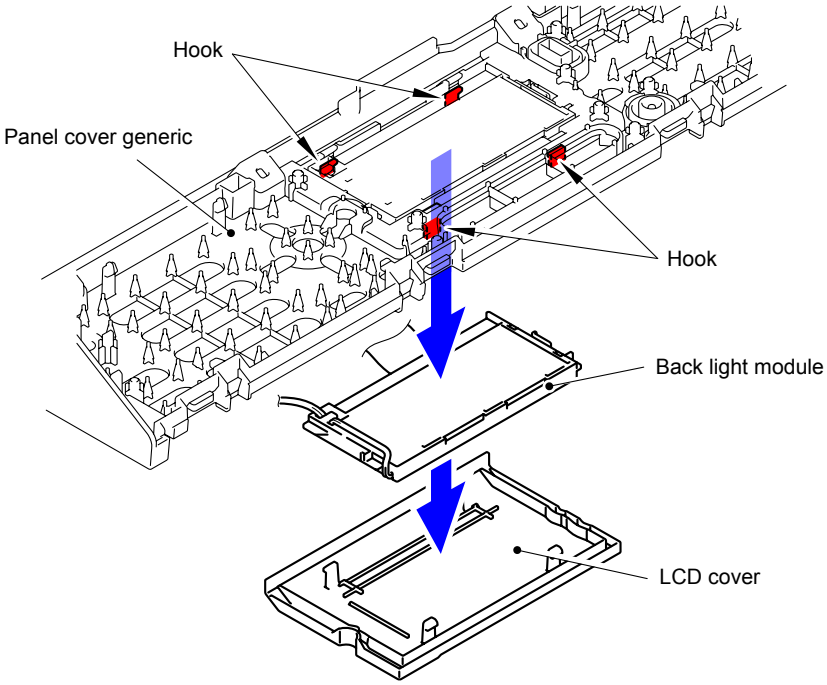


Fig. 3-127

(3) Remove the LCD from the Back light module.

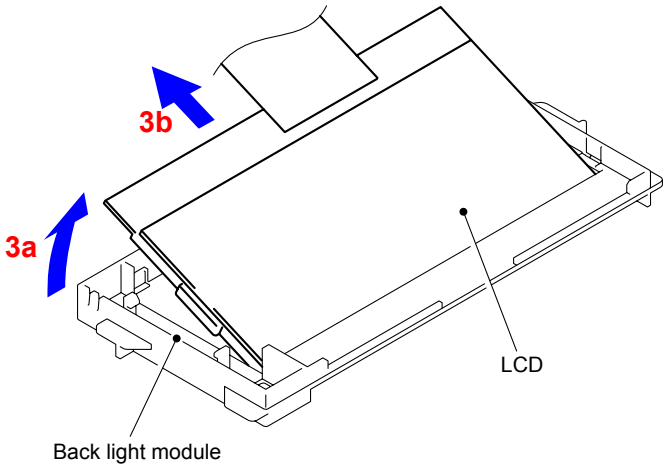


Fig. 3-128

9.36 Pull Arm Guide/Lock Claw

(1) Remove the Lock claw to remove the Pull arm guide from the Joint cover top.

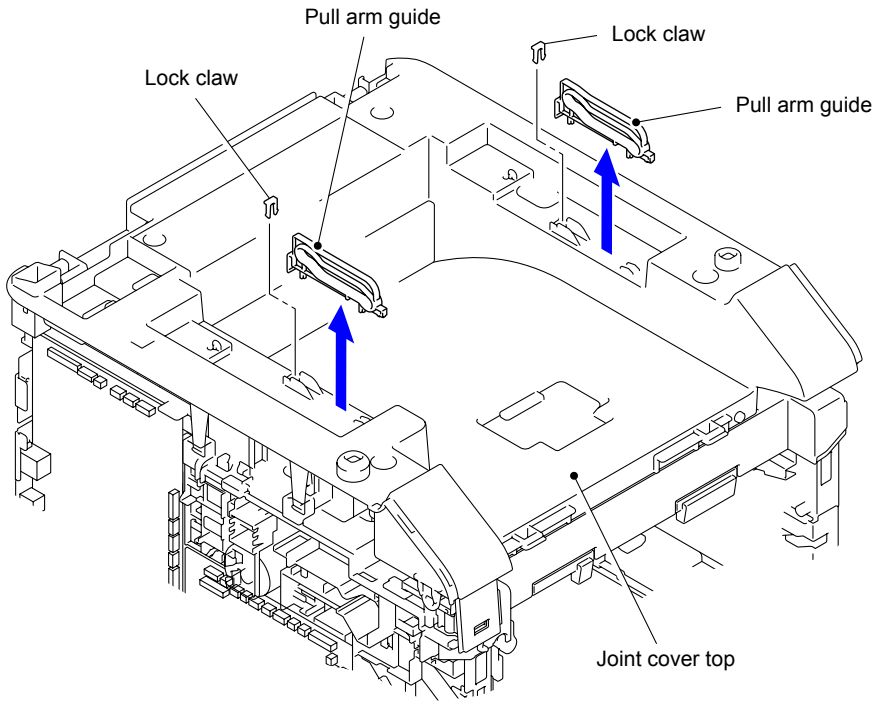


Fig. 3-129

9.37 Joint Cover Top/Joint Film

(1) Remove the Joint film from the Joint cover top.

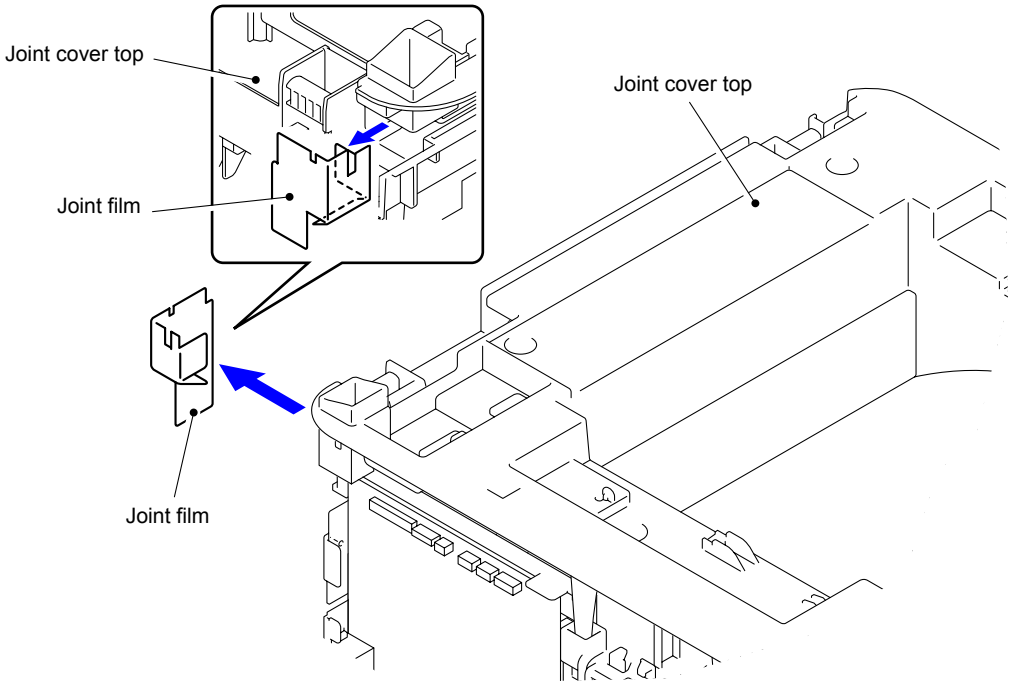


Fig. 3-130

(2) Remove the eight Taptite bind B M4x12 screws from the Joint cover top.

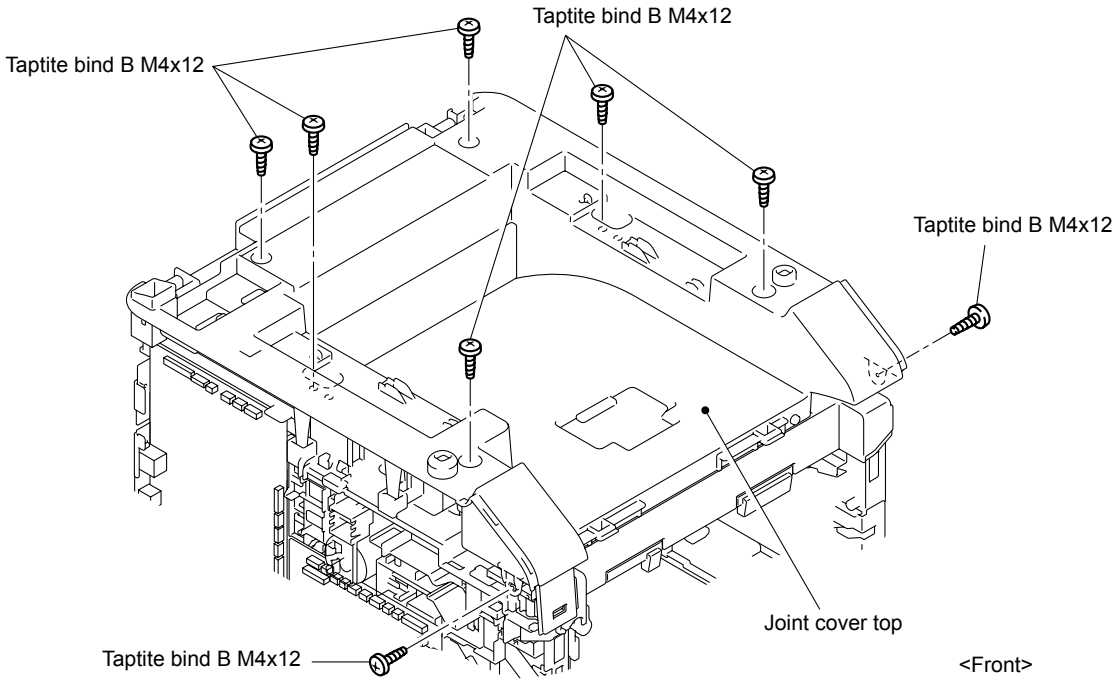


Fig. 3-131

(3) Release the eight Hooks to remove the Joint cover top from the Main body.

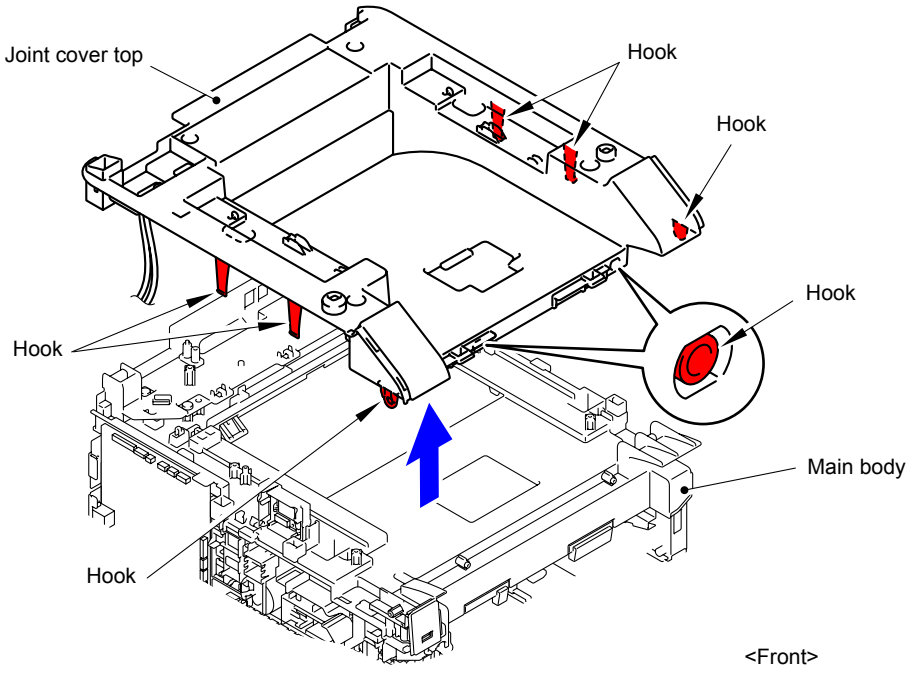


Fig. 3-132

Assembling Note:
When affixing the Joint film, be sure to affix it to the Joint cover top as shown in the figure below.

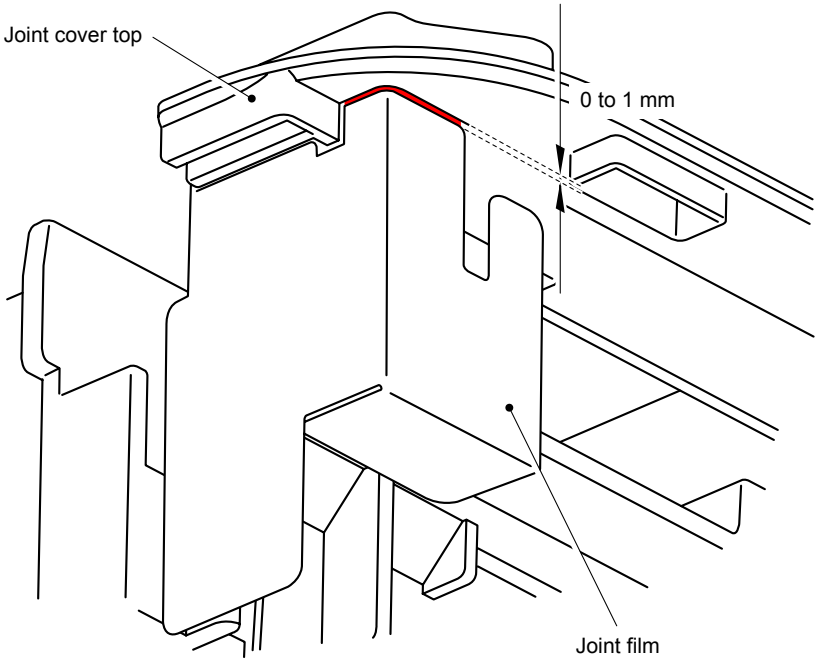


Fig. 3-133

9.38 NCU PCB ASSY

(1) Remove the Screw pan (S/P washer) M3.5x6 screw to remove the NCU FG harness ASSY from the Main body.

(2) Disconnect the Connector (CN9) from the Main PCB ASSY.

(3) Disconnect the wiring from the Main PCB ASSY.

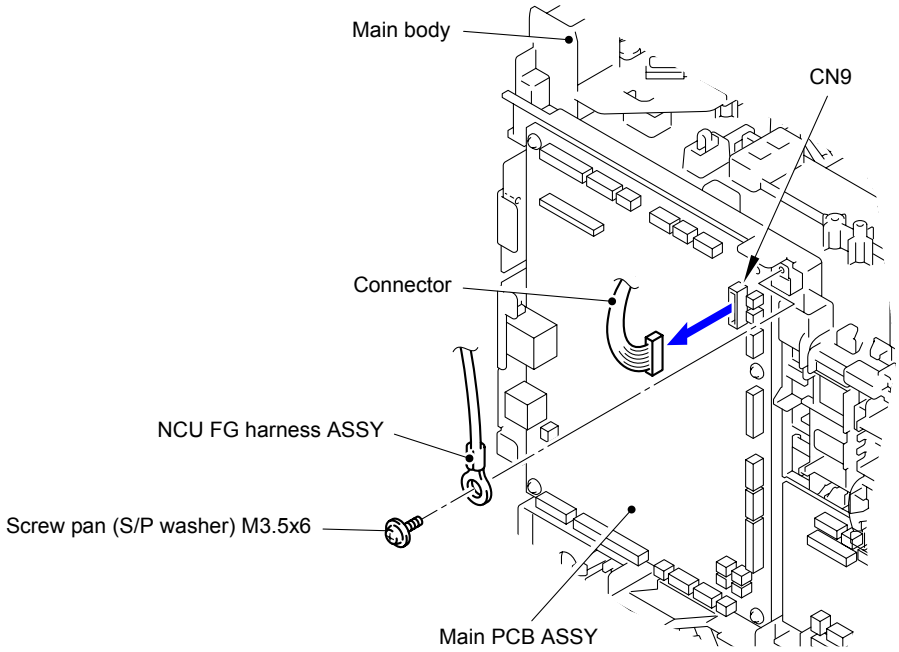


Fig. 3-134

(4) Remove the two Taptite bind B M4x12 screws to remove the NCU unit from the Main body.

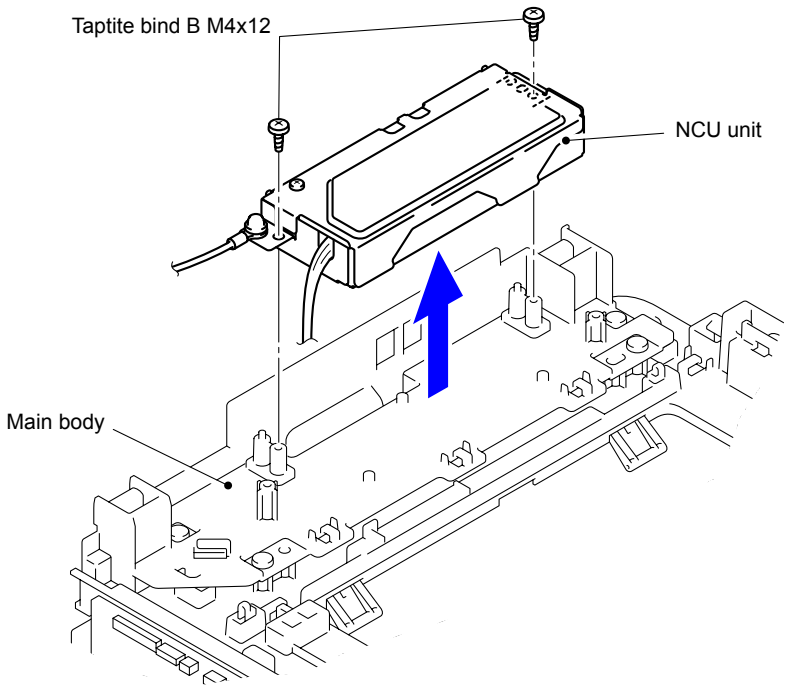


Fig. 3-135

(5) Remove the Screw pan (S/P washer) M3.5x6 screw to remove the NCU shield cover from the NCU unit.

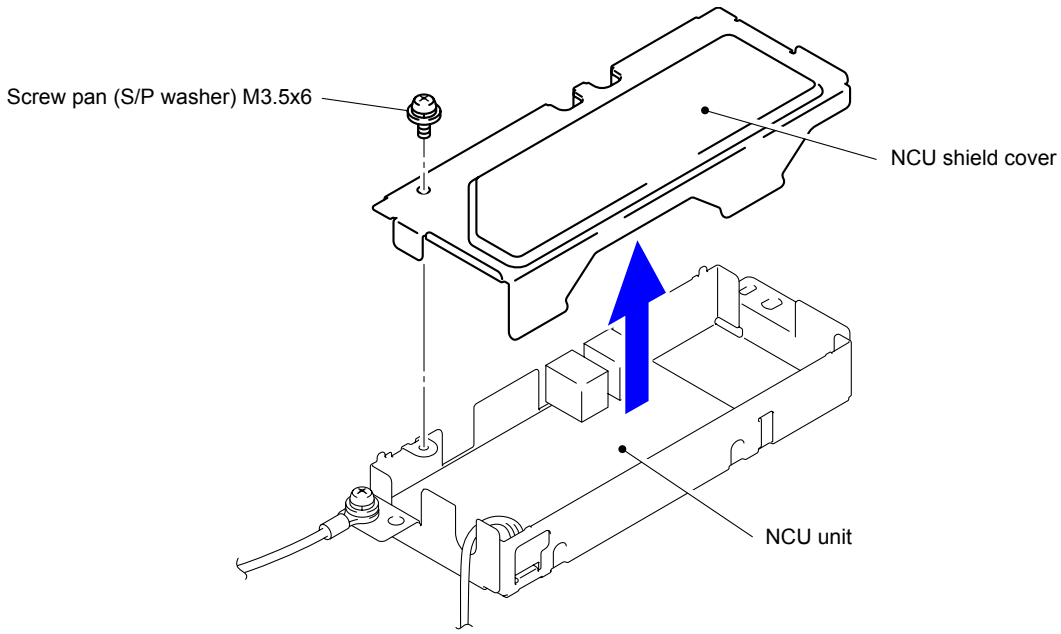


Fig. 3-136

(6) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the NCU PCB ASSY from the NCU shield plate.

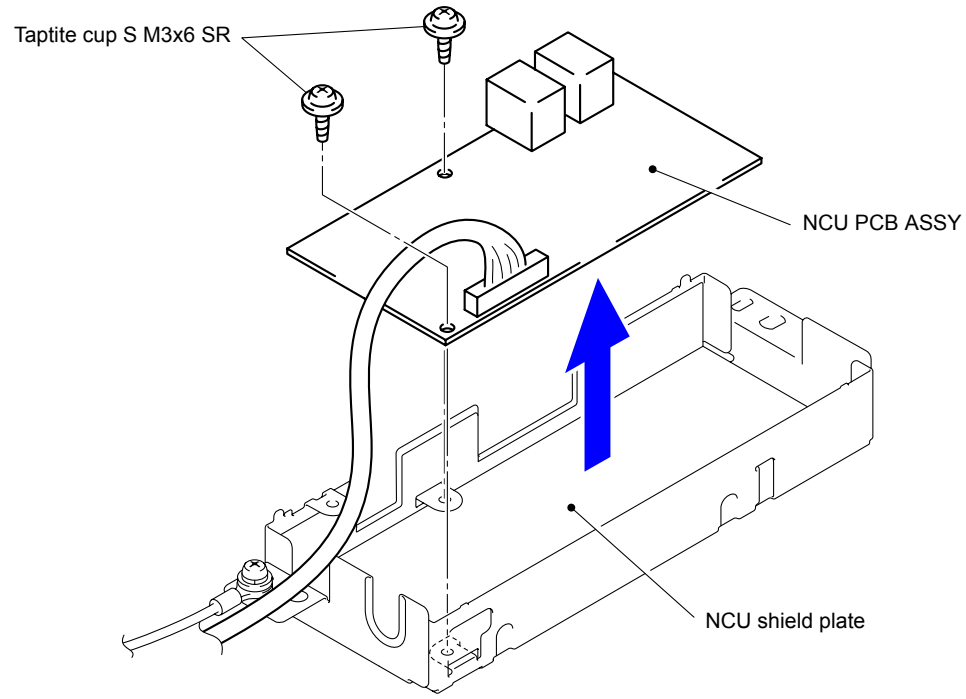


Fig. 3-137

(7) Remove the NCU harness ASSY from the NCU PCB ASSY.

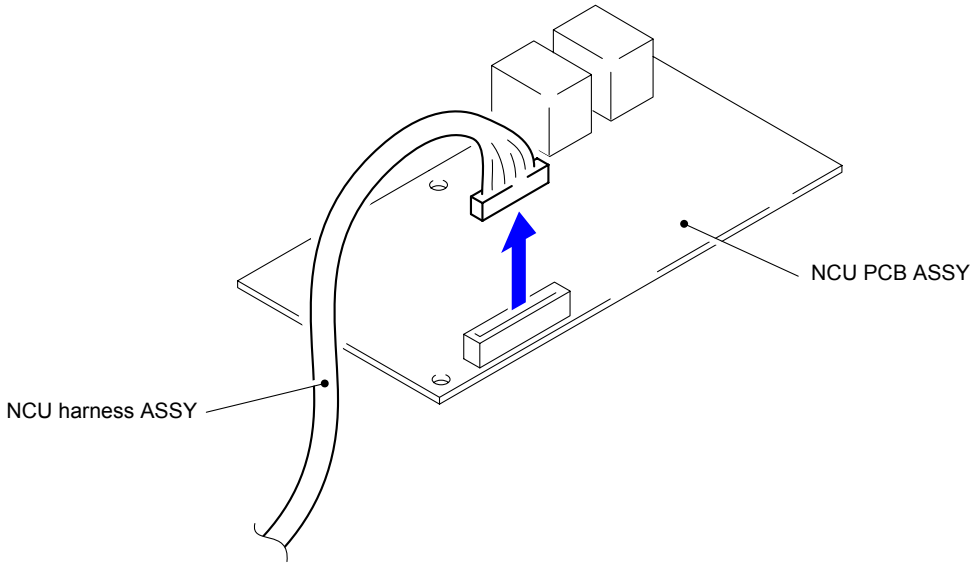


Fig. 3-138

Harness routing: Refer to " 15 NCU"

9.39 Back Cover Upper

(1) Remove the four Taptite bind B M4x12 screws from the Back cover upper.

(2) Release the two Hooks to remove the Back cover upper from the Main body.

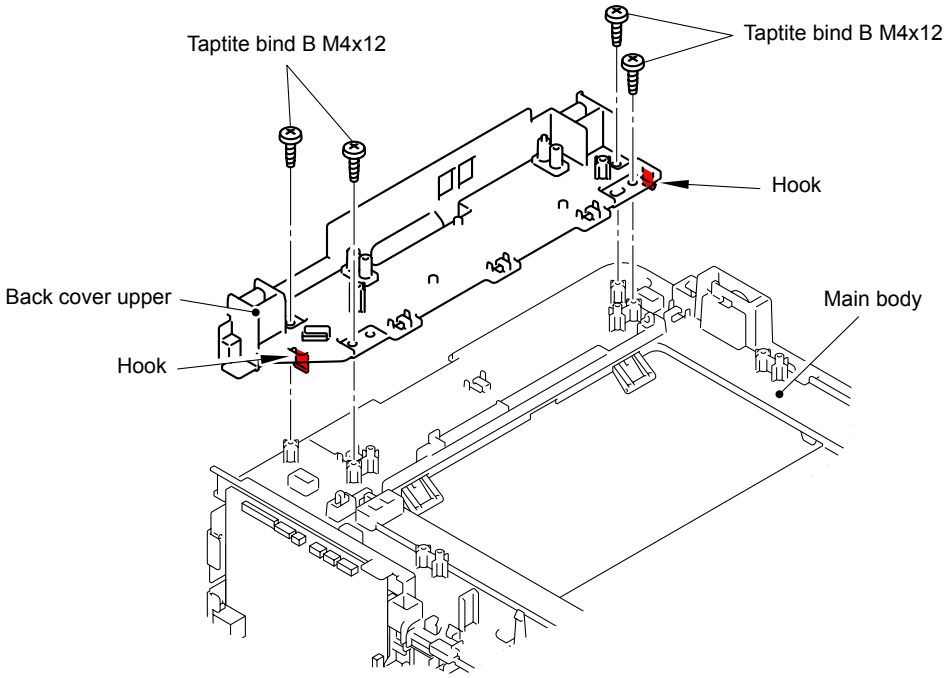


Fig. 3-139

9.40 Joint Cover

(1) Disconnect the Connector (CN11) and cables from the Main PCB ASSY.

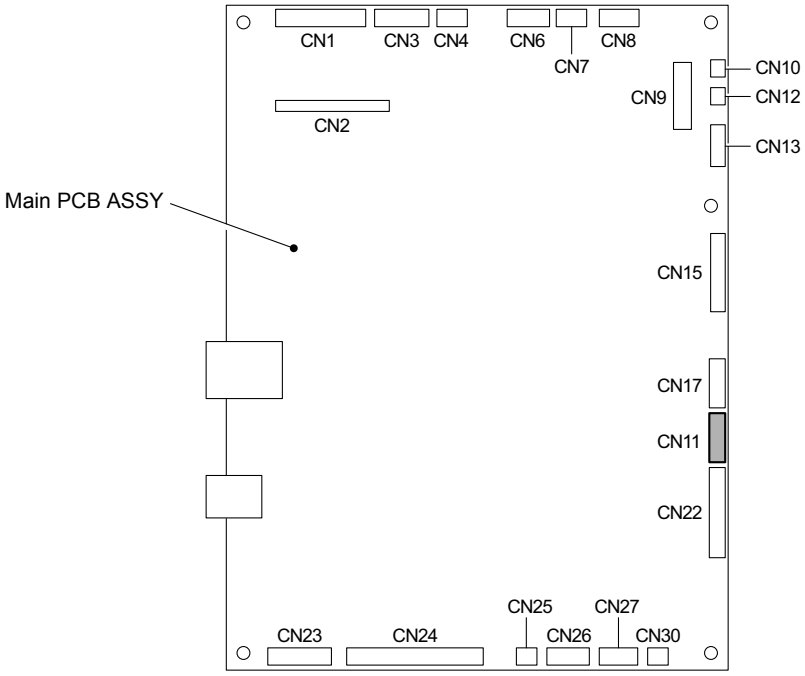


Fig. 3-140

(2) Remove the Taptite bind B M4x12 screw and Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw from the Main body.

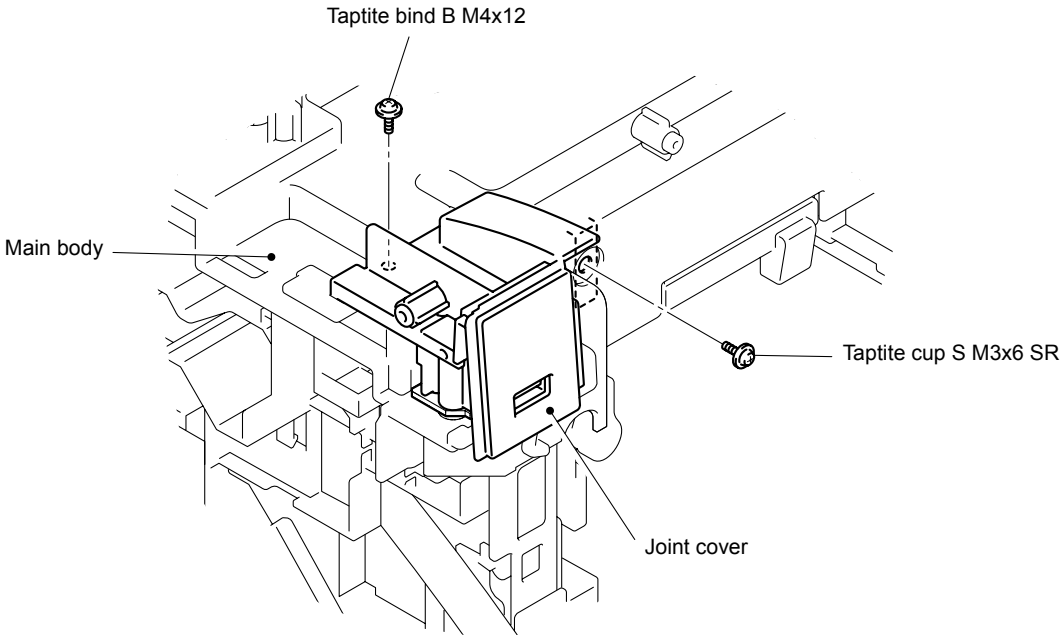


Fig. 3-141

(3) Release the two Hooks to remove the Joint cover from the Main body.

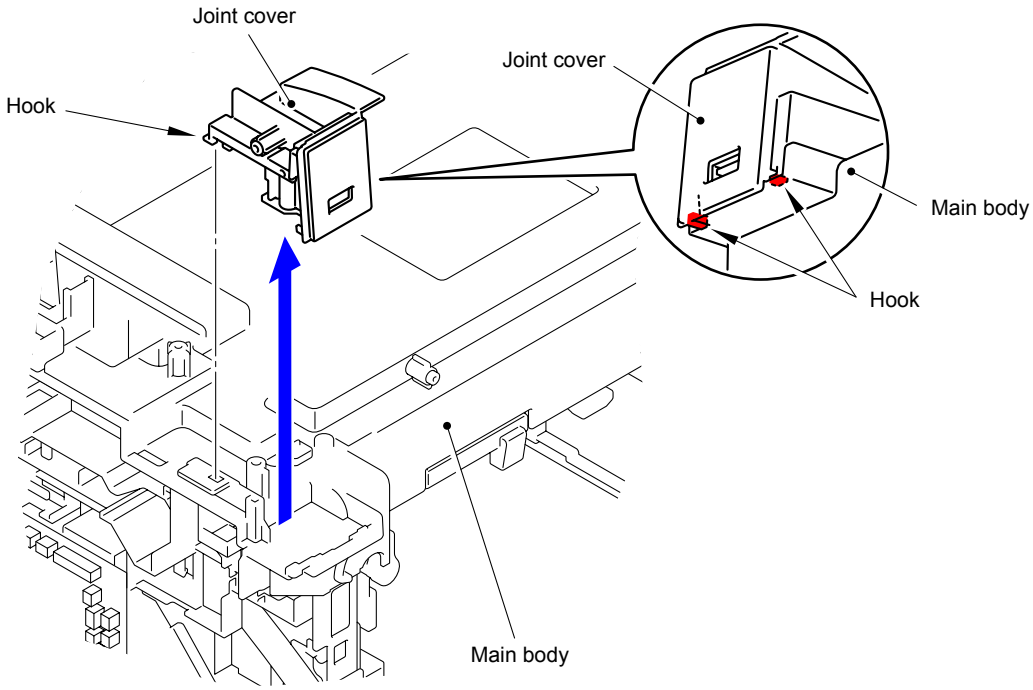


Fig. 3-142

Harness routing: Refer to " 16 USB"

9.41 USB Host Relay PCB ASSY

(1) Remove the two Taptite bind B M4x12 screws to remove the USB host relay PCB ASSY from the Joint cover.

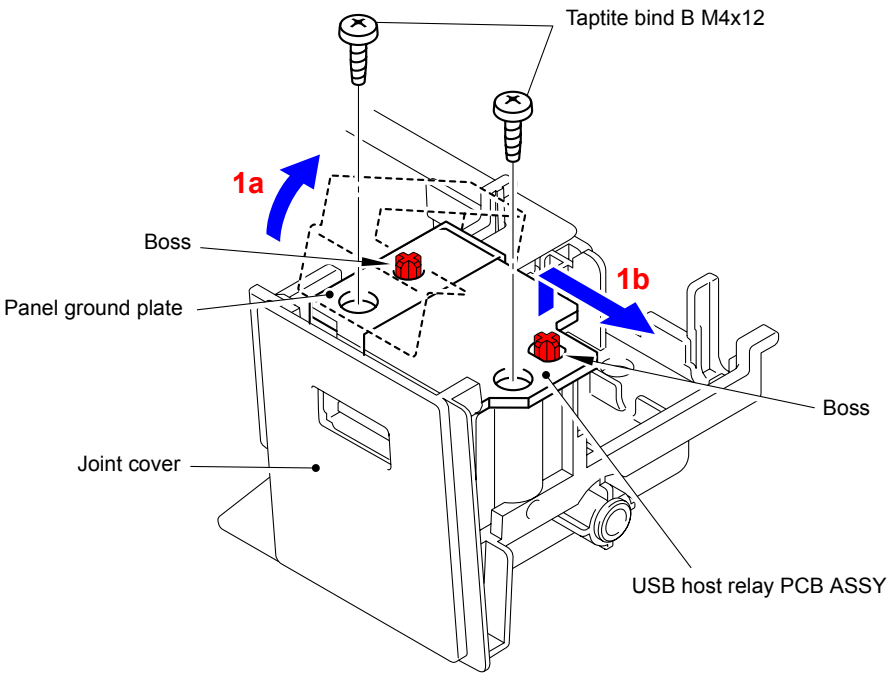


Fig. 3-143

(2) Disconnect the Connector (CN2) of Main USB host harness ASSY from the USB host relay PCB ASSY.

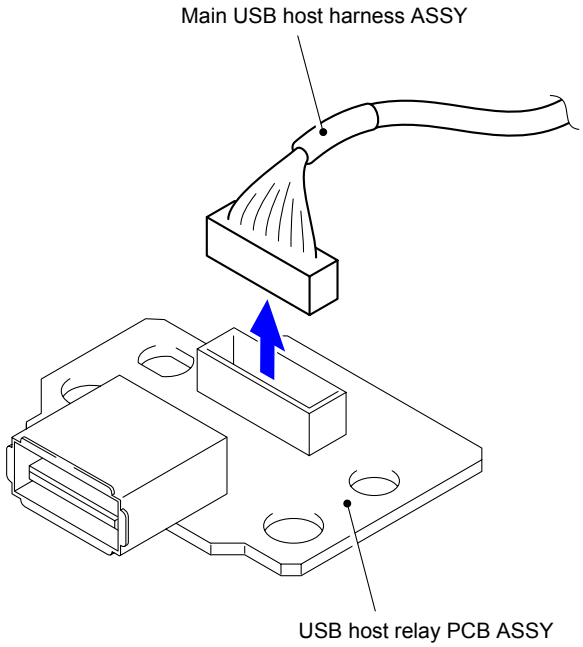


Fig. 3-144

9.42 Wireless LAN Holder/Wireless LAN PCB

(1) Disconnect the Connector (CN17) and cables from the Main PCB ASSY.

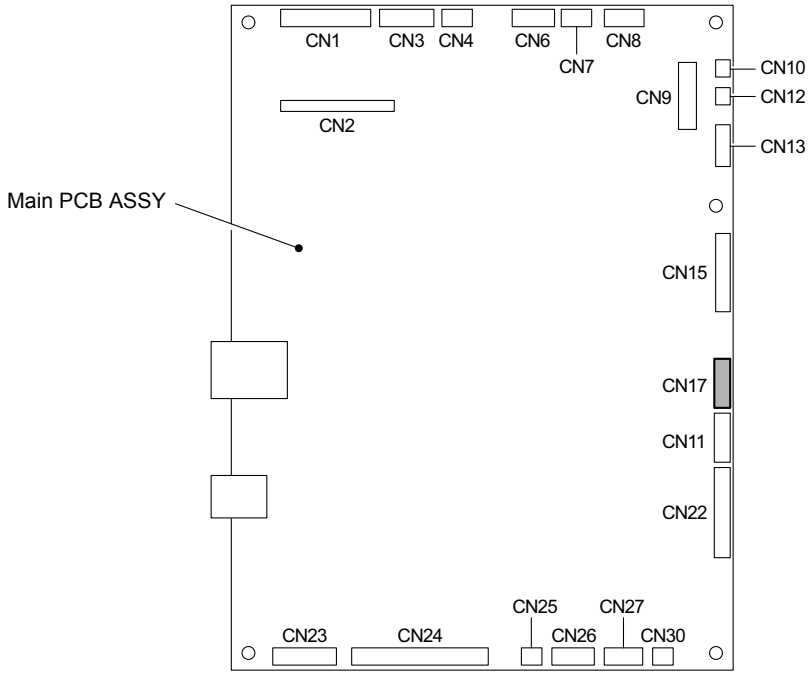


Fig. 3-145

(2) Release the Hook to remove the Wireless LAN holder from the Main body.

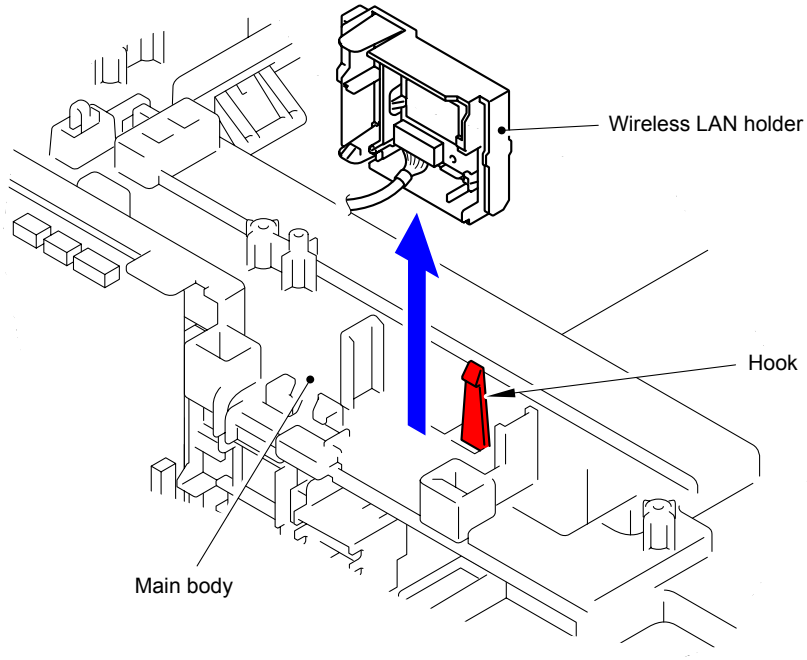


Fig. 3-146

(3) Release the three Hooks to remove the Wireless LAN PCB from the Wireless LAN holder.

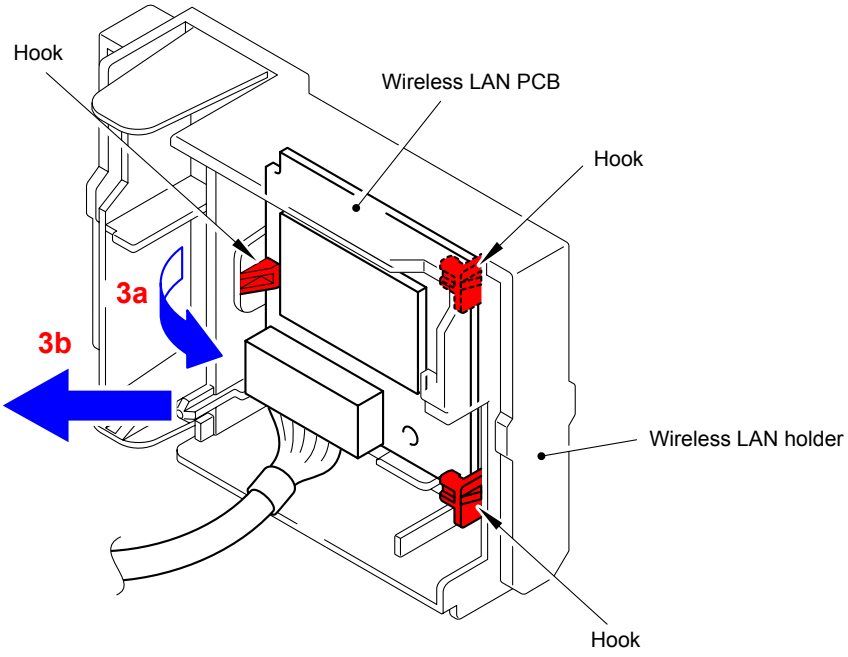


Fig. 3-147

(4) Disconnect the Connector of Main wireless LAN harness ASSY from the Wireless LAN PCB.

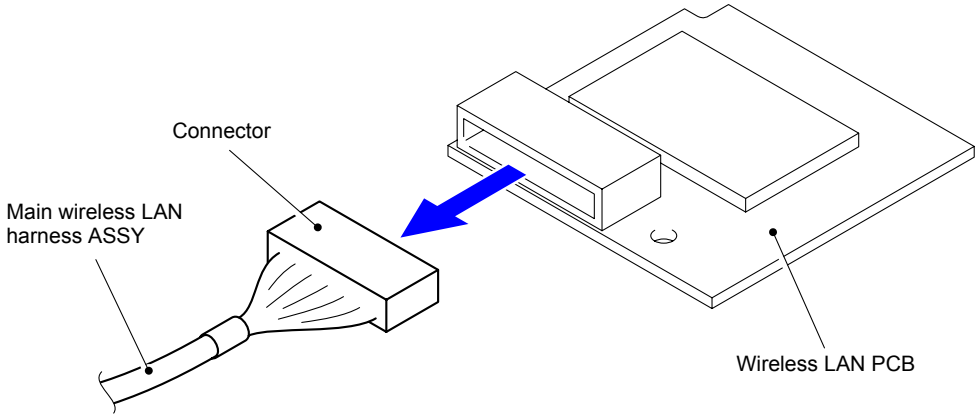


Fig. 3-148

Harness routing: Refer to " 17 Wireless LAN PCB"

9.43 Speaker Unit/Speaker Hold Spring

(1) Disconnect the Connector (CN10) and cables from the Main PCB ASSY.

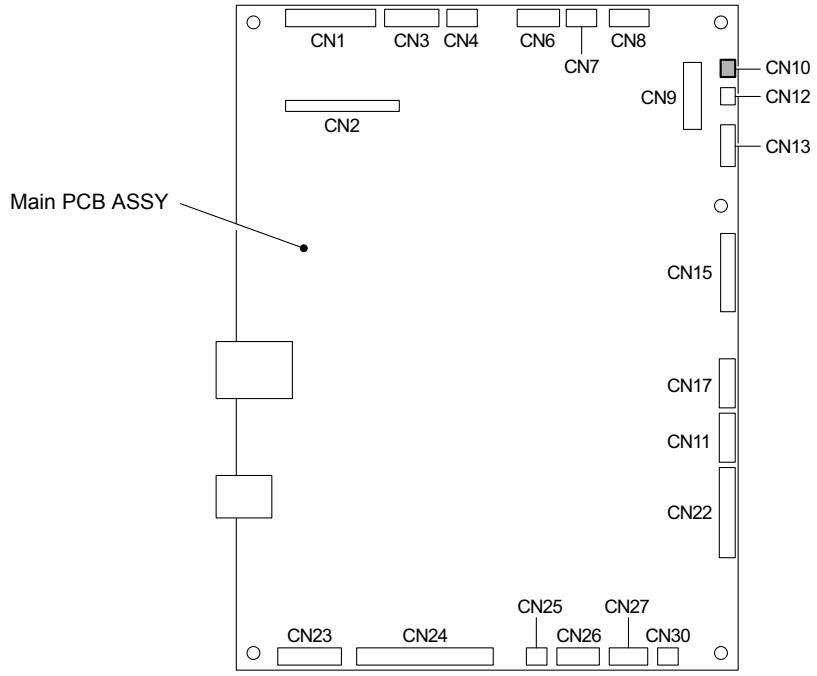


Fig. 3-149

(2) Release the Hook to remove the Speaker hold spring from the Main body.

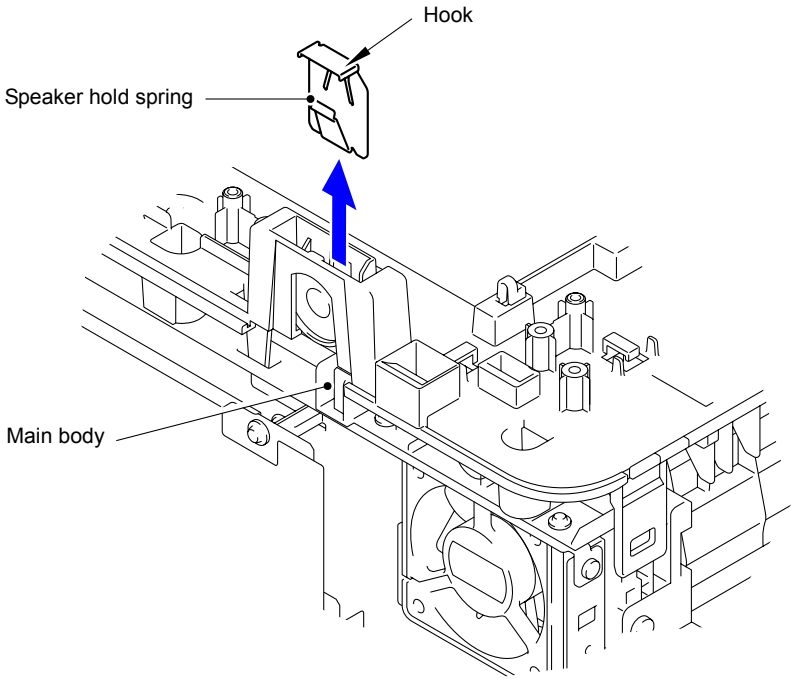


Fig. 3-150

(3) Remove the Speaker unit from the Main body.

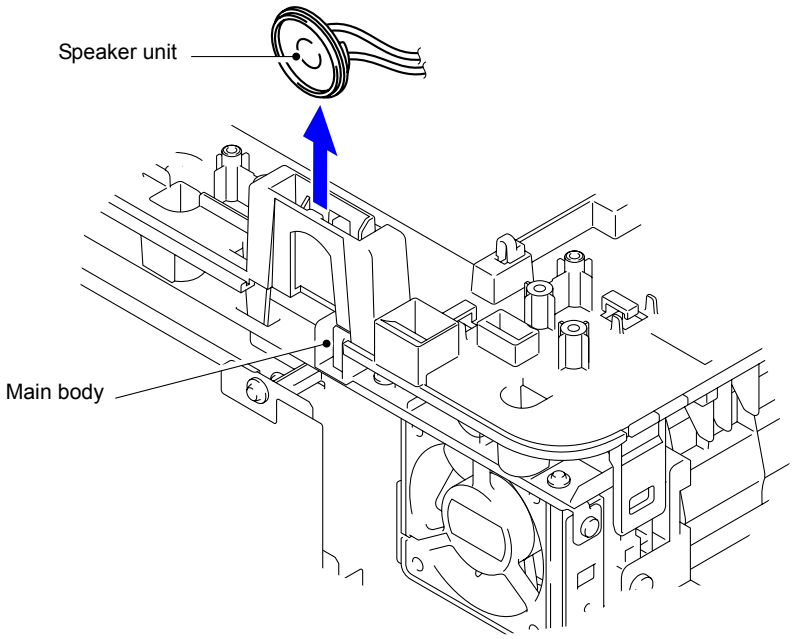


Fig. 3-151

Harness routing: Refer to " 18 Speaker"

9.44 Joint Cover Base ASSY

(1) Remove the seven Taptite cup S M3x8 screws from the Joint cover base ASSY.

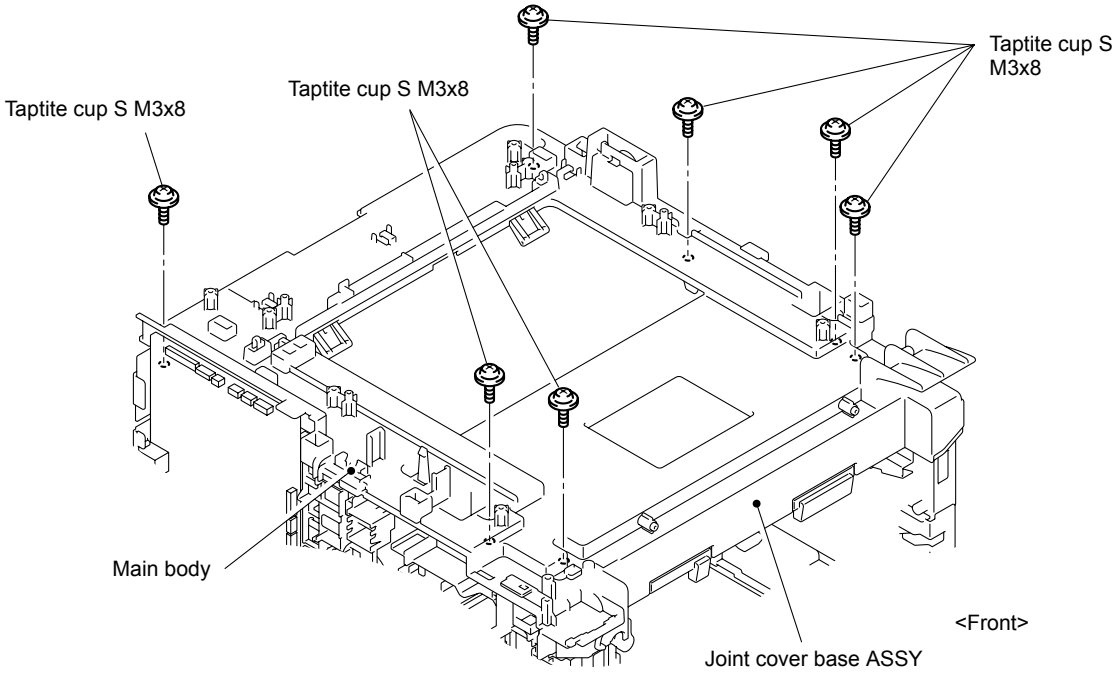


Fig. 3-152

(2) Remove the two Taptite bind B M4x12 screws from the Joint cover base ASSY.

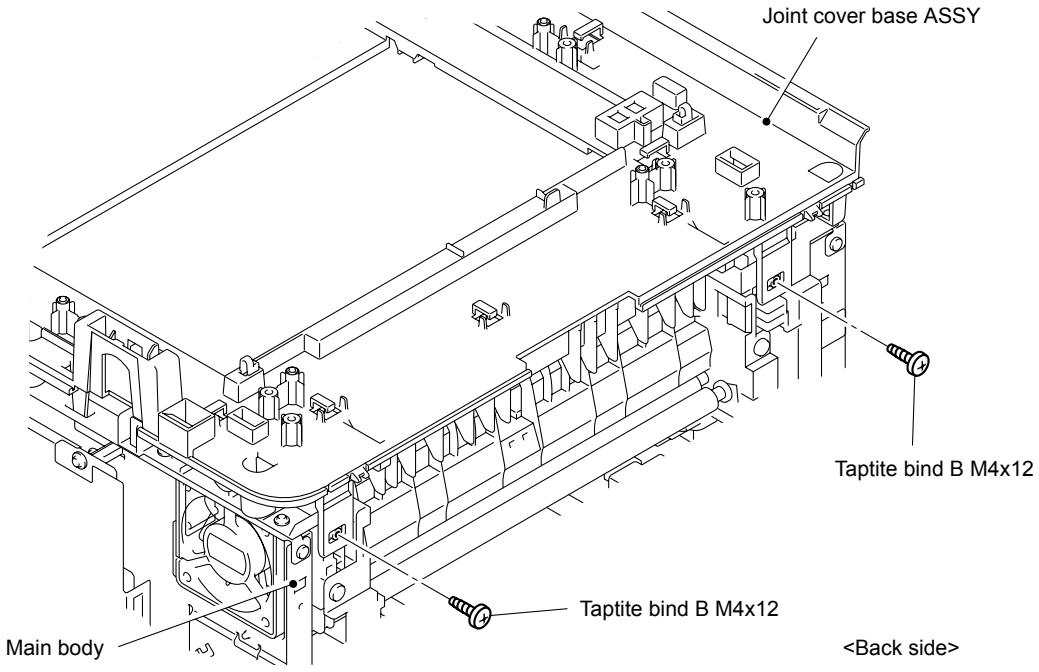


Fig. 3-153

(3) Release the ten Hooks to remove the Joint cover base ASSY from the Main body.

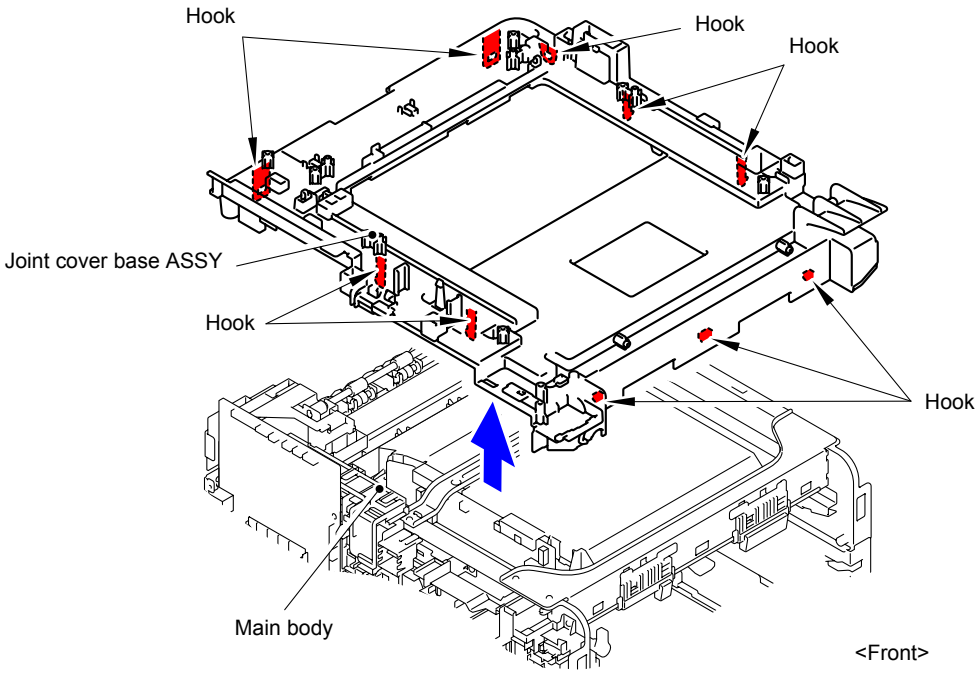


Fig. 3-154

9.45 Main PCB ASSY

(1) Disconnect the eight Connectors (CN12, CN13, CN23, CN24, CN25, CN26, CN27, and CN30) and two Flat cables (CN15 and CN22) from the Main PCB ASSY.

Note:

- After disconnecting flat cable(s), check that each cable is not damaged at its end or shortcircuited.
- When connecting flat cable(s), do not insert them at an angle. After insertion, check that the cable are not at an angle.

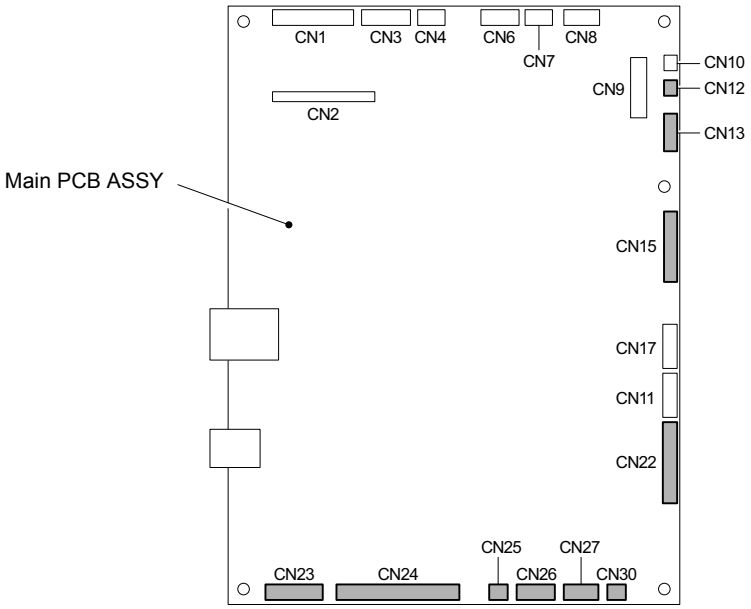


Fig. 3-155

(2) Remove the four Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Main PCB ASSY from the Top drive ASSY.

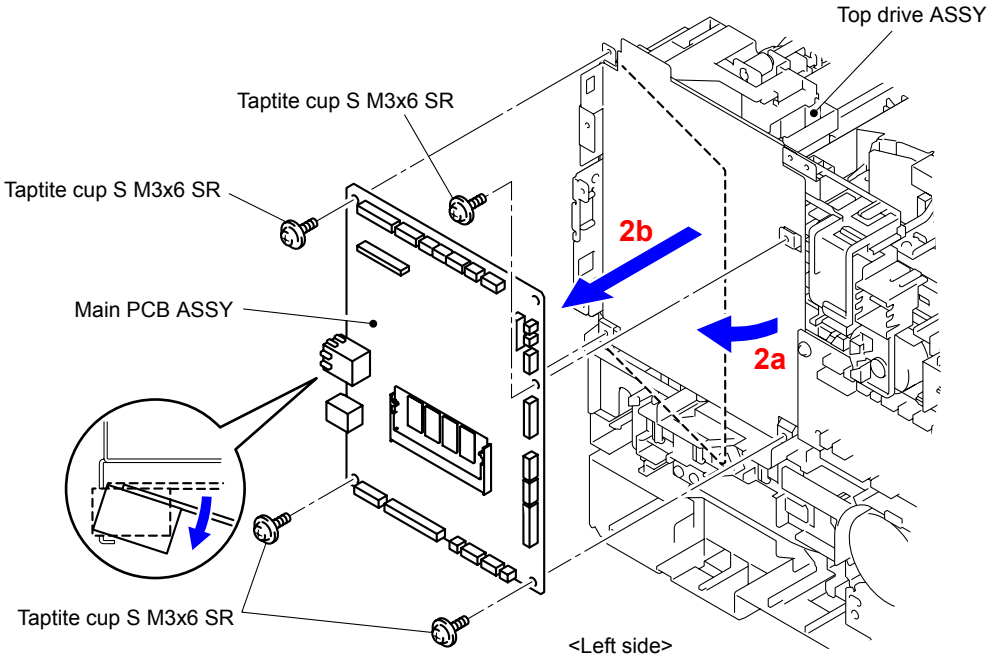


Fig. 3-156

9.46 Engine PCB ASSY

(1) Disconnect the seventeen Connectors (CN3, CN5, CN8, CN9, CN10, CN11, CN12, CN13, CN14, CN16, CN17, CN18, CN19, CN20, CN21, CN22, and CN23) and four Flat cables (CN1, CN2, CN15, and CN25) from the Engine PCB ASSY.

Note:

- After disconnecting flat cable(s), check that each cable is not damaged at its end or shortcircuited.
- When connecting flat cable(s), do not insert them at an angle. After insertion, check that the cable are not at an angle.

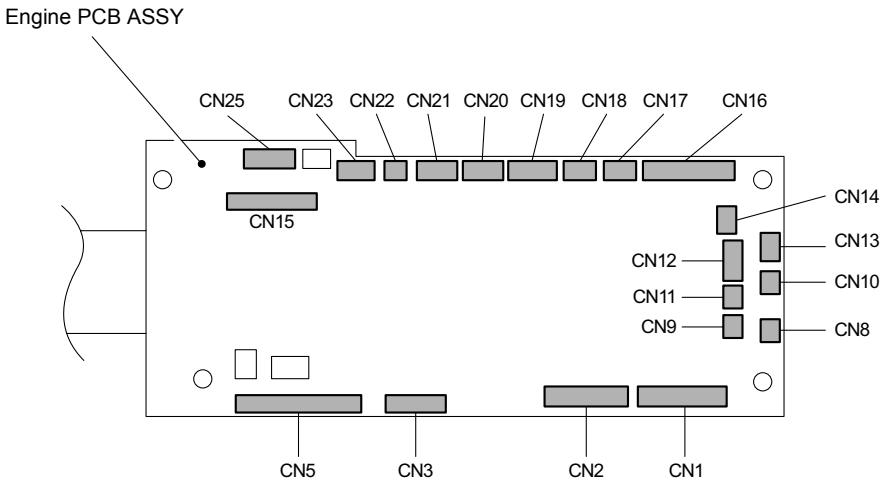


Fig. 3-157

(2) Remove the three Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Engine PCB ASSY from the Top drive ASSY.

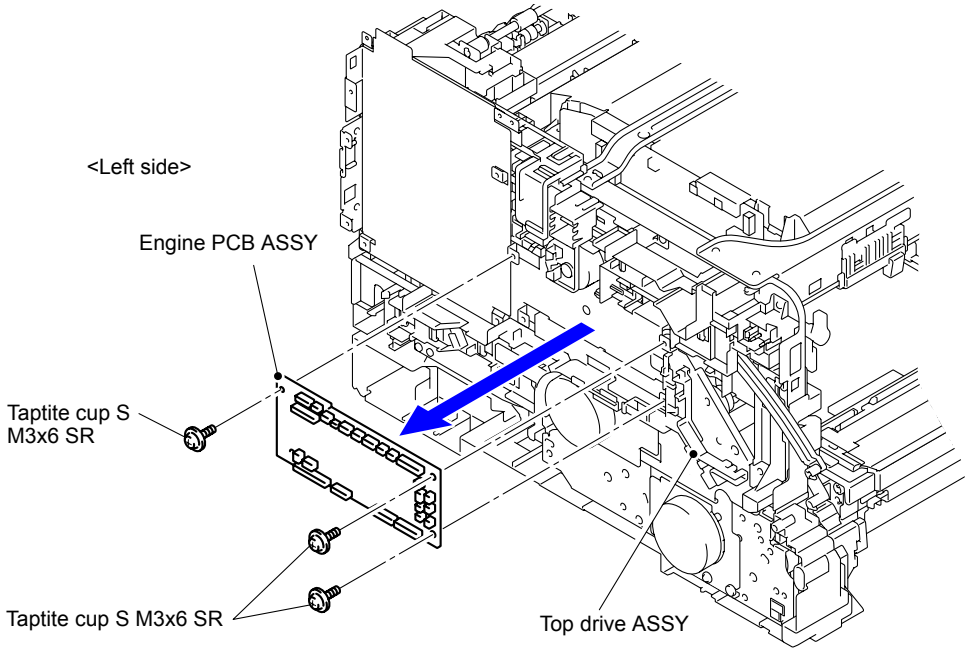


Fig. 3-158

9.47 Laser Unit

(1) Remove the Main insulation sheet from the Top drive ASSY.

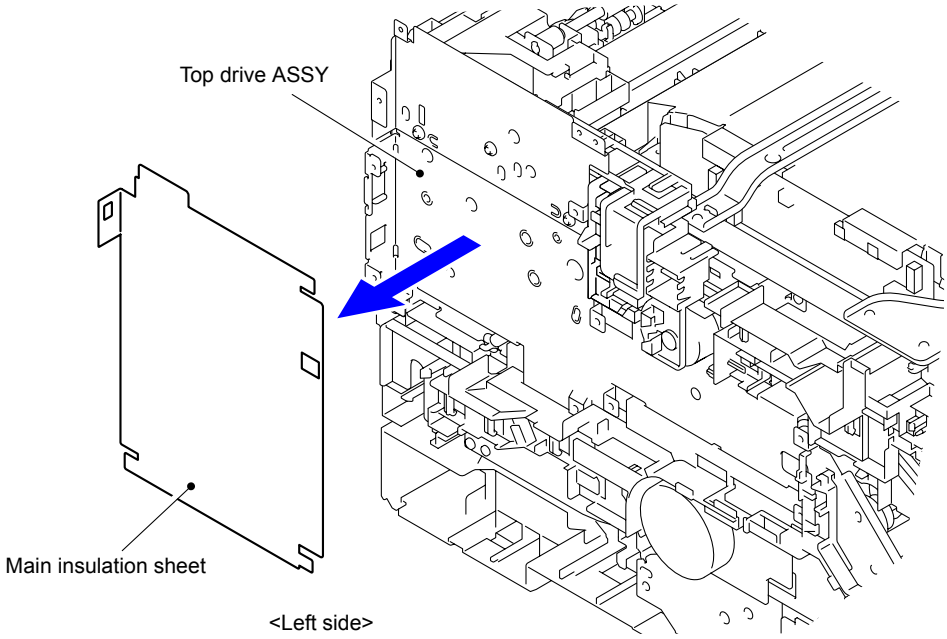


Fig. 3-159

(2) Remove the three Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Main shield plate from the Top drive ASSY.

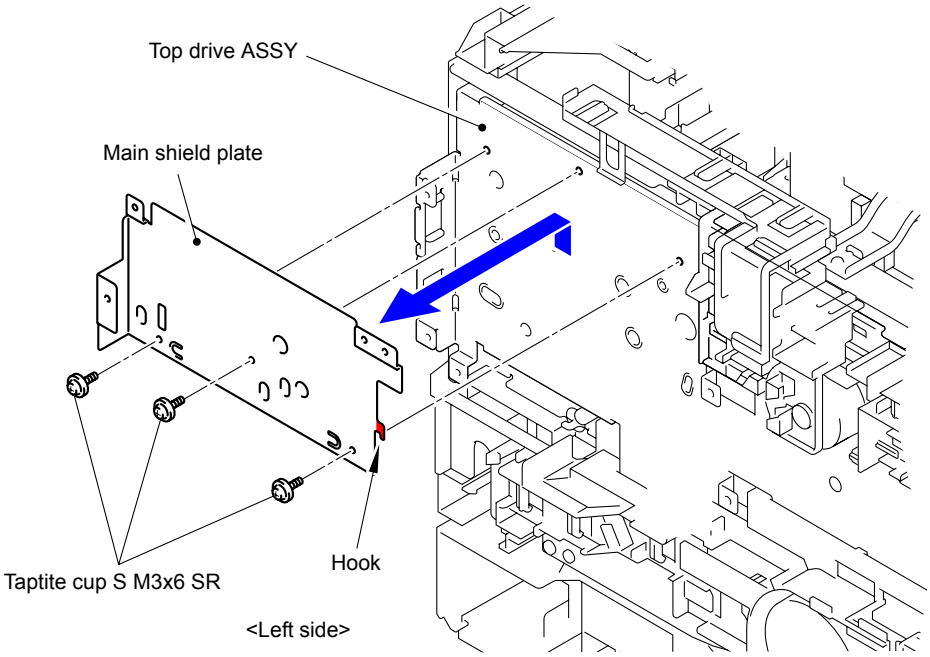


Fig. 3-160

(3) Disconnect the Flat cable from the Develop FFC holder.

(4) Release the two Hooks to remove the Develop FFC holder from the Upper cable rack.

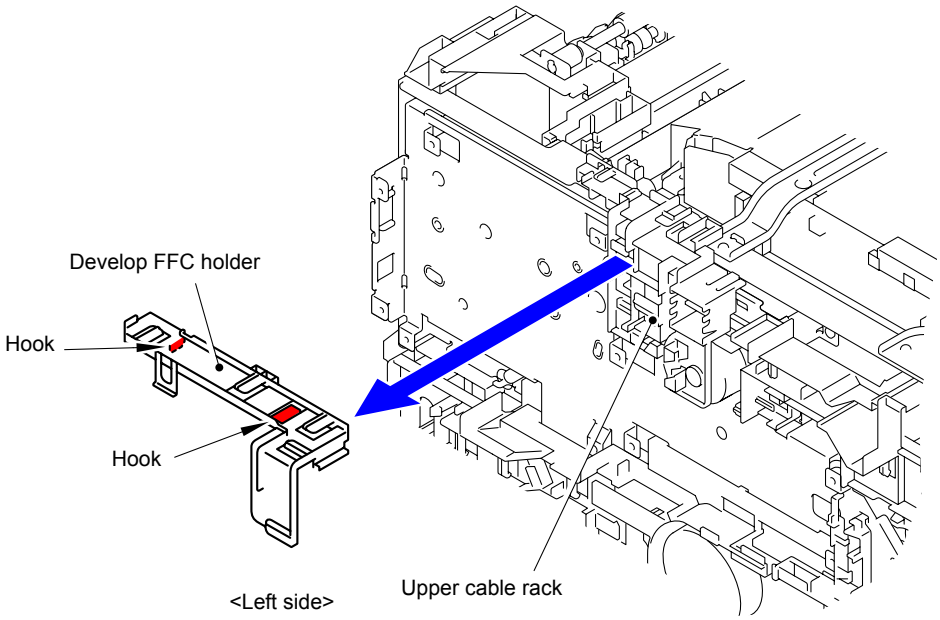


Fig. 3-161

(5) Disconnect cables from the Upper cable rack.

(6) Release the four Hooks to remove the Upper cable rack from the Base frame unit.

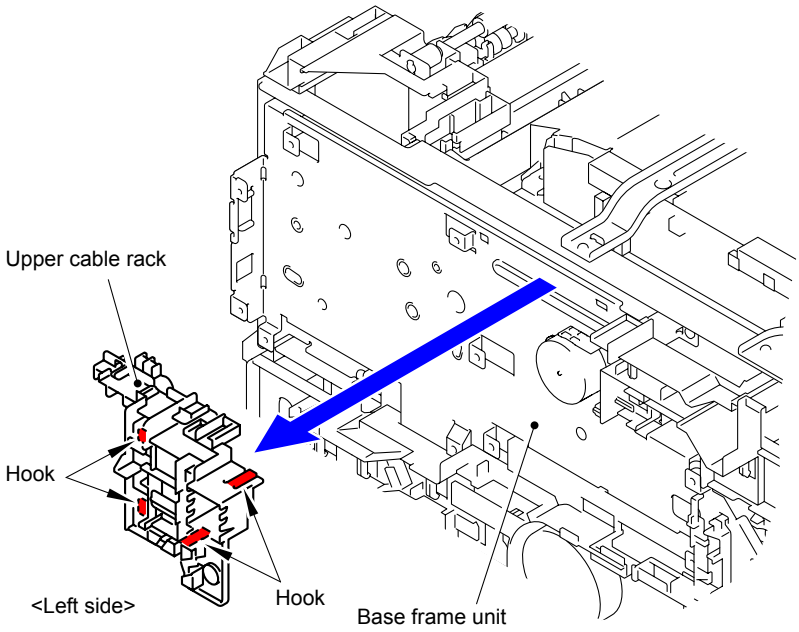


Fig. 3-162

(7) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Top beam from the Base frame unit.

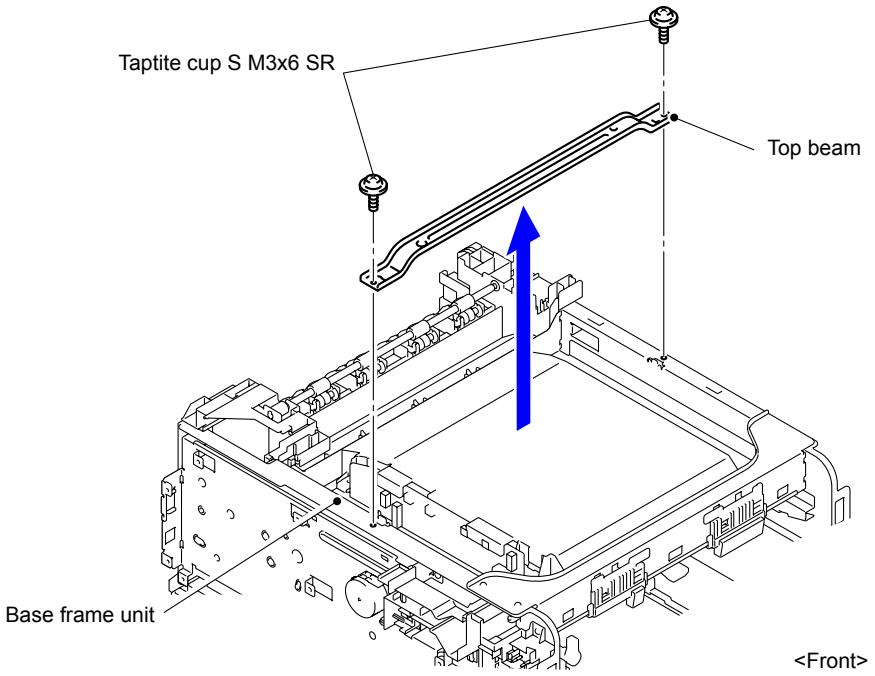


Fig. 3-163

(8) Remove the five Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the four Scanner holders.

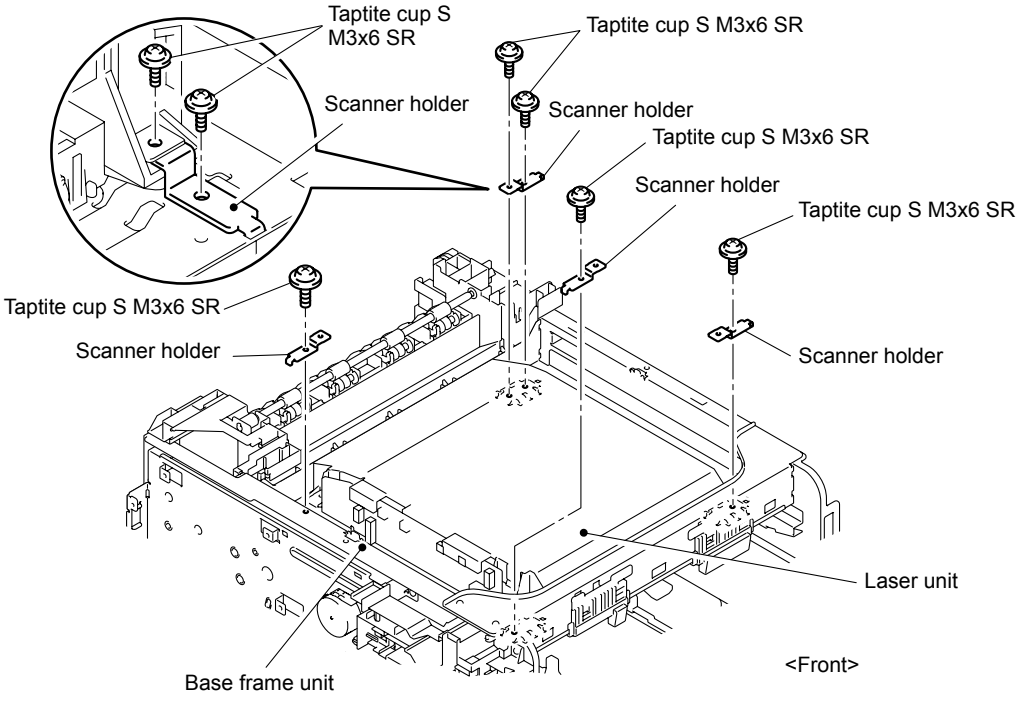


Fig. 3-164

(9) Disconnect the Connector (CN8) and two Flat cables from the Laser unit to remove the Laser unit from the Base frame unit.

Note:

- After disconnecting flat cable(s), check that each cable is not damaged at its end or shortcircuited.
- When connecting flat cable(s), do not insert them at an angle. After insertion, check that the cable are not at an angle.

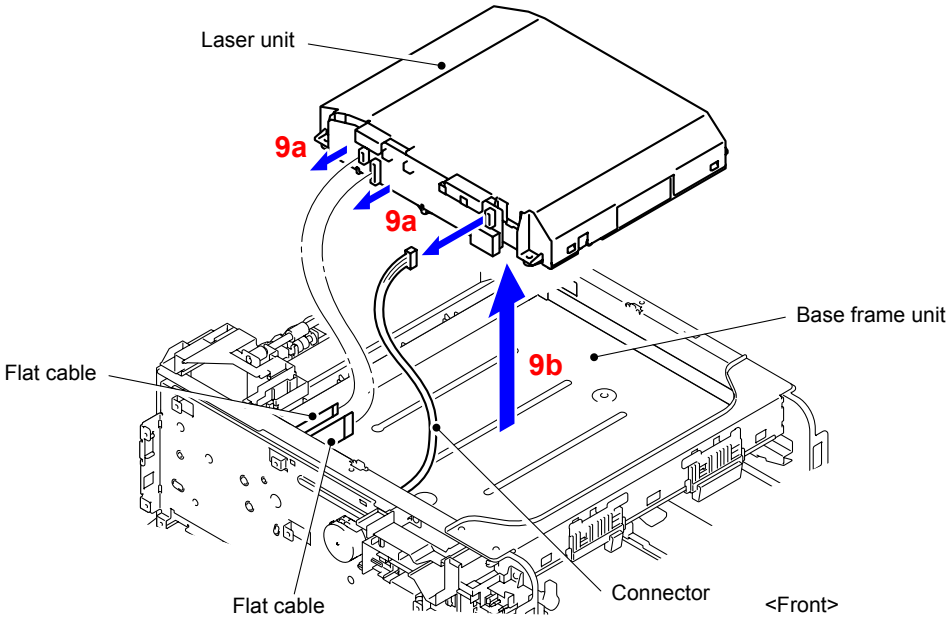


Fig. 3-165

Harness routing: Refer to " 1 Laser Unit"

9.48 Develop Release Motor

(1) Remove the two Taptite bind S M3x6 screws.

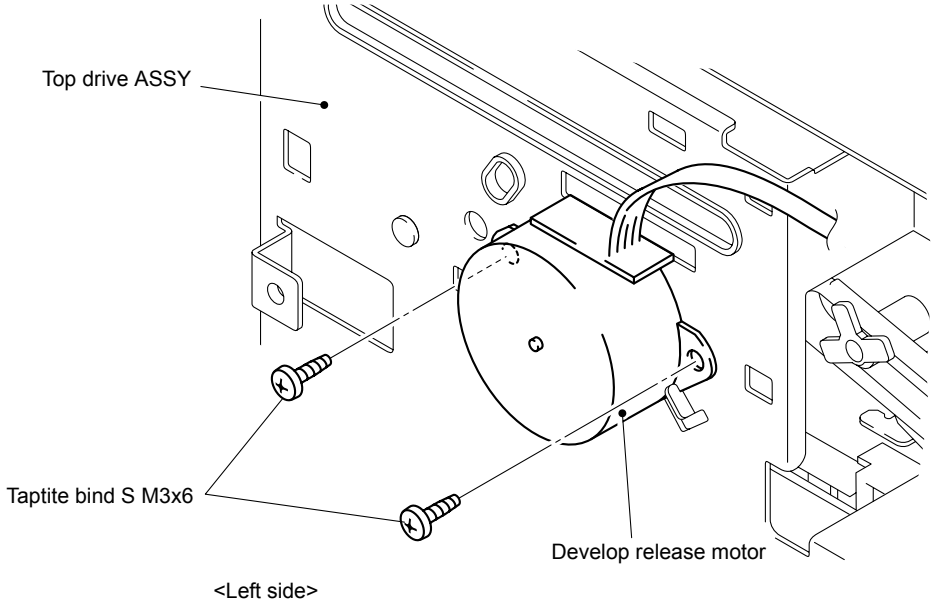


Fig. 3-166

(2) Rotate the Develop release motor counterclockwise to release the Hook to remove the Develop release motor from the Top drive ASSY.

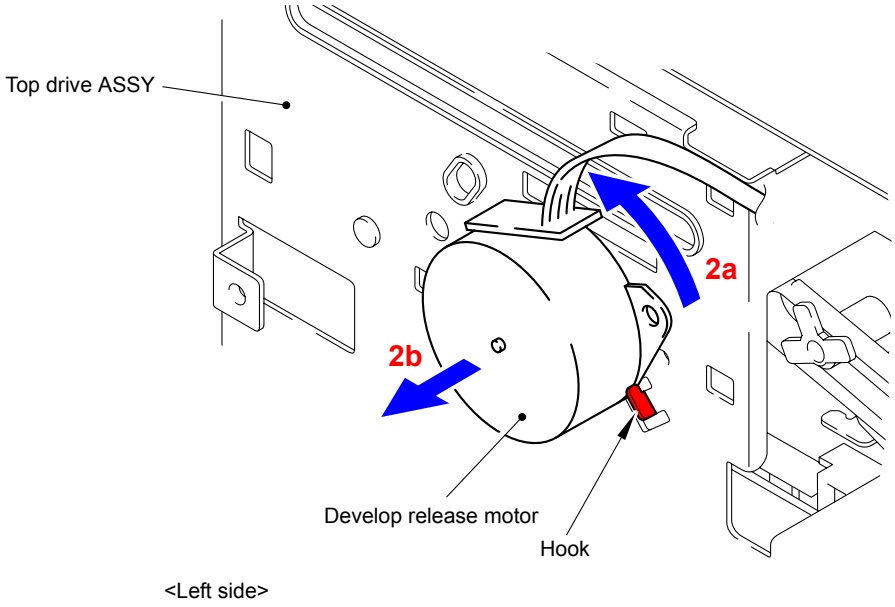


Fig. 3-167

Harness routing: Refer to " 2 Develop Release Motor"

9.49 Front Cover Sensor

(1) Disconnect the wiring of the Front cover sensor from the Panel cable rack.

(2) Release the two Hooks to remove the Front cover sensor.

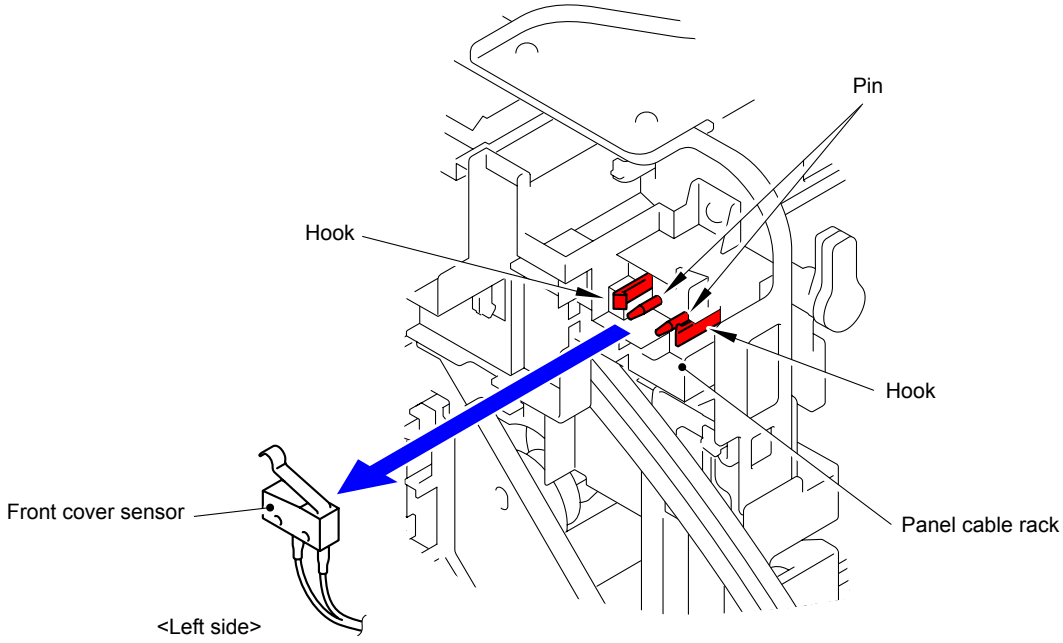


Fig. 3-168

Harness routing: Refer to " 3 Front Cover Sensor"

9.50 Top Drive ASSY

(1) Disconnect cables from the Lower cable rack.

(2) Release the four Hooks to remove the Lower cable rack from the Top drive ASSY.

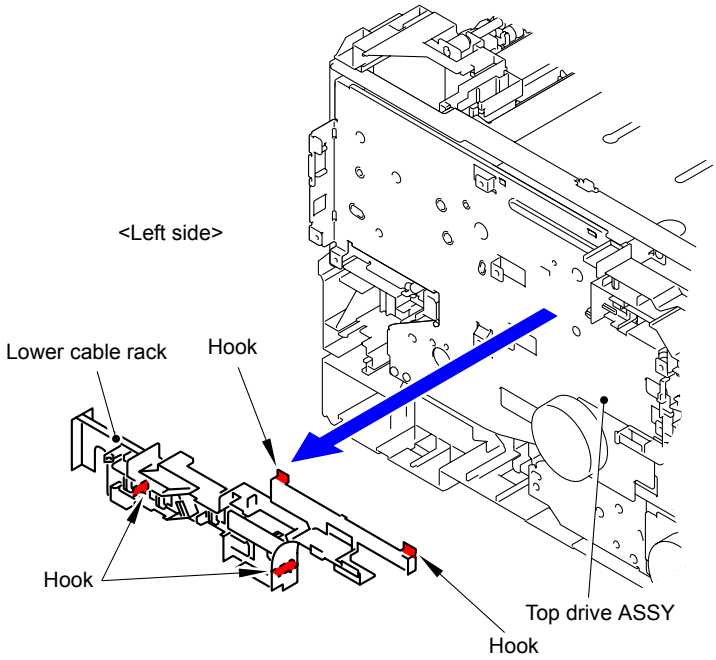


Fig. 3-169

(3) Disconnect cables from the PF line holder.

(4) Release the three Hooks to remove the PF line holder from the Top drive ASSY.

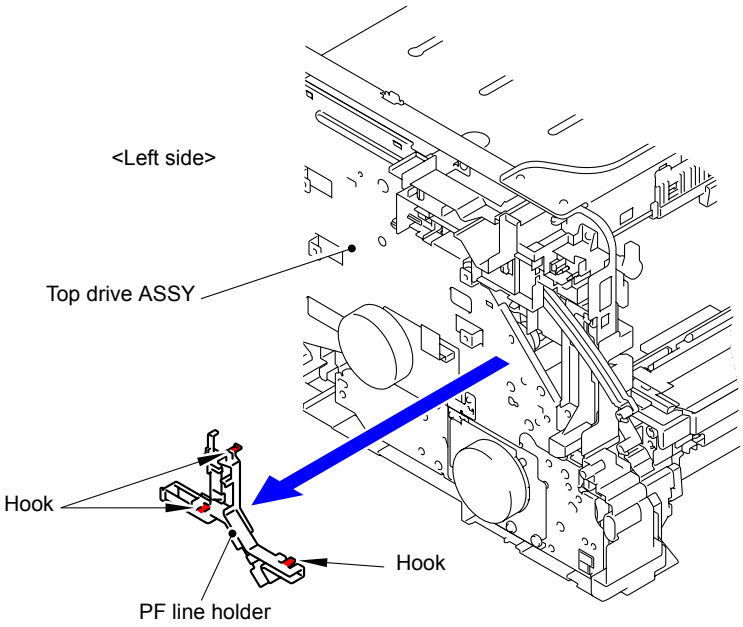


Fig. 3-170

(5) Disconnect cables from the Panel cable rack.

(6) Remove the Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw.

(7) Release the four Hooks to remove the Panel cable rack from the Top drive ASSY.

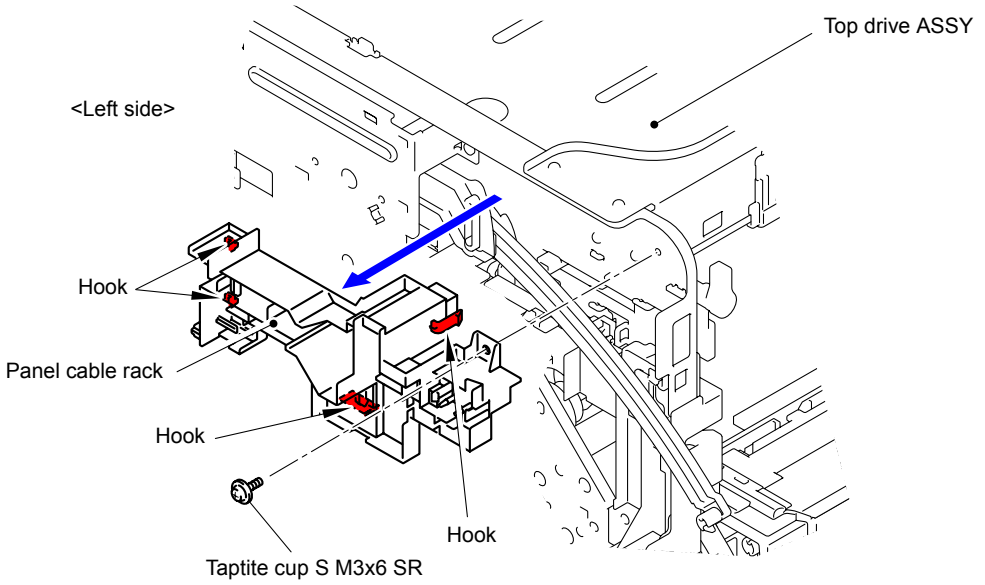


Fig. 3-171

(8) Remove the Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw and the Taptite pan (washer) B M4x12DA screw, and then remove the Grand plate from the Top drive ASSY and PF cleaner drive ASSY.

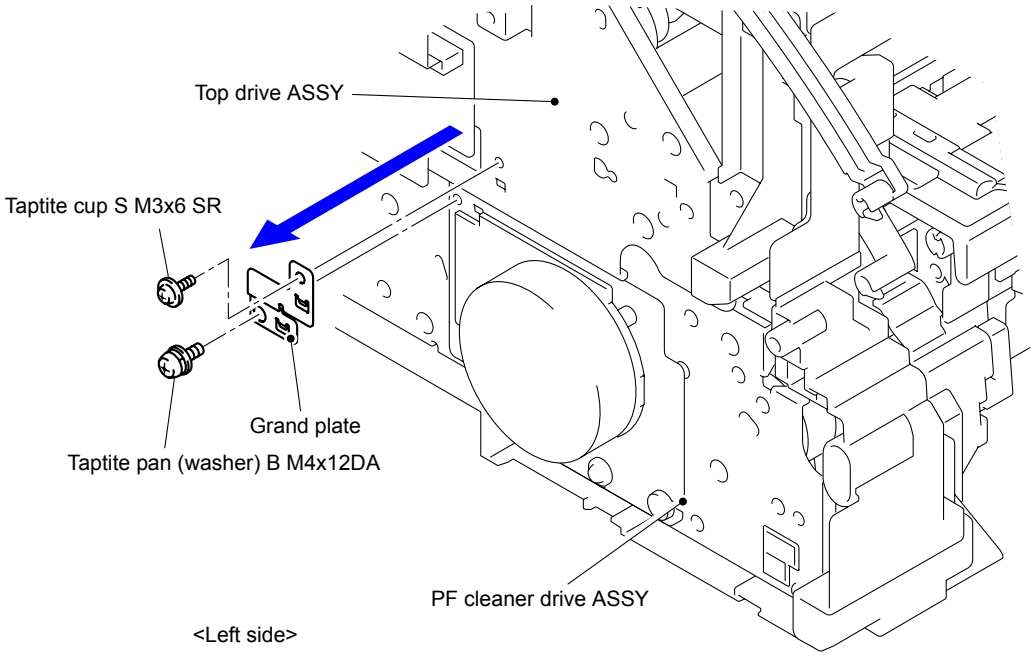


Fig. 3-172

(9) Remove the nine Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws and Taptite bind B M4x12 screw from the Top drive ASSY.

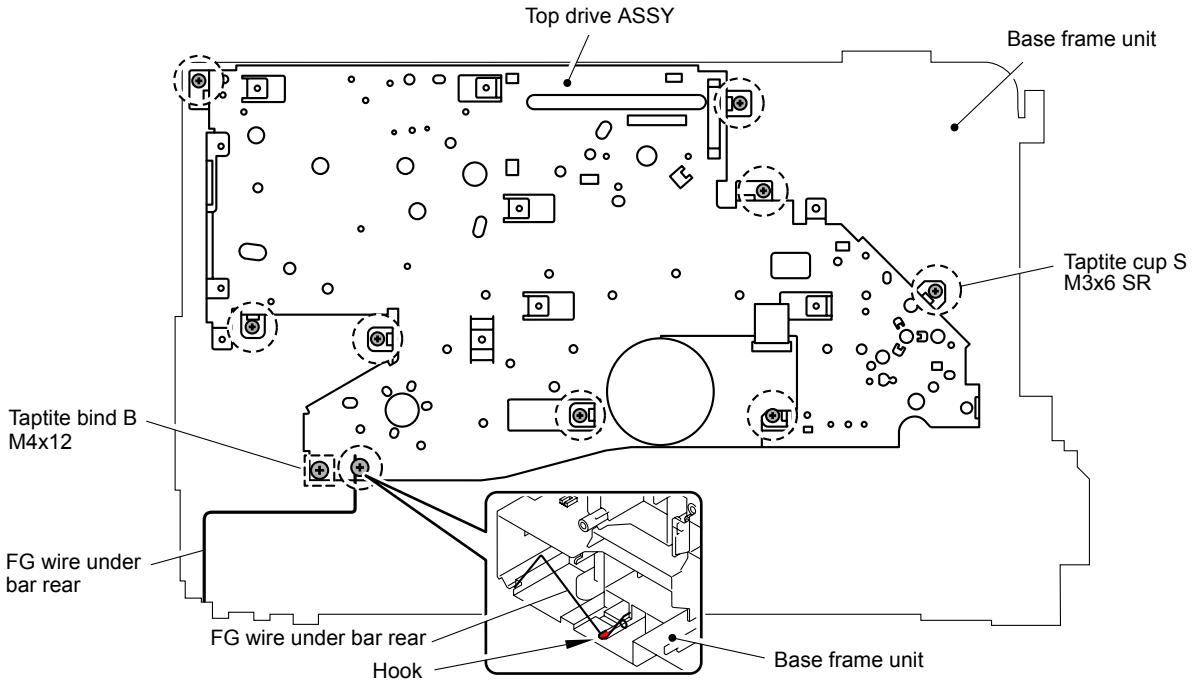


Fig. 3-173

Note:

- When removing and installing the Top drive ASSY, be sure to hang the FG wire under bar rear on the Hook of the Base frame unit as shown in the figure before removing and installing the Top drive ASSY.
- Be sure to install the FG wire under bar rear in the Top drive ASSY when installing the Top drive ASSY.

(10) Remove the Develop forced release part from the Forced develop release cam.

(11) Release the two Hooks to remove the Top drive ASSY from the Base frame unit.

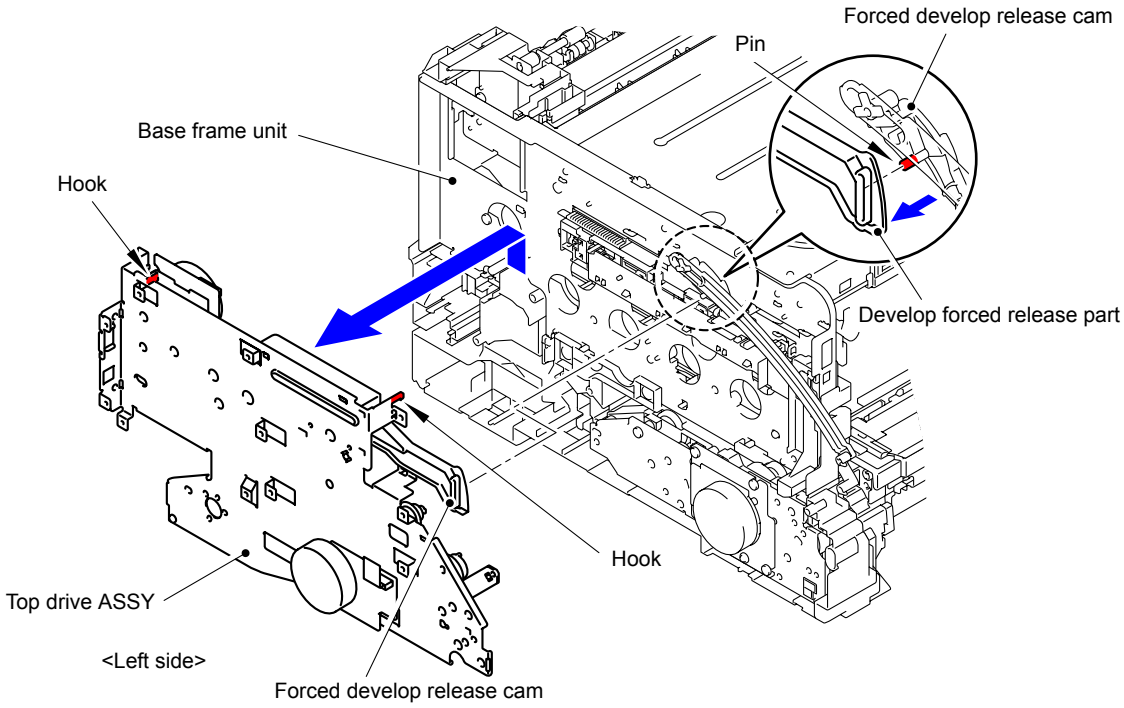


Fig. 3-174

Harness routing: Refer to " 4 Top Drive ASSY"

9.51 Forced Develop Release Link

(1) Remove the Forced develop release link from the Forced develop release cam.

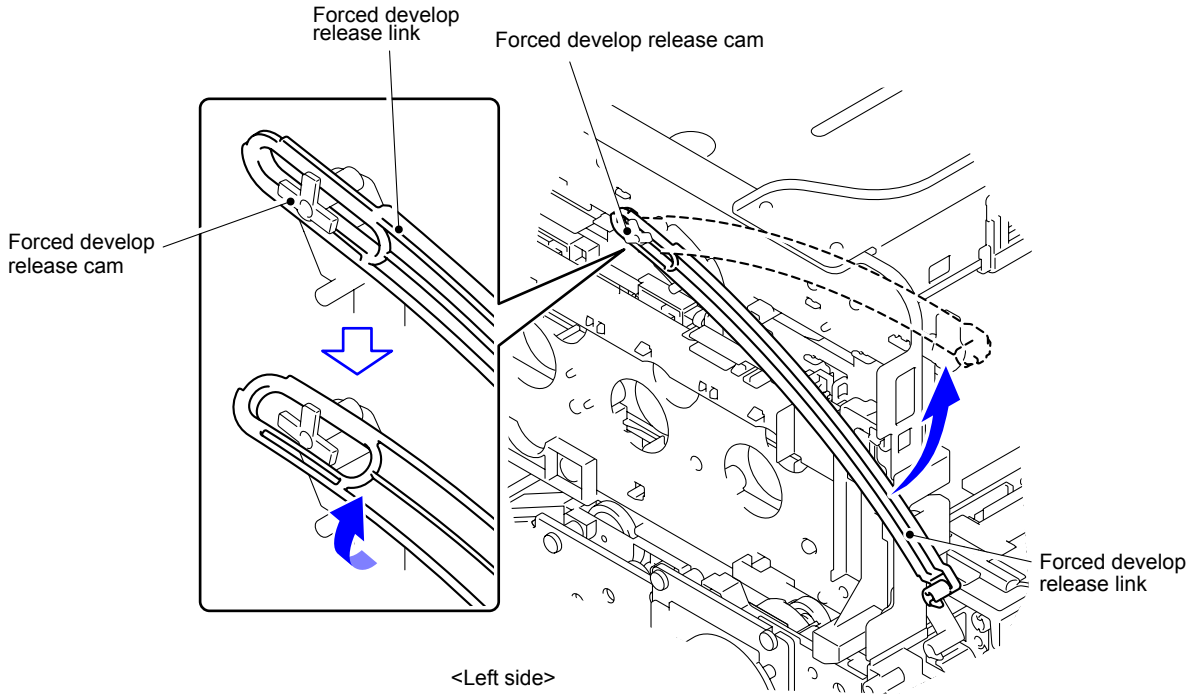


Fig. 3-175

9.52 Drum Drive Motor

(1) Remove the two Drum coupling gear Z52 from the Top drive ASSY.

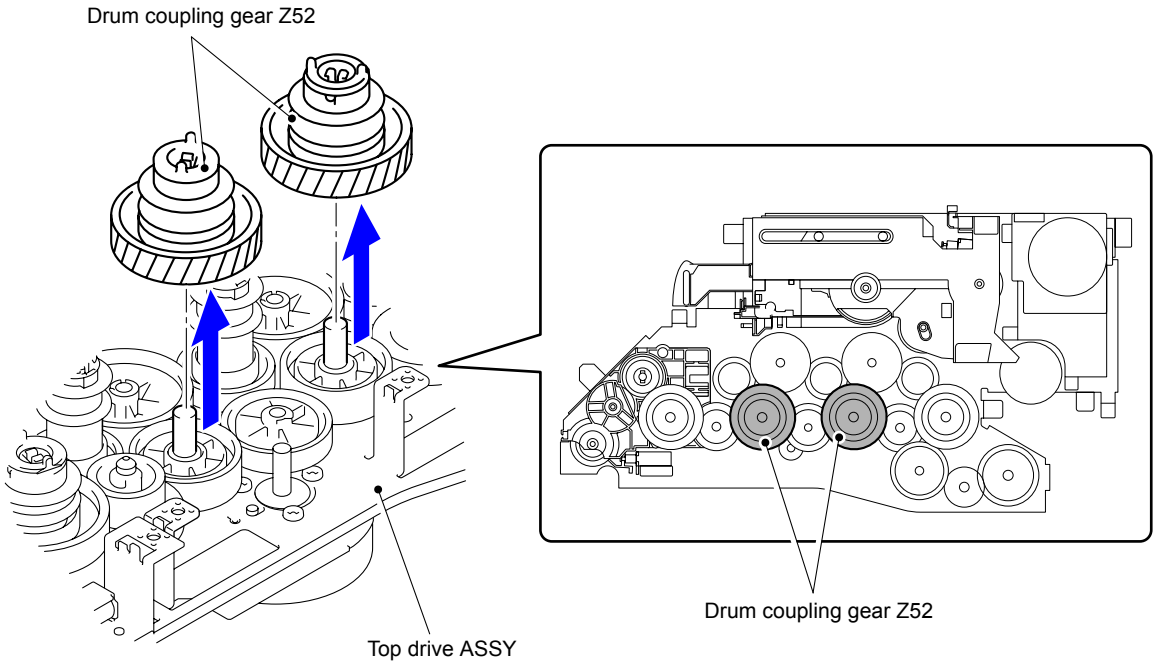


Fig. 3-176

Gear position: Refer to "■ Top drive ASSY."

(2) Remove the two Drum idle gear Z64 from the Top drive ASSY.

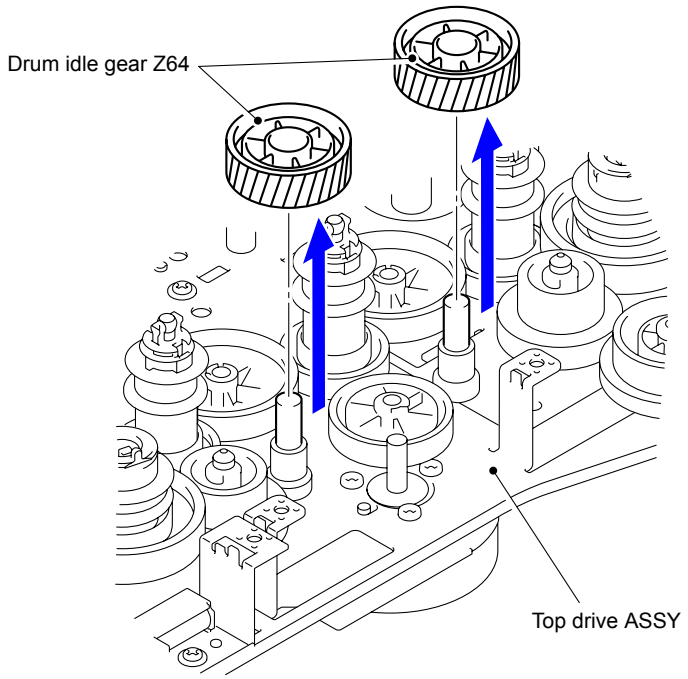


Fig. 3-177

Gear position: Refer to "■ Top drive ASSY."

(3) Remove the Collar 6 from the Drum idle gear Z64 first.

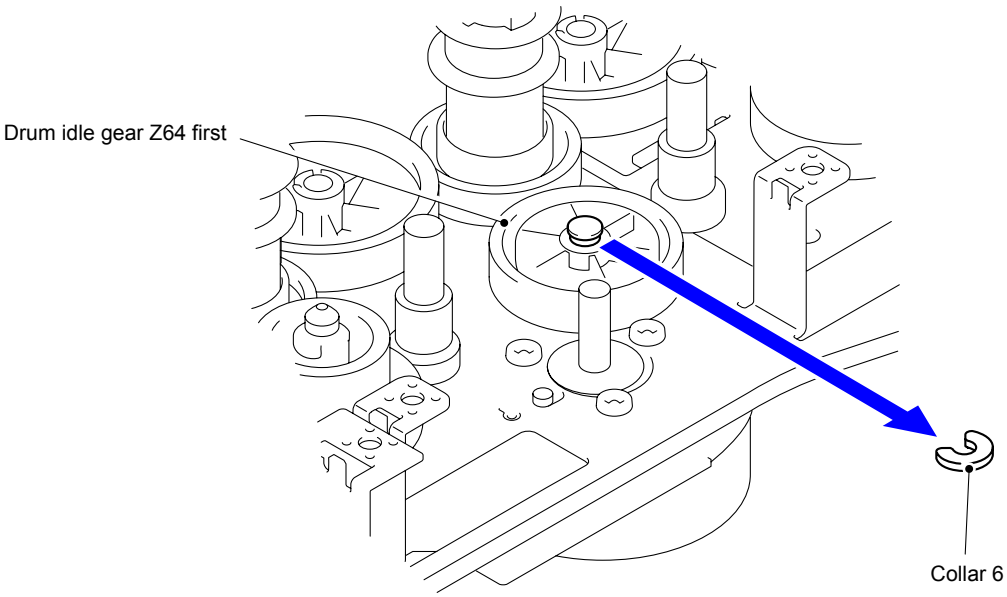


Fig. 3-178

(4) Remove the Drum idle gear Z64 first from the Top drive ASSY.

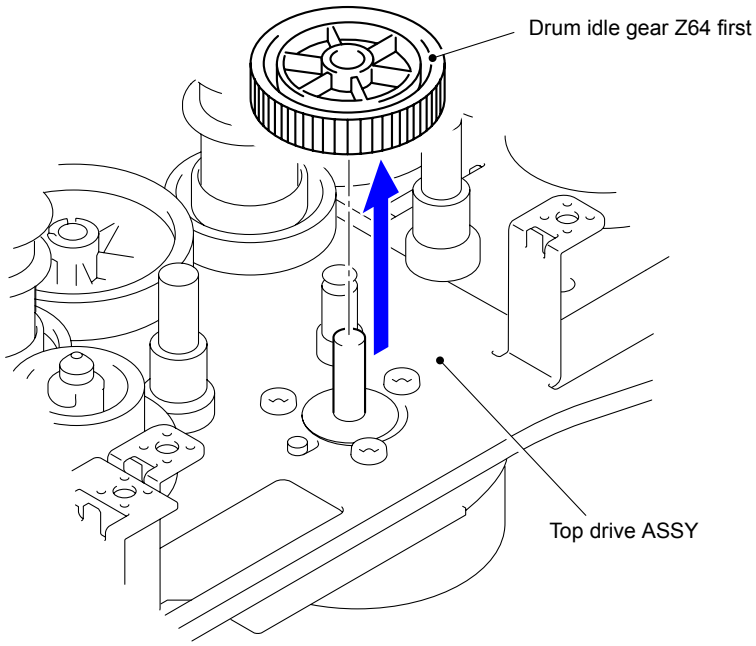


Fig. 3-179

Gear position: Refer to "■ Top drive ASSY."

(5) Remove the three Screw bind M3x4 screws to remove the Drum drive motor from the Top drive ASSY.

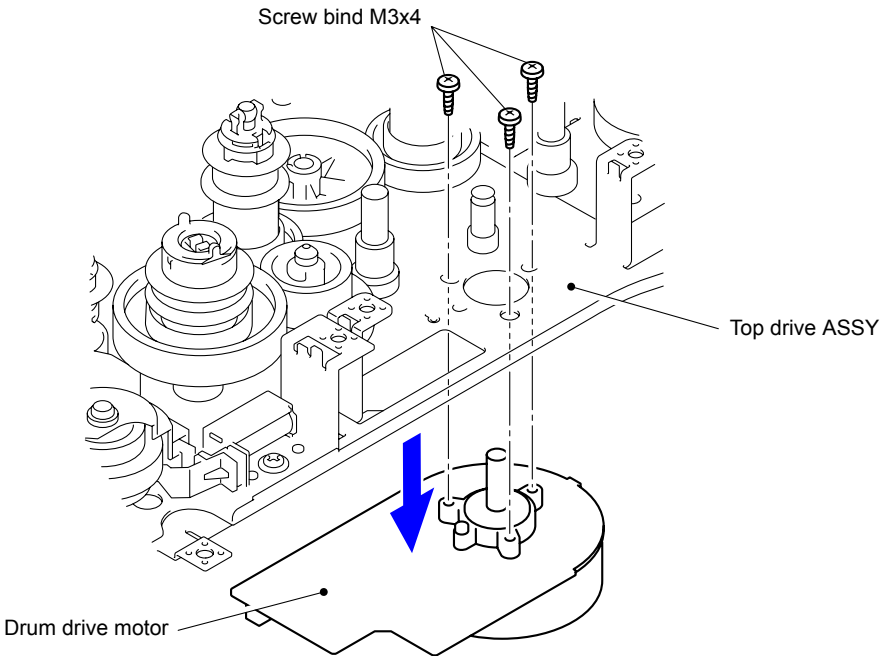


Fig. 3-180

Assembling Note:
Align the phase of the Drum idle gear Z64, Drum idle gear Z64 first, and Drum coupling gear Z52. (Refer to "6. IF YOU REPLACE THE DRUM DRIVE MOTOR" in Chapter 4.)

Harness routing: Refer to " 4 Top Drive ASSY"

9.53 Drum Position Sensor PCB ASSY

(1) Remove the Drum coupling gear Z52 from the Top drive ASSY.

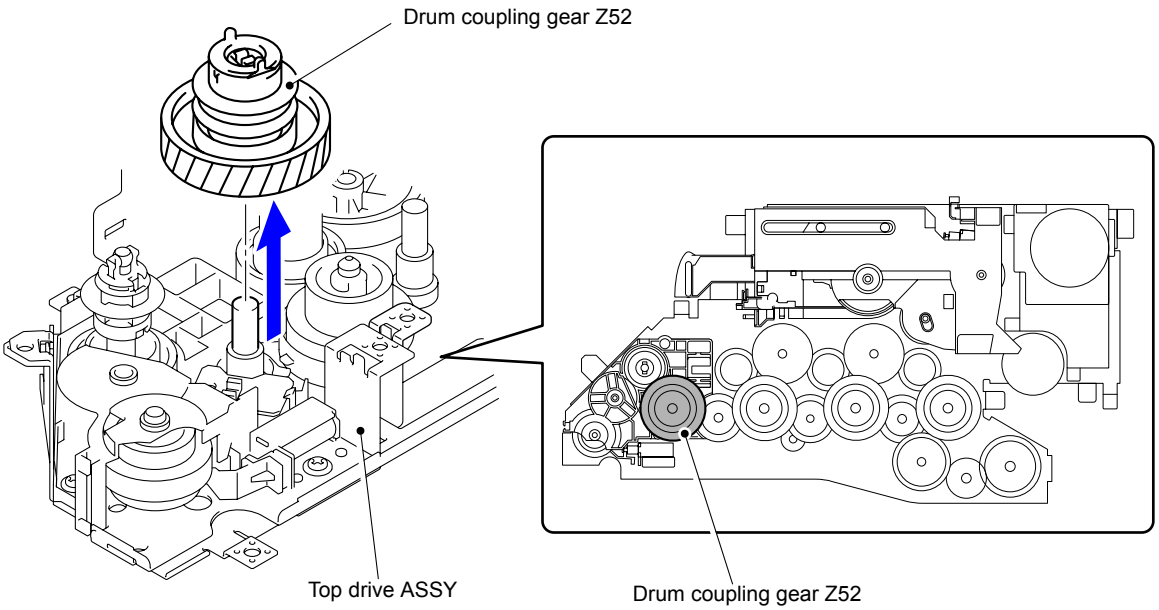


Fig. 3-181

Gear position: Refer to "■ Top drive ASSY."

> **Note:**
> Be sure to align the phase before removing the gear.

(2) Disconnect the wiring of the Drum position sensor PCB ASSY.

(3) Release the two Hooks to remove the Drum position sensor PCB ASSY from the Top drive ASSY.

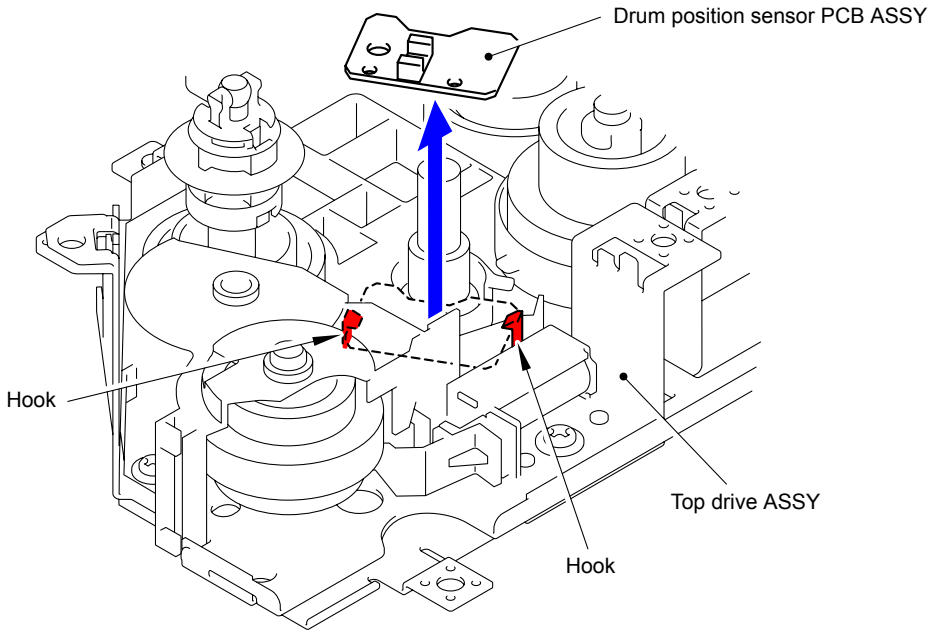


Fig. 3-182

Harness routing: Refer to " 4 Top Drive ASSY"

9.54 Registration Solenoid ASSY

(1) Disconnect the wiring of the Registration solenoid ASSY.

(2) Remove the Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw to remove the Registration solenoid ASSY and Registration solenoid spring from the Top drive ASSY.

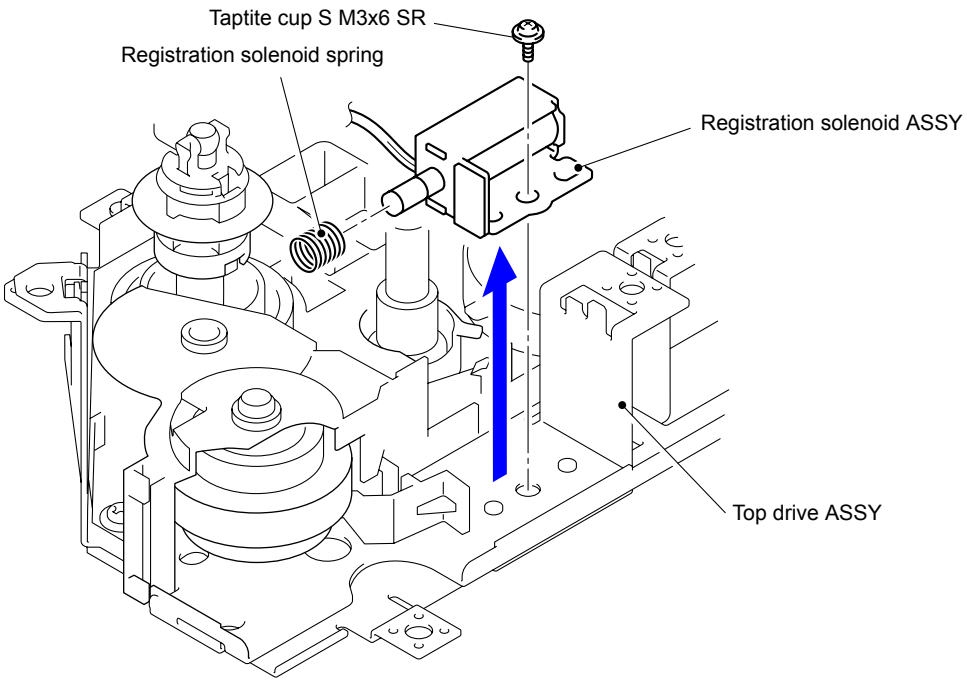


Fig. 3-183

Harness routing: Refer to " 4 Top Drive ASSY"

9.55 Develop Release Sensor PCB ASSY/Mono Solenoid ASSY

(1) Remove the three Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Top drive cover from the Top drive ASSY.

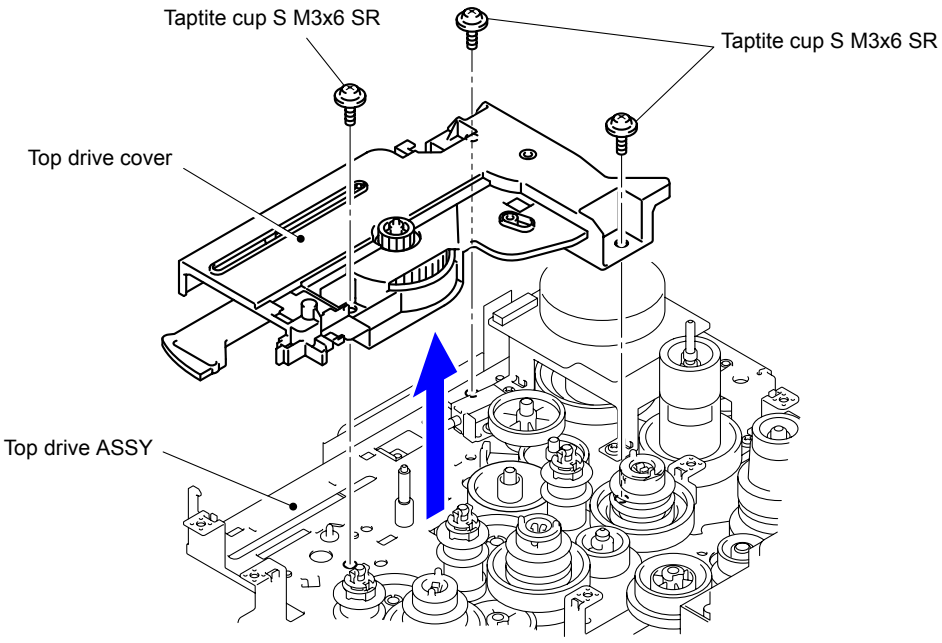


Fig. 3-184

(2) Turn the Top drive cover upside down and disconnect the wiring of the Develop release sensor PCB ASSY.

(3) Release the Hook to remove the Develop release sensor PCB ASSY from the Top drive cover.

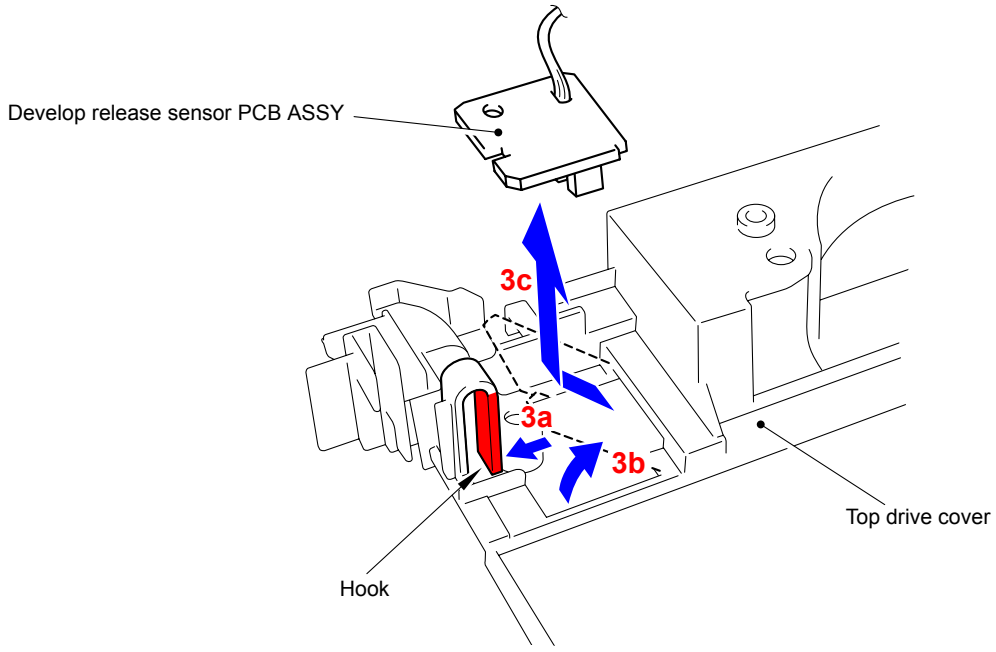


Fig. 3-185

(4) Remove the Gear Z63-30 from the Top drive ASSY.

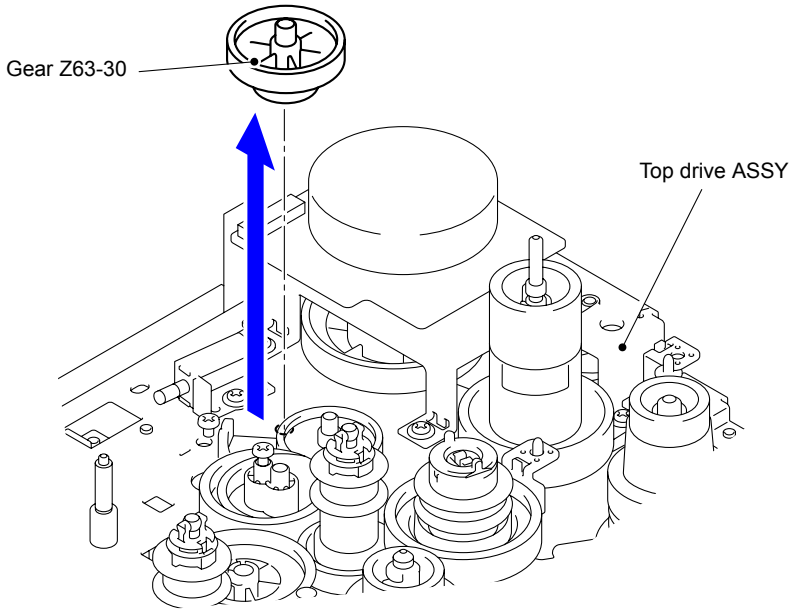


Fig. 3-186

Gear position: Refer to "■ Top drive ASSY."

(5) Remove the Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw to remove the Mono solenoid ASSY and Mono solenoid spring from the Top drive ASSY.

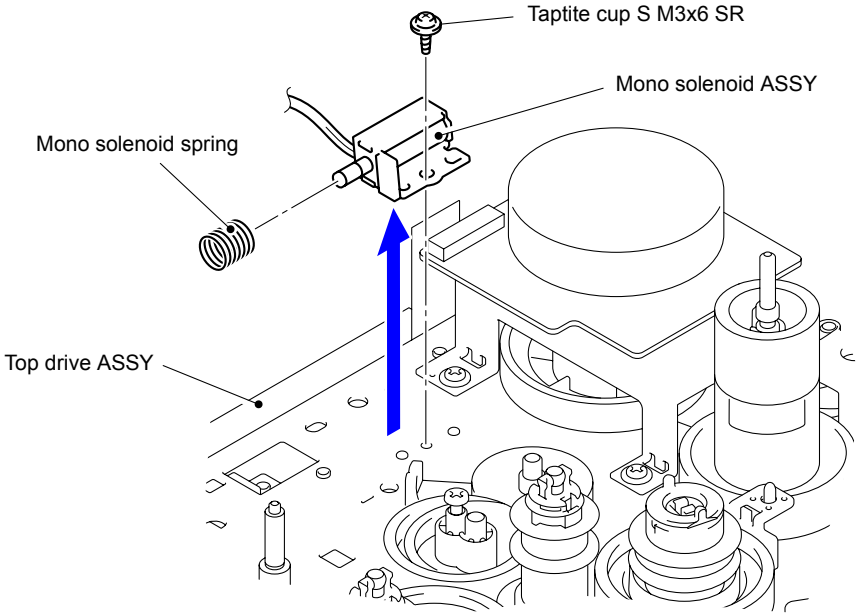


Fig. 3-187

Harness routing: Refer to " 4 Top Drive ASSY"

9.56 Fuser Develop Motor ASSY

(1) Remove the four Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Fuser develop motor ASSY from the Top drive ASSY.

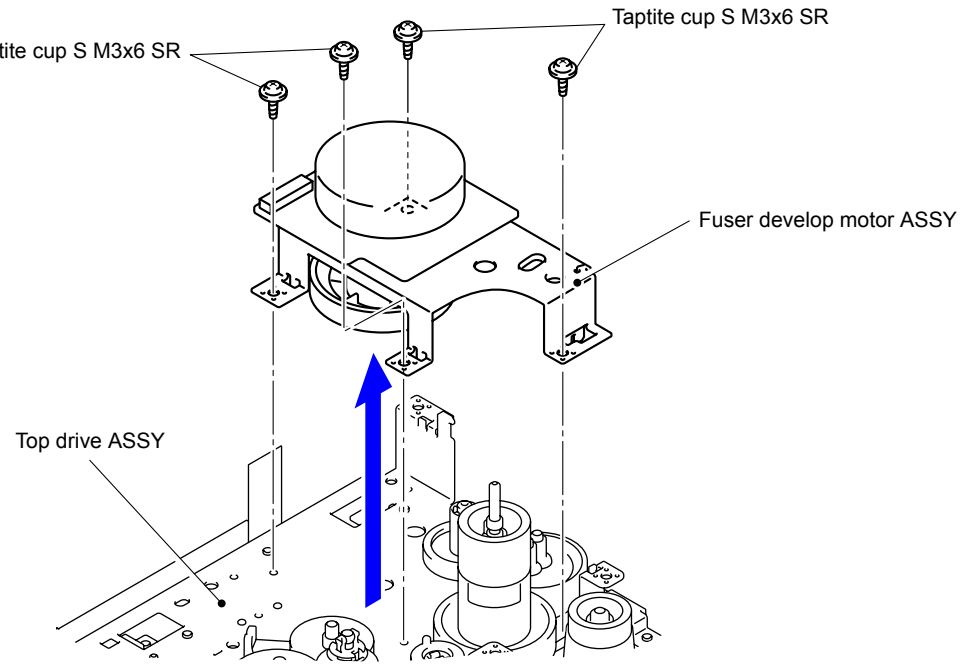


Fig. 3-188

Harness routing: Refer to " 4 Top Drive ASSY"

9.57 PF Plate ASSY/T1 Solenoid ASSY

(1) Remove the three Taptite bind B M4x12 screws and Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw. Remove the PF plate ASSY from the PF cleaner drive ASSY. Release the FG wire under bar.

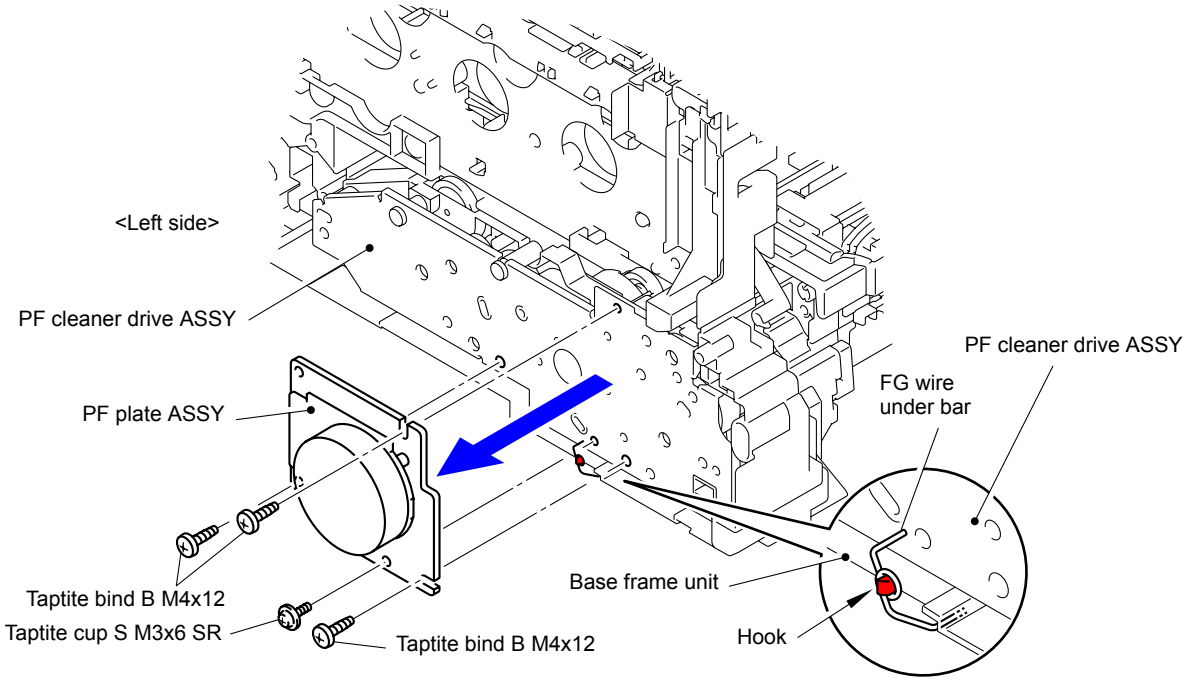


Fig. 3-189

Note:

- When removing and installing the PF plate ASSY, be sure to hang the FG wire under bar on the Hook of the Base frame unit as shown in the figure before removing and installing the Top drive ASSY.
- Be sure to install the FG wire under bar in the PF plate ASSY when installing the PF plate ASSY.

(2) Remove the two Taptite bind B M4x12 screws to remove the PF cleaner drive ASSY from the Base frame unit.

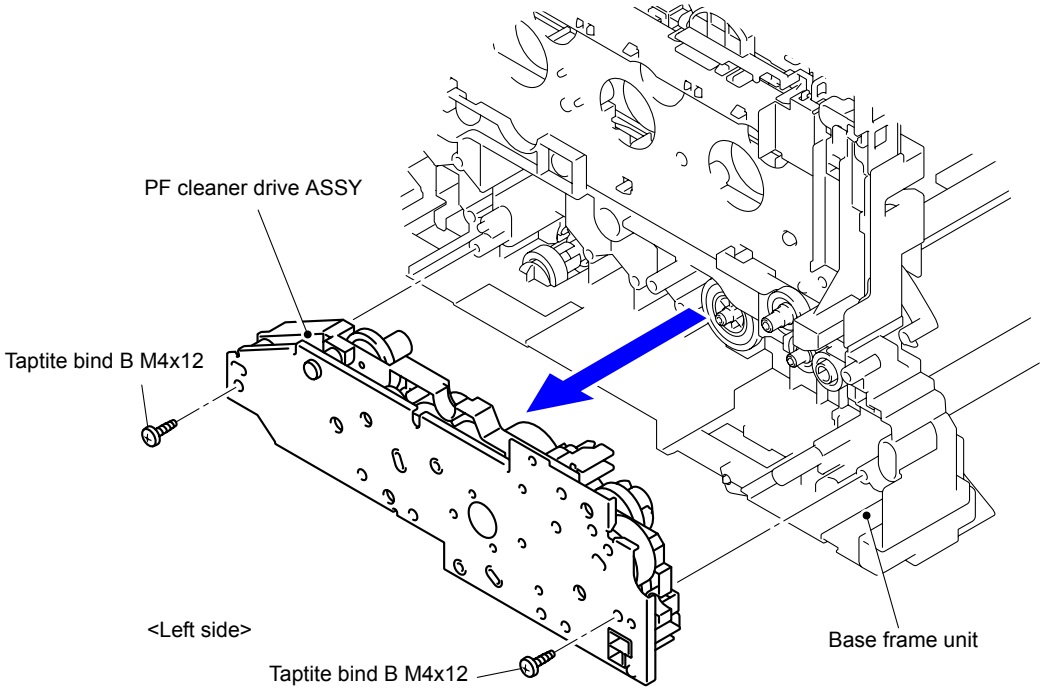


Fig. 3-190

Note:
Some of the gears on the PF cleaner drive ASSY easily come off, and thus be careful not to lose them.

(3) Remove the Taptite bind B M3x8 screw to remove the T1 solenoid ASSY and T1 registration solenoid spring from the PF cleaner drive ASSY.

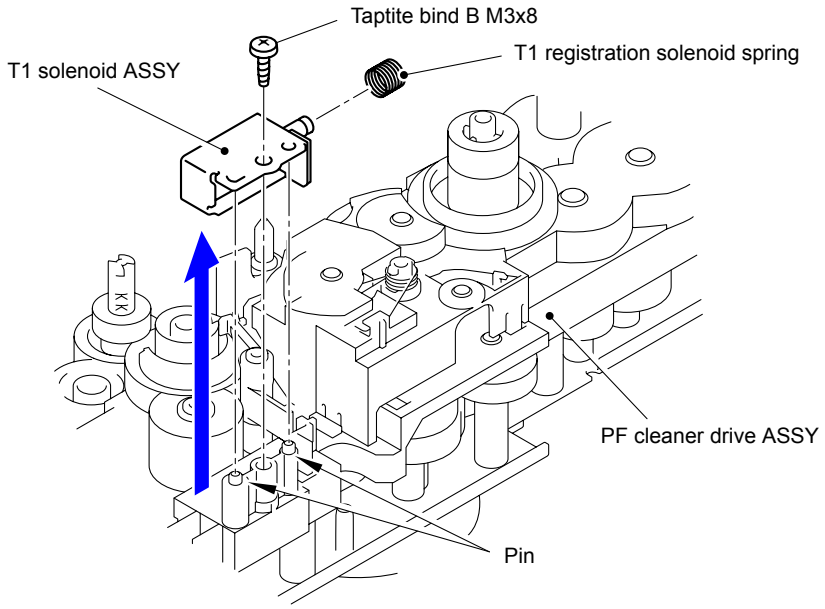


Fig. 3-191

Harness routing: Refer to " 5 PF Plate ASSY"

9.58 Toner/New Sensor PCB ASSY

(1) Release the Hook to remove the TE sensor protect film from the Toner reset holder.

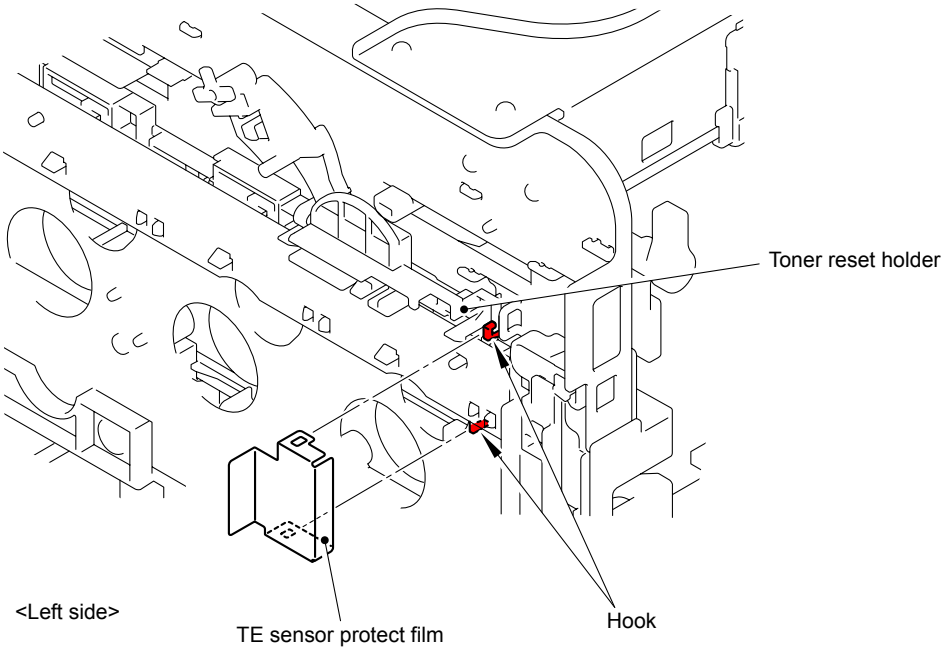


Fig. 3-192

(2) Release the six Hooks to remove the Toner/New sensor PCB ASSY from the Toner reset holder.

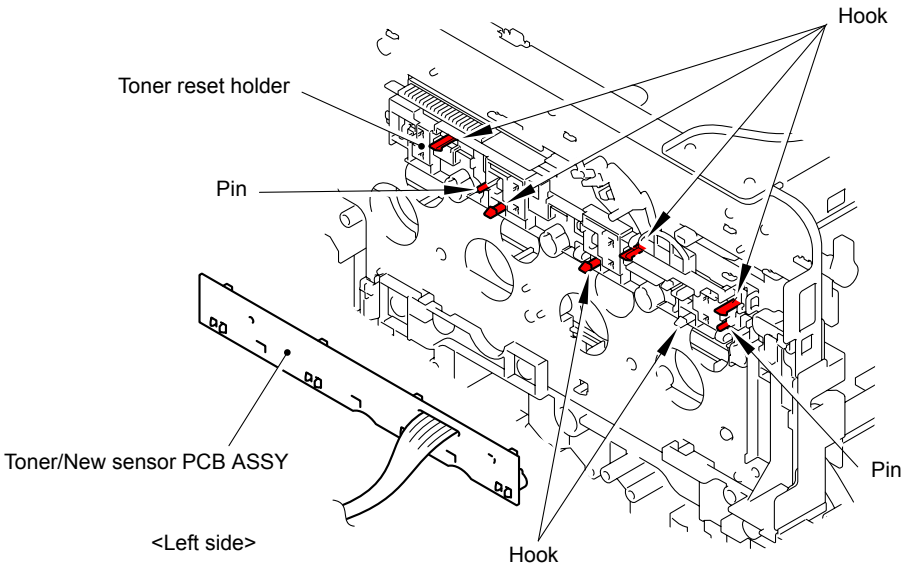


Fig. 3-193

Harness routing: Refer to " 6 Toner/New Sensor PCB ASSY"

9.59 Internal Temperature Thermistor

(1) Remove the Internal temperature thermistor from the Main body.

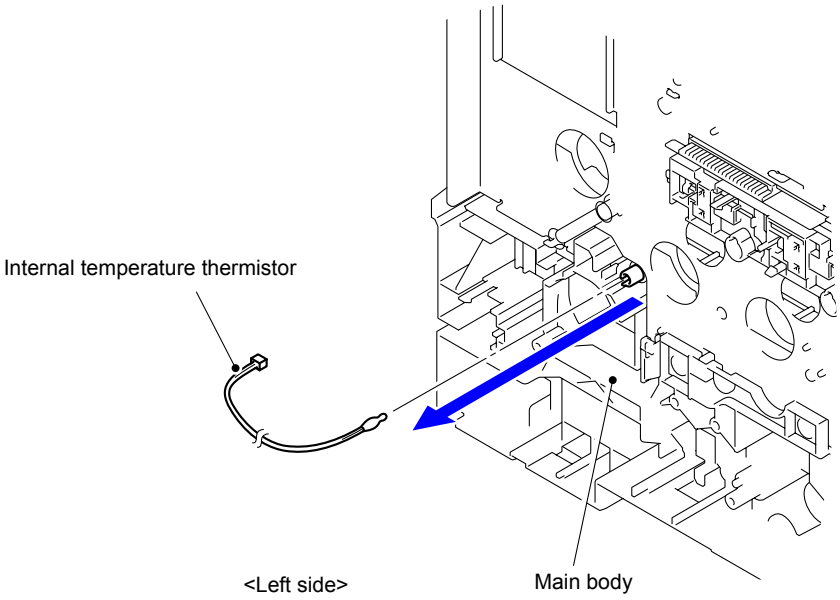


Fig. 3-194

Assembling Note:

- Insert the tip of the Internal temperature thermistor firmly into the Insertion hole until it reaches the end of the Hole.
- After inserting the Internal temperature thermistor, hang the Harness on the Hook.

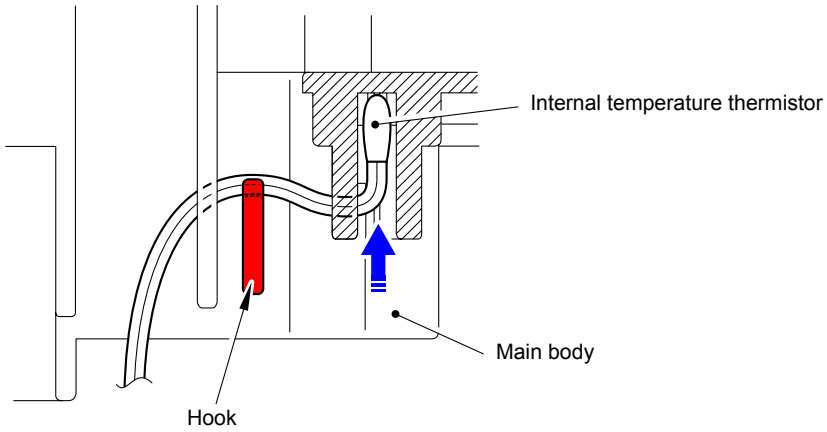


Fig. 3-195

Harness routing: Refer to " 19 Internal Temperature Thermistor"

9.60 Fuser Fan

(1) Disconnect the Connector (CN4) from the High-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

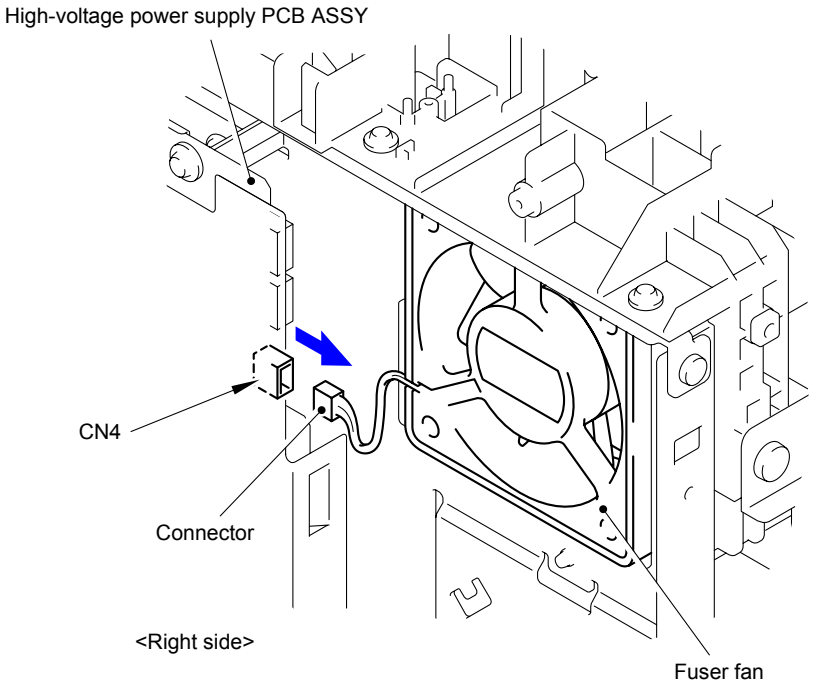


Fig. 3-196

(2) Pull out the Fuser fan from the Paper eject ASSY by slightly rotating it in the arrow direction in the figure below.

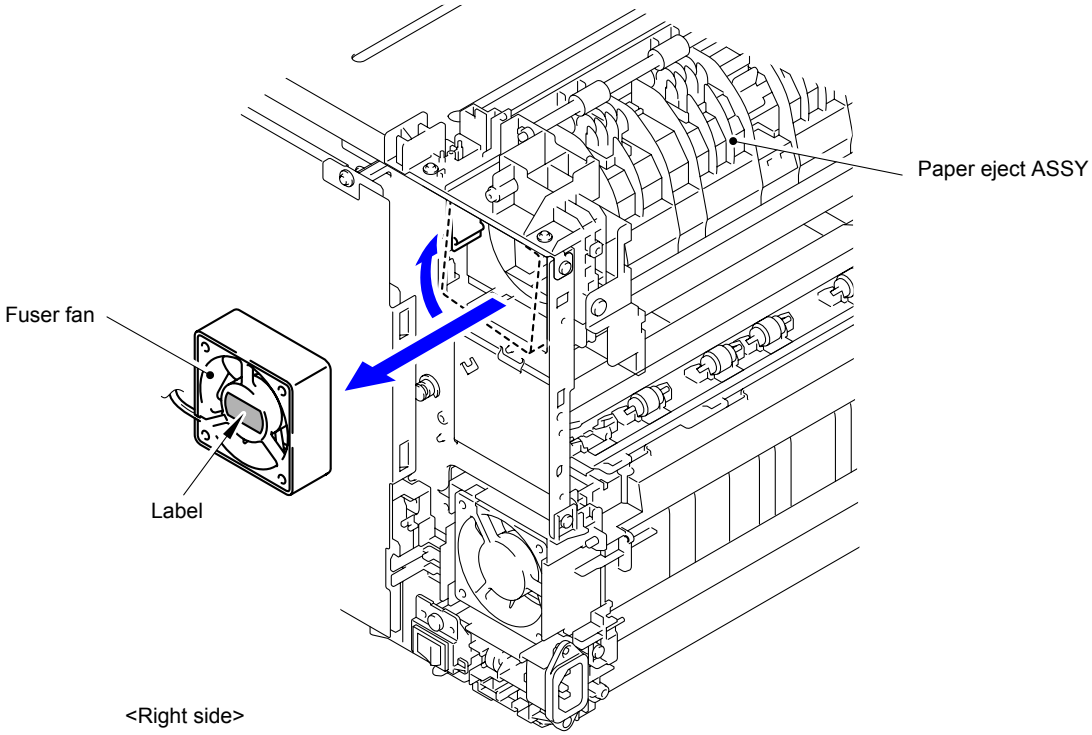


Fig. 3-197

Assembling Note:

When assembling the Fuser fan, be sure to assemble it in a way that the label side faces out.

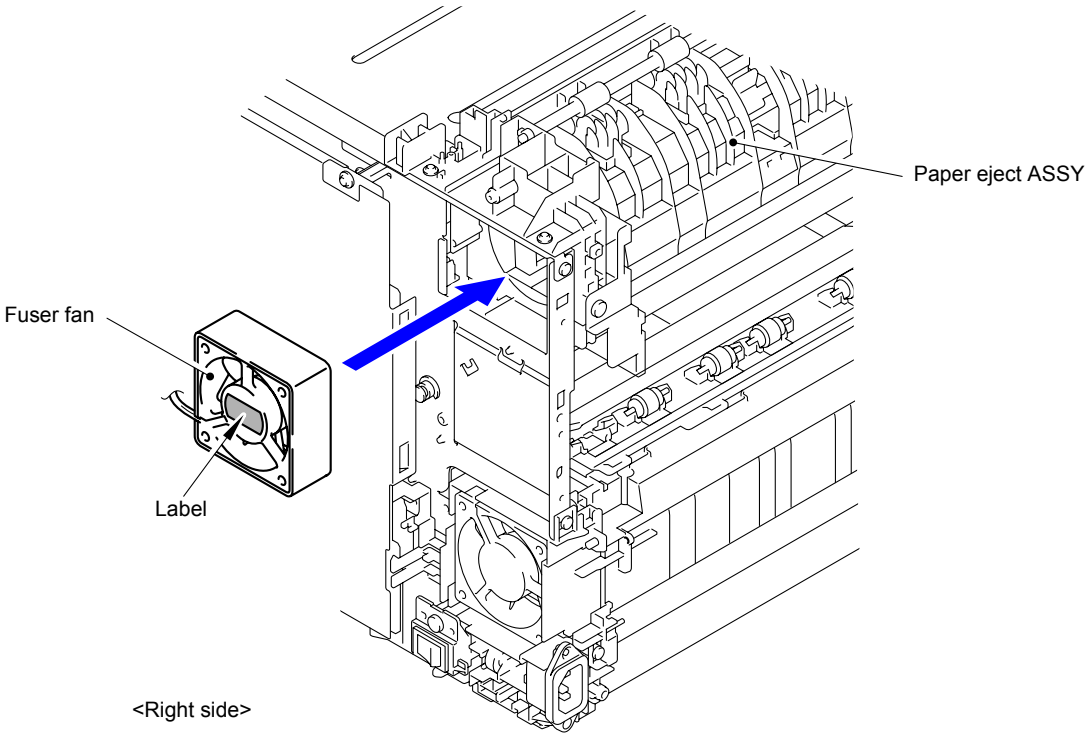


Fig. 3-198

9.61 Paper Eject ASSY

(1) Disconnect the wiring of the harness from the High-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

(2) Remove the five Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Paper eject ASSY from the Base frame unit.

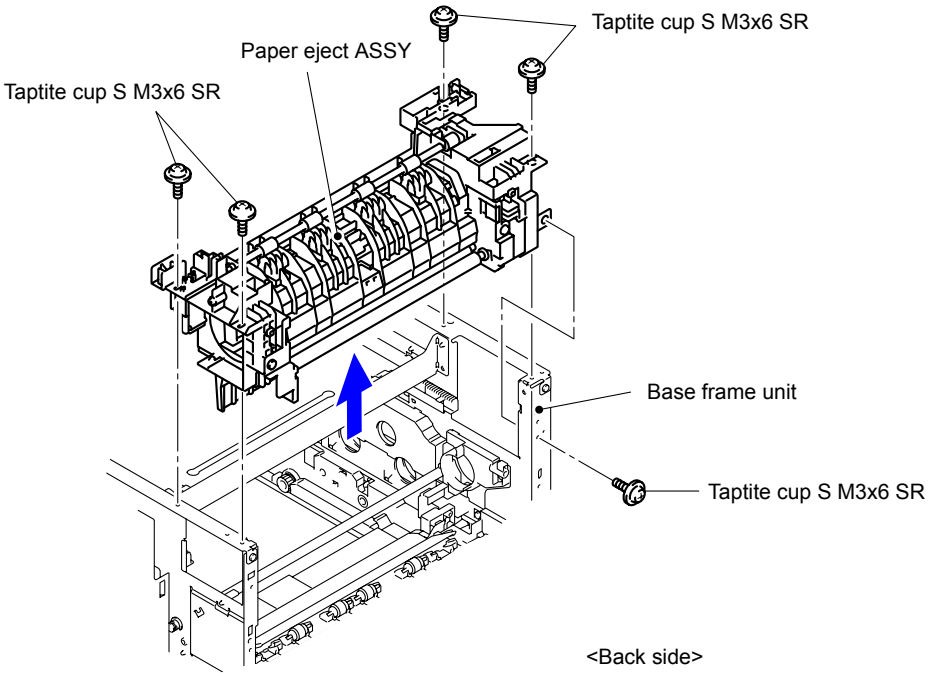


Fig. 3-199

Harness routing: Refer to " 8 Paper Eject ASSY"

9.62 Filter ASSY

(1) Remove the Filter ASSY from the Paper eject ASSY.

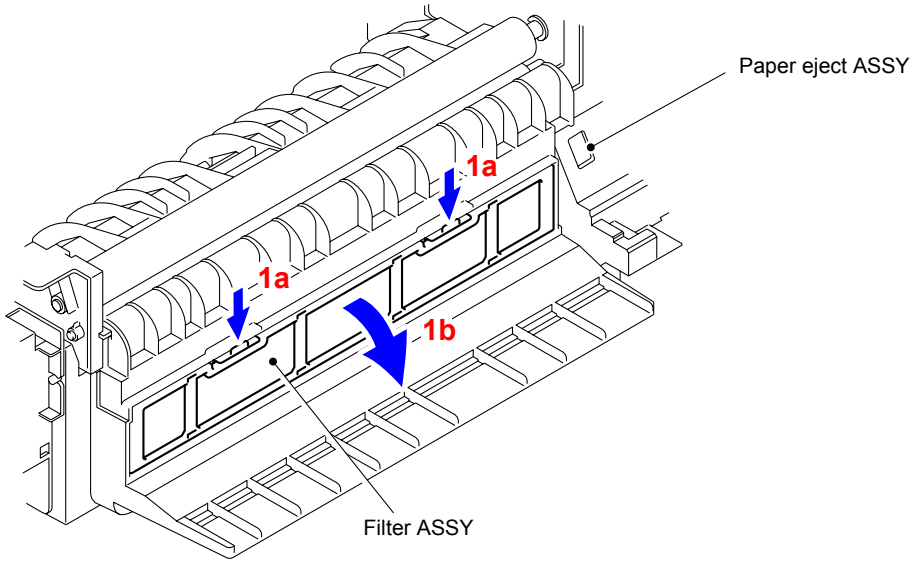


Fig. 3-200

9.63 Paper Eject Motor

(1) Remove the two Taptite bind S M3x6 screws to remove the Paper eject motor from the Paper eject ASSY.

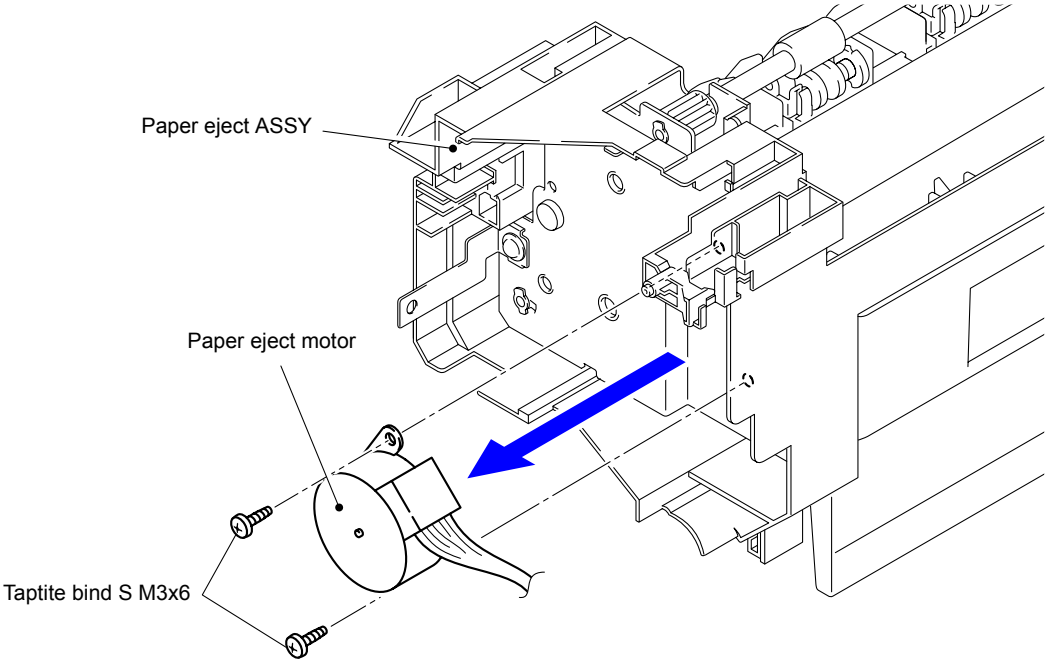


Fig. 3-201

Harness routing: Refer to " 8 Paper Eject ASSY"

9.64 Back Cover Sensor ASSY

(1) Release the two Hooks to remove the Back cover sensor ASSY from the Paper eject ASSY.

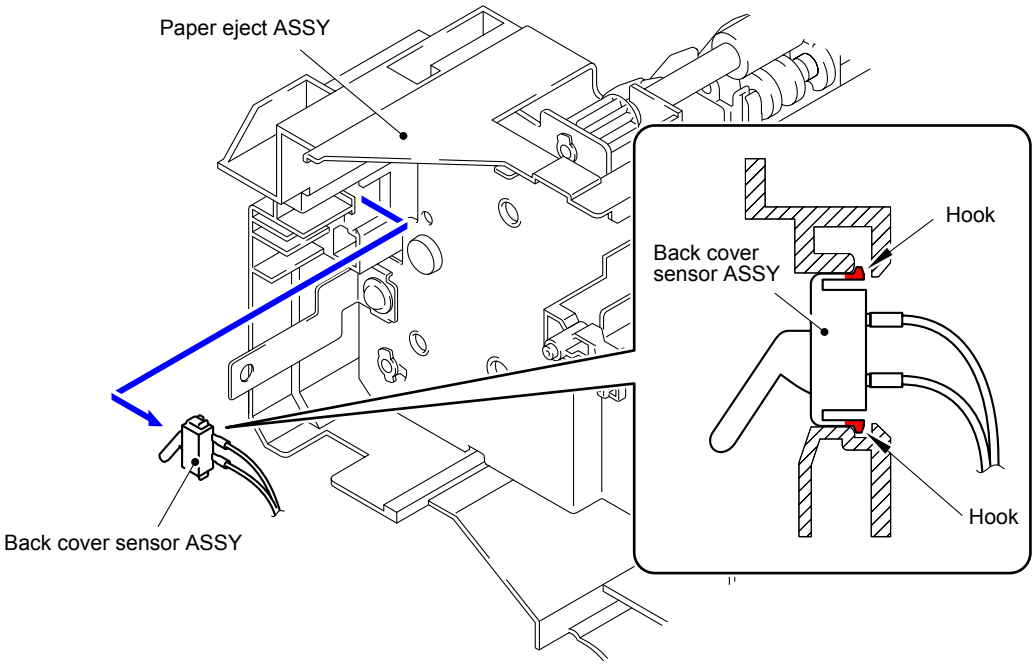


Fig. 3-202

Harness routing: Refer to " 8 Paper Eject ASSY"

9.65 Power Fan

(1) Disconnect the Connector (CN5) from the High-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

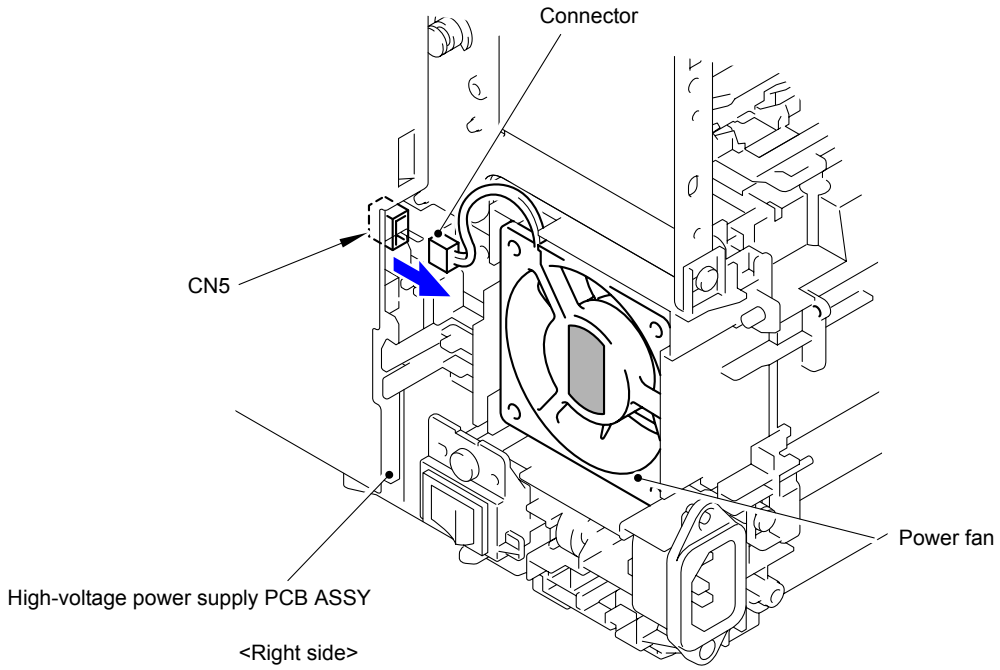


Fig. 3-203

(2) Remove the Power fan from the Base frame unit.

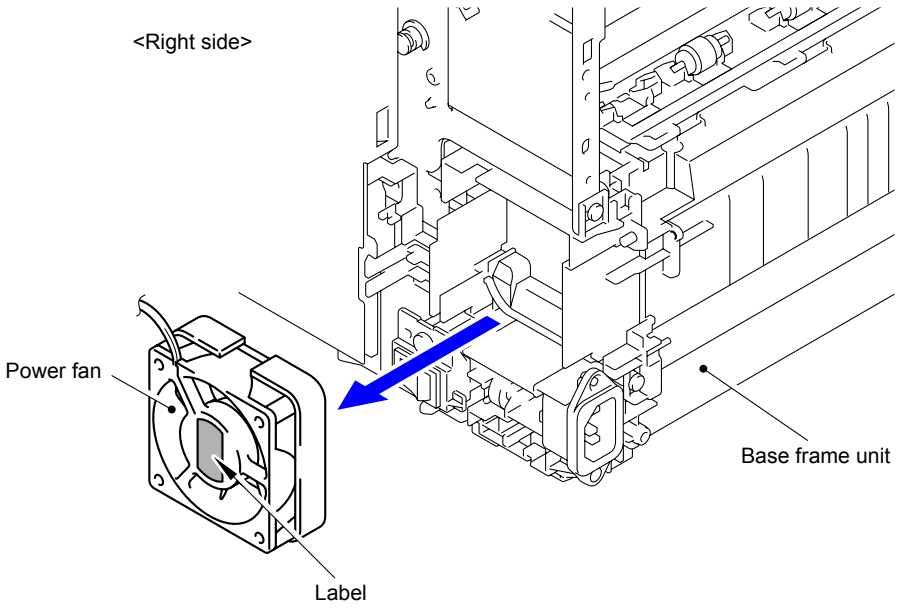


Fig. 3-204

Assembling Note:

When assembling the Power fan, be sure to assemble it in a way that the label side faces out.

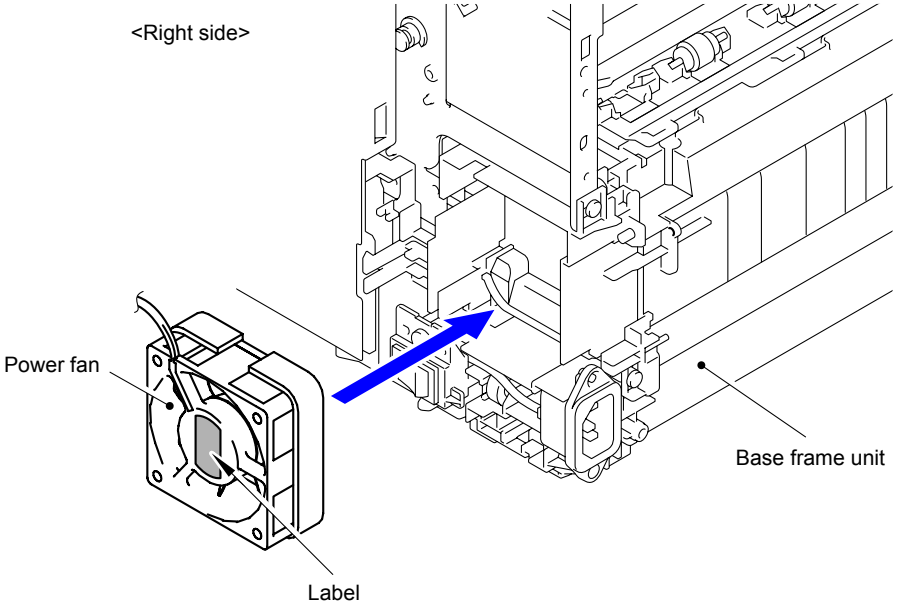


Fig. 3-205

9.66 Low-voltage Power Supply Unit

(1) Remove the two Pins to remove the Back flapper ASSY from the Low-voltage power supply cover.

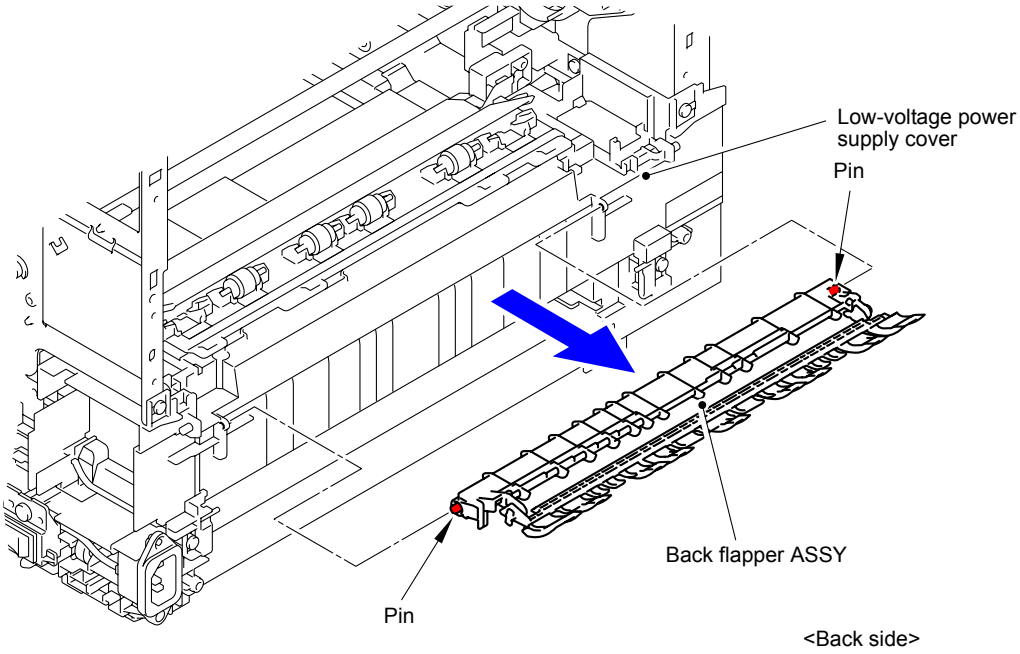


Fig. 3-206

(2) Release the two Hooks to remove the Switch holder from the Base frame unit.

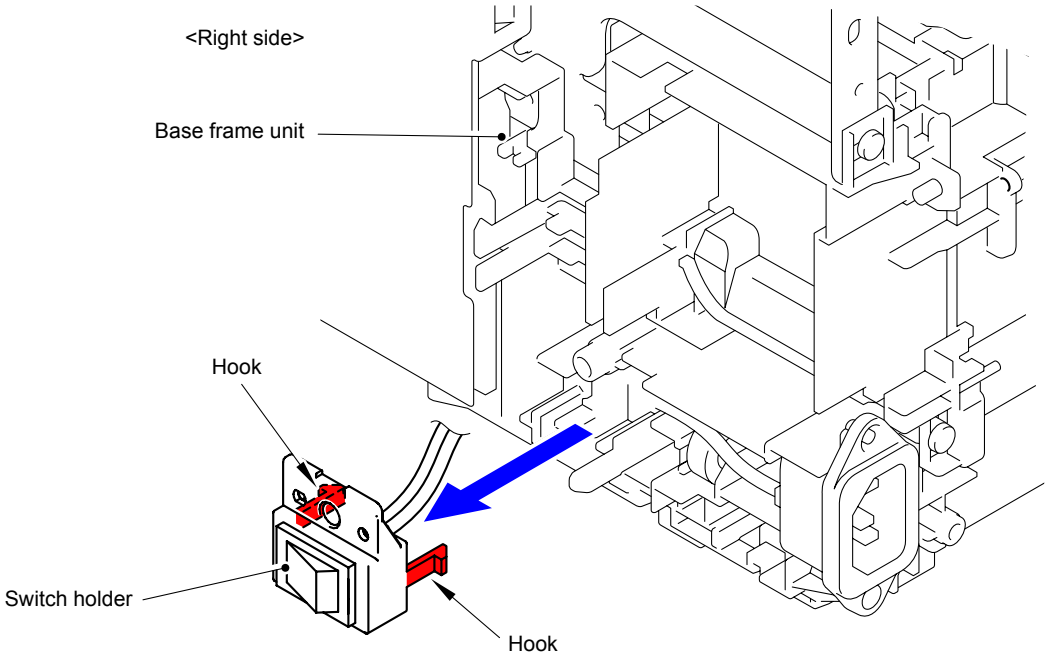


Fig. 3-207

(3) Remove the Taptite flat B M3x10 screw to remove the AC inlet from the Low-voltage power supply unit.

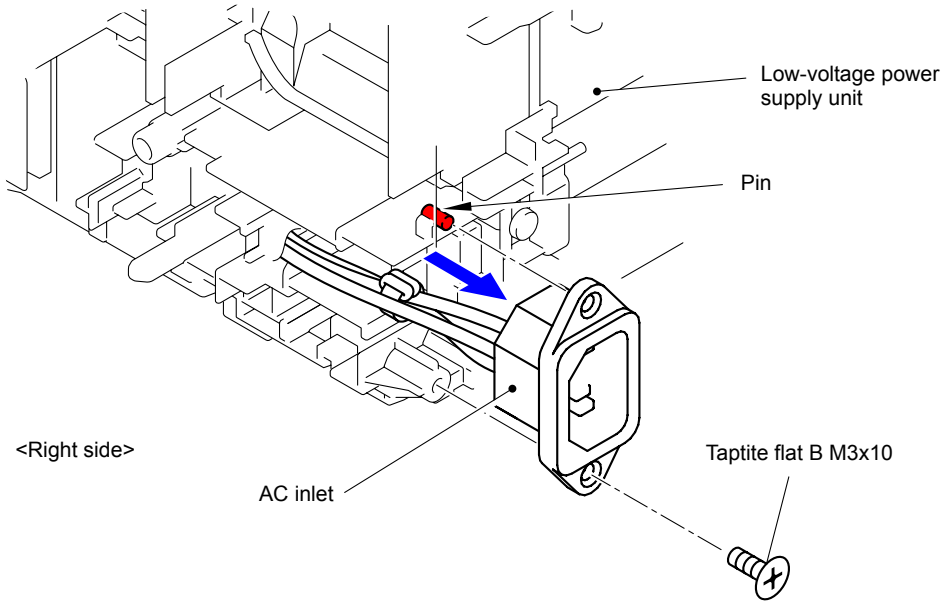


Fig. 3-208

(4) Remove the screw "a" of the Screw pan (S/P washer) M4x8 from the Low-voltage power supply unit to remove the ground terminal

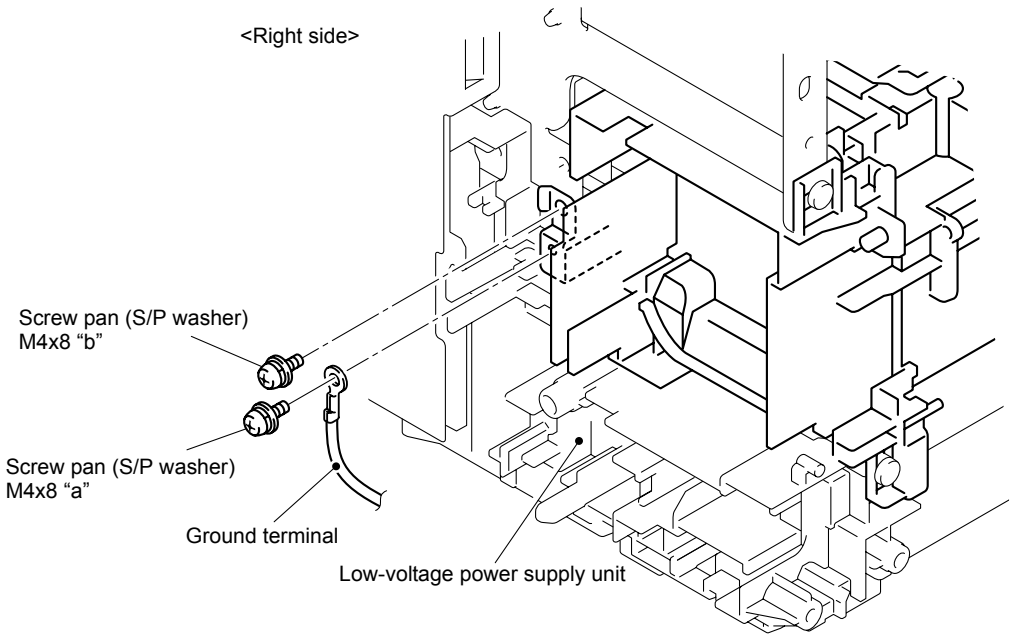


Fig. 3-209

(5) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x8 screws and two Taptite cup B M3x12 screws to remove the Low-voltage power supply unit from the Base frame unit.

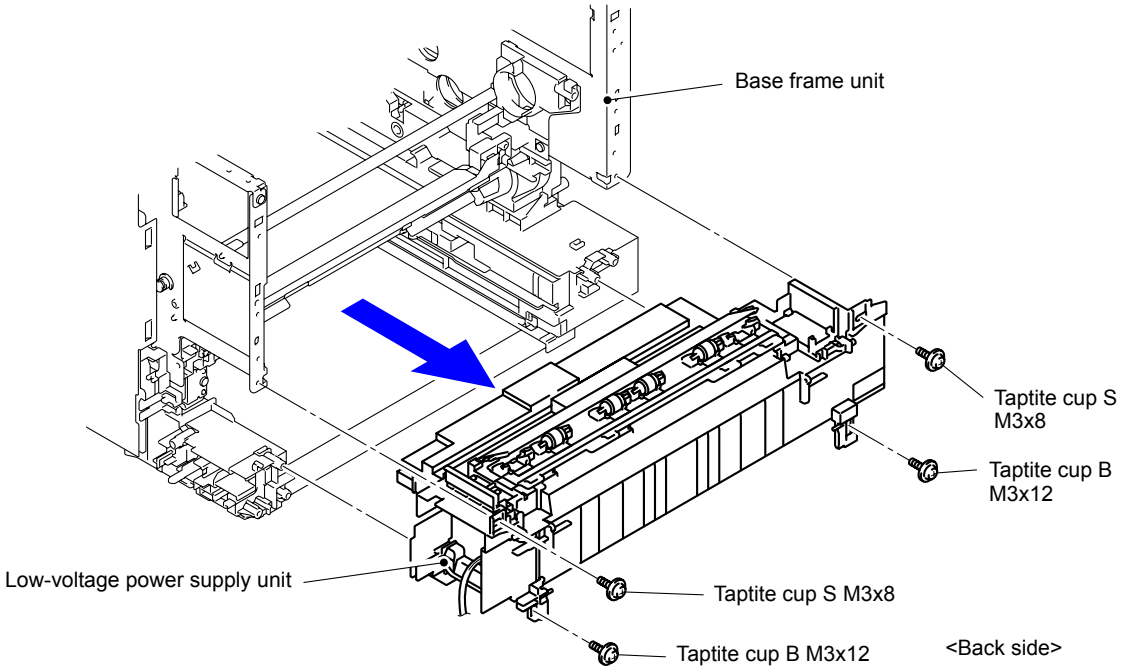


Fig. 3-210

Harness routing: Refer to " 7 Low-voltage Power Supply PCB ASSY"

9.67 Paper Eject Sensor PCB ASSY

(1) Release the Hook to remove the Paper eject sensor PCB ASSY from the Low-voltage power supply cover.

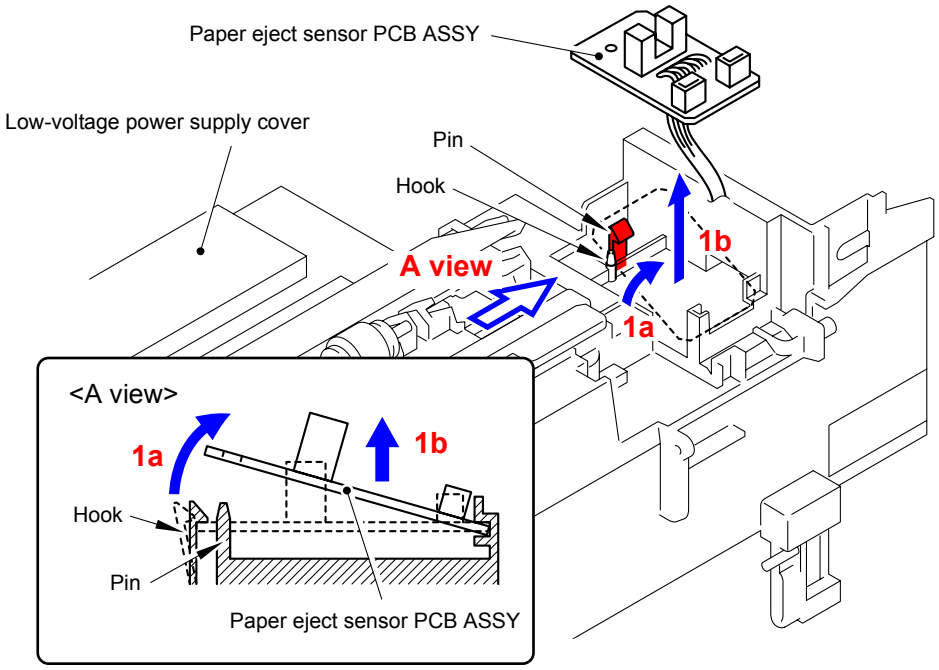


Fig. 3-211

Harness routing: Refer to " 7 Low-voltage Power Supply PCB ASSY"

9.68 Low-voltage Power Supply PCB ASSY/ Power Switch Holder

(1) Disconnect the Harness from Hooks.

(2) Remove the four Taptite pan (washer) B M4x12DA screws, one Screw pan (S/P washer) M4x8 screw, and the Low-voltage power supply ground plate, and then remove the Low-voltage power supply plate from the Low-voltage power supply cover.

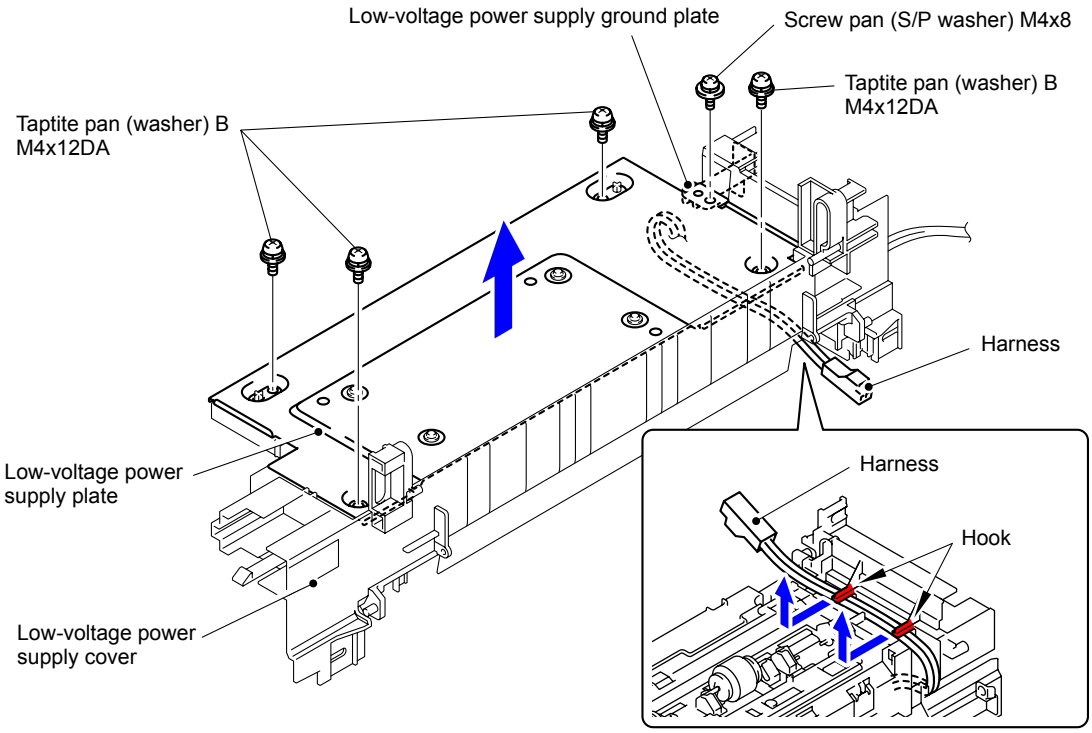


Fig. 3-212

(3) Disconnect the Connector (CN1) to remove the Power switch holder from the Low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

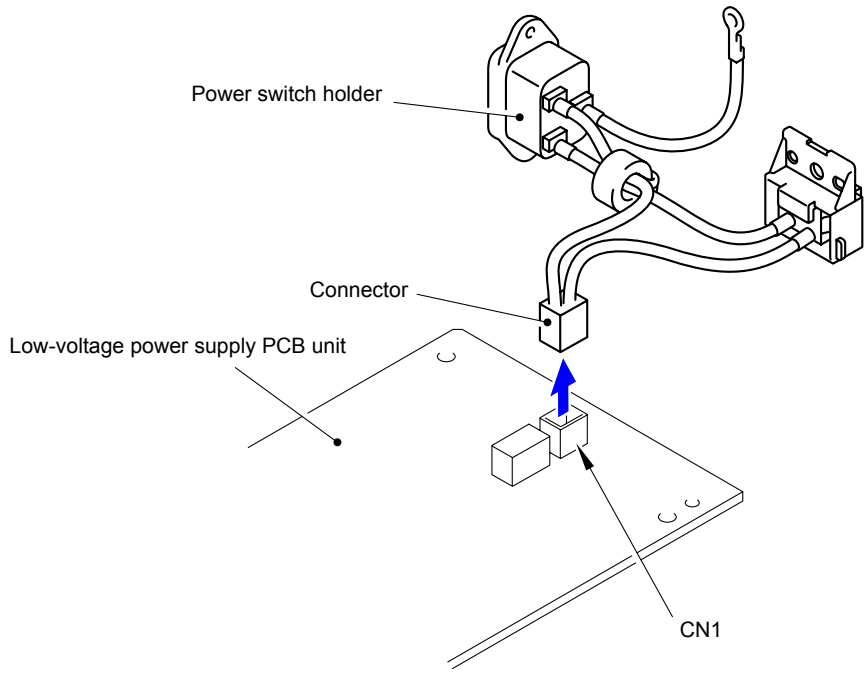


Fig. 3-213

(4) Disconnect the Connector (CN2) from the Low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

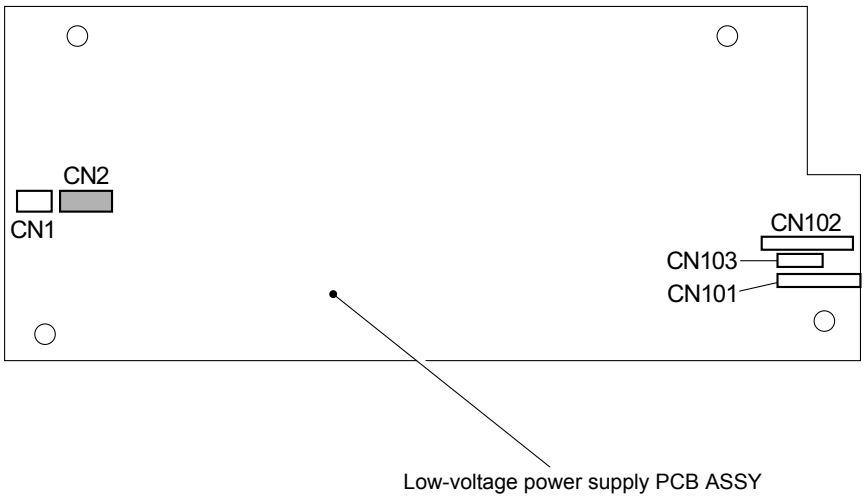


Fig. 3-214

(5) Release the two Hooks to remove the Power switch from the Power switch holder.

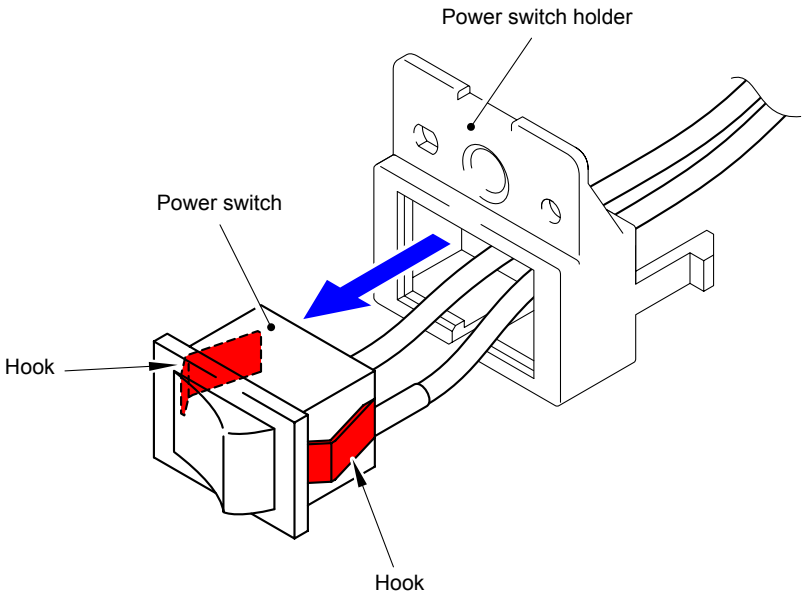


Fig. 3-215

(6) Remove the four Screw cup M3x6 screws to remove the Low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY from the Low-voltage power supply plate.

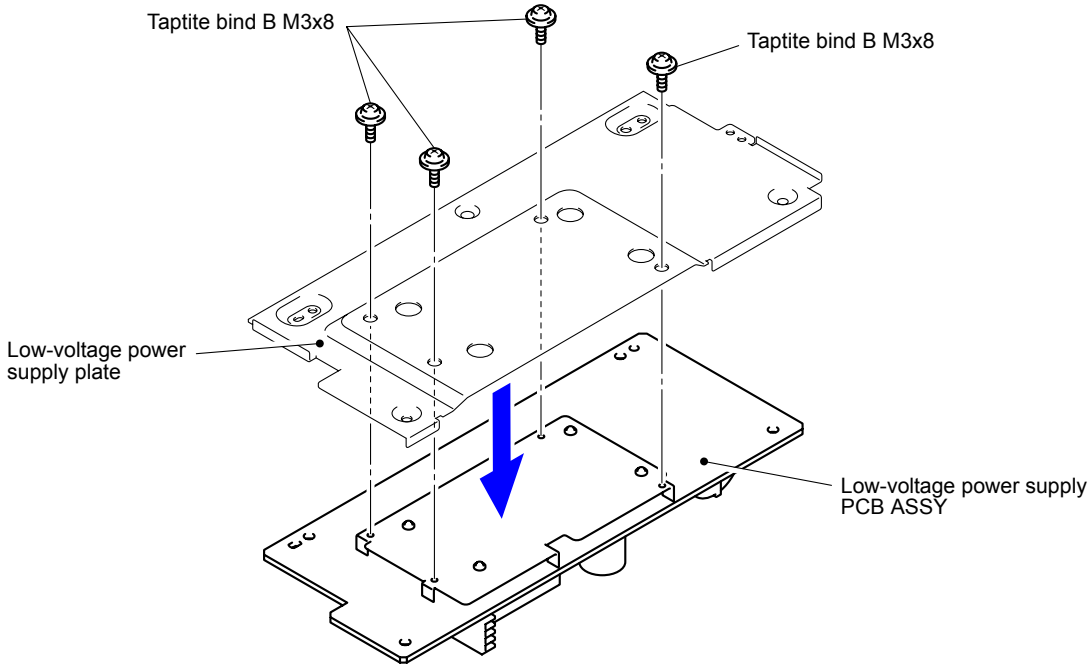


Fig. 3-216

9.69 Cleaner Pinch Roller Holder

(1) Remove the two Pins and release the one Hook to remove the Front chute flapper and two Flapper springs from the Low-voltage power supply unit.

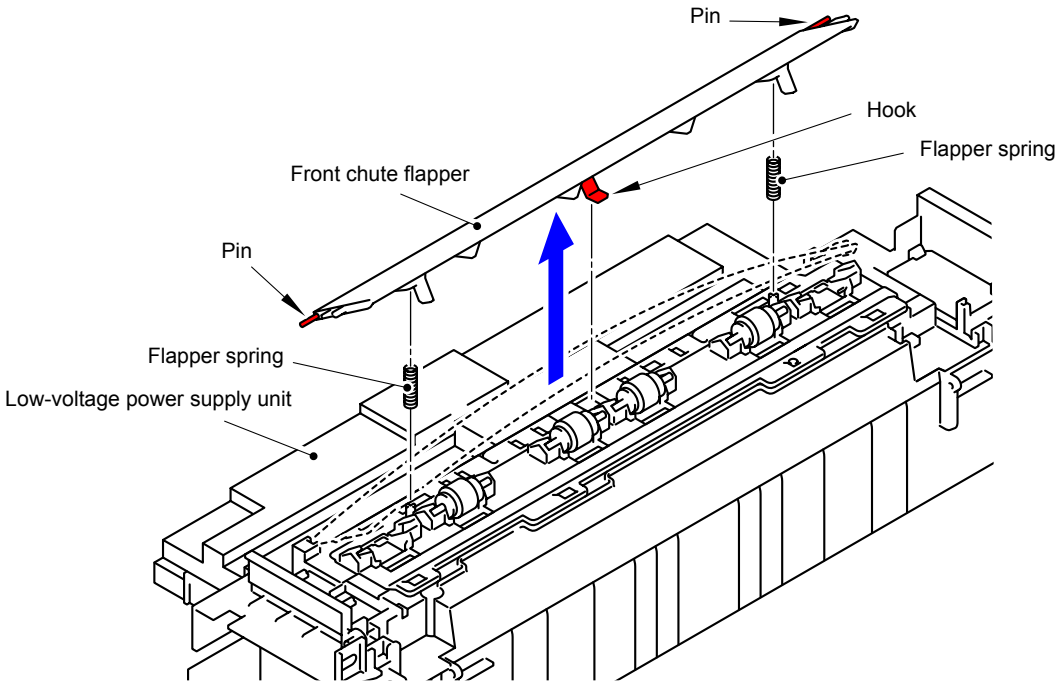


Fig. 3-217

(2) Press the stopper, and then slide the Cleaner pinch roller to remove it from the Low-voltage power supply unit.

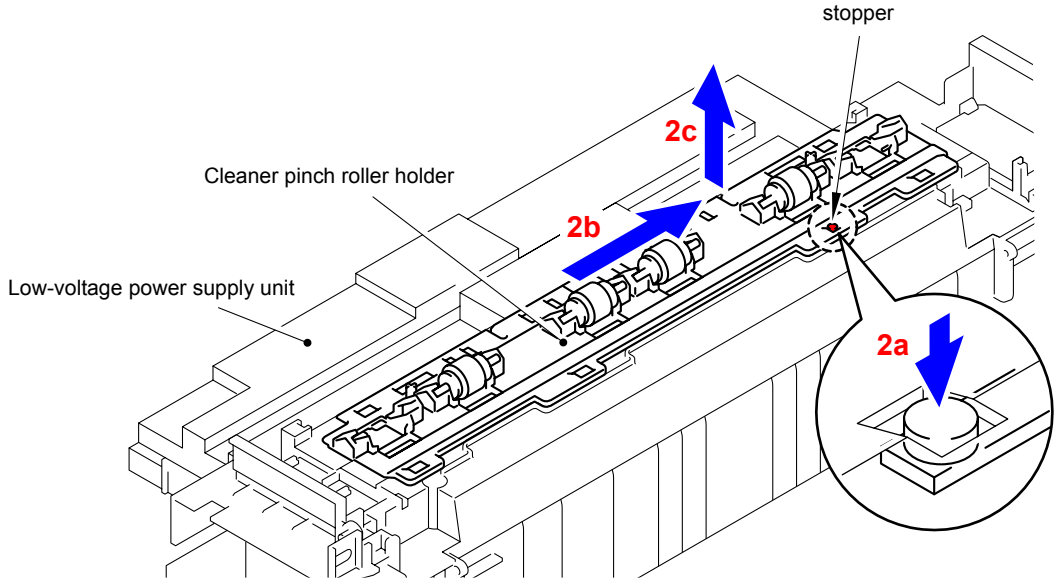


Fig. 3-218

(3) Hold down the Cleaner spring of the Cleaner pinch roller holder to remove the Cleaner pinch roller ASSY.

(4) Remove the other three Cleaner pinch roller ASSY in the same way.

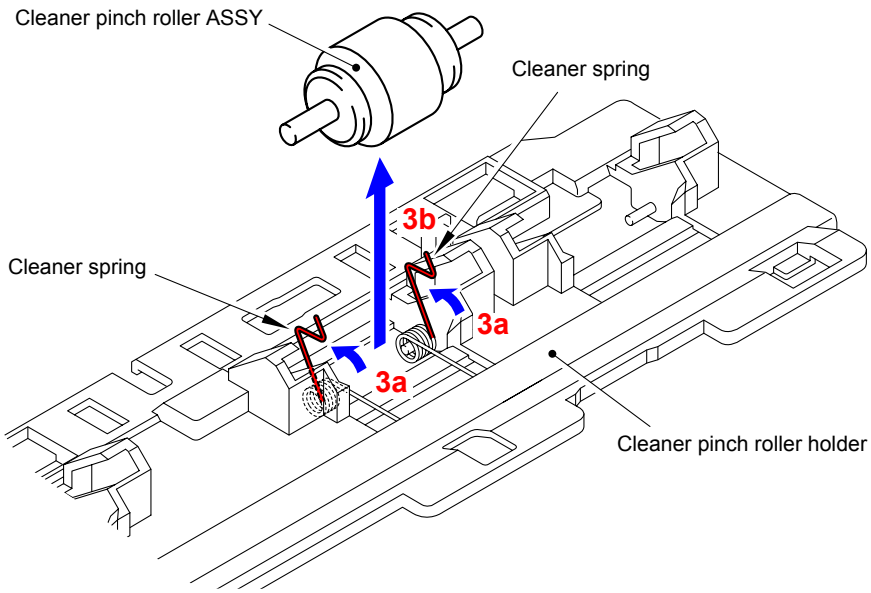


Fig. 3-219

9.70 Registration Mark Sensor Holder ASSY/ Shutter Solenoid

(1) Disconnect the Connector (CN8) from the High-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

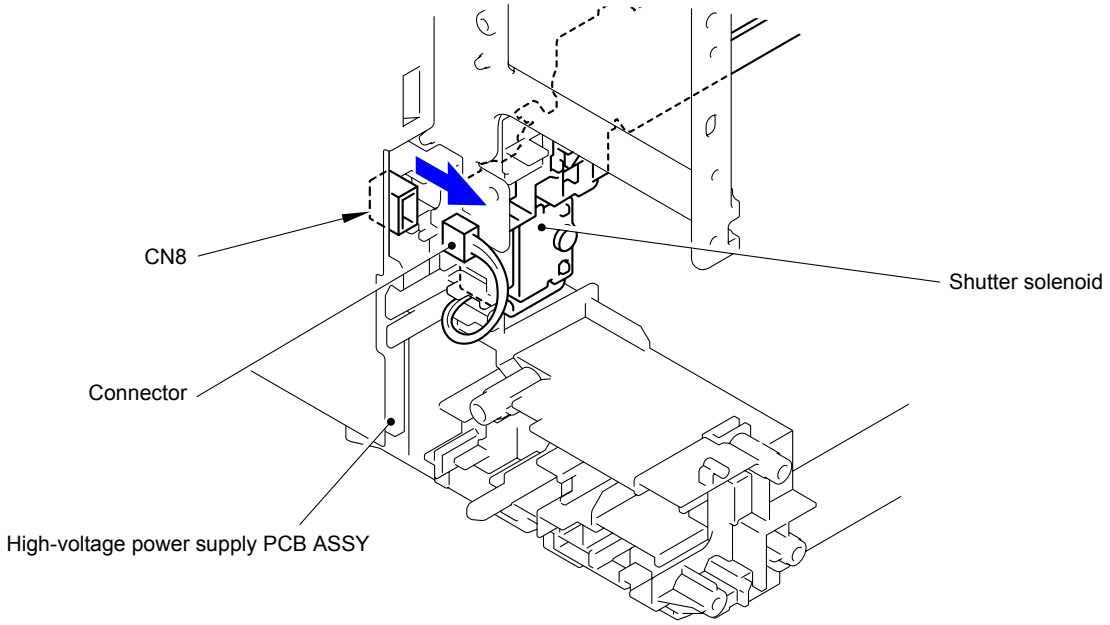


Fig. 3-220

(2) Remove the two Taptite bind B M3x10 screws to remove the Registration mark sensor holder ASSY from the Base frame unit.

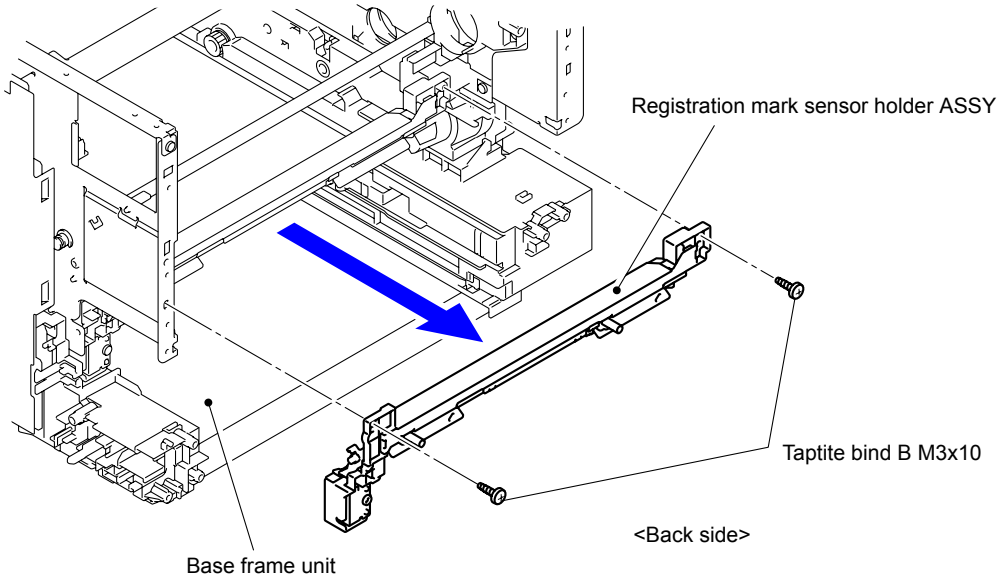


Fig. 3-221

(3) Remove the Taptite bind B M3x10 screw to remove the Shutter solenoid from the Registration mark sensor holder ASSY.

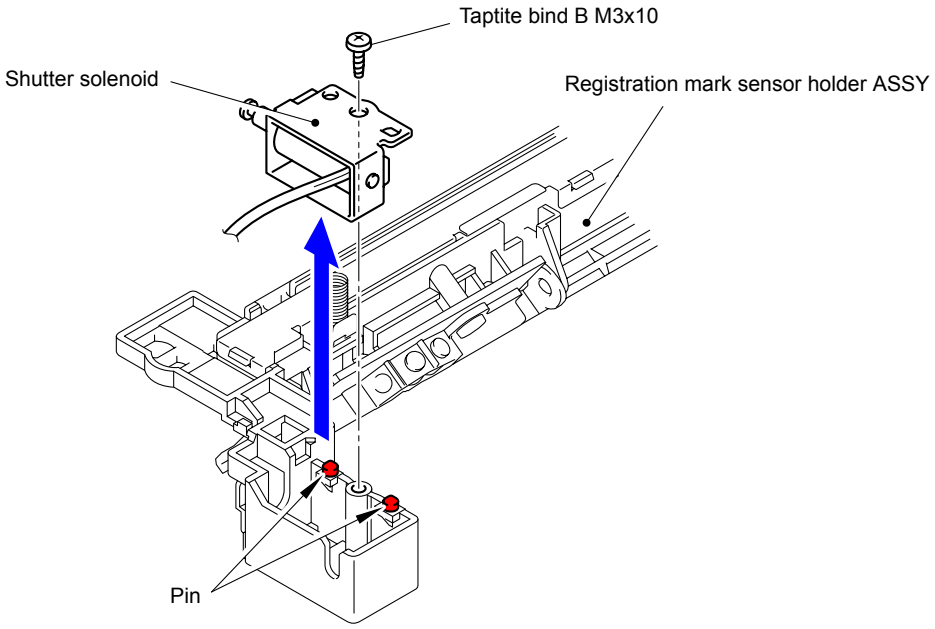


Fig. 3-222

Assembling Note:
Be sure to firmly insert the tip of the Pin of the Shutter solenoid into "A" of the Registration sensor shutter.

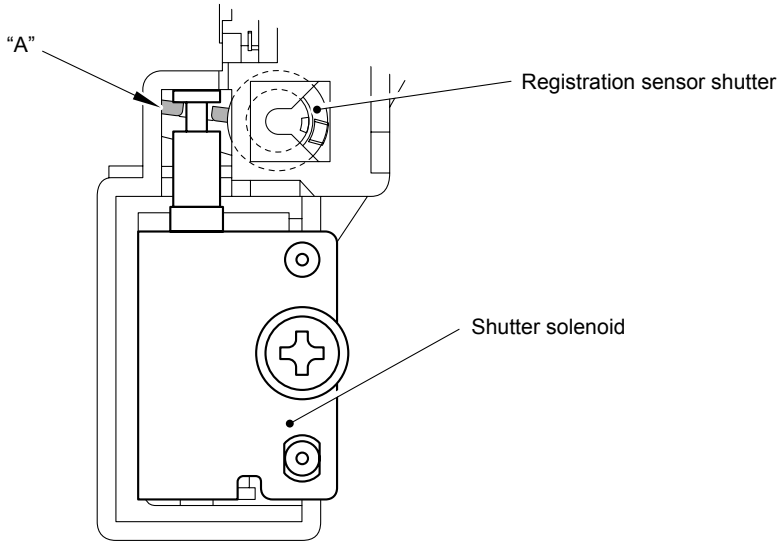


Fig. 3-223

Harness routing: Refer to “ 9 Registration Mark Sensor Holder ASSY”

9.71 MP Paper Empty/Registration Front Sensor PCB ASSY

(1) Press "A" to release the Hook and then remove the MP upper frame cover from the MP upper cover ASSY.

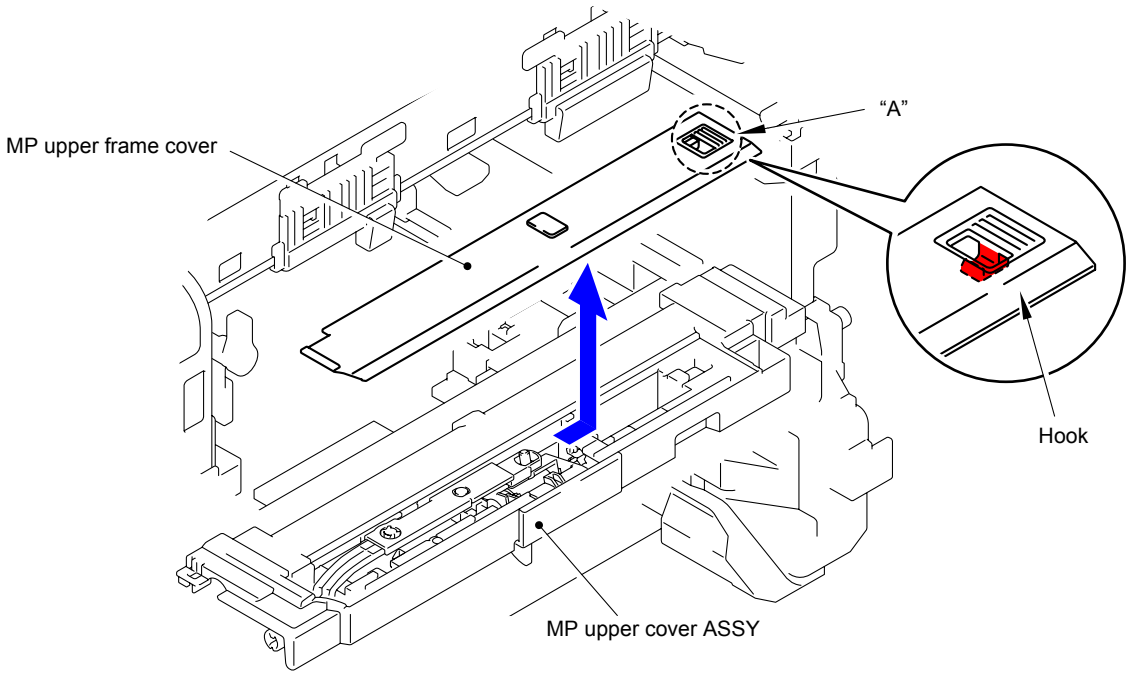


Fig. 3-224

(2) Remove the MP lift arm B from the MP upper cover ASSY.

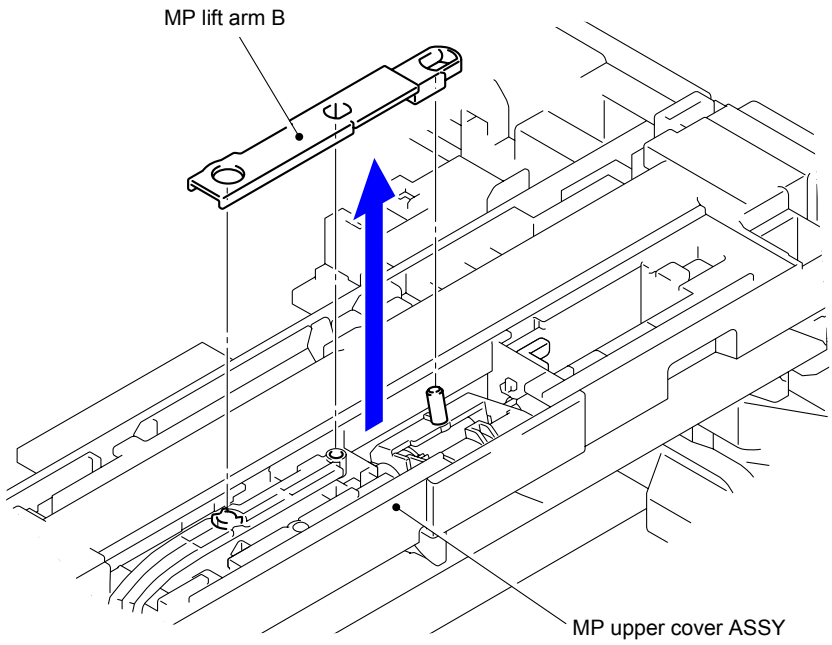


Fig. 3-225

(3) Release the Hook to remove the MP holder bush from the MP upper cover ASSY.

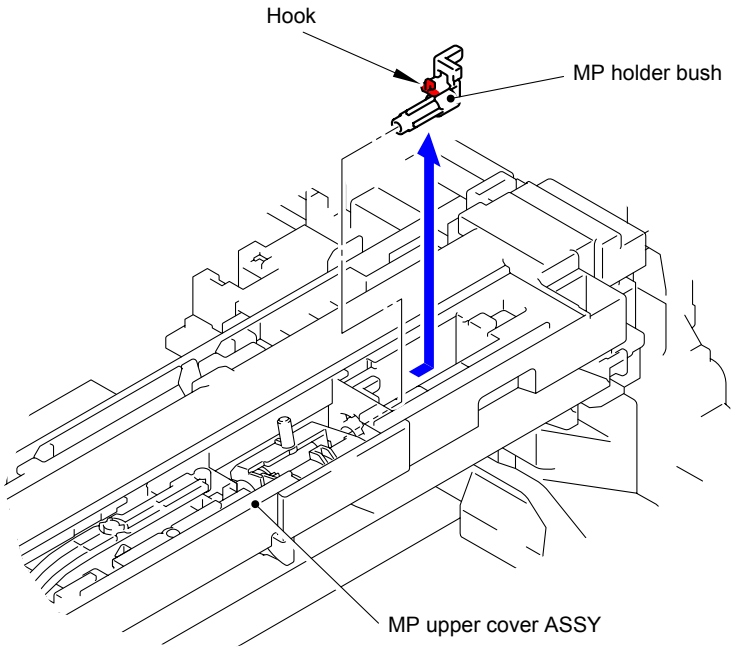


Fig. 3-226

(4) Remove the MP roller holder ASSY from the MP upper cover ASSY.

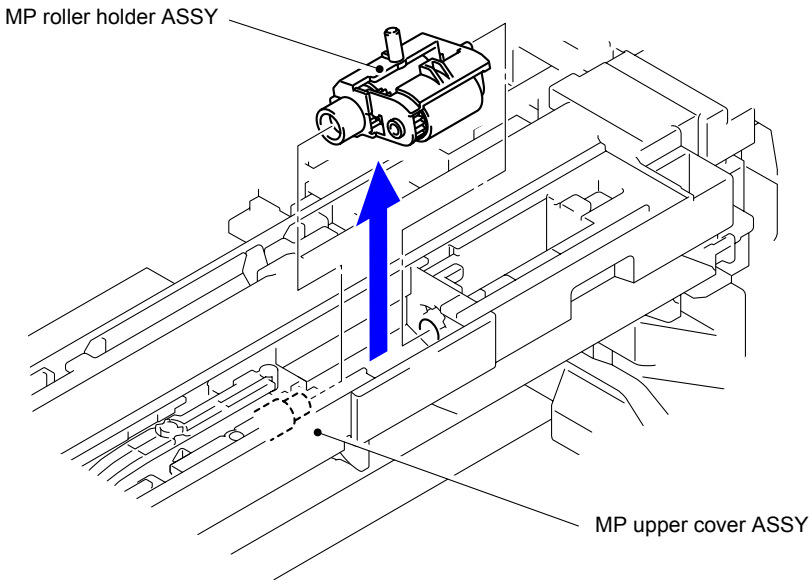


Fig. 3-227

(5) Remove the Registration gear from the Base frame unit.

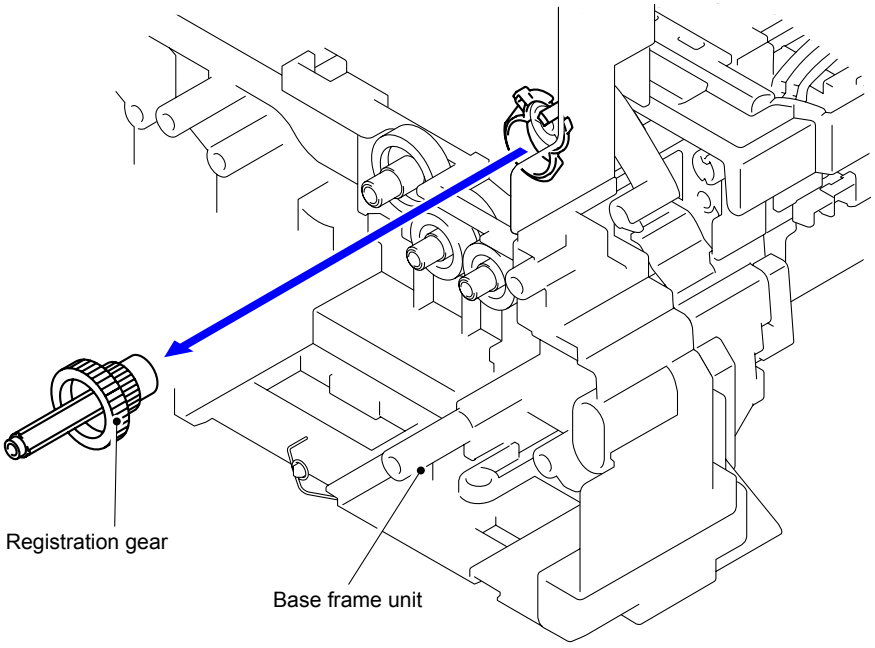


Fig. 3-228

Gear position: Refer to "■ PF ASSY."

(6) Remove the Pinch roller drive gear from the Base frame unit.

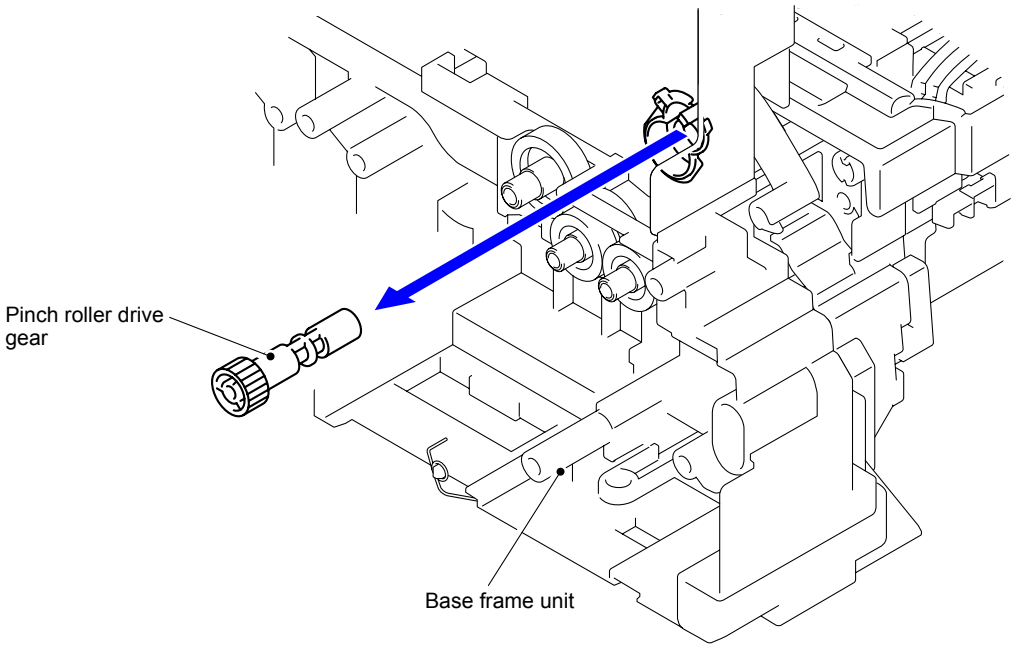


Fig. 3-229

Gear position: Refer to "■ PF ASSY."

(7) Release the Hook to remove the Registration/Pinch roller gear bush from the Base frame unit.

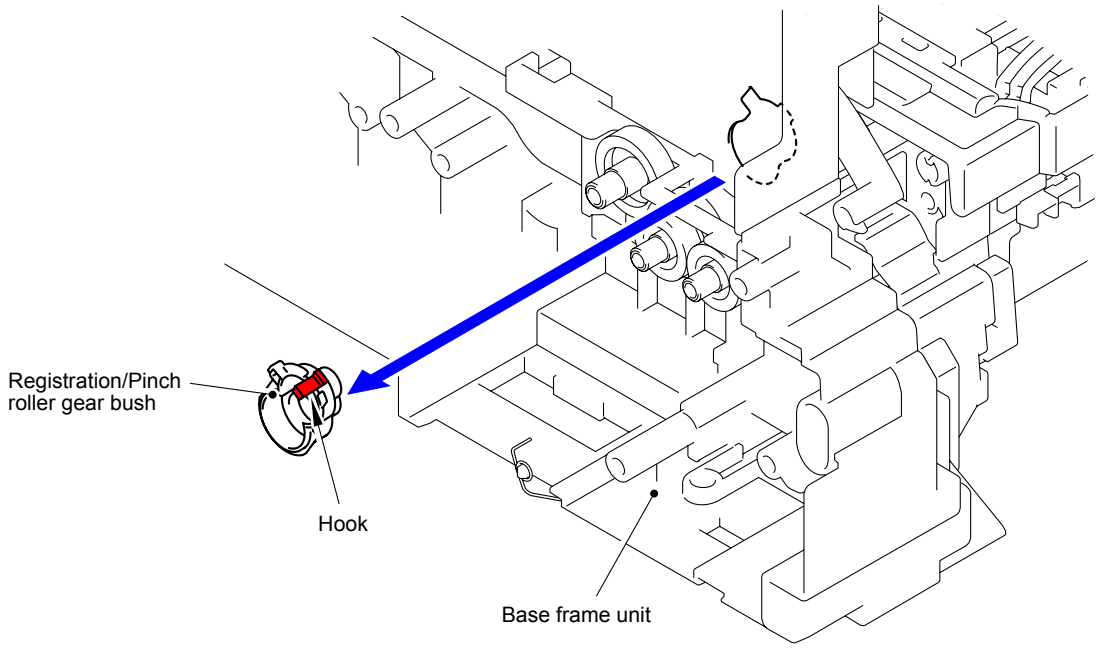


Fig. 3-230

Gear position: Refer to "■ PF ASSY."

(8) Remove the two Taptite bind B M3x8 screws. Slide the MP drive shaft as shown in the figure. Remove the MP upper cover ASSY from the PF ASSY.

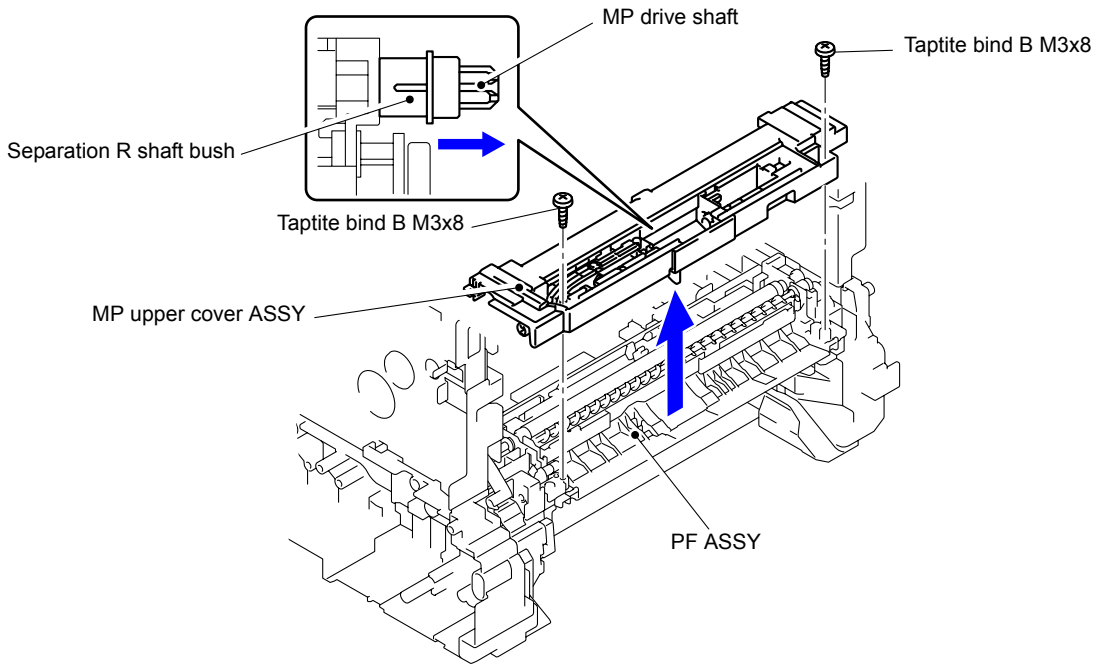


Fig. 3-231

(9) Release the five Hooks to remove the Sensor cover MP from the MP upper cover ASSY.

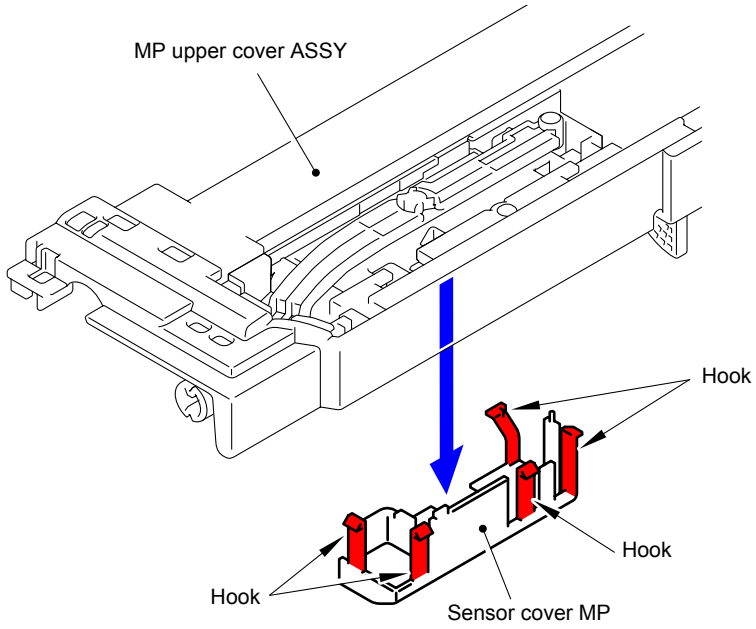


Fig. 3-232

(10) Release the two Hooks to remove the MP paper empty actuator A ASSY from the MP upper cover ASSY.

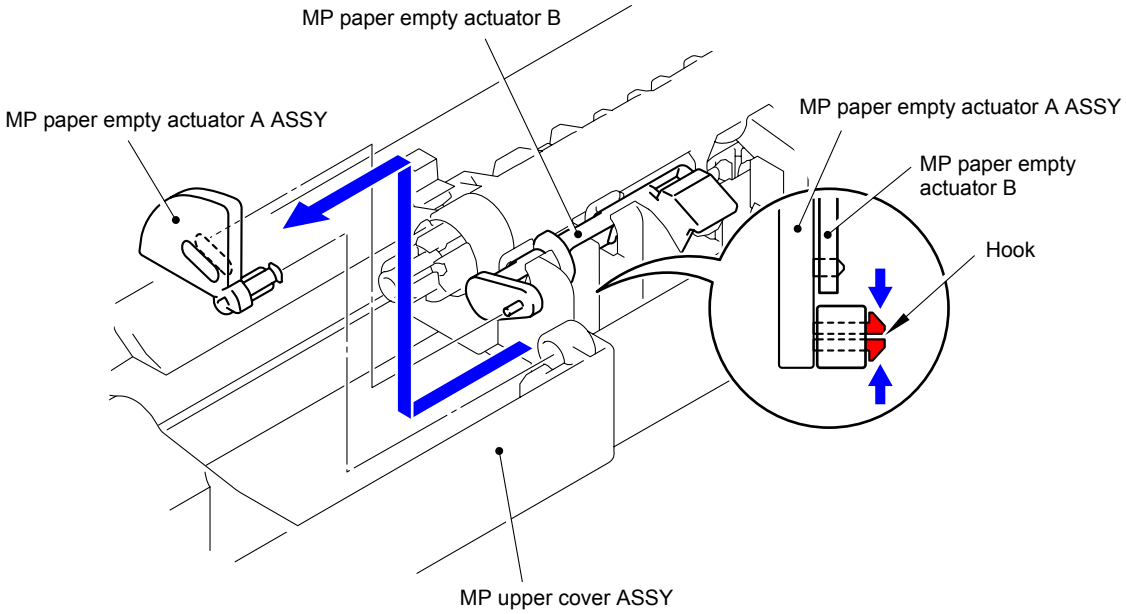


Fig. 3-233

(11) Release the Hook to remove the MP paper empty actuator B from the MP upper cover ASSY.

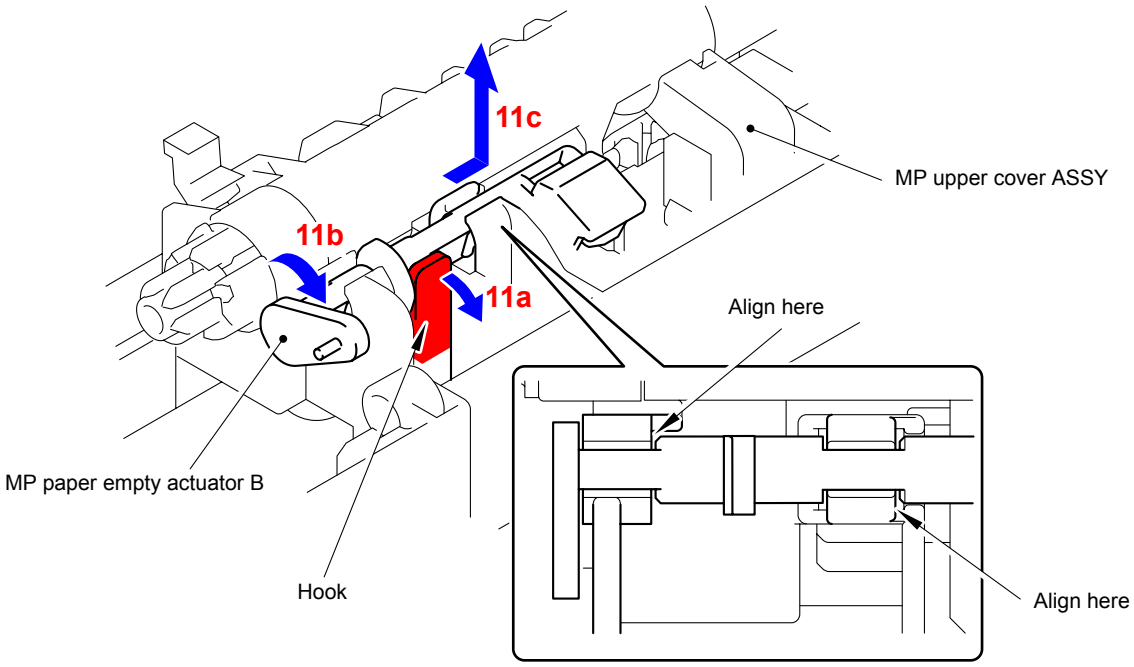


Fig. 3-234

(12) Release the Hook to remove the Separation R shaft bush from the MP drive shaft.

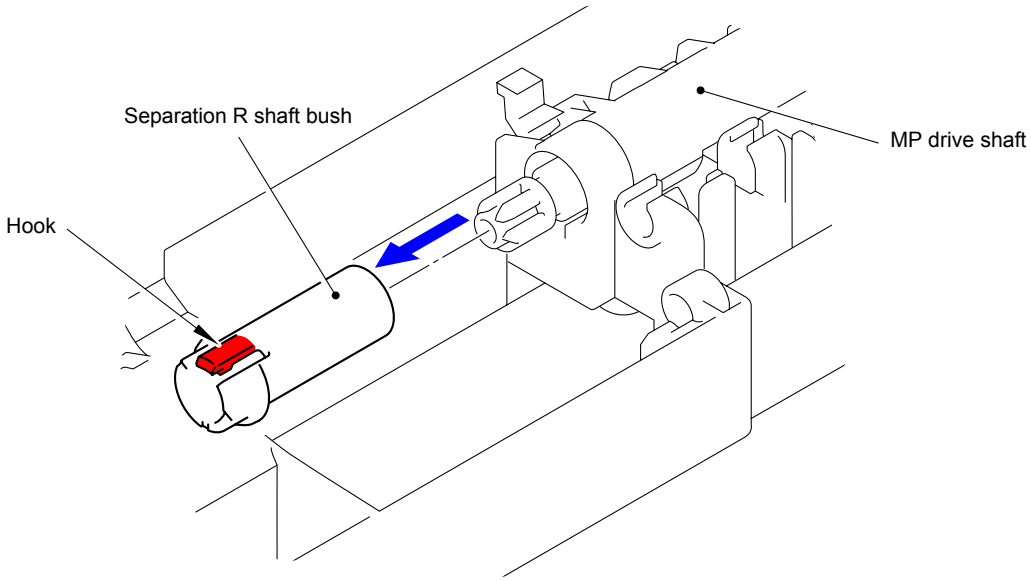


Fig. 3-235

(13) Remove the MP registration front actuator spring from the MP registration front actuator.

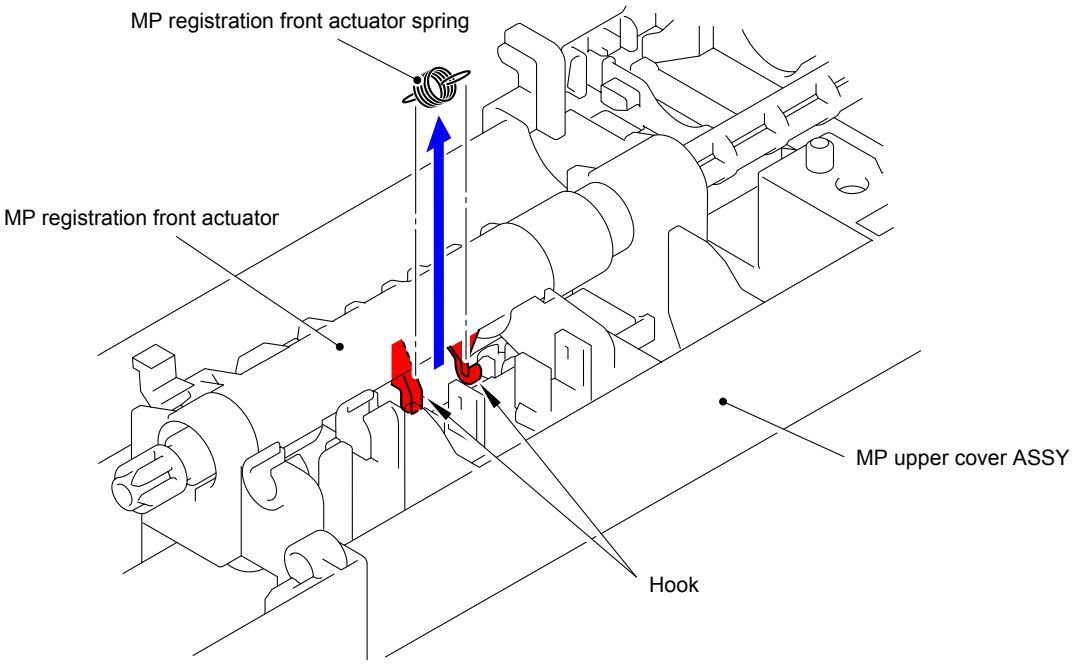


Fig. 3-236

(14) Take out the MP drive shaft, and then remove the MP registration actuator front from the MP upper cover ASSY.

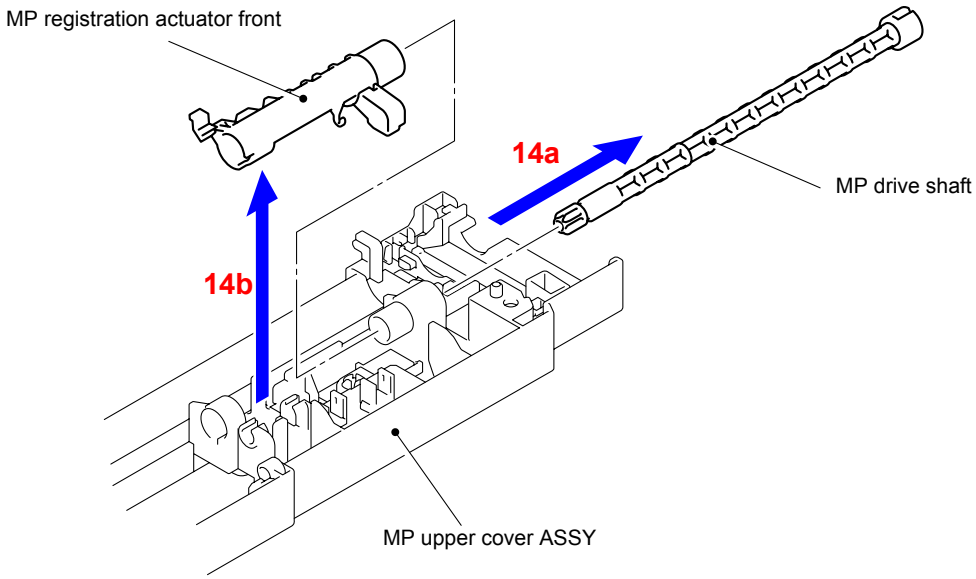


Fig. 3-237

(15) Disconnect the wiring of the MP paper empty/registration front sensor PCB ASSY.

(16) Remove the Taptite bind B M3x8 screw, and then remove the MP paper empty/ registration front sensor PCB ASSY from the MP upper cover ASSY.

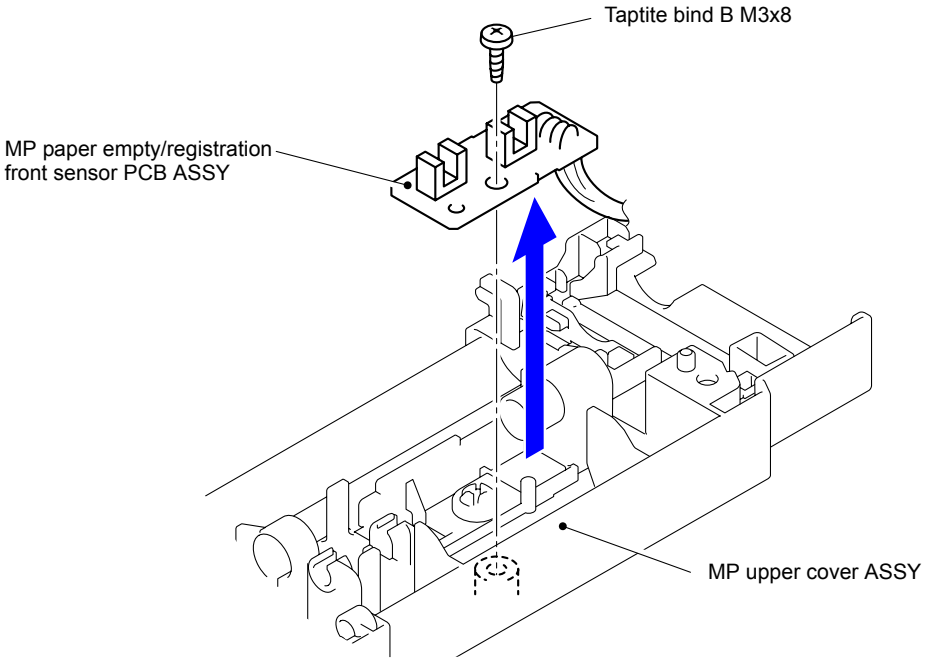


Fig. 3-238

Harness routing: Refer to " 10 MP Paper Empty/Registration Front Sensor PCB ASSY"

9.72 PF ASSY

(1) Push the T1 lift arm to the back to remove “B” of the Roller holder ASSY from “A” of the T1 lift arm.

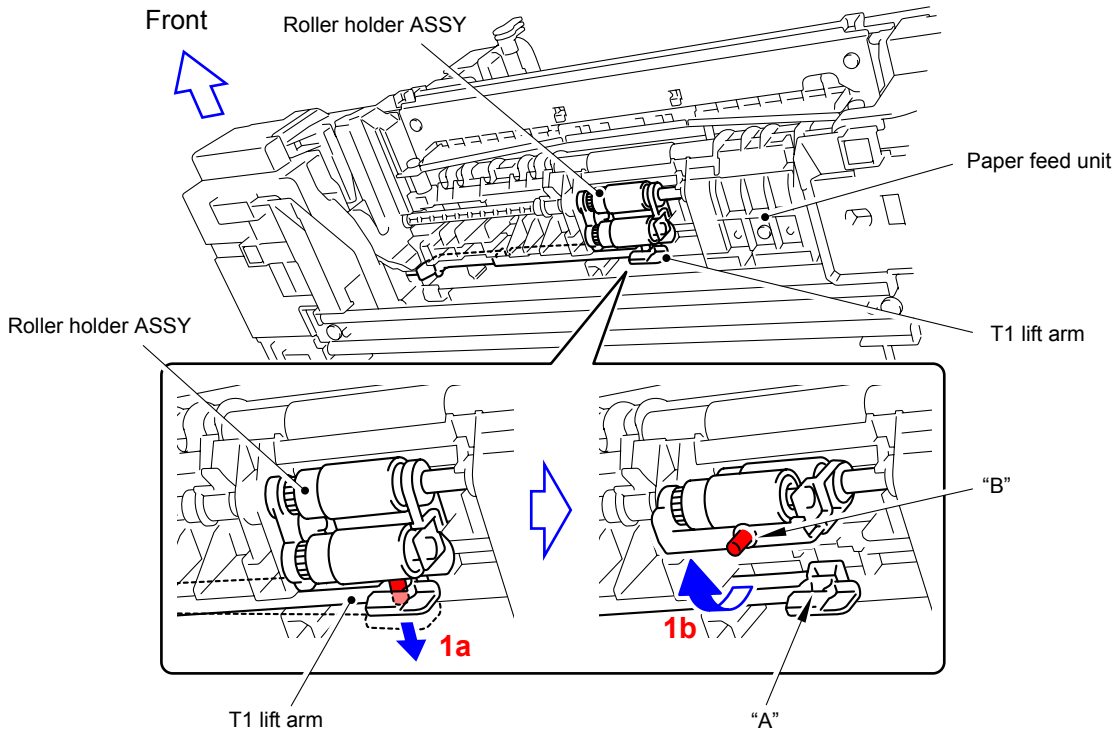


Fig. 3-239

(2) Slide the Roller holder ASSY in the direction of the arrow 2 to remove it from the “C” of the Paper feed unit.

(3) Slide the Roller holder ASSY in the direction of the arrow 3a and 3b in this order to remove it.

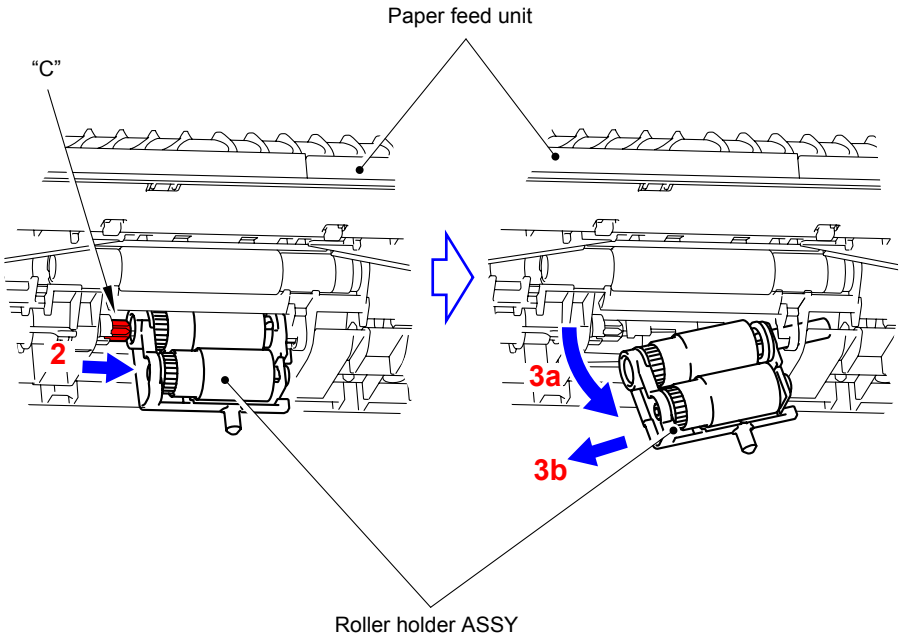


Fig. 3-240

Assembling Note:

Align the Shaft of the roller holder ASSY to the hole of the Paper feed unit and insert it into the hole.

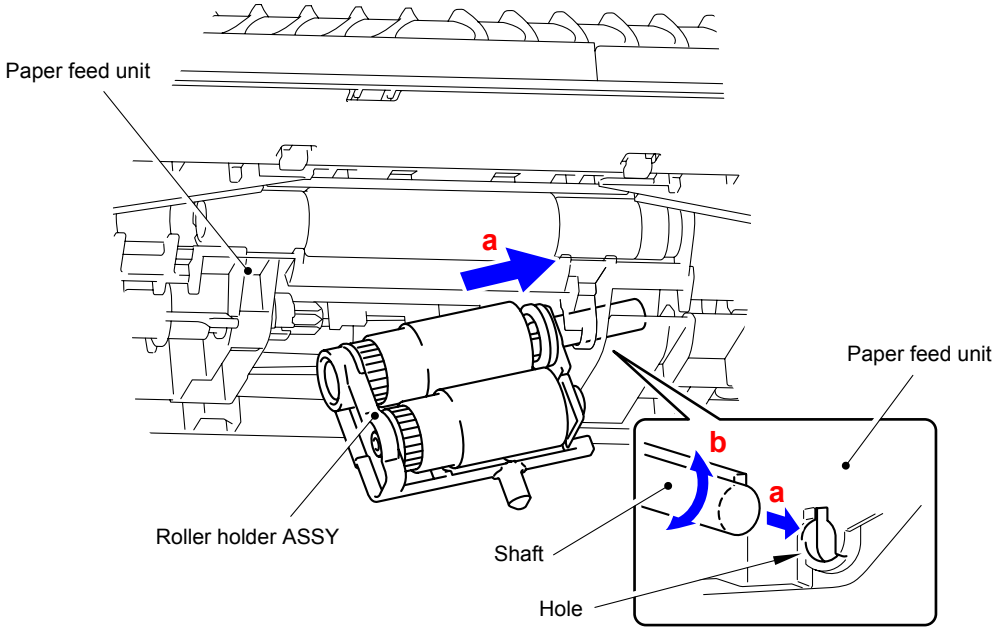


Fig. 3-241

(4) Move the T1 lift arm in the direction of the arrow 4b as bending it in the direction of the arrow 4a to remove it from the Boss of the PF ASSY.

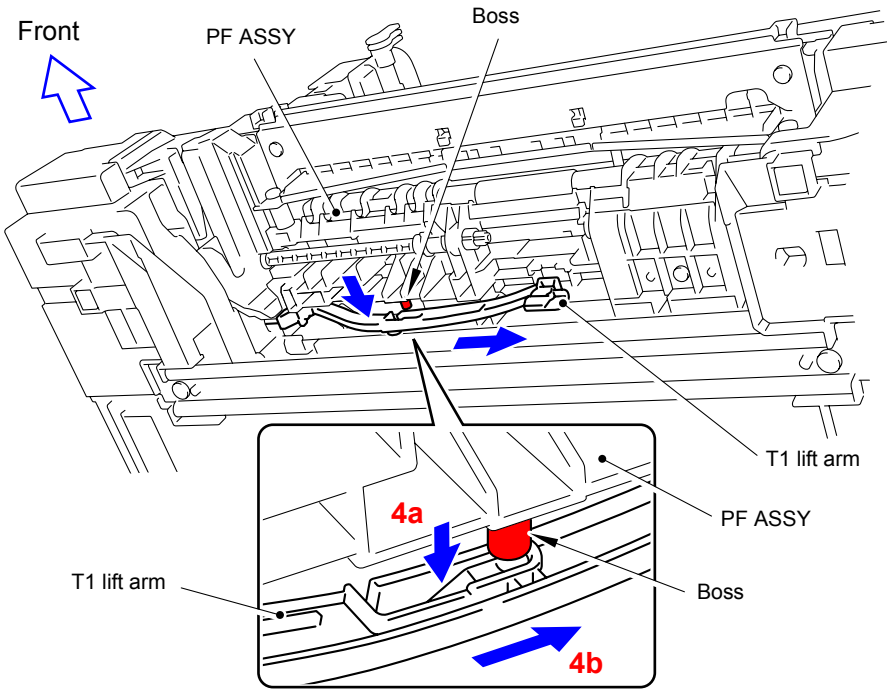


Fig. 3-242

(5) Remove the Shoulder screw from the PF ASSY.

(6) Remove the two Taptite bind B M4x12 screws, then shift the PF ASSY to the right, and remove it from the Base frame unit.

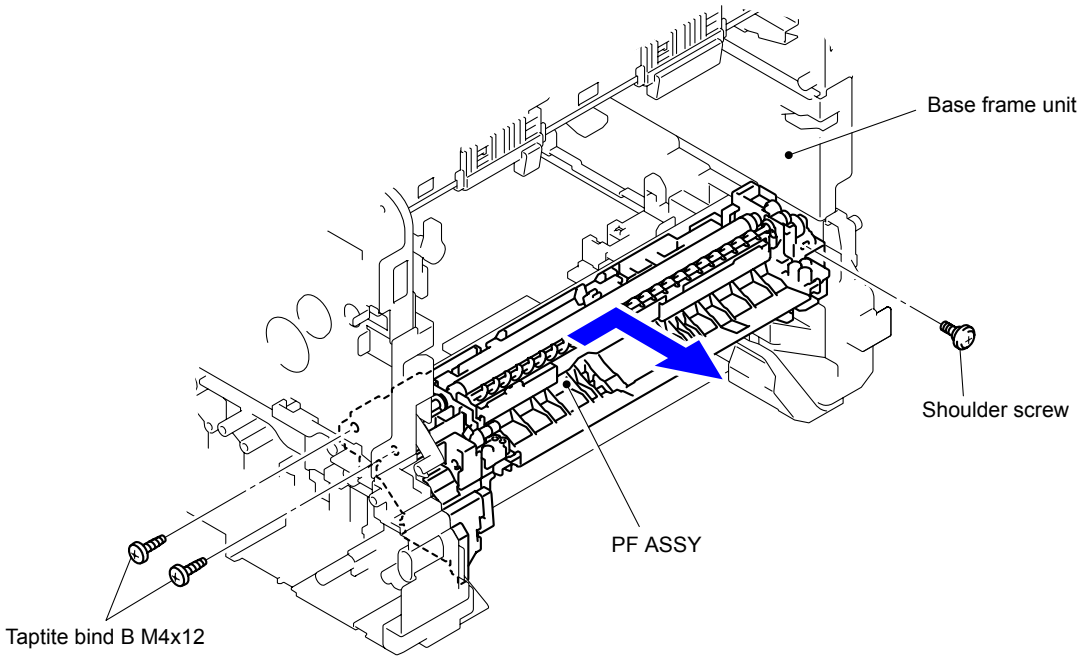


Fig. 3-243

Harness routing: Refer to " 11 PF ASSY"

9.73 T1 Registration Front/Rear Sensor PCB ASSY

(1) Disconnect the wiring of the T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY.

(2) Remove the Taptite bind B M3x10 screw to remove the T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB holder from the PF ASSY.

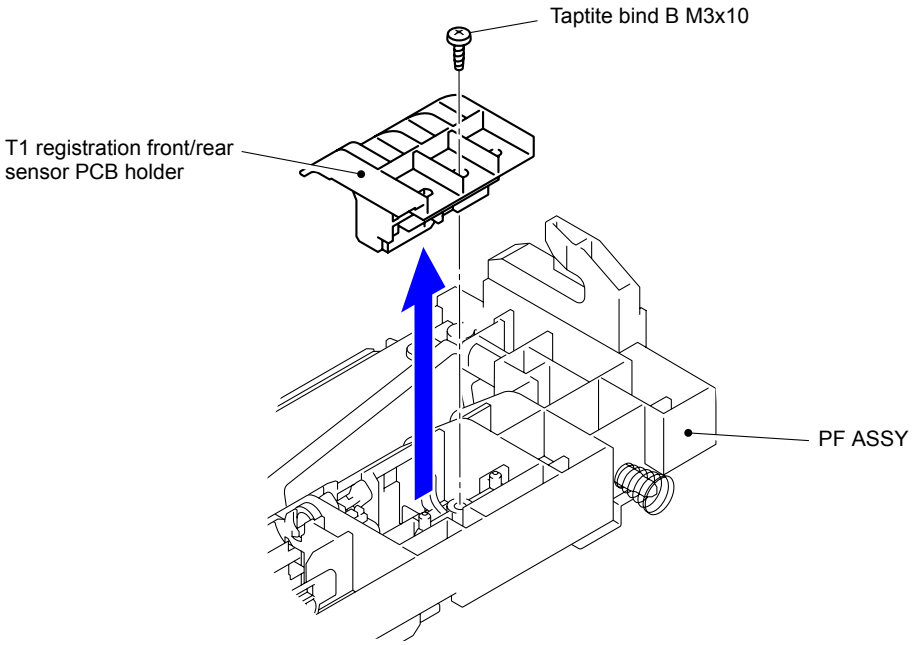


Fig. 3-244

(3) Release the three Hooks to remove the T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB ASSY from the T1 registration front/rear sensor PCB holder.

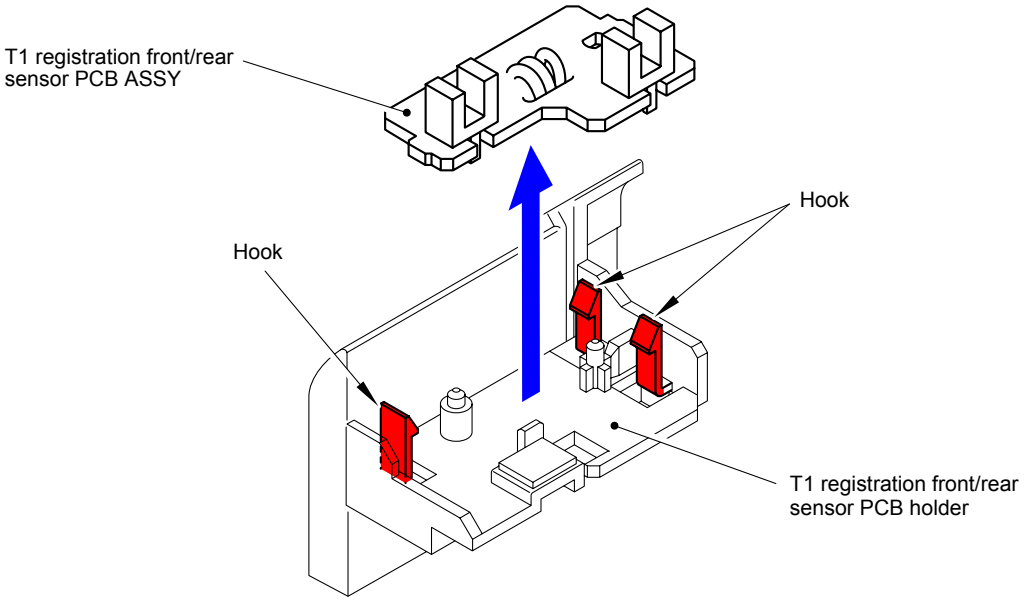


Fig. 3-245

Harness routing: Refer to " 11 PF ASSY"

9.74 MP Sector Solenoid

(1) Disconnect the wiring of the MP sector solenoid.

(2) Remove the Taptite bind B M3x8 screw. Remove the MP sector solenoid and Solenoid spring MP from the PF ASSY.

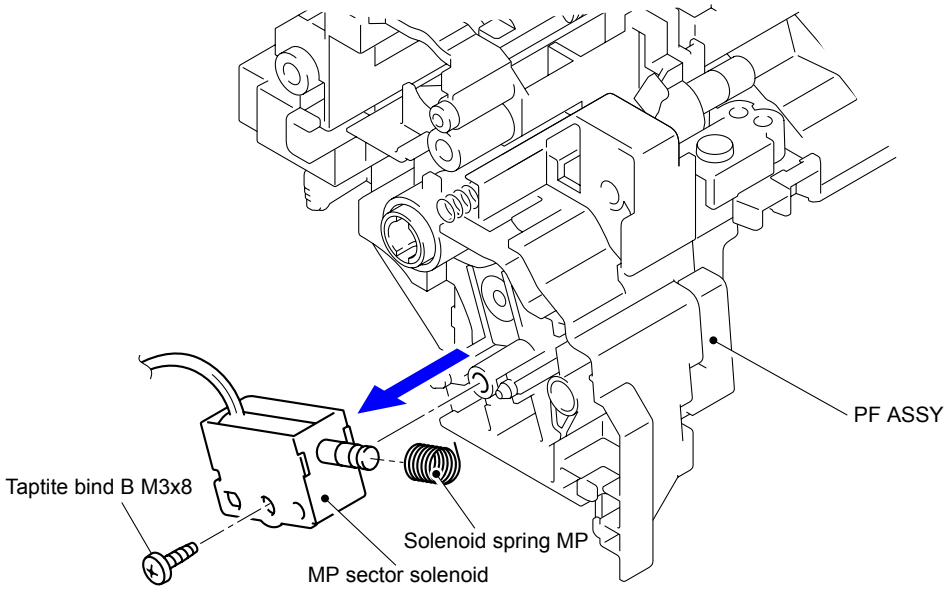


Fig. 3-246

Assembling Note:
When assembling the MP sector solenoid, be sure to assemble it as shown in the figure below.

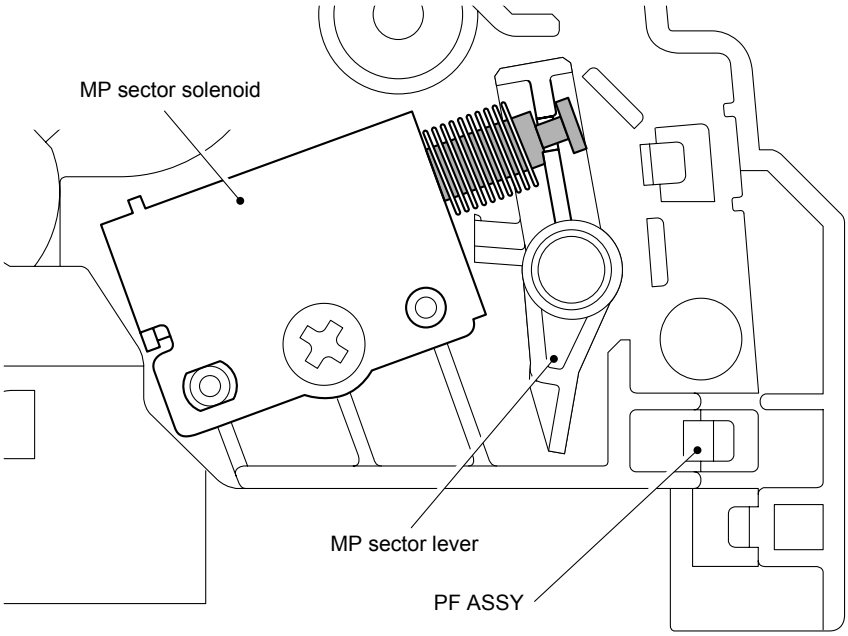


Fig. 3-247

Harness routing: Refer to " 11 PF ASSY"

9.75 T1 Paper Edge Sensor PCB ASSY/ T1 Paper Edge Actuator/ T1 Paper Edge Actuator Spring

(1) Remove the three Taptite bind B M3x10 screws of the Pinch roller shaft sub ASSY from the MP drive frame.

(2) Remove “A” of the Registration roller ground wire.

(3) Remove the MP drive frame from the PF ASSY.

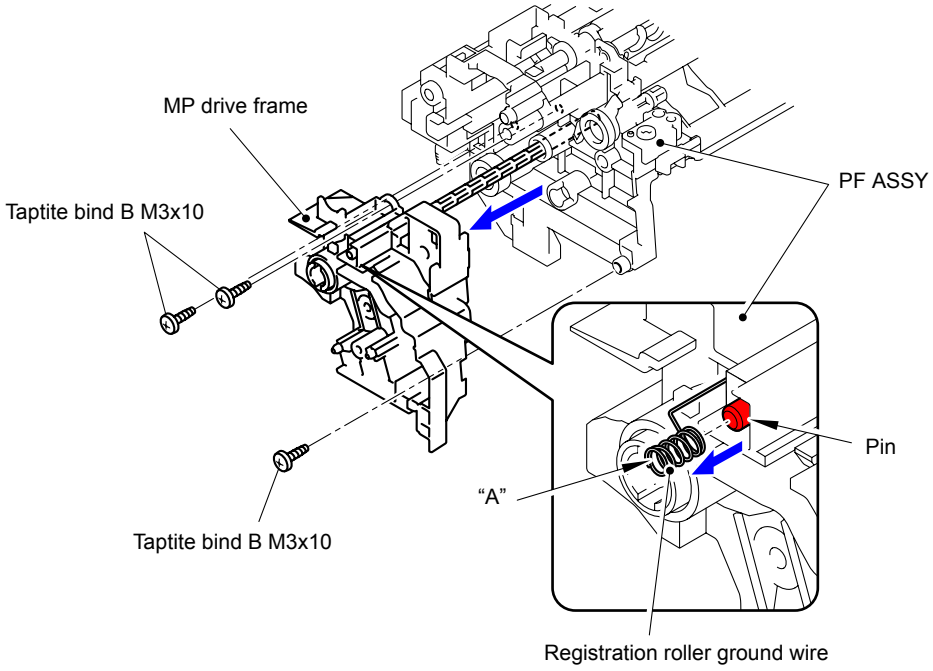


Fig. 3-248

(4) Release the Hook to remove the Separation R shaft bush from the T1 drive shaft gear Z17M07.

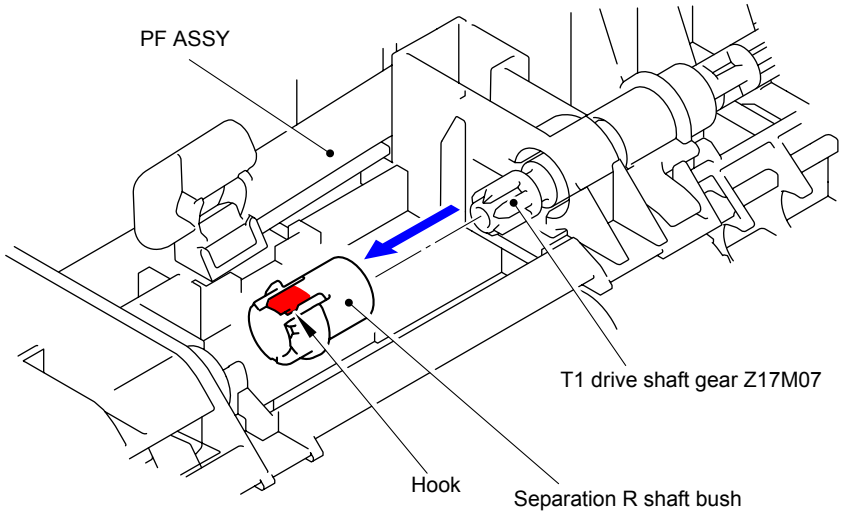


Fig. 3-249

(5) Remove the T1 paper edge actuator spring from the Hook of the PF ASSY and the Hook of the T1 paper edge actuator.

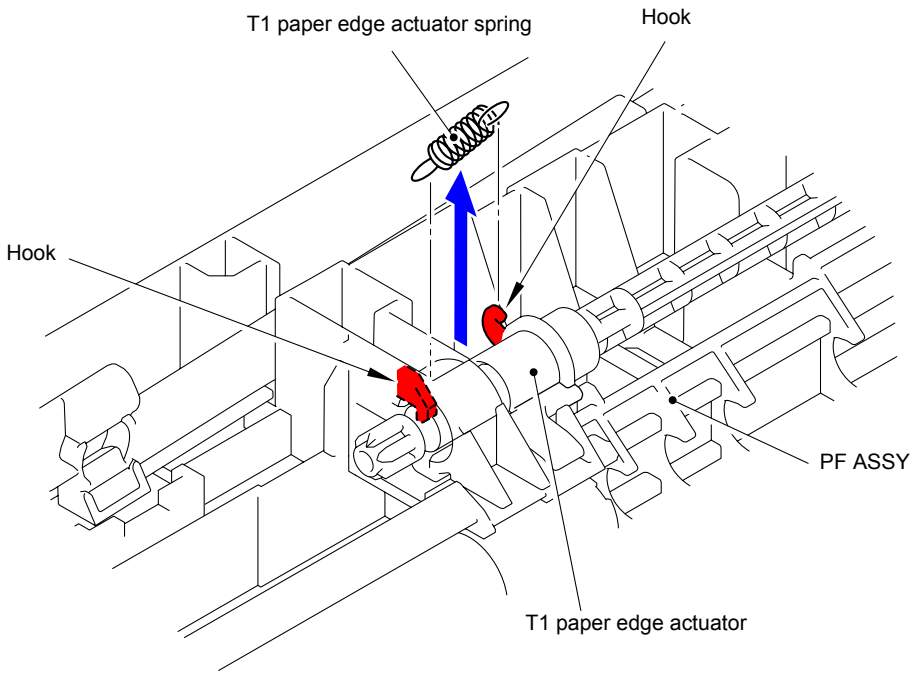


Fig. 3-250

(6) Take out the T1 drive shaft gear Z17M07 from the PF ASSY, and then remove the T1 paper edge actuator.

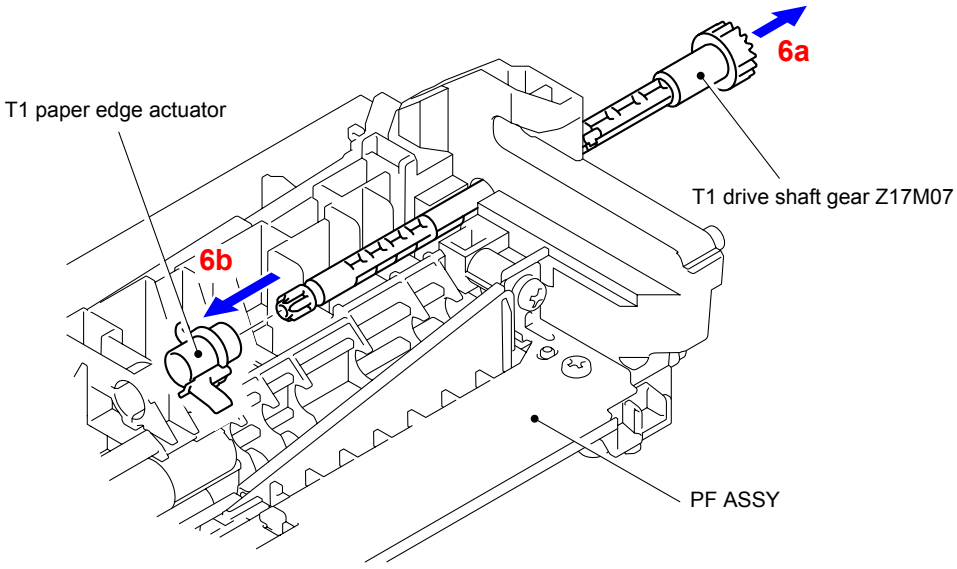


Fig. 3-251

(7) Disconnect the wiring of the T1 paper edge sensor PCB ASSY.

(8) Release the three Hooks to remove the T1 paper edge sensor PCB ASSY from the PF ASSY.

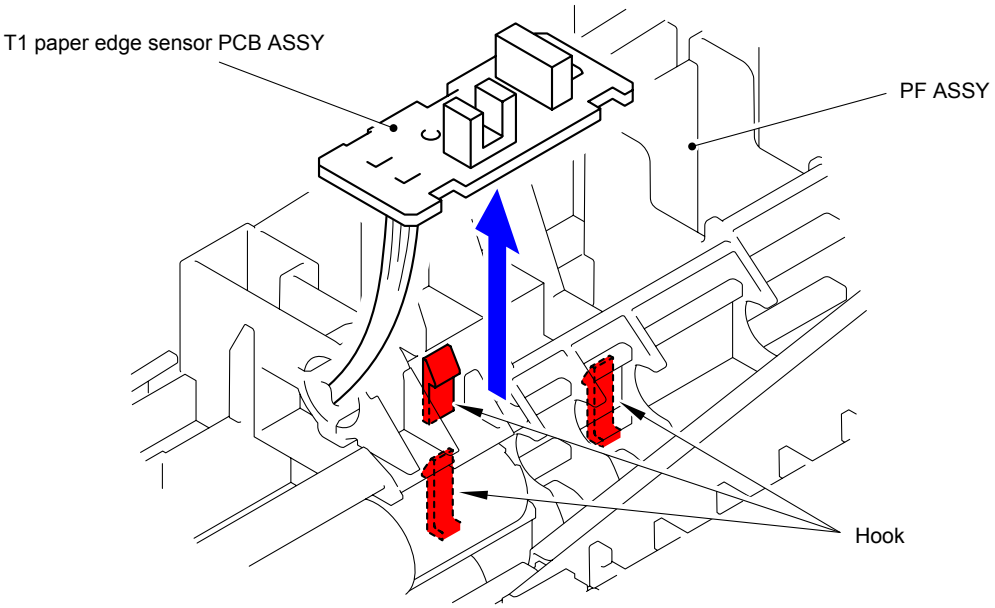


Fig. 3-252

Harness routing: Refer to " 11 PF ASSY"

9.76 Cleaner Drive Gear 15

(1) Press the Hook of the Cleaner drive gear 15, and then remove it from the Main body.

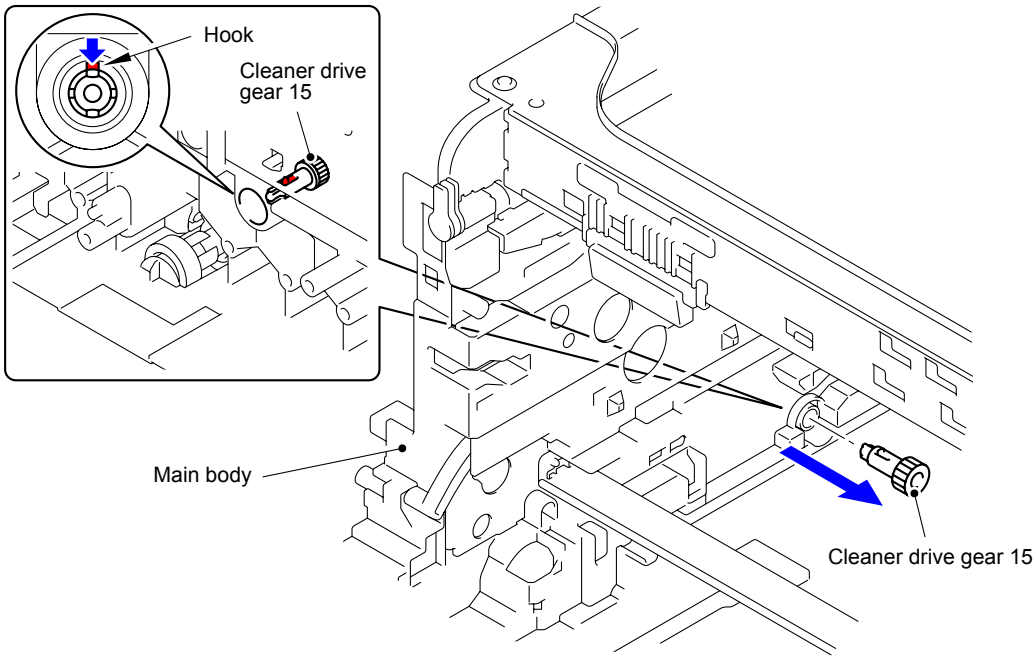


Fig. 3-253

9.77 High-voltage Power Supply PCB ASSY

(1) Remove the High-voltage power supply protect film from the Base frame unit.

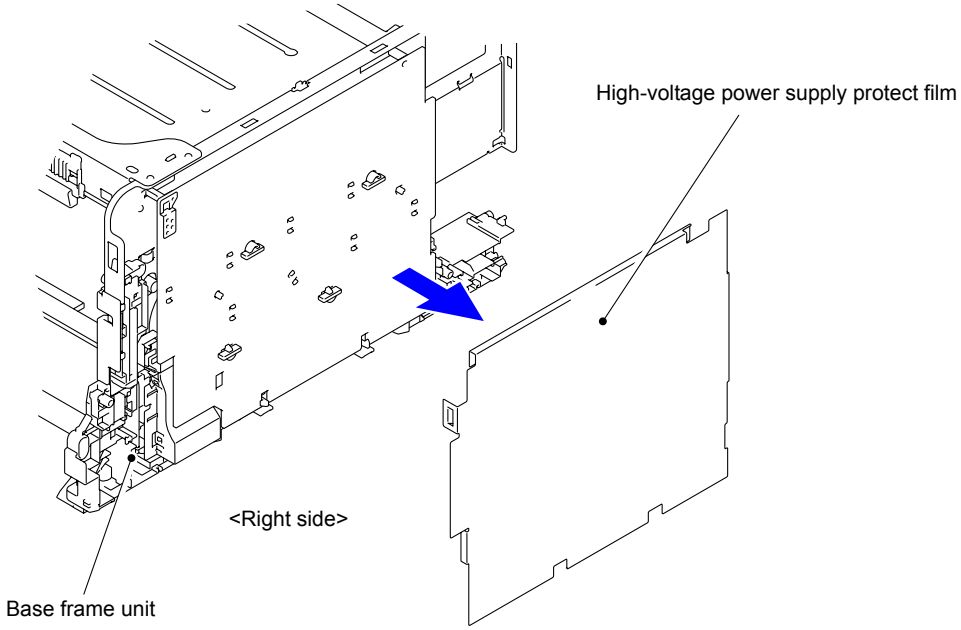


Fig. 3-254

(2) Remove the four Spacers from the Base frame unit.

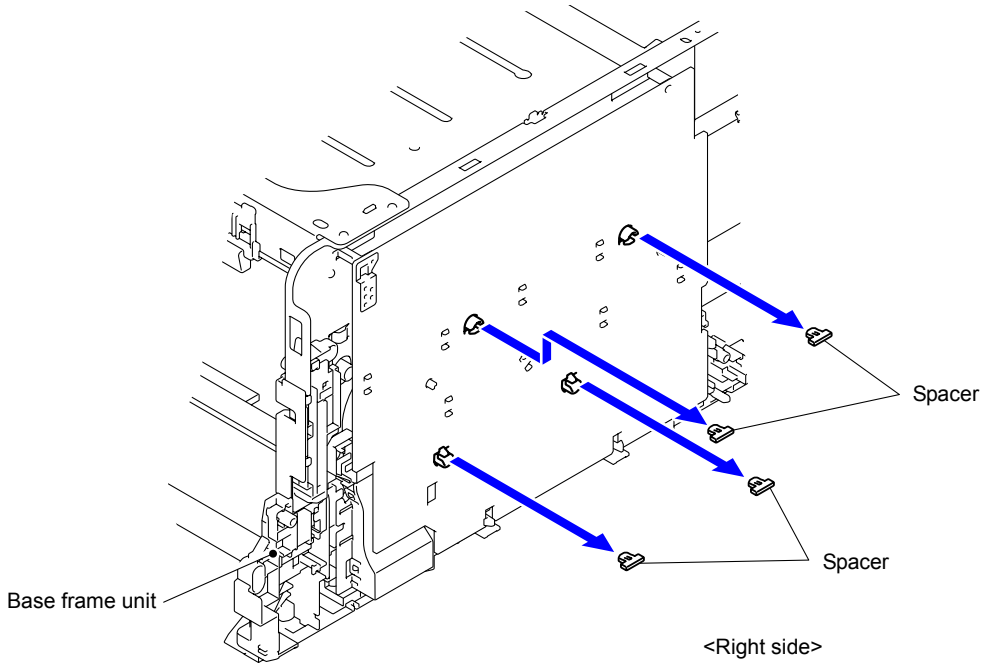


Fig. 3-255

(3) Disconnect the two Connectors (CN1, CN2) from the High-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

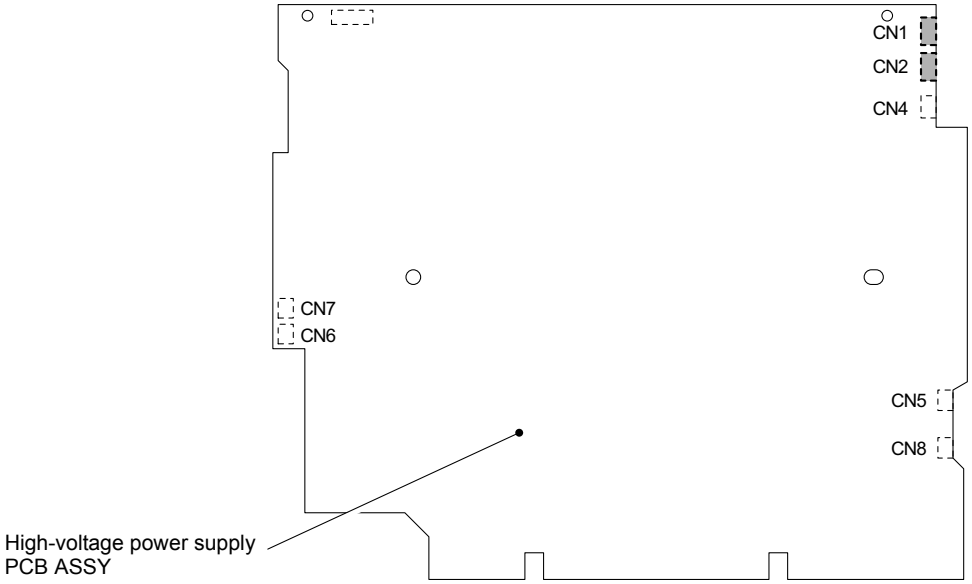


Fig. 3-256

(4) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws.

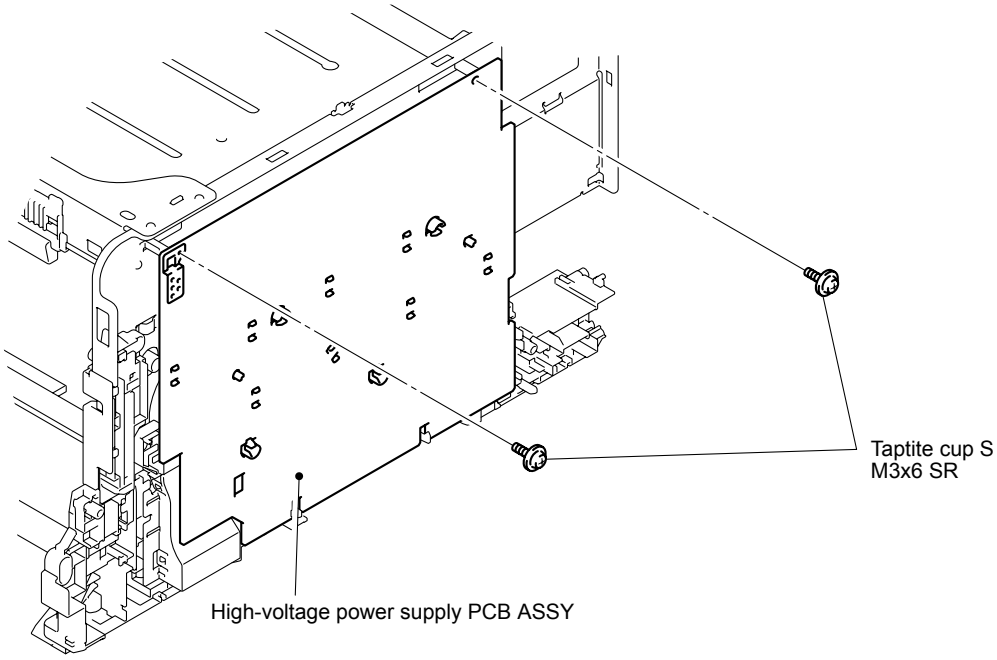


Fig. 3-257

(5) Release the eight Hooks to remove the High-voltage power supply PCB ASSY from the Base frame unit.

(6) Disconnect the two Connectors (CN6, CN7).

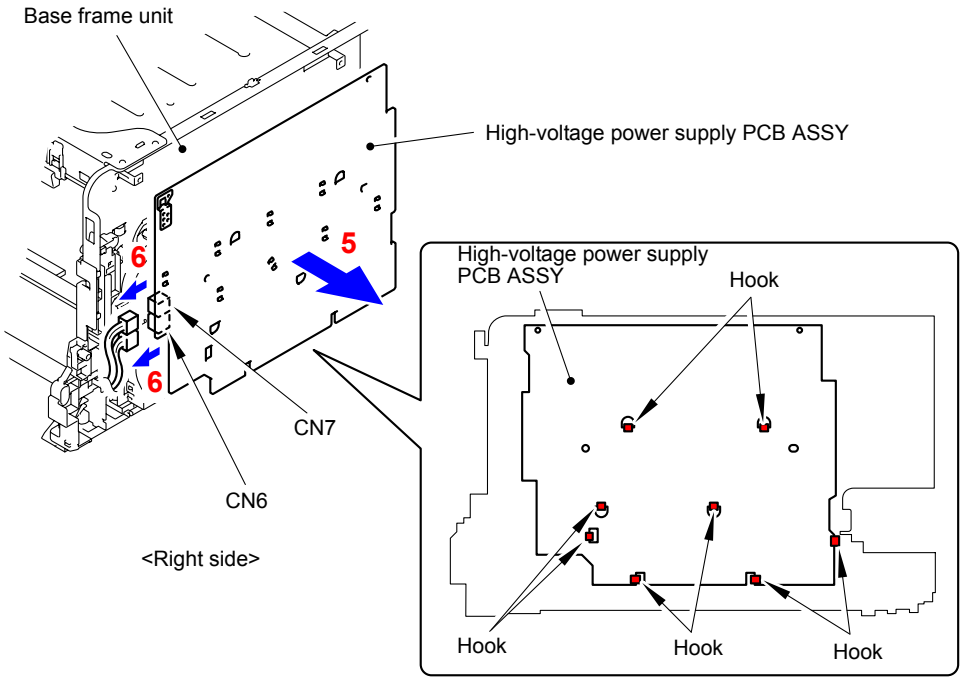


Fig. 3-258

(7) Release the Hook to remove the High-voltage power supply shield ASSY from the High-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.

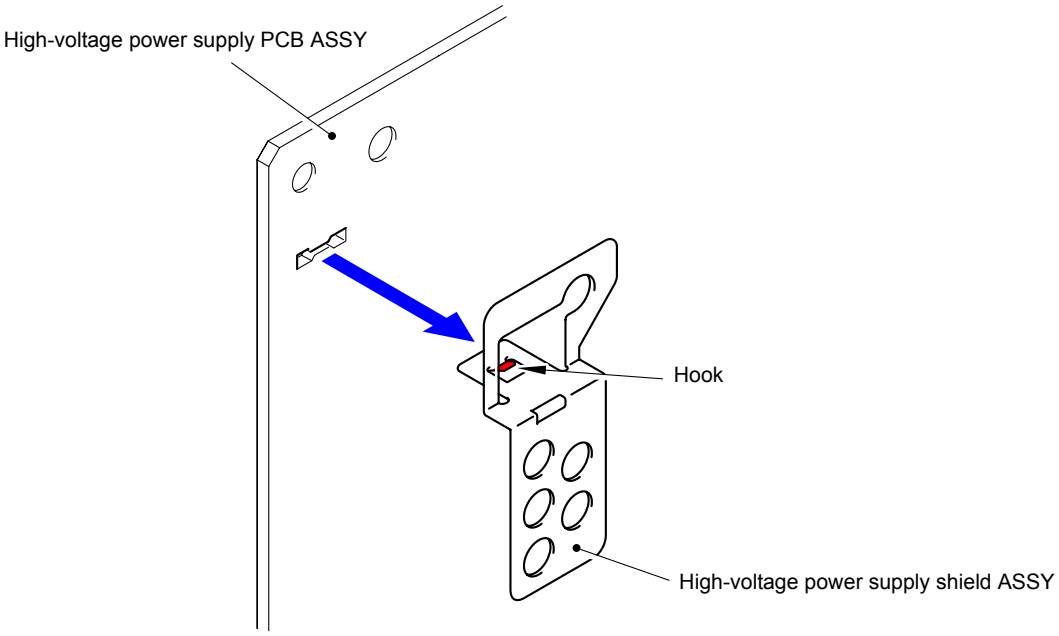


Fig. 3-259

9.78 Waste Toner Sensor

(1) Release the two Hooks to remove the Waste toner sensor cover from the Base frame unit.

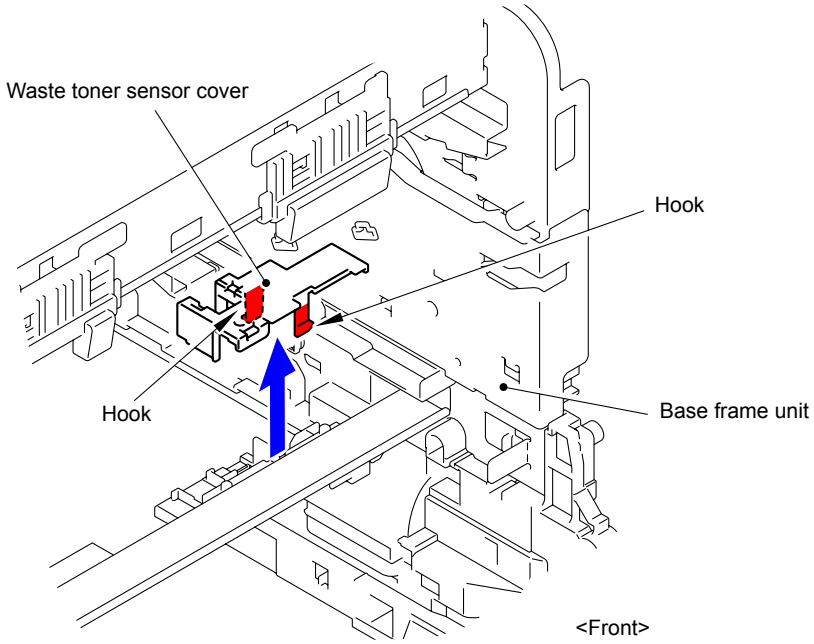


Fig. 3-260

(2) Release the three Hooks to remove the Waste toner sensor from the Base frame unit.

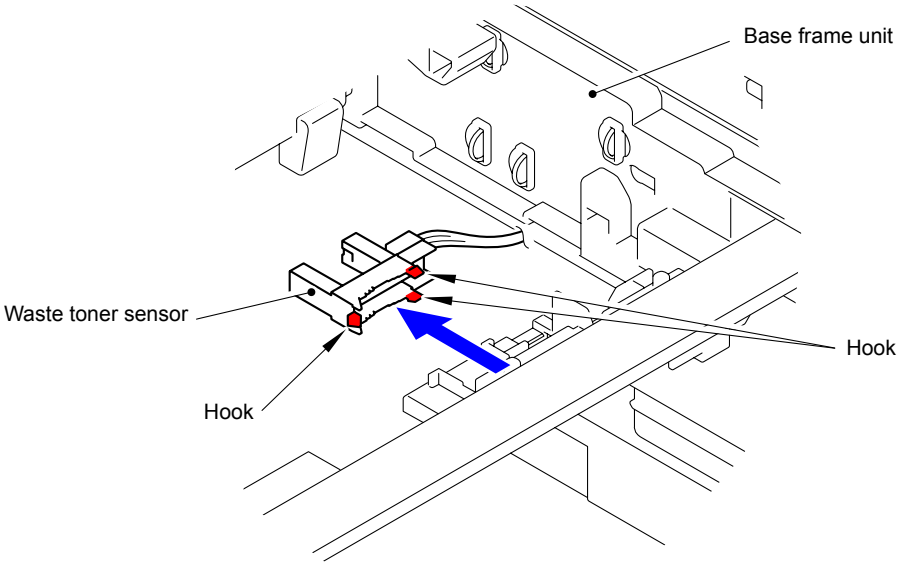


Fig. 3-261

(3) Disconnect the Connector from the Waste toner sensor.

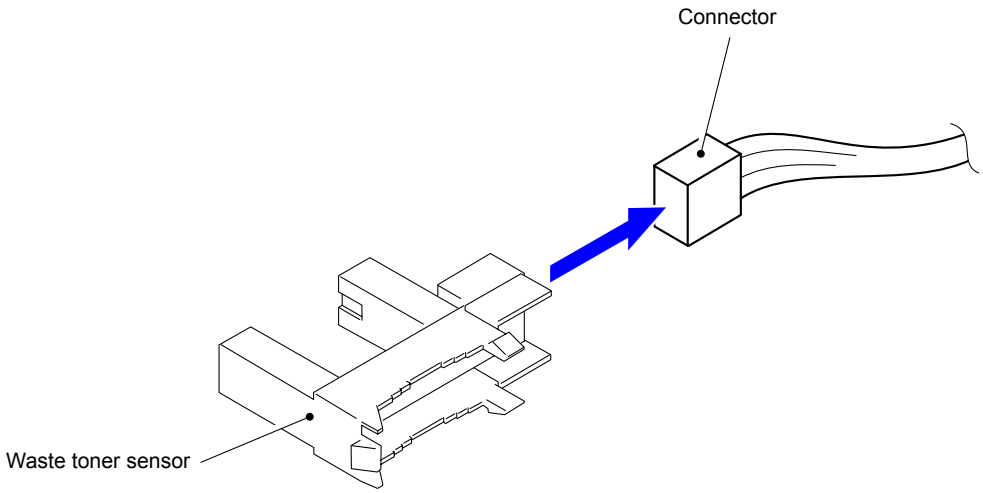


Fig. 3-262

9.79 Air Duct Cover/Blower

(1) Release the four Hooks to remove the Air duct cover from the Base frame unit.

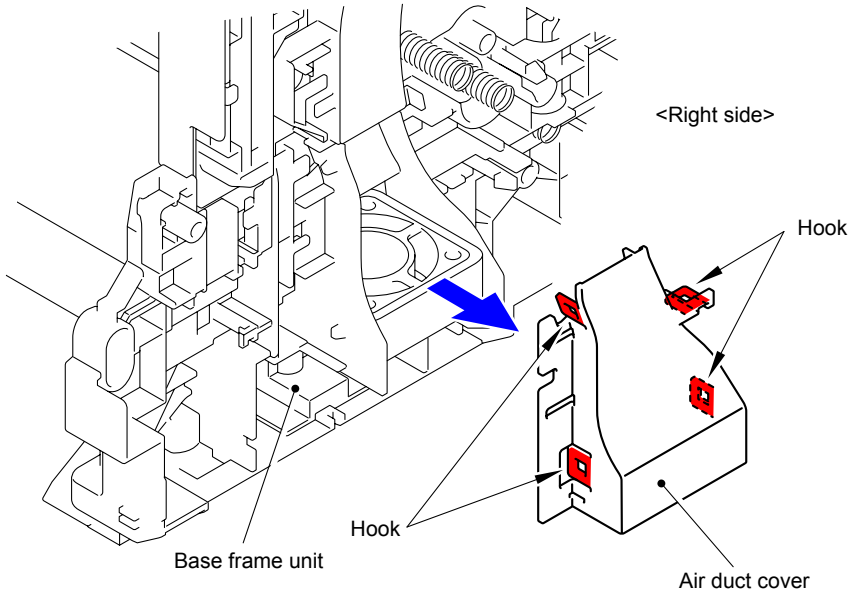


Fig. 3-263

(2) Disconnect the wiring of the Blower.

(3) Remove the Blower from the Base frame unit.

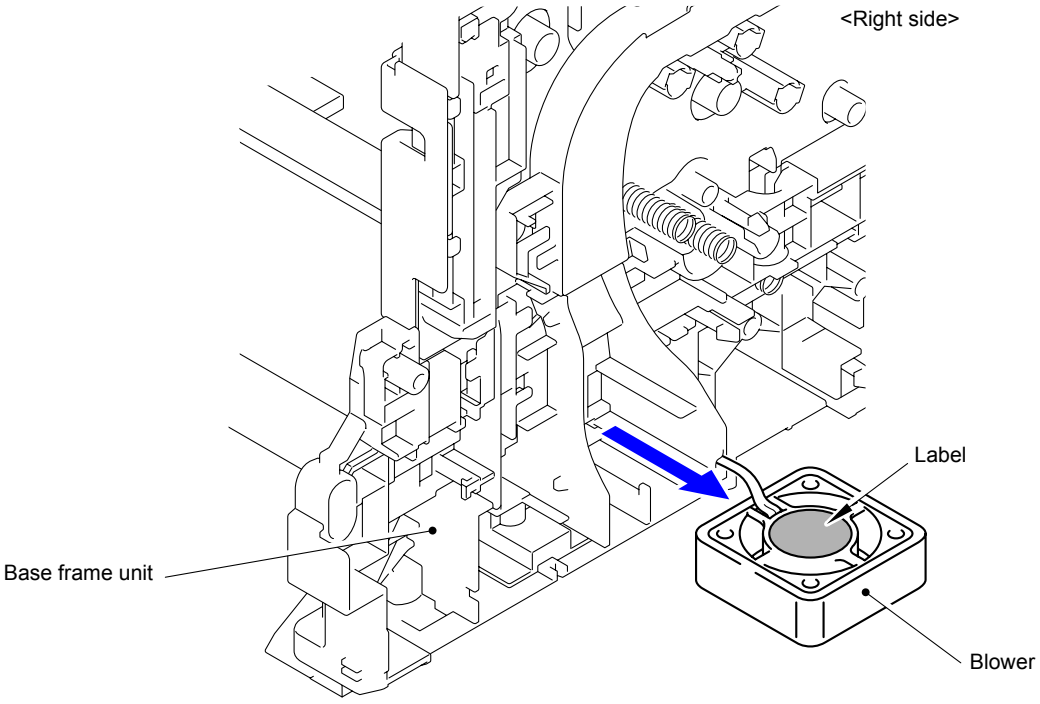


Fig. 3-264

Assembling Note:
When assembling the Blower, be sure to assemble it in a way that the label side faces up.

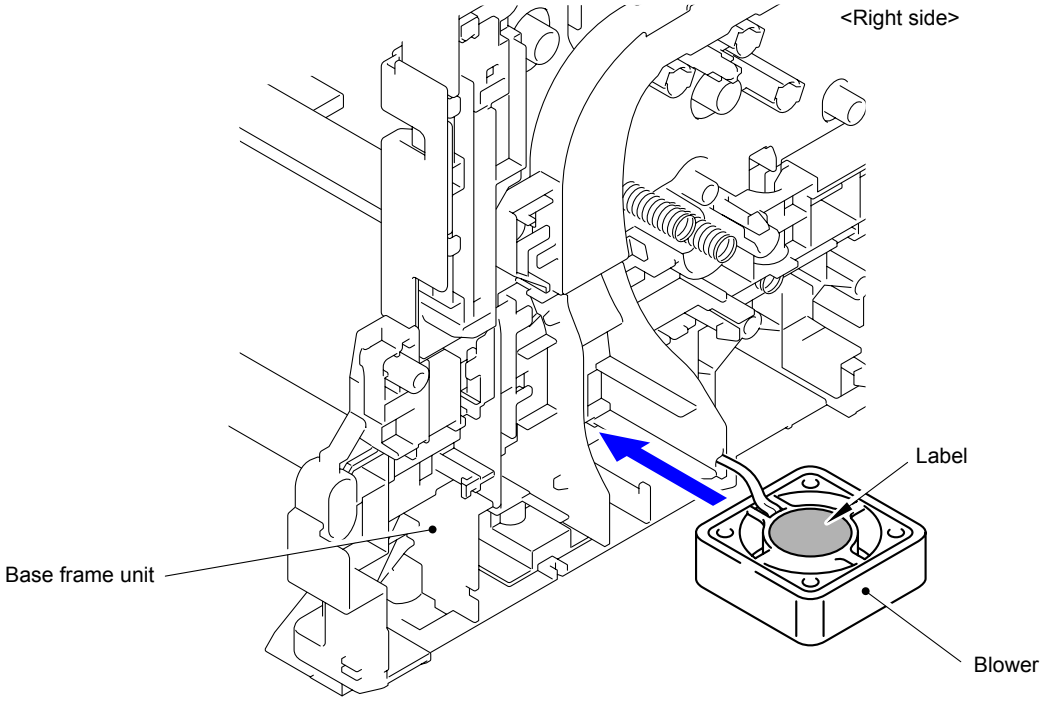


Fig. 3-265

10. DISASSEMBLY PROCEDURE (LT-300CL)

10.1 T2 Paper Tray Unit

(1) Take out the T2 paper tray unit from the main body.

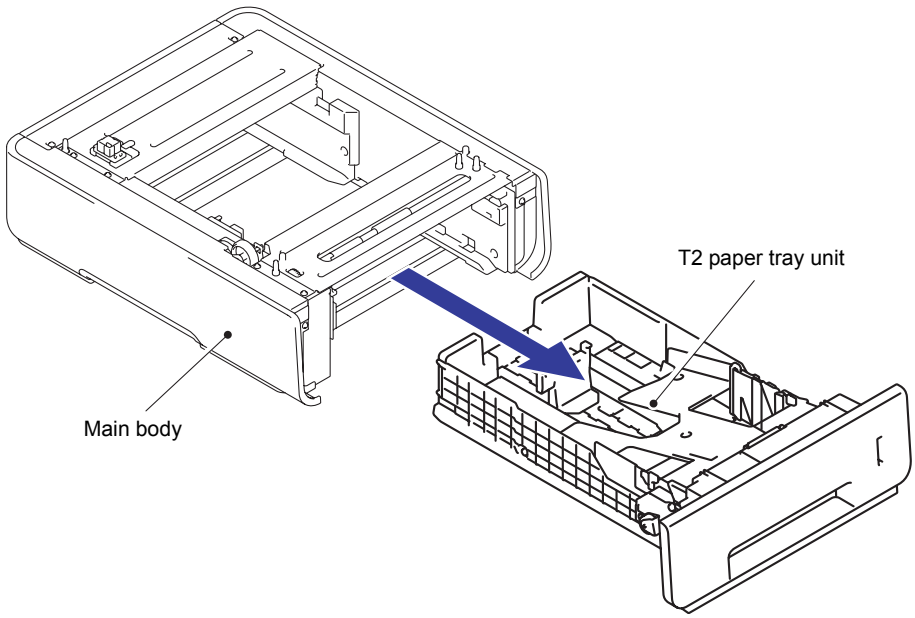


Fig. 3-266

(2) Release the two Hooks of the T2 separation pad ASSY to remove them in the upward direction.

Note:
Be careful not to loose the T2 separation pad spring.

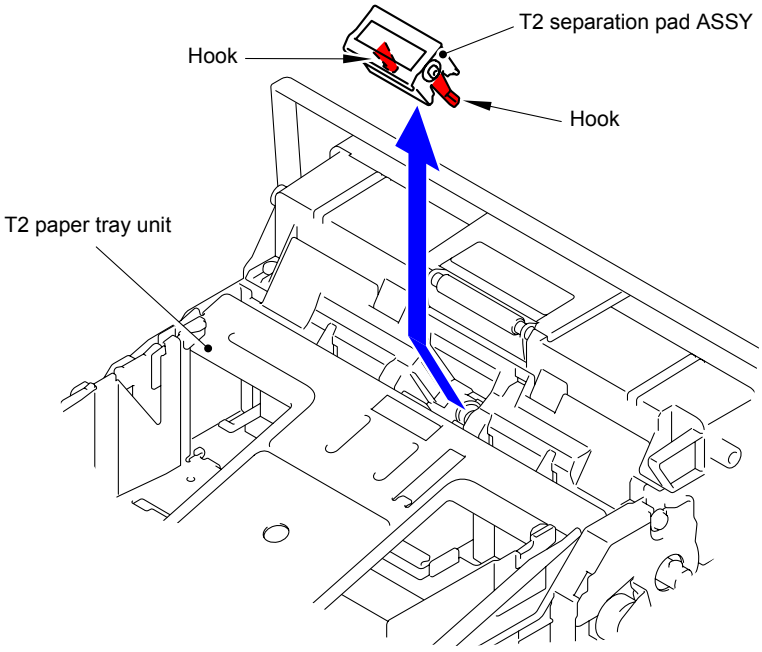


Fig. 3-267

(3) Remove the T2 separation pad spring from the T2 separation pad ASSY.

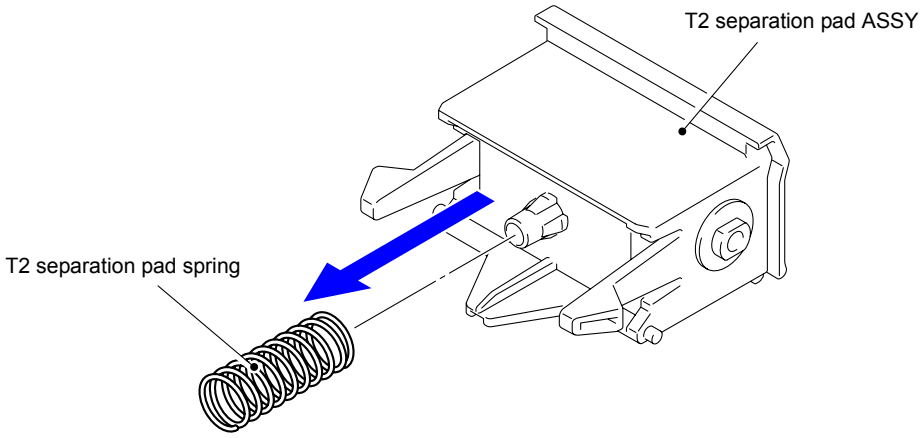


Fig. 3-268

10.2 T2 Separation Roller ASSY/Feed Roller ASSY

(1) Release the Hook and slide the T2 separation roller ASSY in the direction of the arrow 1.

(2) Remove the T2 separation roller ASSY in the direction of the arrow 2b as rotating it in the direction of the arrow 2a.

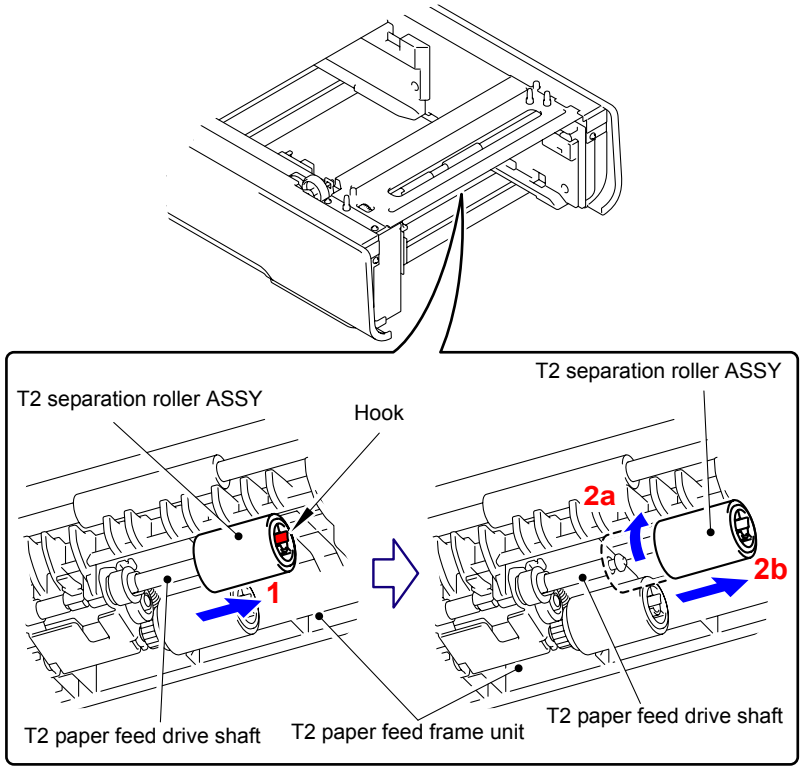


Fig. 3-269

Assembling Note:

When assembling the T2 separation roller ASSY, be sure to assemble it by sliding it in the direction of the arrow b as rotating the T2 separation roller ASSY in the direction of the arrow a.

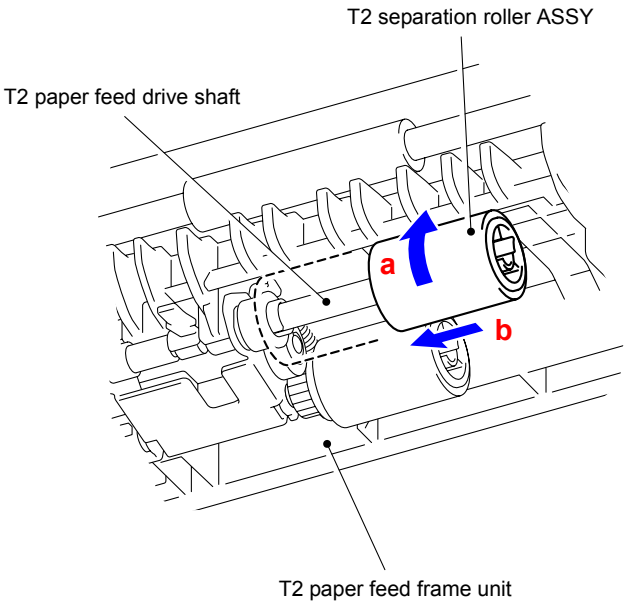


Fig. 3-270

(3) Release the Hooks to remove the Feed roller ASSY from the Paper feed shaft.

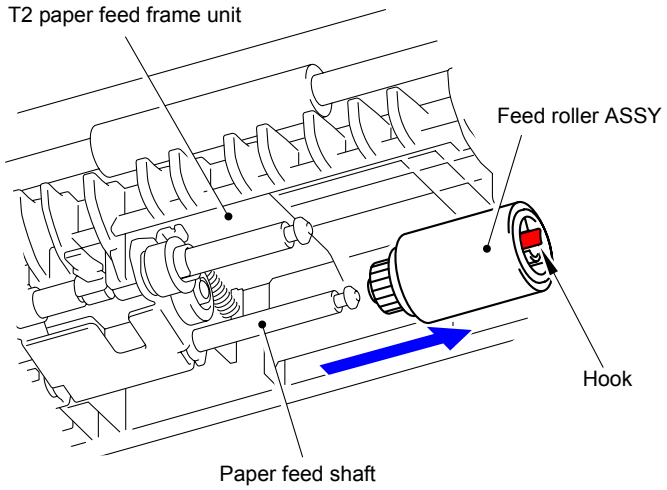


Fig. 3-271

10.3 T2 Cover Rear

(1) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x10 SR screws from the T2 cover rear.

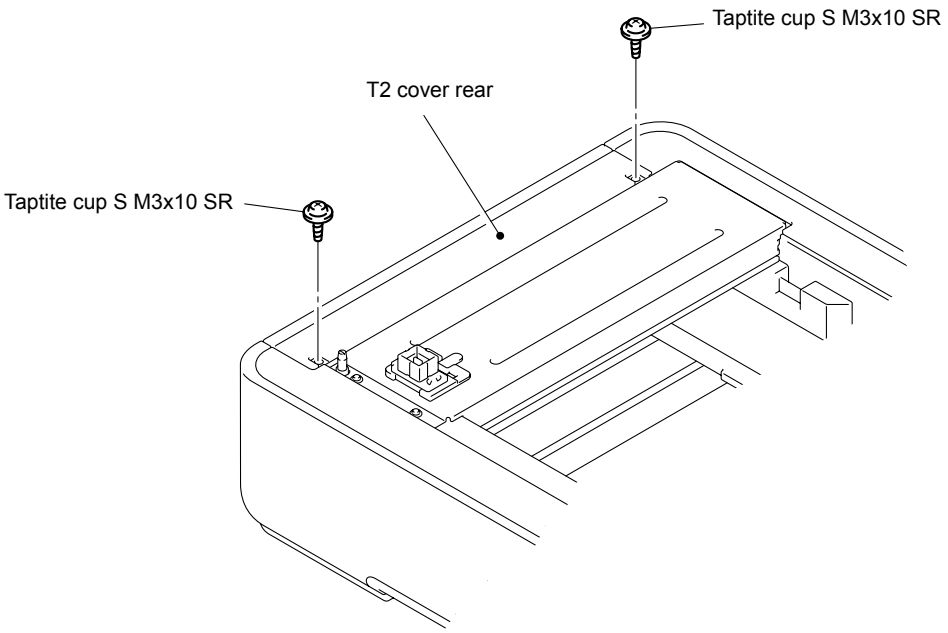


Fig. 3-272

(2) Remove the two Pins to remove the T2 cover rear from the Main body.

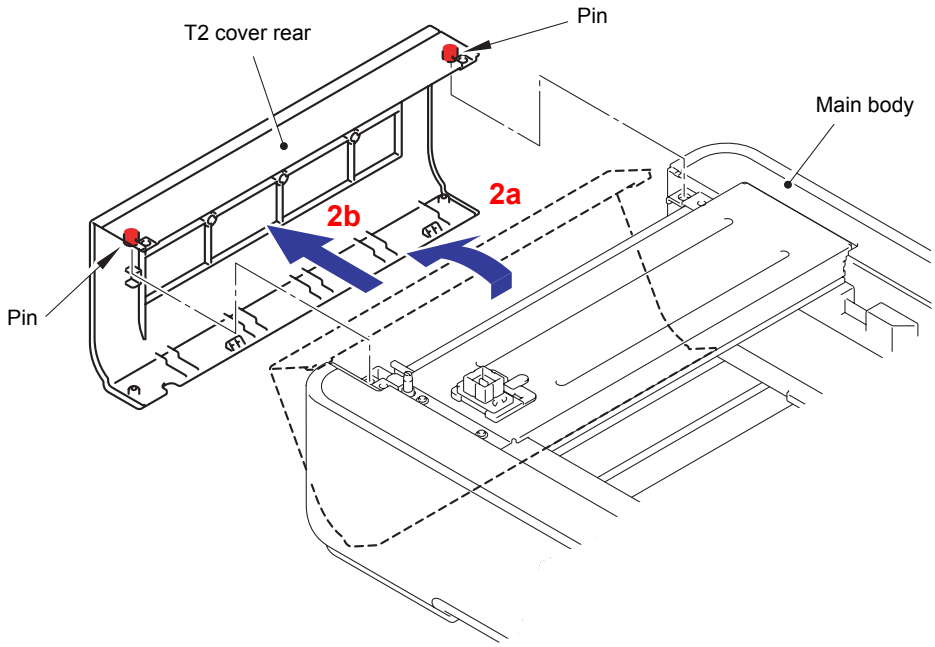


Fig. 3-273

10.4 T2 Cover Left

(1) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws from the T2 cover left.

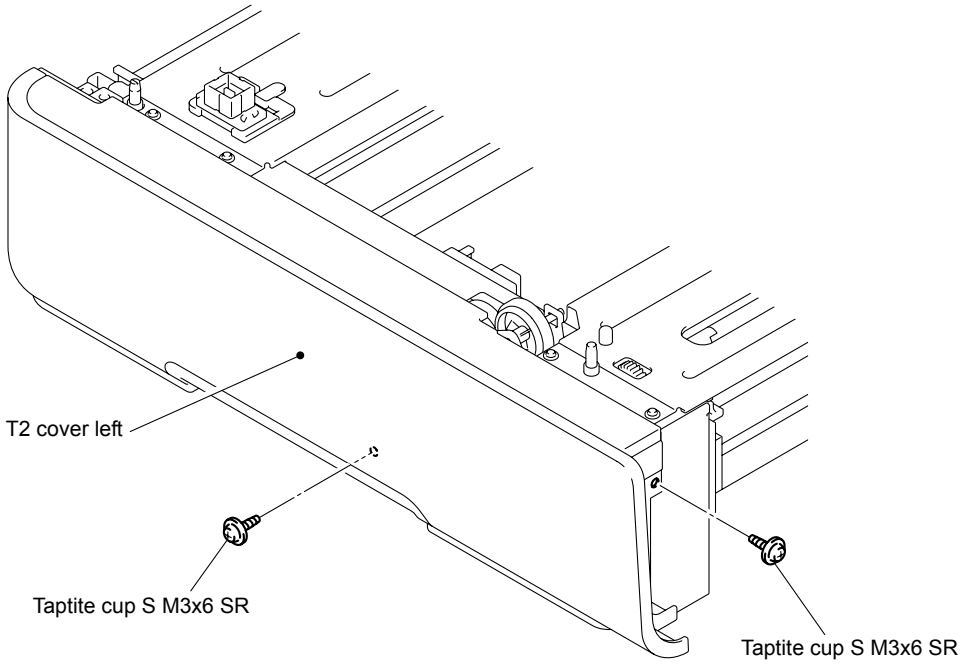


Fig. 3-274

(2) Remove the one Pin, and then release the two Hooks at the top.

(3) Release the two Hooks at the bottom to remove the T2 cover left from the T2 frame L unit.

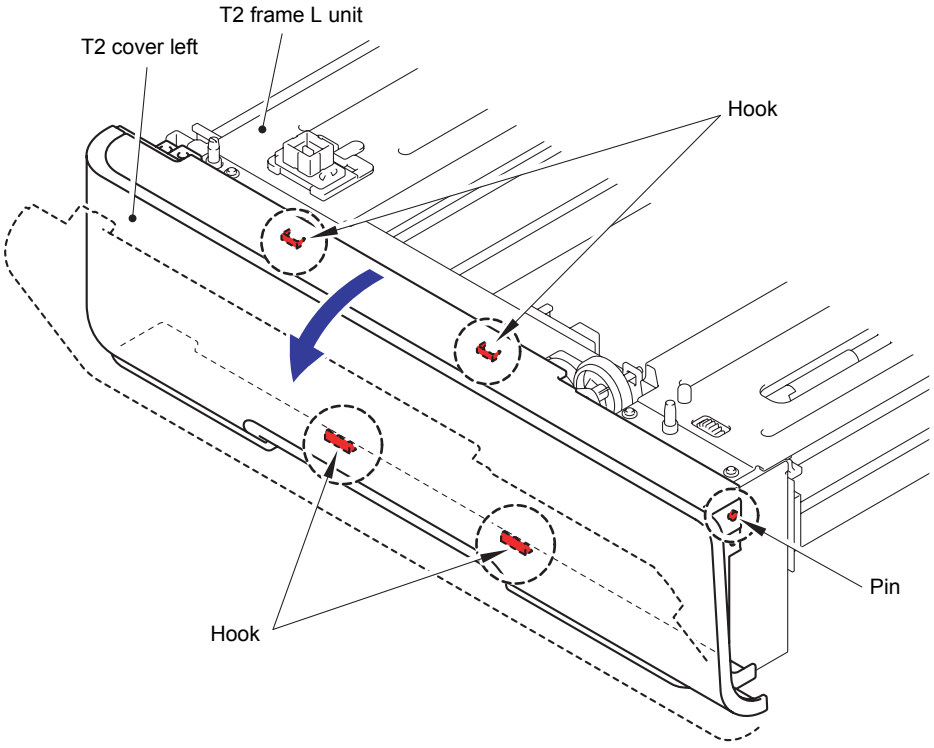


Fig. 3-275

10.5 T2 Cover Right

(1) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws from the T2 cover right.

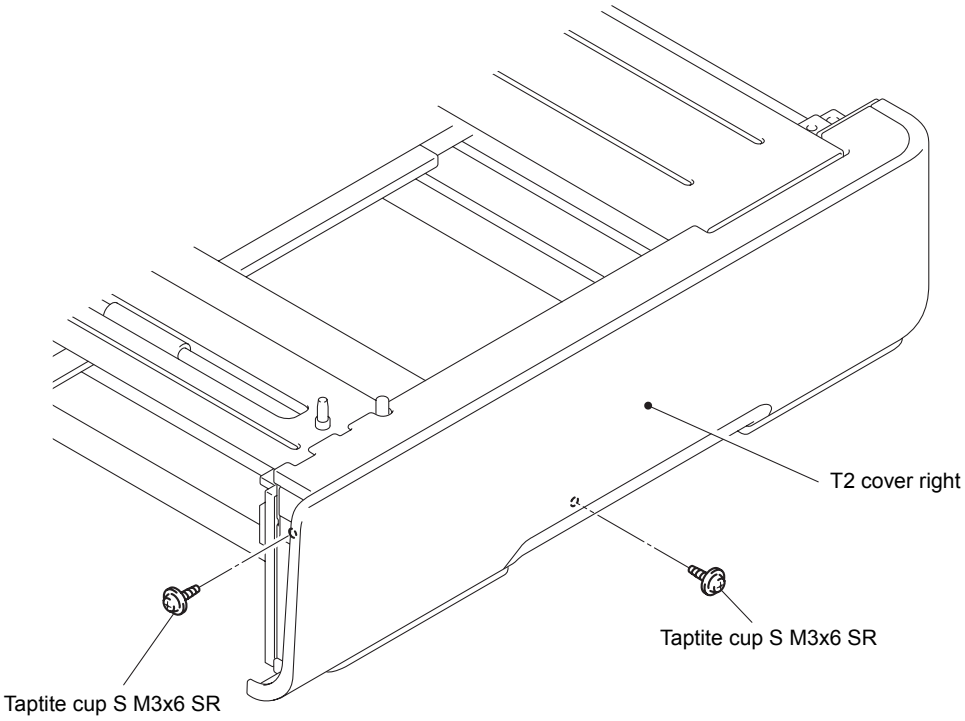


Fig. 3-276

(2) Remove the one Pin, and then release the two Hooks at the top.

(3) Release the three Hooks at the bottom to remove the T2 cover right from the T2 frame L unit.

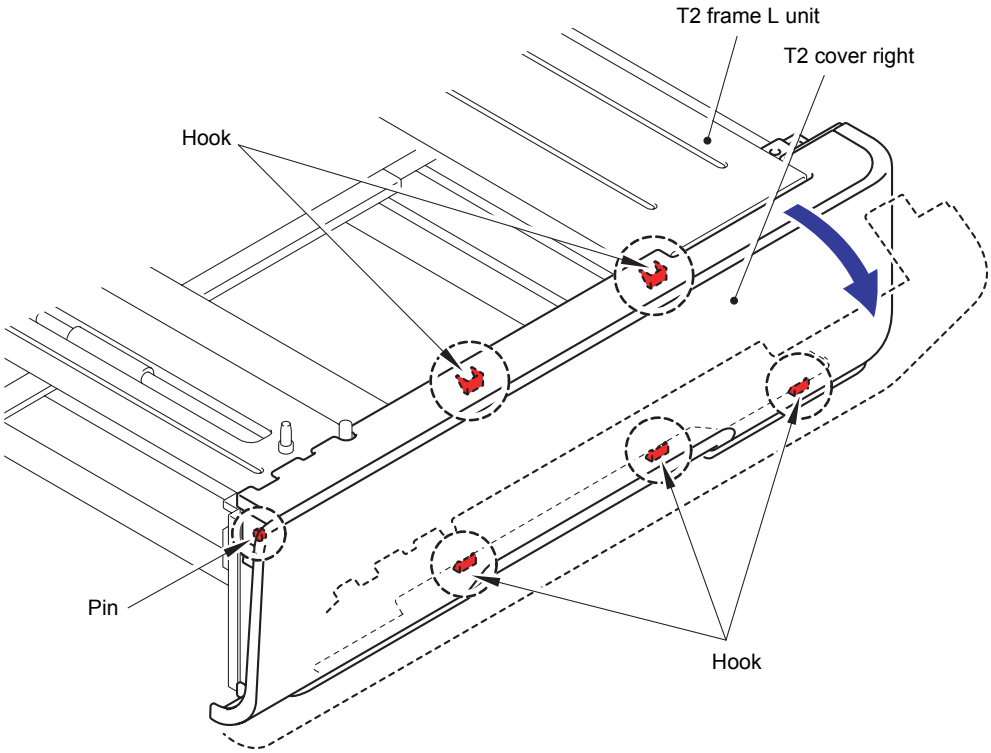


Fig. 3-277

10.6 T2 Relay PCB ASSY

(1) Disconnect the all Connectors from the T2 relay PCB ASSY.

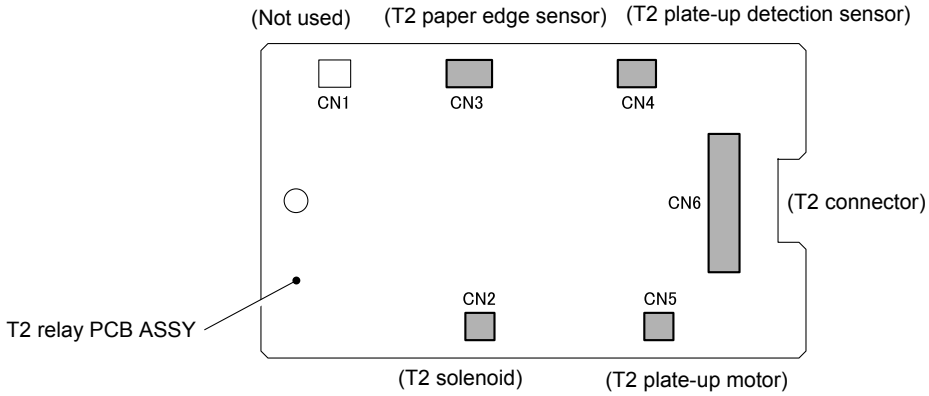


Fig. 3-278

(2) Remove the Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw to remove the T2 relay PCB ASSY from the T2 frame L unit.

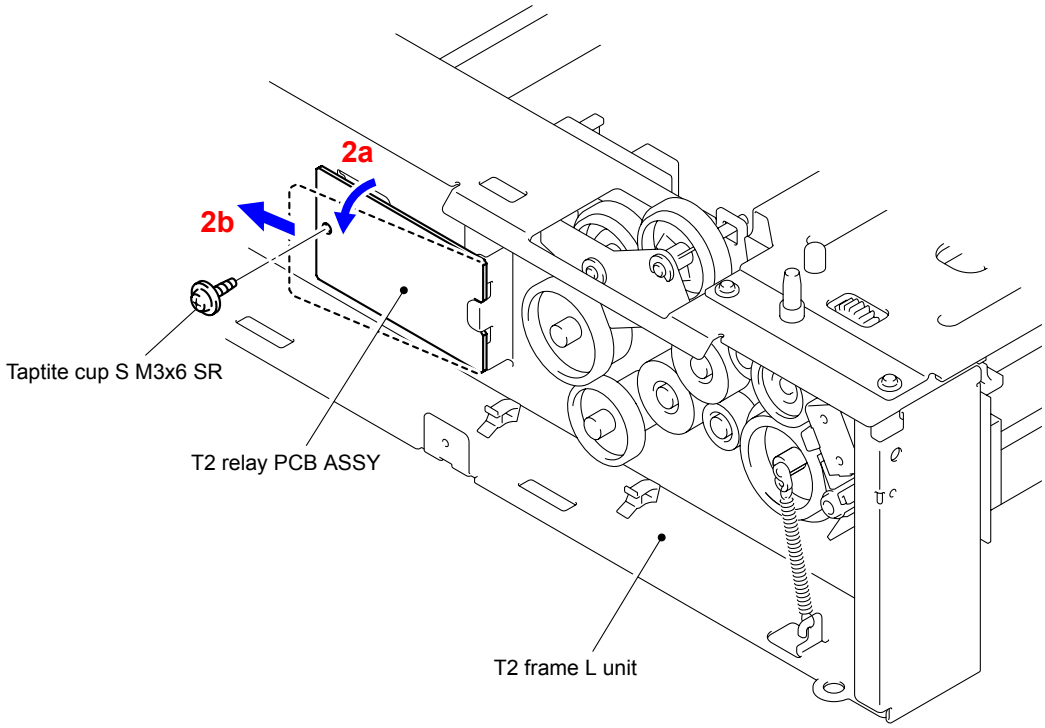


Fig. 3-279

10.7 T2 Solenoid ASSY

(1) Remove the Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw to remove the T2 solenoid holder ASSY from the T2 frame L unit

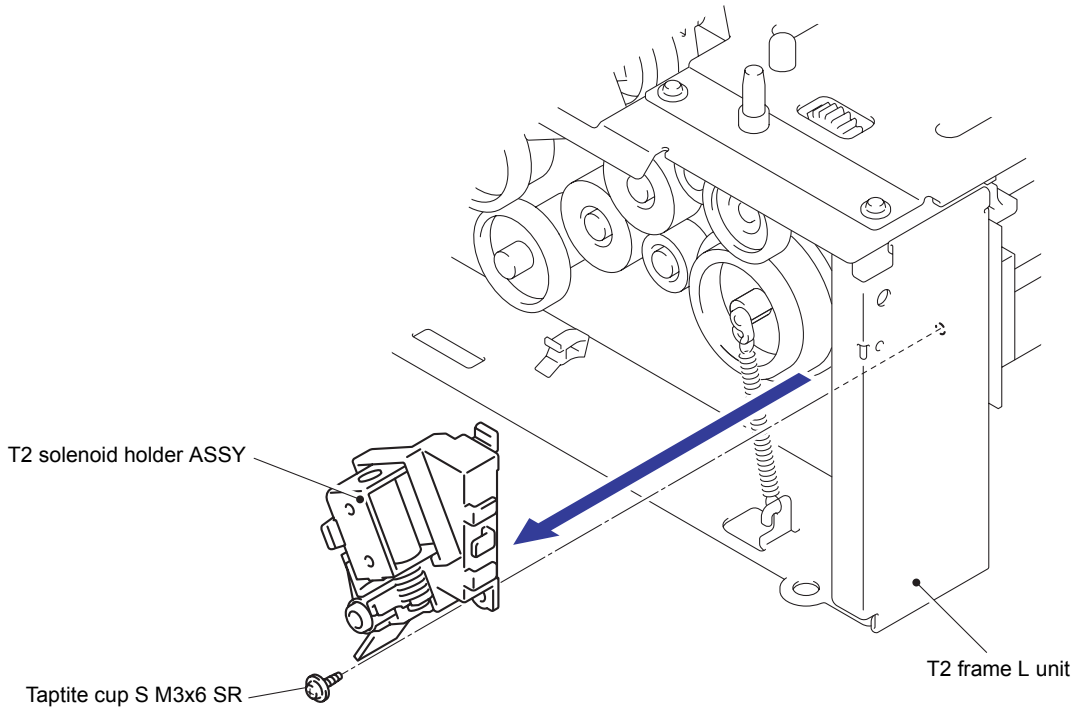


Fig. 3-280

(2) Remove the Screw flanged M3x3.5 screw to remove the T2 solenoid ASSY and T2 solenoid spring MP from the T2 solenoid holder.

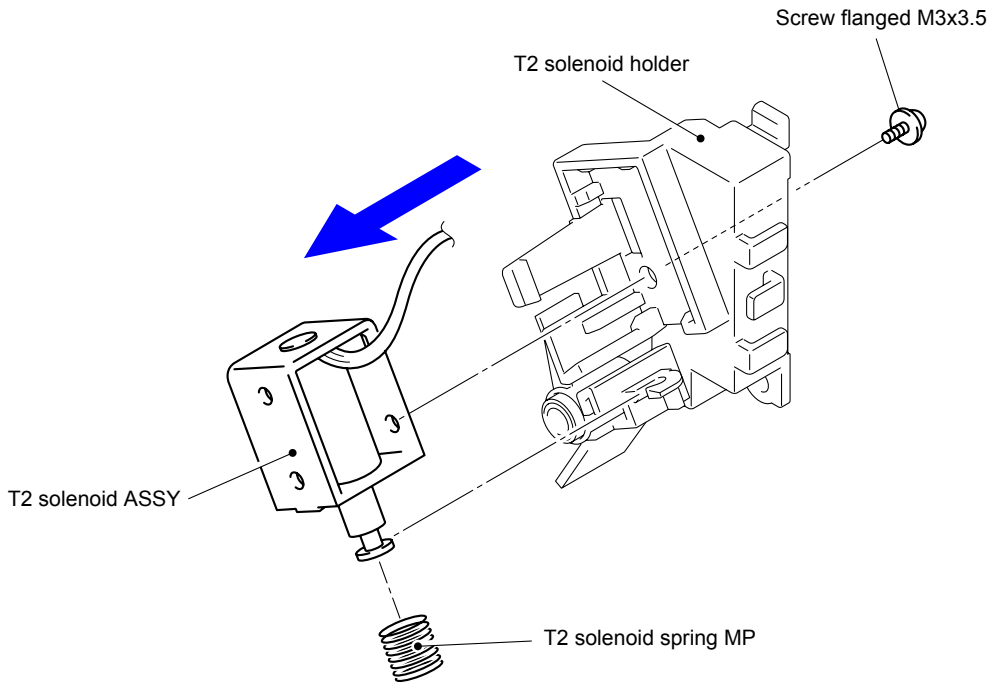


Fig. 3-281

10.8 Collar 6

(1) Remove the two pieces of the Collar 6 from the Fittings shaft.

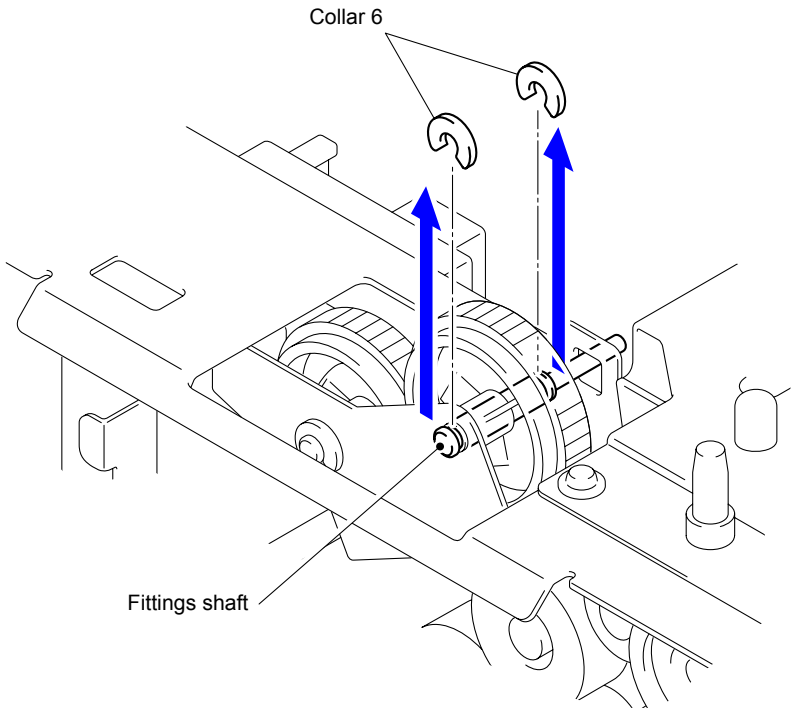


Fig. 3-282

10.9 T2 Paper Feed Frame Unit

(1) Remove the Clutch spring from the Clutch arm ASSY.

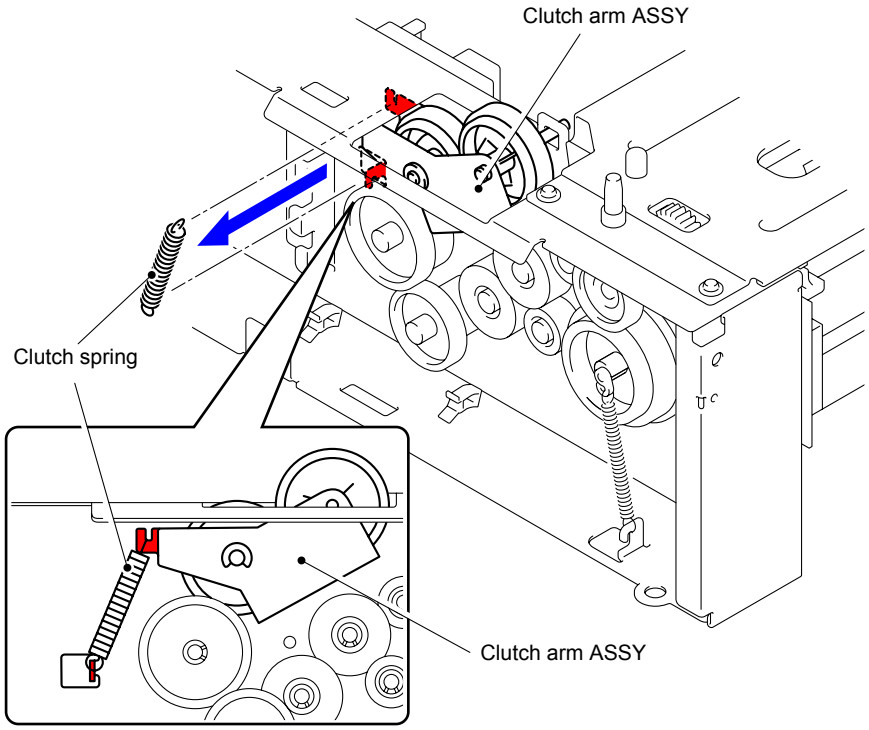


Fig. 3-283

(2) Release the Hook to remove the Gear 45/40 from the T2 frame L unit.

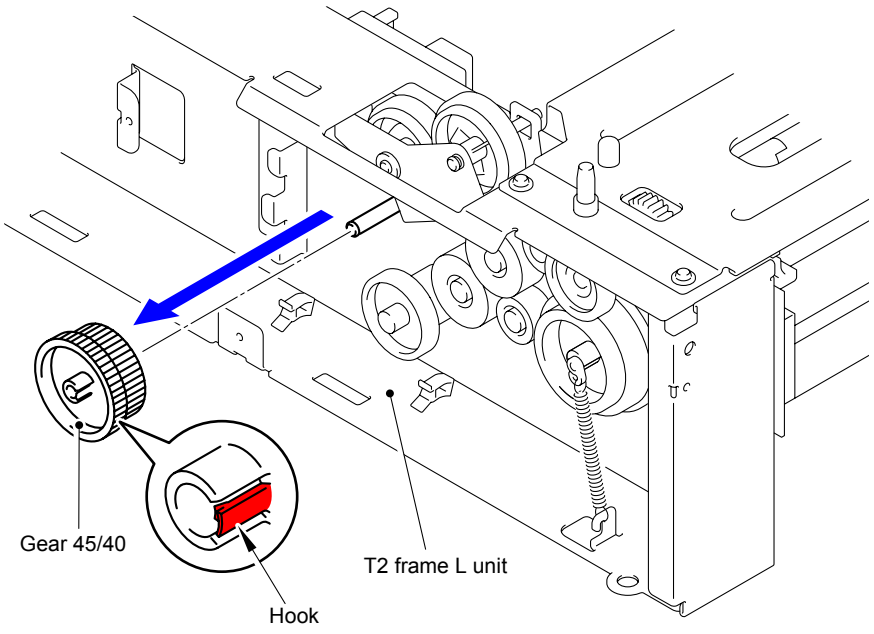


Fig. 3-284

(3) Remove the Collar 6 from the Clutch arm ASSY.

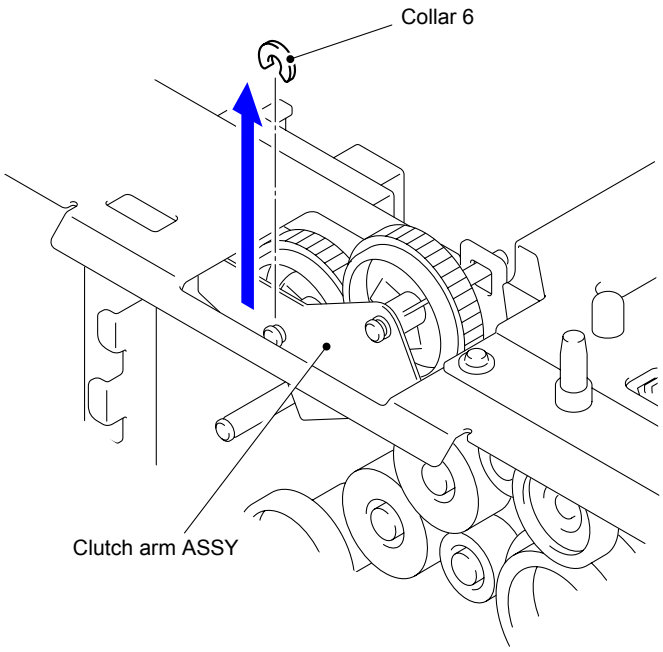


Fig. 3-285

(4) Remove the Clutch arm ASSY from the T2 frame L unit.

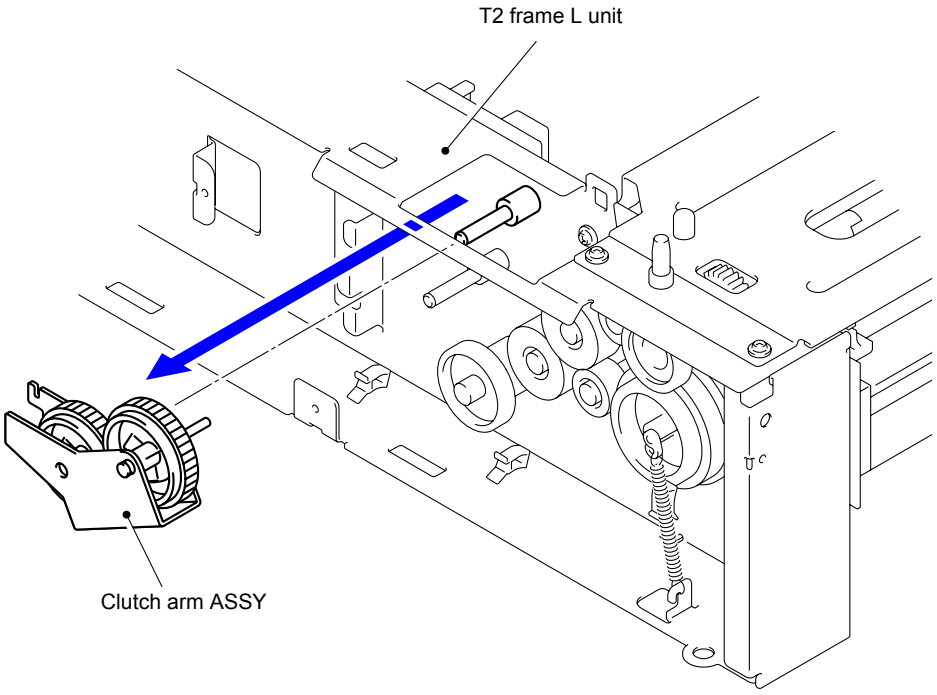


Fig. 3-286

(5) Remove the five Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the T2 beam F ASSY from the T2 frame L unit.

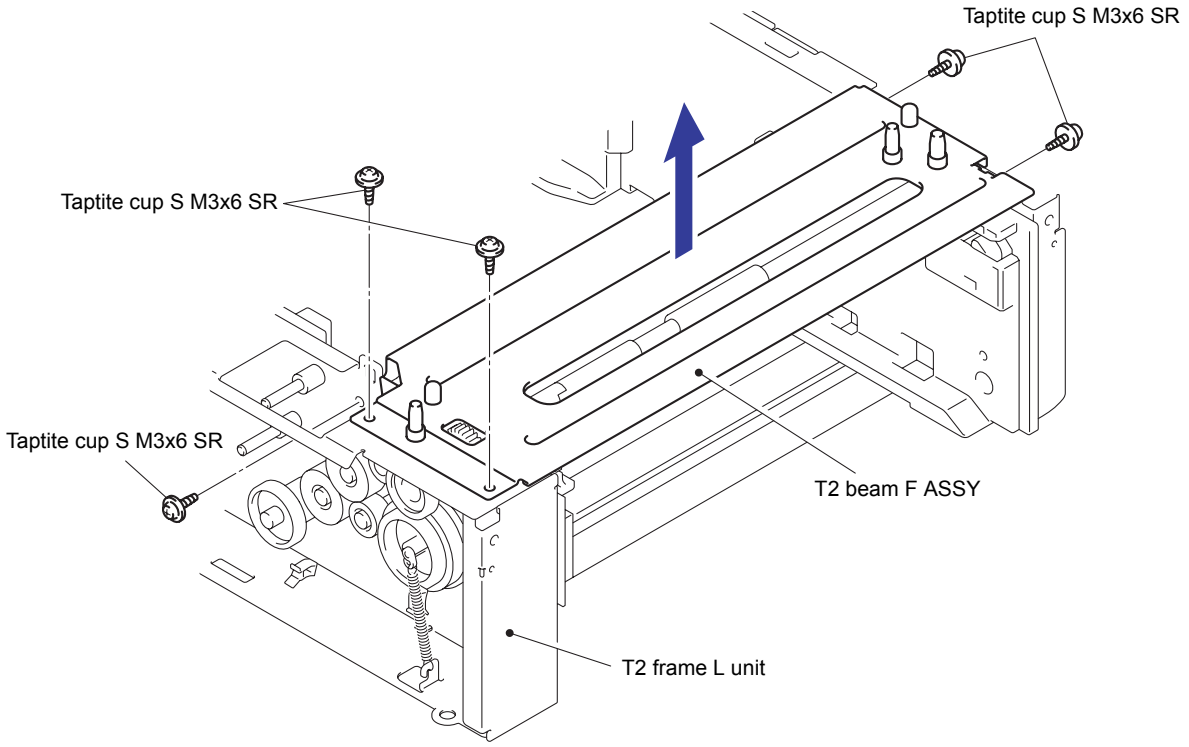


Fig. 3-287

(6) Remove the Retaining ring E4 from the F roller, and then remove the Gear 24 and FR bush.

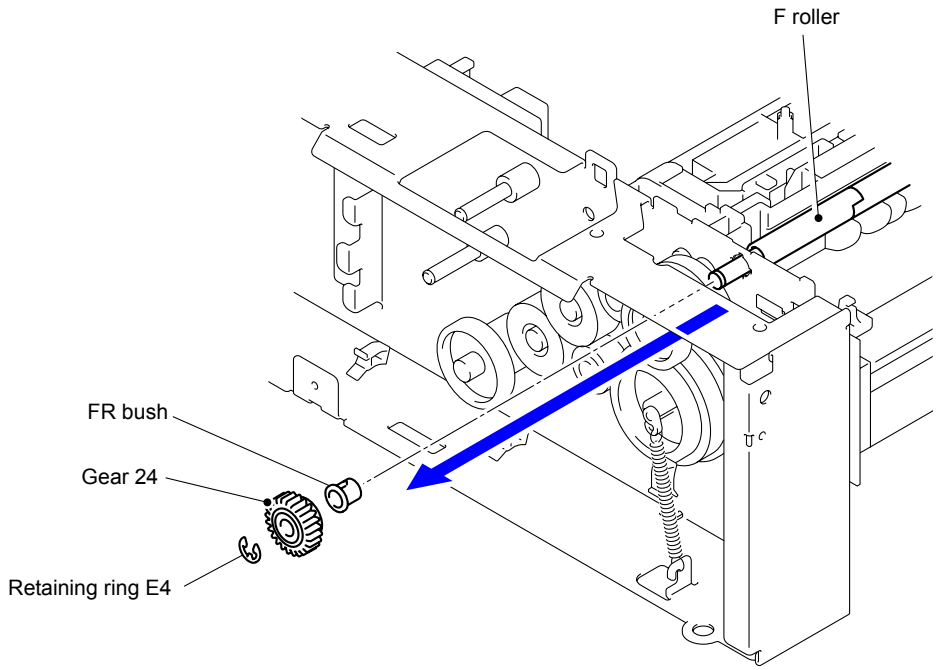


Fig. 3-288

(7) Remove the Retaining ring E3 from the F roller, and then remove the FR bush TR.

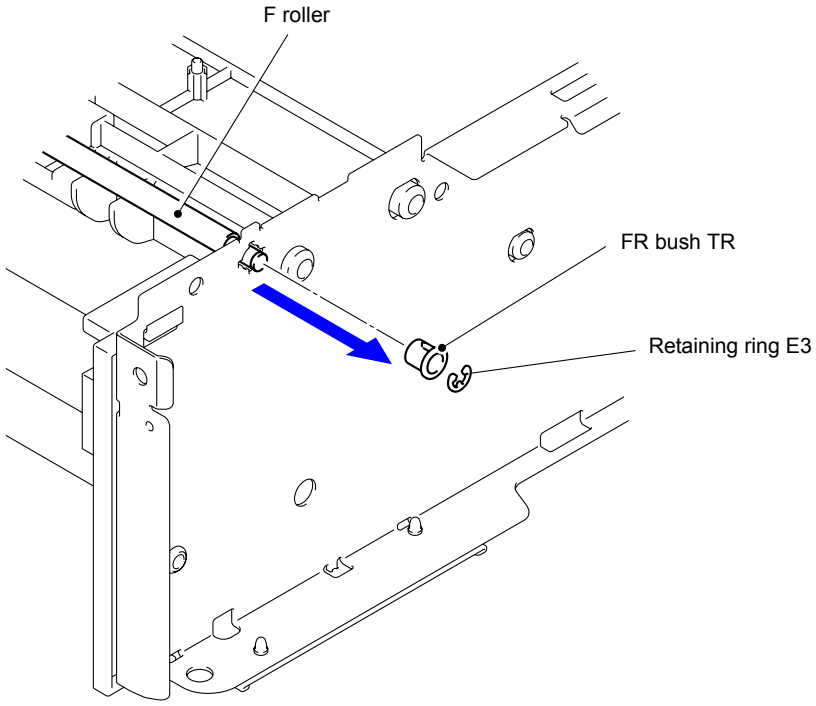


Fig. 3-289

(8) Remove the Lift spring from the Hook of the Lift lever A.

(9) Remove the F roller from the T2 frame L unit in the directions of the arrows 9a, 9b, and 9c in this order.

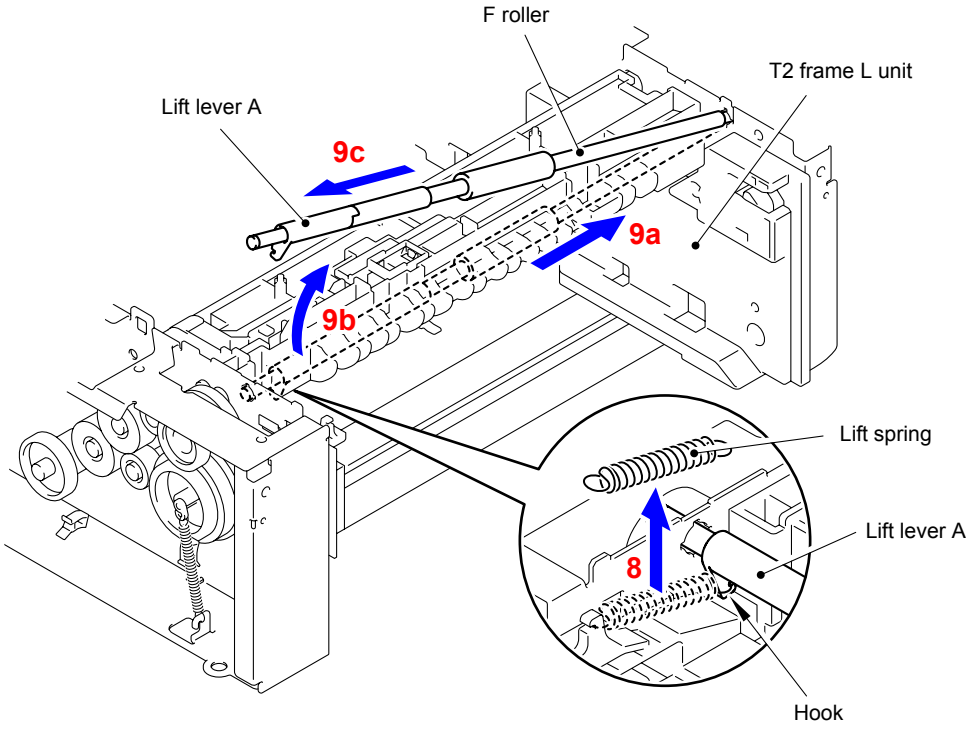


Fig. 3-290

Assembling Note:

When assembling the F roller, be sure to assemble it in a way that the Rib of the T2 paper feed frame unit comes between "A" and "B" of the Lift lever B, and the lever of the T2 paper feed holder unit comes in front of "B".

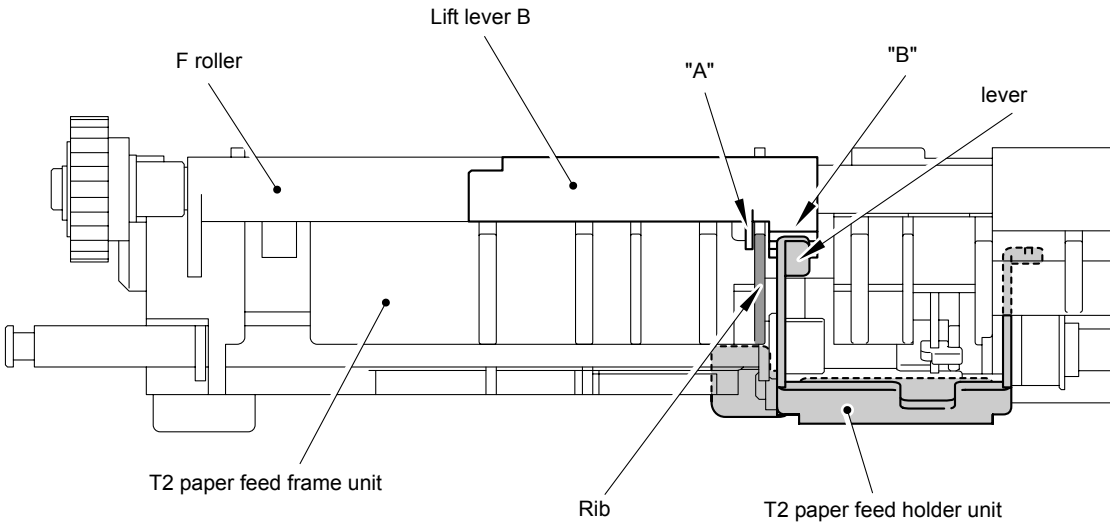


Fig. 3-291

(10) Release the Hook to remove the Gear 20A from the T2 frame L unit.

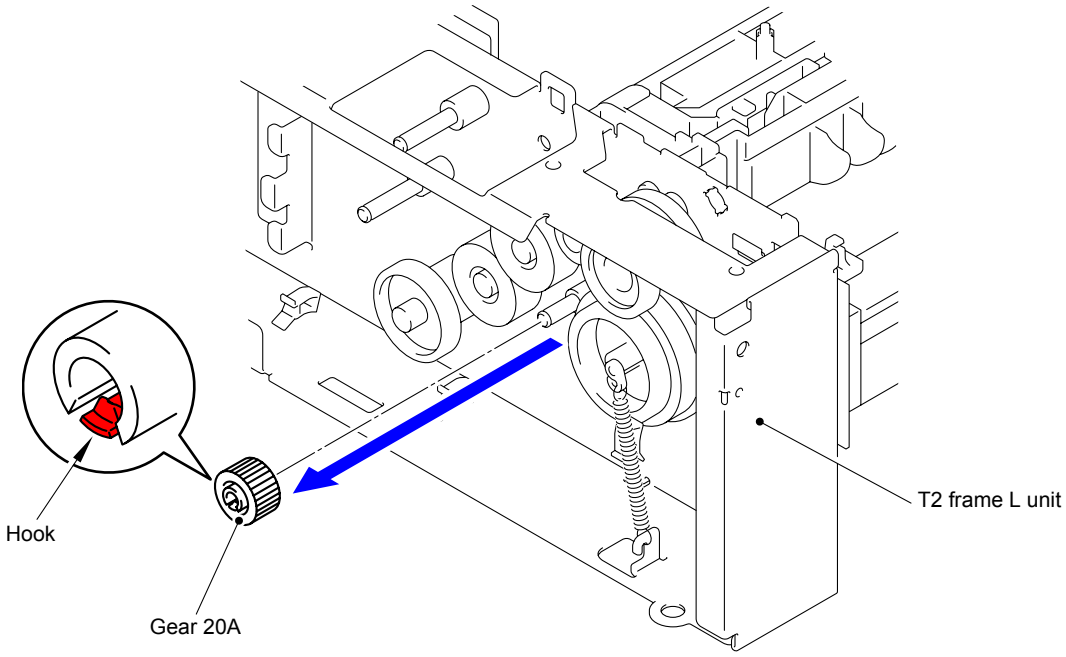


Fig. 3-292

(11) Release the Hook to remove the Gear 33 from the T2 frame L unit.

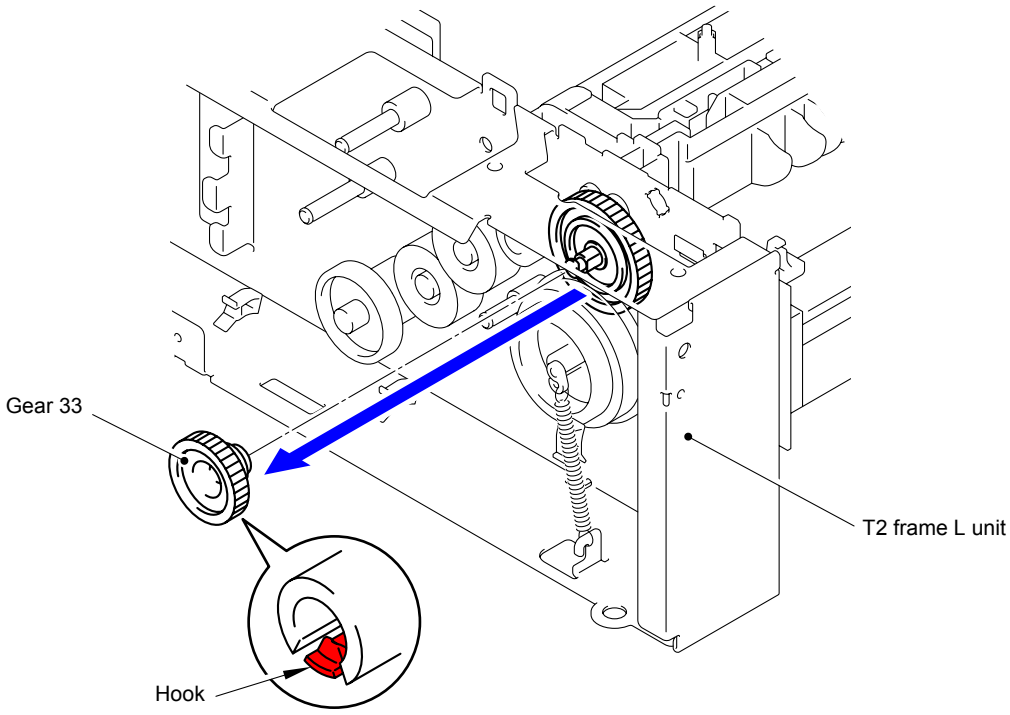


Fig. 3-293

(12) Remove the Extension spring from the Spring hook.

(13) Release the Hook to remove the Gear 46/55 from the T2 frame L unit.

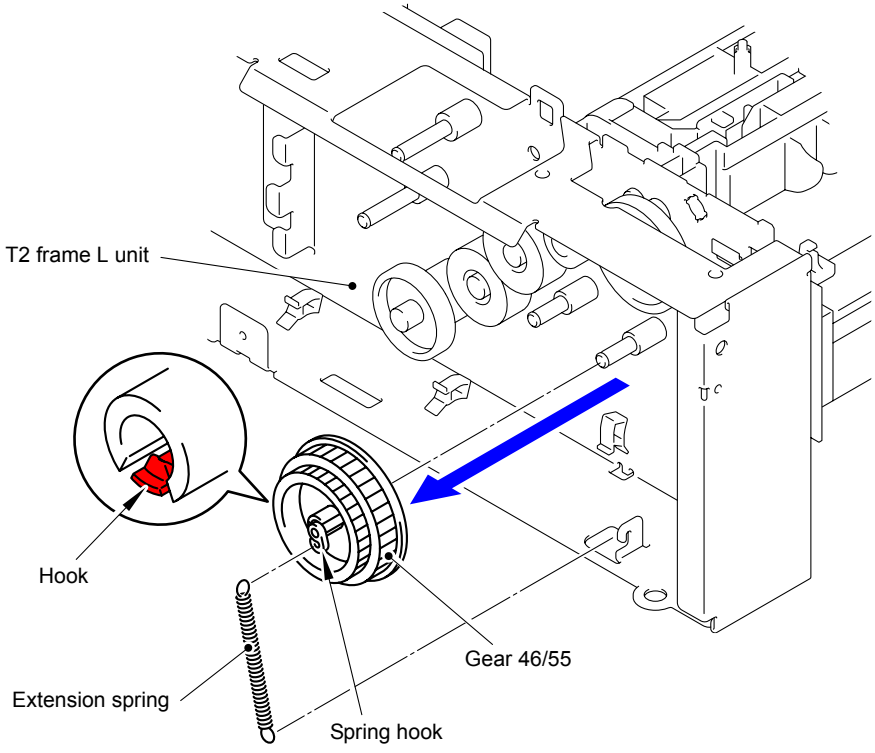


Fig. 3-294

(14) Remove the Gear 46 from the T2 frame L unit.

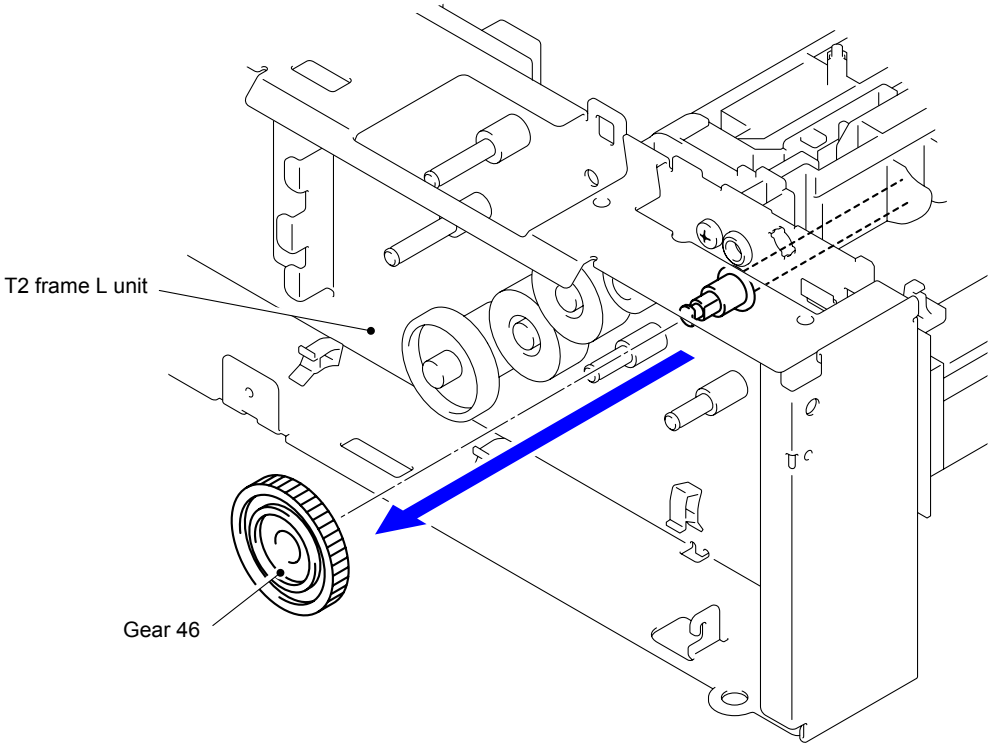


Fig. 3-295

(15) Turn the T2 frame L unit upside down.

(16) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws from the T2 beam front.

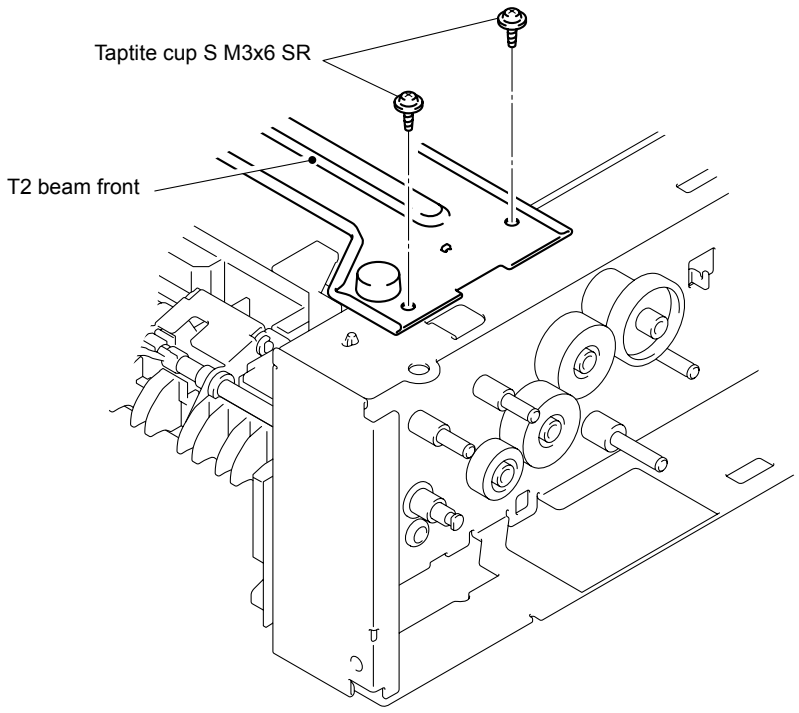


Fig. 3-296

(17) Return the T2 frame L unit to the original position.

(18) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws from the T2 beam rear.

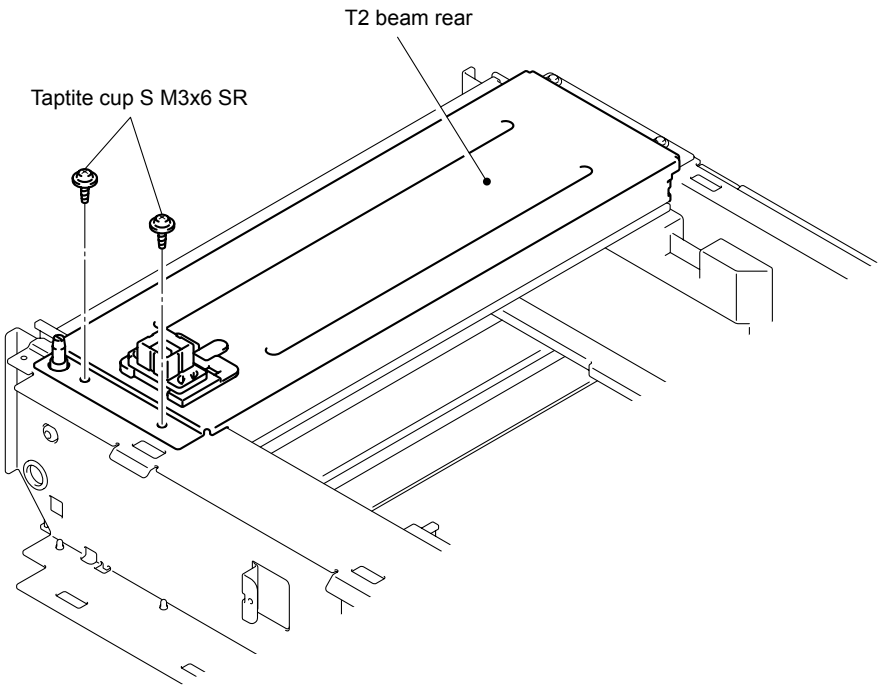


Fig. 3-297

(19) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws from the T2 beam rear.

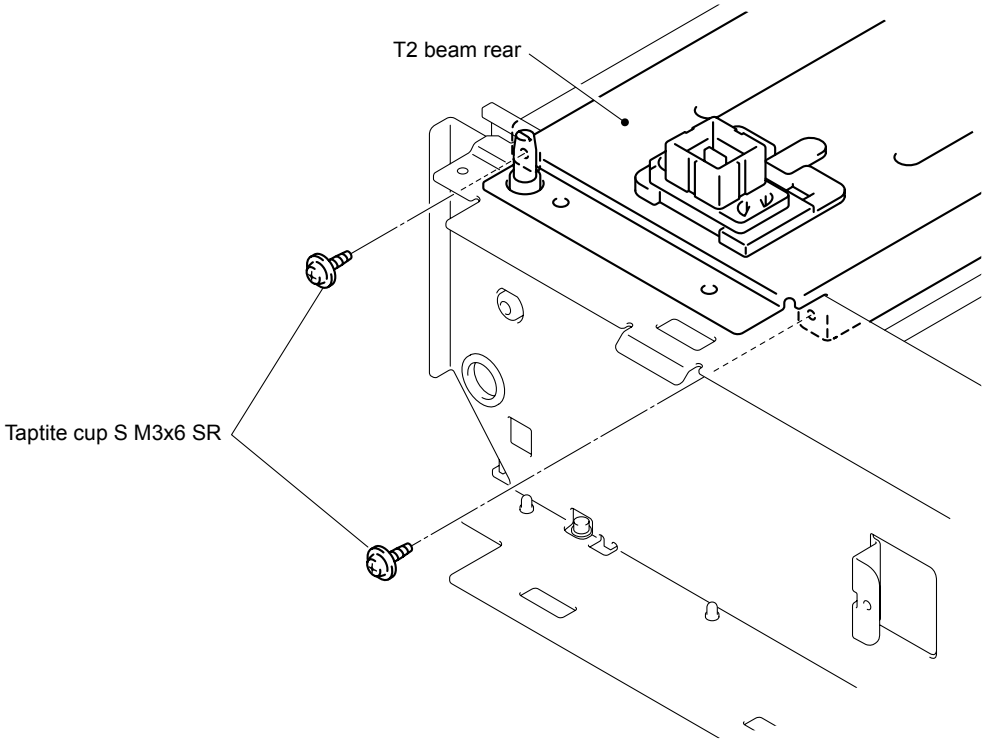


Fig. 3-298

(20) Remove the Taptite bind B M4x10 screw and Bush.

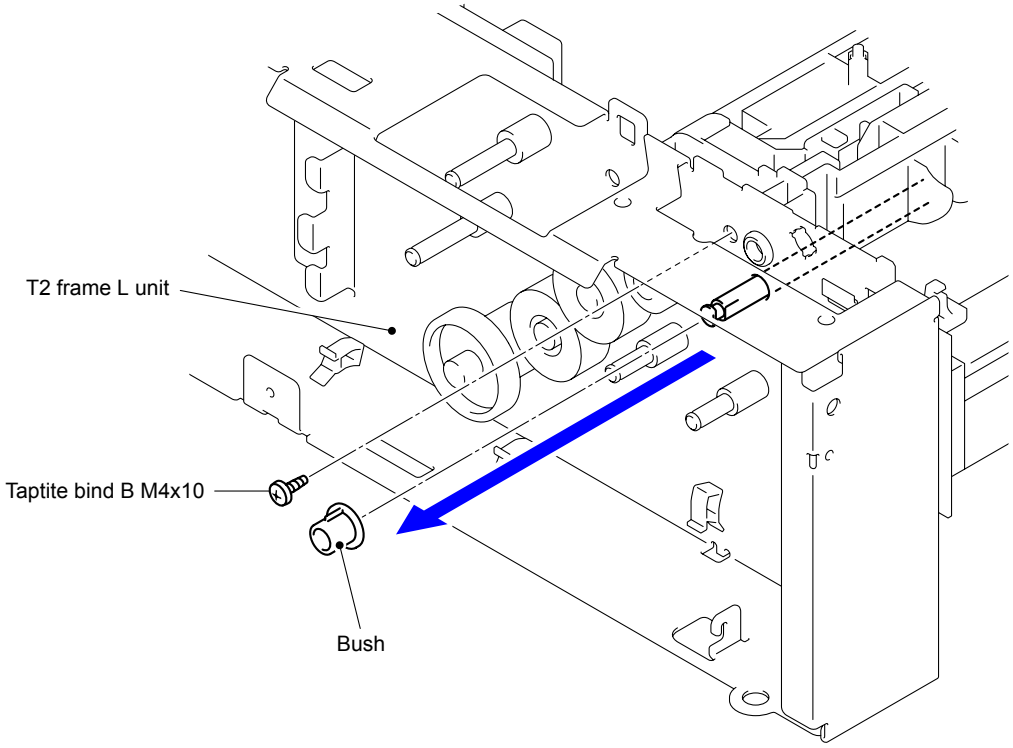


Fig. 3-299

(21) Remove the T2 paper feed frame unit from the T2 frame L unit in the direction of the arrows 21a and 21b in this order.

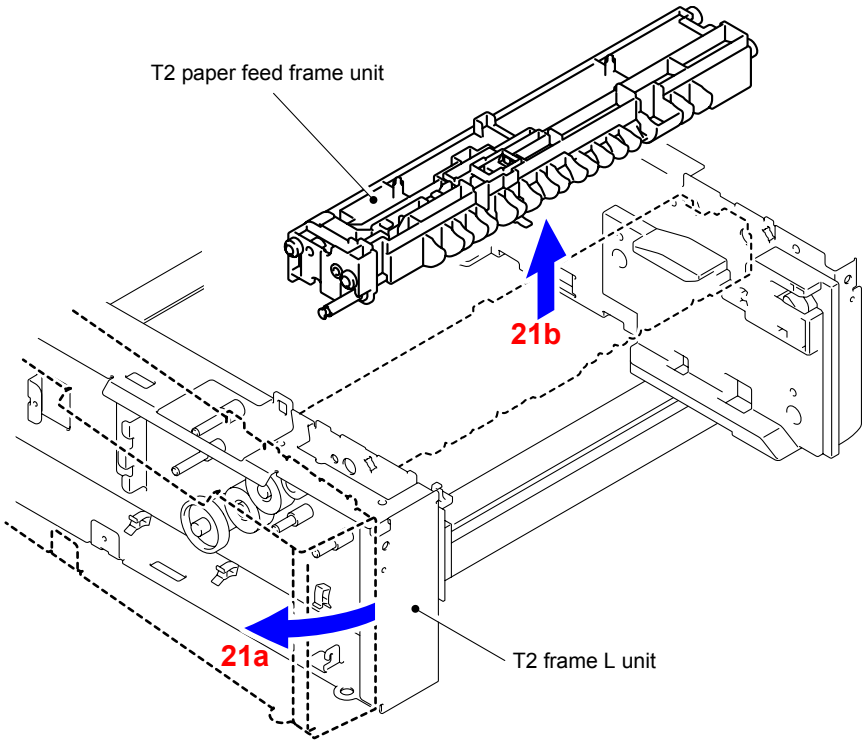


Fig. 3-300

CHAPTER 4

ADJUSTMENTS AND UPDATING OF SETTINGS, REQUIRED AFTER PARTS REPLACEMENT

CHAPTER 4
ADJUSTMENTS AND UPDATING OF SETTINGS, REQUIRED AFTER PARTS REPLACEMENT

This chapter describes adjustments and updating of settings, which are required if the main PCB ASSY and some other parts have been replaced. This chapter also covers how to update the firmware.

CONTENTS

1. IF YOU REPLACE THE MAIN PCB ASSY

<What to do when replacing the main PCB ASSY>

- Rewriting the firmware (Sub firmware, Main firmware)
- Initialization of EEPROM of main PCB ASSY (Maintenance mode: code 01)
- Setting by country (Maintenance mode: code 74)
- Setting the serial number
- Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor (Maintenance mode: code 72)
- Performing the developing bias voltage correction (Maintenance mode: code 83)
- Performing the adjustment of inter-color position alignment (Maintenance mode: code 66)
- Acquisition of white level data (Maintenance mode: code 55)
- Operational check of control panel button (Maintenance mode: code 13)
- Adjustment of Touch Panel (Maintenance mode: code 61)
- Operation check of LCD (Maintenance mode: code 12)
- Operational check of sensors (Maintenance mode: code 32)

Note:
Since the counters are reset when the main PCB ASSY is replaced, the consumables and/or periodical replacement parts might reach the end of the life before the message is displayed.

<What you need to prepare>

(1) A USB cable

(2) A USB flash memory drive

(3) Computer (Windows® XP/2000 or later)
Create a temporary folder on the C drive, for example.

(4) The maintenance tool (Mainte.zip)
Copy it into the temporary folder that has been created in the C drive. Extract the copied file and execute "brmainte.exe" file by double-clicking it.

(5) The download utility (FILEDG32.EXE)
Copy it into the temporary folder that has been created in the C drive.

(6) The Brother maintenance USB printer driver (Maintenance_Driver.zip)
Copy it into the temporary folder that has been created in the C drive. Extract the copied file.

(7) The firmware

Sub firmware	LZXXXX_$.djf or LZXXXX_$.upd*
Main firmware	LZXXXX_$.djf or LZXXXX_$.upd*
LZXXXX: First six digits are a parts number of the firmware. $: Alphabet representing the revision of the firmware.	

* upd: Used to rewrite the firmware via a computer.
djf: Used to rewrite the firmware using a USB flash memory.

(8) Installing the maintenance driver. (Refer to APPENDIX 3.)

1.1 Rewriting the firmware (Sub firmware, Main firmware)

The following two methods are available for rewriting the firmware (Sub firmware and Main firmware).

- Rewriting using a computer
- Rewriting using USB flash memory

1.1.1 Checking firmware version

Check if the firmware written on the main PCB ASSY is the latest version or not. If it is the latest version, there is no need to write the firmware. If it is not, make sure to write the firmware to the main PCB ASSY in accordance with "1.1.2 Rewriting the firmware using computer" or "1.1.3 Rewriting the firmware using USB flash memory" in this chapter.

<How to check firmware version>

Press the **2** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. Then, the firmware version information is displayed on the LCD.

1.1.2 Rewriting the firmware using computer

Note:

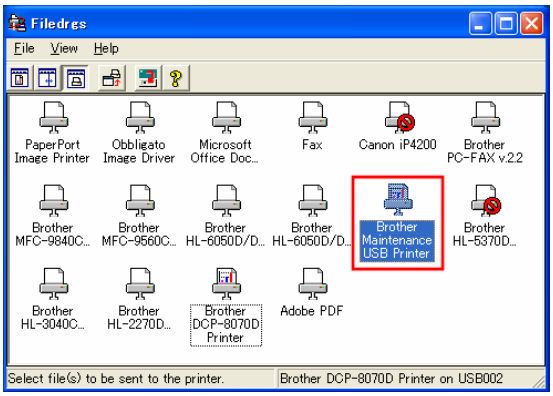
- It is recommendable to rewrite 1) Sub firmware and 2) Main firmware in this order.
- DO NOT unplug the power cord of the machine or your computer or disconnect the USB cable while rewriting the program files.

<Procedures>

(1) Turn the power switch of the machine off. Turn on the power as pressing the **5** button. Check that "▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮" appears on the LCD.

(2) Connect the computer to the machine with the USB cable.

(3) Double-click the "FILEDG32.EXE" to start. The following screen appears. Select the "Brother Maintenance USB Printer."



(4) Drag and drop a program file that you want to rewrite (for instance, LZXXXX_$.upd) onto the Brother Maintenance USB Printer icon in the screen shown above.

Note:

After rewriting Sub firmware or Main firmware is completed, the machine returns to the ready state. To continue rewriting the other program files, turn off the power switch of the machine, and turn it on again as pressing the **5** buttons. Check that "▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮" appears on the LCD and start rewriting.

(5) Upon completion of rewriting, the machine restarts and returns to the ready state automatically.

(6) Disconnect the USB cable from the machine.

1.1.3 Rewriting the firmware using USB flash memory

If you save the program files in the USB flash memory drive and plug it into the USB direct interface, you can rewrite the firmware.

Note:

- You cannot write the firmware using USB flash memory in the Deep Sleep mode. Press the **Start/Black** button to clear the Deep Sleep mode before rewriting the firmware.
- Make sure that the USB flash memory drive has enough space to save the program file.
- It is recommendable to rewrite 1) Sub firmware and 2) Main firmware in this order.
- If rewriting the firmware using a USB flash memory fails and an error message appears on the LCD, or no message appears on the LCD, it will be necessary to rewrite the firmware from a computer using the FILEDG32.EXE. (Refer to "1.1.2 Rewriting the firmware using computer" in this chapter.)

<Procedures>

(1) Save the program files (such as LZXXXX_$.djf) which are necessary for rewriting the firmware to the USB flash memory.

(2) While the machine is in the ready state, connect the USB flash memory drive to the USB direct interface on the front of the machine.

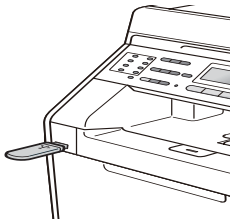


Fig. 4-1

(3) When the machine recognizes the USB flash memory, the names of the files stored in the USB flash memory are displayed. Select an appropriate file using the ▲ or ▼ button, and then press the **OK** button.

Memo:

To print and check the list of data stored in the USB flash memory, display the LCD, select Index Print using the ▲ or ▼ button, and then press the **OK** button.

(4) "Program Update/Press Start" appears on the LCD. Press the **OK** button to start. "Program Updating" message appears on the LCD with Data LED blinking while rewriting the firmware. DO NOT turn off the machine.

(5) When the rewrite is finished, the machine automatically restarts.

(6) If you continue to rewrite other firmware and no file names are displayed, wait for a while, and take out the USB flash memory and insert it again. When file names are displayed, select the program files which need to be rewritten, and repeat the above procedures (3) to (5) to rewrite all the selected program files.

(7) When the rewrite of the main firmware is finished, the machine automatically restarts.

(8) Remove the USB flash memory drive from the USB direct interface once the update have finished.

1.2 Initialization of EEPROM of Main PCB ASSY (Maintenance Mode: Code 01)

Initialize the EEPROM in accordance with "1.4.1 EEPROM parameter initialization" in Chapter 5.

1.3 Setting by Country (Maintenance Mode: Code 74)

Make appropriate settings by country in accordance with "1.4.26 Setting by country" in Chapter 5.

1.4 Setting the Serial Number

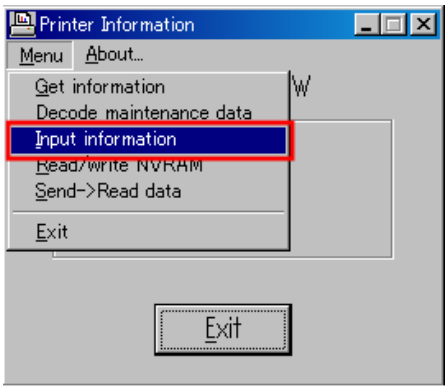
Note:
The printer driver of the relevant model must have been installed.

<Procedures>

(1) Check that the machine is in the ready state, and then connect the USB cable.

(2) Double-click the "brmainte.exe" file (maintenance utility) which has been copied in the temporary folder to start.

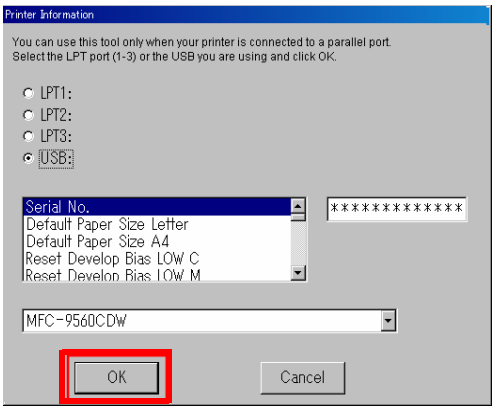
(3) Select "Input information" from Menu.



(4) Select the applicable model name.

(5) Check the port (USB) that the machine is connected through.

(6) Click "Serial No." in the lower box. Enter the serial number (the fifteen digits) of the machine into the box on the right hand side and click the **OK** button.



A confirmation window opens and shows the serial number. Check that it is correct and click the **OK** button.

Memo
Refer to APPENDIX 1 to know how to read the serial number of the machine.

1.5 Sensitivity Adjustment of Density Sensor (Maintenance Mode: Code 72)

Make sensitivity adjustments of the density sensor in accordance with "1.4.25 Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor" in Chapter 5.

1.6 Performing the Developing Bias Voltage Correction (Maintenance Mode: Code 83)

Perform developing bias voltage correction in accordance with "1.4.31 Developing bias voltage correction" in Chapter 5.

1.7 Performing the Adjustment of Inter-color Position Alignment (Maintenance Mode: Code 66)

Perform adjustment of inter-color position alignment in accordance with "1.4.19 Adjustment of inter-color position alignment" in Chapter 5.

1.8 Acquisition of White Level Data (Maintenance Mode: Code 55)

Acquire the white level data in accordance with "1.4.17 Acquisition of white level data" in Chapter 5.

1.9 Operational Check of Control Panel Button (Maintenance Mode: Code 13)

Check performance of the panel button in accordance with "1.4.8 Operational check of control panel button" in Chapter 5.

1.10 Adjustment of Touch Panel (Maintenance Mode: Code 61)

Perform adjustment of touch panel in accordance with "1.4.18 Adjustment of touch panel" in Chapter 5. (Touch panel model only)

1.11 Operation Check of LCD (Maintenance Mode: Code 12)

Check performance of the LCD in accordance with "1.4.7 Operational check of LCD" in Chapter 5.

1.12 Operation Check of Sensors (Maintenance Mode: Code 32)

Check performance of the sensors in accordance with "1.4.10 Operational check of sensors" in Chapter 5.

2. IF YOU REPLACE THE REGISTRATION MARK SENSOR HOLDER ASSY

<What to do when replacing the registration mark sensor holder ASSY>

- Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor (Maintenance mode: code 72)
- Performing the developing bias voltage correction (Maintenance mode: code 83)
- Performing the adjustment of inter-color position alignment (Maintenance mode: code 66)

2.1 Sensitivity Adjustment of Density Sensor (Maintenance Mode: Code 72)

Make sensitivity adjustments of the density sensor in accordance with "1.4.25 Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor" in Chapter 5.

2.2 Performing the Developing Bias Voltage Correction (Maintenance Mode: Code 83)

Perform developing bias voltage correction in accordance with "1.4.31 Developing bias voltage correction" in Chapter 5.

2.3 Performing the Adjustment of Inter-color Position Alignment (Maintenance Mode: Code 66)

Perform adjustment of inter-color position alignment in accordance with "1.4.19 Adjustment of inter-color position alignment" in Chapter 5.

3. IF YOU REPLACE THE HIGH-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSY

<What to do when replacing the high-voltage power supply PCB ASSY>

- Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor (Maintenance mode: code 72)
- Performing the developing bias voltage correction (Maintenance mode: code 83)
- Performing the adjustment of inter-color position alignment (Maintenance mode: code 66)

3.1 Sensitivity Adjustment of Density Sensor (Maintenance Mode: Code 72)

Make sensitivity adjustments of the density sensor in accordance with "1.4.25 Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor" in Chapter 5.

3.2 Performing the Developing Bias Voltage Correction (Maintenance Mode: Code 83)

Perform developing bias voltage correction in accordance with "1.4.31 Developing bias voltage correction" in Chapter 5.

3.3 Performing the Adjustment of Inter-color Position Alignment (Maintenance Mode: Code 66)

Perform adjustment of inter-color position alignment in accordance with "1.4.19 Adjustment of inter-color position alignment" in Chapter 5.

4. IF YOU REPLACE THE LASER UNIT

<What to do when replacing the laser unit>

- Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor (Maintenance mode: code 72)
- Performing the developing bias voltage correction (Maintenance mode: code 83)
- Performing the adjustment of inter-color position alignment (Maintenance mode: code 66)

4.1 Sensitivity Adjustment of Density Sensor (Maintenance Mode: Code 72)

Make sensitivity adjustments of the density sensor in accordance with "1.4.25 Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor" in Chapter 5.

4.2 Performing the Developing Bias Voltage Correction (Maintenance Mode: Code 83)

Perform developing bias voltage correction in accordance with "1.4.31 Developing bias voltage correction" in Chapter 5.

4.3 Performing the Adjustment of Inter-color Position Alignment (Maintenance Mode: Code 66)

Perform adjustment of inter-color position alignment in accordance with "1.4.19 Adjustment of inter-color position alignment" in Chapter 5.

5. IF THE MACHINE ERROR EF IS DETECTED AND THE LOW-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSY IS REPLACED

5.1 Reset of Irregular Power Supply Detection Counter

The irregular power supply detection counter is counted up when the machine detects irregular power supply. If the counter reaches to the limit, the machine shows the service error to replace the low-voltage power supply PCB because it might be damaged by recursive irregular power supply.

5.1.1 Reset of irregular power supply detection counter using the PJL file

Note:
The maintenance driver must have been installed. (Refer to APPENDIX 3.)

(1) Press the **Menu** button and then the **Start**/**Black** button while the machine is in the ready state. Next, press the ▲ button four times to enter the maintenance mode.
The machine displays ▮▮ MAINTENANCE ▮▮▮ on the LCD,

(2) Connect the PC to the machine with the USB cable.

(3) Double-click the “FILEDG32.EXE” to start. The following screen appears. Select the “Brother Maintenance USB Printer”.

(4) Click the “Brother Maintenance USB Printer” icon to select. Drag the SQWAVE.PJL and drop it.

5.1.2 Reset of irregular power supply detection counter using the maintenance utility

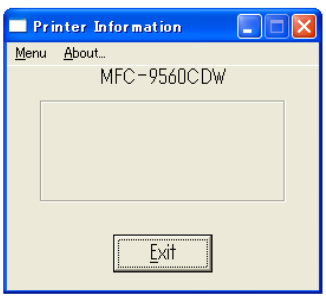
Note:
The printer driver of the relevant model must have been installed.

(1) Check that the machine is in the ready state, and then connect it to the PC with the USB cable.

(2) Double-click “brmainte.exe” file (maintenance utility) copied to the temporary folder to activate it.

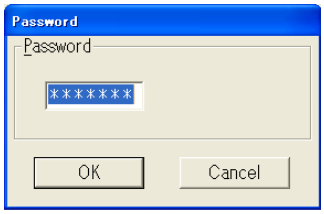
(3) Click **About**.

Note:
Ignore it when a dialog box saying that “New hardware is found” is displayed.



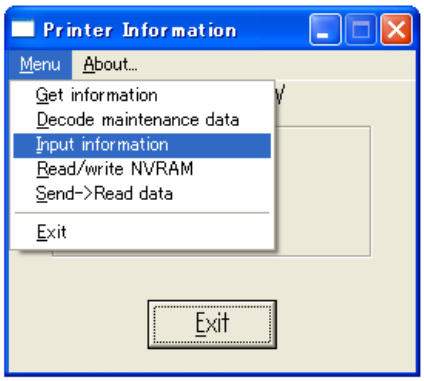
(4) The About window appears.
Double-click anywhere in the window as pressing the Shift key.

(5) The Password window appears.
Enter “replace” in the Password box, and then click the **OK** button.

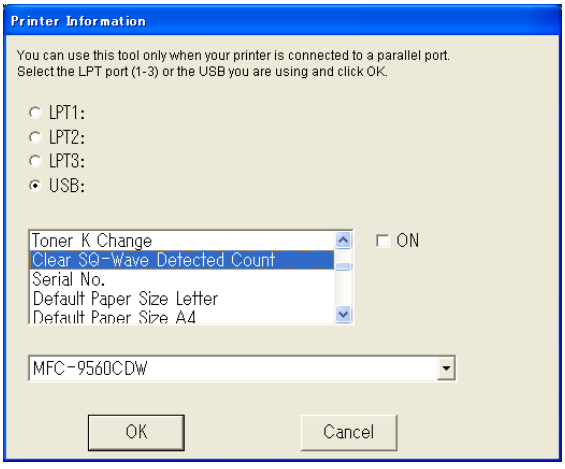


The Password window disappears.

(6) Select “Input information” from Menu.



(7) “Printer Information” is displayed.



(8) Select the relevant model.

(9) Check the port (USB), which is connected to the machine.

(10) Select “Clear SQ-Wave Detected Count”.

(11) Click the check box of “ON” to put a check in it.

(12) Click the **OK** button.

6. IF YOU REPLACE THE DRUM DRIVE MOTOR

<What to do when replacing the drum drive motor>

- Alignment of gear phase

When replacing the drum drive motor, the gears listed below are removed. Align the phase of each gear in accordance with the table and figure given below when mounting these gears.

<Gear names>

1	LY0198001	Drum idle gear Z64
2	LY0199001	Drum idle gear Z64 first
3	LY0198001	Drum idle gear Z64
4 to 7	LY0196001	Drum coupling gear Z52

<Gear phase alignment procedure>

(1) When mounting LY0198001 Drum idle gear Z64 and LY0199001 Drum idle gear Z64 first of Nos. 1 to 3, mount them by aligning their phases as shown in the figure below.

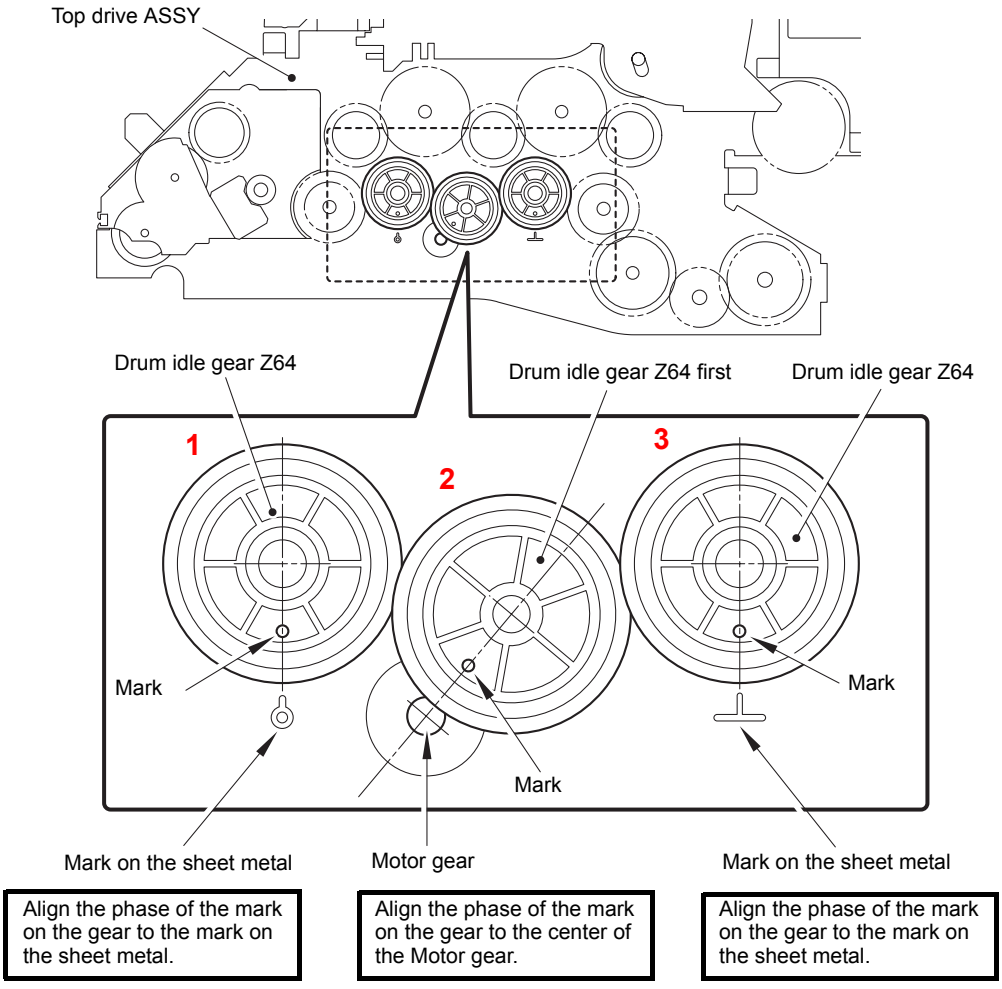


Fig. 4-2

(2) When mounting LY0196001 Drum coupling gear Z52 of Nos. 4 to 7, mount them by aligning their phases as shown in the figure below.

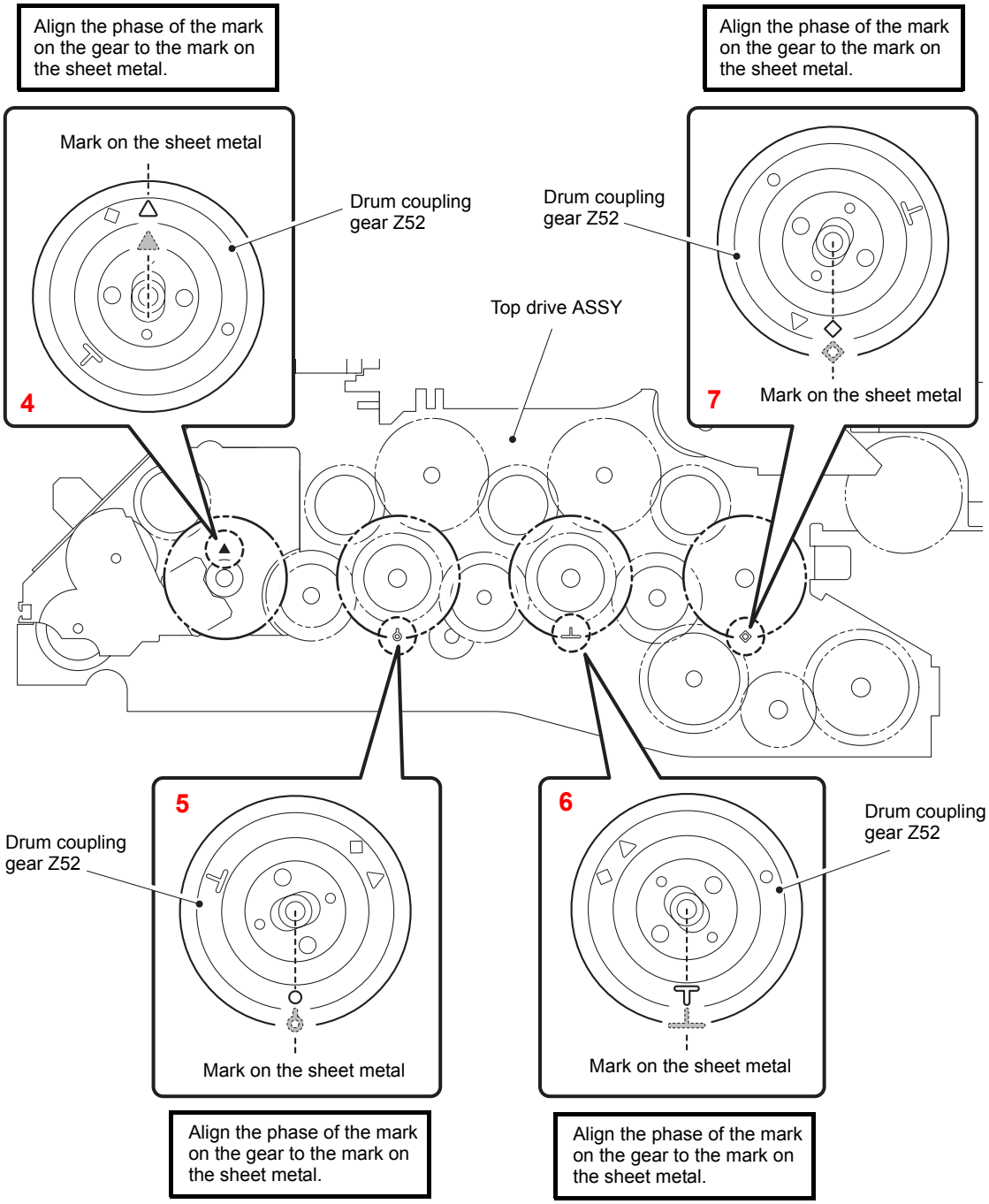


Fig. 4-3

Note:
Since the teeth of the gears are oriented at an angle in the shaft direction, be careful when aligning the phase upon mounting the gears.

7. IF YOU REPLACE THE DOCUMENT SCANNER UNIT

<What to do when replacing the document scanner unit>

- Acquisition of white level data (Maintenance mode: code 55)
- Scanning and printing check
- Placement of scanner unit in position for transportation (Maintenance mode: code 06)

7.1 Acquisition of White Level Data (Maintenance Mode: Code 55)

Perform the acquisition of white level data and scanner area setting in accordance with "1.4.17 Acquisition of white level data" in Chapter 5.

7.2 Scanning and Printing Check

Scan the test chart TC-023 with ADF, and make sure there are no problem of the printed image.
Make sure there are no problem of the ADF, scanner unit and the performance of recording part.

7.3 Placement of Scanner Unit in Position for Transportation (Maintenance Mode: Code 06)

Perform the placement of document scanner unit in the position for transportation in accordance with "1.4.3 Placement of scanner unit in position for transportation" in Chapter 5.

8. IF YOU REPLACE THE PANEL UNIT OR LCD UNIT

<What to do when replacing the panel unit or LCD unit>

- Adjustment of touch panel (Maintenance mode: code 61)
- Operation check of LCD (Maintenance mode: code 12)

8.1 Adjustment of Touch Panel (Maintenance Mode: Code 61) (Touch Panel Model)

Perform adjustment of touch panel in accordance with "1.4.18 Adjustment of touch panel" in Chapter 5.

8.2 Operation Check of LCD (Maintenance Mode: Code 12)

Check performance of the LCD in accordance with "1.4.7 Operational check of LCD" in Chapter 5.

CHAPTER 5
SERVICE FUNCTIONS

CHAPTER 5
SERVICE FUNCTIONS

Describes the maintenance mode which is exclusively designed for the purpose of checking the settings and adjustments using the buttons on the control panel.
This chapter also covers not-disclosed-to-users function menus, which activate settings and functions or reset the parts life.

CONTENTS

1. MAINTENANCE MODE

The maintenance mode is exclusively designed for the checking, setting and adjustments of the machine by using the buttons on the control panel. The EEPROM can be customized according to the destination of the machine. Moreover, the operational check of the LCD, operation panel board, and sensors, print test, display of the log information and error codes, and change of the worker switches (WSW) can be performed.

1.1 How to Enter the Maintenance Mode

< Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **Menu** button and then the **Start/Black** button while the machine is in the ready state. Next, press the ▲ button four times to enter the maintenance mode.

> **Memo:**
> Operation using **Menu**, *****, **2**, **8**, **6** and **4** buttons is also available.

(2) The machine beeps for one second and displays "▮▮ MAINTENANCE ▮▮▮" on the LCD, indicating that it is placed in the initial state of the maintenance mode, a mode in which the machine is ready to accept entry from the buttons.

(3) To select any of the maintenance mode functions shown in the next page, enter the maintenance mode that you want to use using the buttons.

> **Memo:**
> - To exit from the maintenance mode and switch to ready state, press the **9** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode.
> - When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.
> - When an incorrect maintenance mode is entered, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

1.2 How to Enter the End User-accessible Maintenance Mode

Basically, the maintenance-mode functions listed in the next page should be accessed by service personnel only. However, you can allow end users to access some of these under the guidance of service personnel by phone, for example.
The end user-accessible functions are **shaded** in the table given on the next page.(codes 06, 09, 10, 11, 12, 25, 43, 45, 52, 53, 54, 66, 68, 71, 72, 80, 82, 87, 88 and 91)
Function code 10 accesses the firmware switches, each of which has eight selectors.
The service personnel should instruct end users to follow the procedure given below.

< Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **Menu**, **Start/Black**, **Menu** and ▲ buttons in this order when the machine is in the ready state. "MAINTENANCE 06" appears on the LCD.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display the desired maintenance code on the LCD. Then press the **OK** button.

To switch the machine back to the ready state, press the **Stop/Exit** button. When each of the user-accessible functions is completed, the machine automatically returns to the ready state.

1.3 List of Maintenance-mode Functions

Function code	Function	Refer to:
01	EEPROM parameter initialization	1.4.1 (5-3)
05	Printout of scanning compensation data	1.4.2 (5-4)
06	Placement of scanner unit in position for transportation	1.4.3 (5-10)
08	ADF performance test	1.4.4 (5-10)
09	Monochrome image quality test pattern	1.4.5 (5-11)
10	Worker switch (WSW) setting	1.4.6 [1] (5-12)
11	Printout of worker switch data	1.4.6 [2] (5-15)
12	Operation check of LCD	1.4.7 (5-16)
13	Operational check of control panel button	1.4.8 (5-17)
25	Software version check	1.4.9 (5-19)
32	Operational check of sensors	1.4.10 (5-20)
33	LAN connection status display	1.4.11 (5-24)
43	PC print function	1.4.12 (5-25)
45	Not-disclosed-to-users functions	1.4.13 (5-28)
52	EEPROM customizing (User-accessible)	1.4.14 (5-32)
53	Received data transfer function	1.4.15 (5-33)
54	Fine adjustment of scan start/end positions	1.4.16 (5-35)
55	Acquisition of white level data	1.4.17 (5-37)
61	Adjustment of touch panel	1.4.18 (5-38)
66	Adjustment of inter-color position alignment	1.4.19 (5-39)
67	Continuous print test	1.4.20 (5-43)
68	Laser unit test pattern print	1.4.21 (5-46)
69	Frame pattern print (One-sided)	1.4.22 (5-47)
70	Frame pattern print (Two-sided)	1.4.23 (5-49)
71	Color test pattern	1.4.24 (5-50)
72	Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor	1.4.25 (5-52)
74	Setting by country	1.4.26 (5-53)
75	Sensitivity adjustment of registration mark sensor and check of belt unit surface	1.4.27 (5-55)
78	Operational check of fans	1.4.28 (5-57)
80	Display of machine history (log)	1.4.29 (5-58)
82	Error code indication	1.4.30 (5-62)
83	Developing bias voltage correction	1.4.31 (5-63)
87	Sending communication error list	1.4.32 (5-64)
88	Counter reset after replacing the fuser unit and paper feeding kit	1.4.33 (5-64)
91	EEPROM parameter initialization	1.4.1 (5-3)
99	Exit from the maintenance mode	1.4.34 (5-65)

*The functions shaded in the table above are user-accessible.

1.4 Detailed Description of Maintenance-mode Functions

1.4.1 EEPROM parameter initialization (Function code 01, 91)

<Function>

This function initializes the setting values of the operation parameters, user switches, and worker switches (WSW) registered in the EEPROM.
Entering function code 01 initializes almost all of the EEPROM areas, but entering 91 does not initialize some areas, as listed below.

<table>
<tr><th>Data item</th><th>Function code 01</th><th>Function code 91</th></tr>
<tr><td>Counter information</td><td rowspan="3">These will not be initialized.</td><td rowspan="6">These will not be initialized.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Error History</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAC Address (Ethernet Address)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Operation lock of the control panel password</td><td rowspan="9">These will be initialized.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Secure Function Lock</td></tr>
<tr><td>Worker switch</td></tr>
<tr><td>Telephone function registration
One-touch dialing
Speed dialing
Group dialing</td></tr>
<tr><td>User switches (Items to be initialized when resetting to the factory default settings)</td><td rowspan="5">These will be initialized.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Function settings except user switches (Items except the factory default settings)
- Languages
- Reprint
- Secure Print
- Interfaces</td></tr>
<tr><td>LAN area (Network settings)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PCL core area
(Emulation settings)</td></tr>
</table>

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **0** and **1** buttons (or the **9** and **1** buttons according to your need) in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "PARAMETER INIT" appears on the LCD.

(2) Upon completion of parameter initialization, the machine returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

Note:
Function code 01 is for service personnel. Function code 91 is for user support.

1.4.2 Printout of scanning compensation data (Function code 05)

<Function>

The machine prints out the white and black level data for scanning compensation.

<Operating procedure>

Note:

- Be sure to execute this operating procedure not immediately after the power is turned ON, but after conducting the document scanning operation at least once in duplex scanning. Since the machine initializes the white and black level data and obtains the standard value for document scanning compensation when starting scanning the document, the correct data for compensation cannot be printed out even if this operation is implemented without scanning the document.
- The print result varies depending on whether implementing color scanning or black and white scanning immediately before this operating procedure. Make sure the white and black level data you want to print and implement the operation below.

(1) For white and black scanning, copy the document. For color scanning, implement color copy of the document.

(2) Press the **0** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "1. Front 2. Back" will appear on the LCD.

(3) When the **1** button or **2** button is selected, the equipment prints out the scanning compensation data list (Refer to Fig. 5-1, Fig. 5-2, Fig. 5-3 and Fig. 5-4) containing the following:

■ **Black and white/color scanning (First side)**

Note:

In the case of the black and white scanning, the output data (B) and (R) are invalid.

a)	Black and white data graph	by previous scanning pixel count
b)	LED CURRENT DATA	1 Byte
c)	LED pulse data 1(UP) (G)	2 Bytes
d)	LED pulse data 1(DOWN) (G)	2 Bytes
e)	LED pulse data 1(UP) (B)	2 Bytes
f)	LED pulse data 1(DOWN) (B)	2 Bytes
g)	LED pulse data 1(UP) (R)	2 Bytes
h)	LED pulse data 1(DOWN) (R)	2 Bytes
i)	LED pulse data 2(UP) (G)	2 Bytes
j)	LED pulse data 2(DOWN) (G)	2 Bytes
k)	LED pulse data 2(UP) (B)	2 Bytes
l)	LED pulse data 2(DOWN) (B)	2 Bytes
m)	LED pulse data 2(UP) (R)	2 Bytes
n)	LED pulse data 2(DOWN) (R)	2 Bytes
o)	OFFSET (AFE parameter)	1 Byte
p)	GAIN (AFE parameter)	2 Bytes
q)	Background color compensated data	1 Byte
r)	Black level data	by previous scanning pixel count
s)	White level data (G)	by previous scanning pixel count
t)	White level data (B)	by previous scanning pixel count
u)	White level data (R)	by previous scanning pixel count

■ Black and white/color scanning (Second side)

Note:
In the case of the black and white scanning, the output data (B) and (R) are invalid.

a)	Black and white data graph	by previous scanning pixel count
b)	LED CURRENT DATA	1 Byte
c)	LED pulse data 1(UP) (G)	2 Bytes
d)	LED pulse data 1(DOWN) (G)	2 Bytes
e)	LED pulse data 1(UP) (B)	2 Bytes
f)	LED pulse data 1(DOWN) (B)	2 Bytes
g)	LED pulse data 1(UP) (R)	2 Bytes
h)	LED pulse data 1(DOWN) (R)	2 Bytes
i)	LED pulse data 2(UP) (G)	2 Bytes
j)	LED pulse data 2(DOWN) (G)	2 Bytes
k)	LED pulse data 2(UP) (B)	2 Bytes
l)	LED pulse data 2(DOWN) (B)	2 Bytes
m)	LED pulse data 2(UP) (R)	2 Bytes
n)	LED pulse data 2(DOWN) (R)	2 Bytes
o)	RLCV (AFE parameter)	1 Byte
p)	OFFSET (AFE parameter)	1 Byte
q)	GAIN (AFE parameter)	2 Bytes
r)	Background color compensated data	1 Byte
s)	Black level data	by previous scanning pixel count
t)	White level data (G)	by previous scanning pixel count
u)	White level data (B)	by previous scanning pixel count
v)	White level data (R)	by previous scanning pixel count

(4) When printing of the correction data is finished, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

Note:
- If any data is abnormal, its code will be printed in inline style.
- Regarding the black and white level data after monochrome reading is done, only the G data is printed, and R and B data are not printed.
- The white level data and black level data are imported in 10/16 bits, and the data in the upper 8 bits are printed.

■ Black and white scanning (First side)

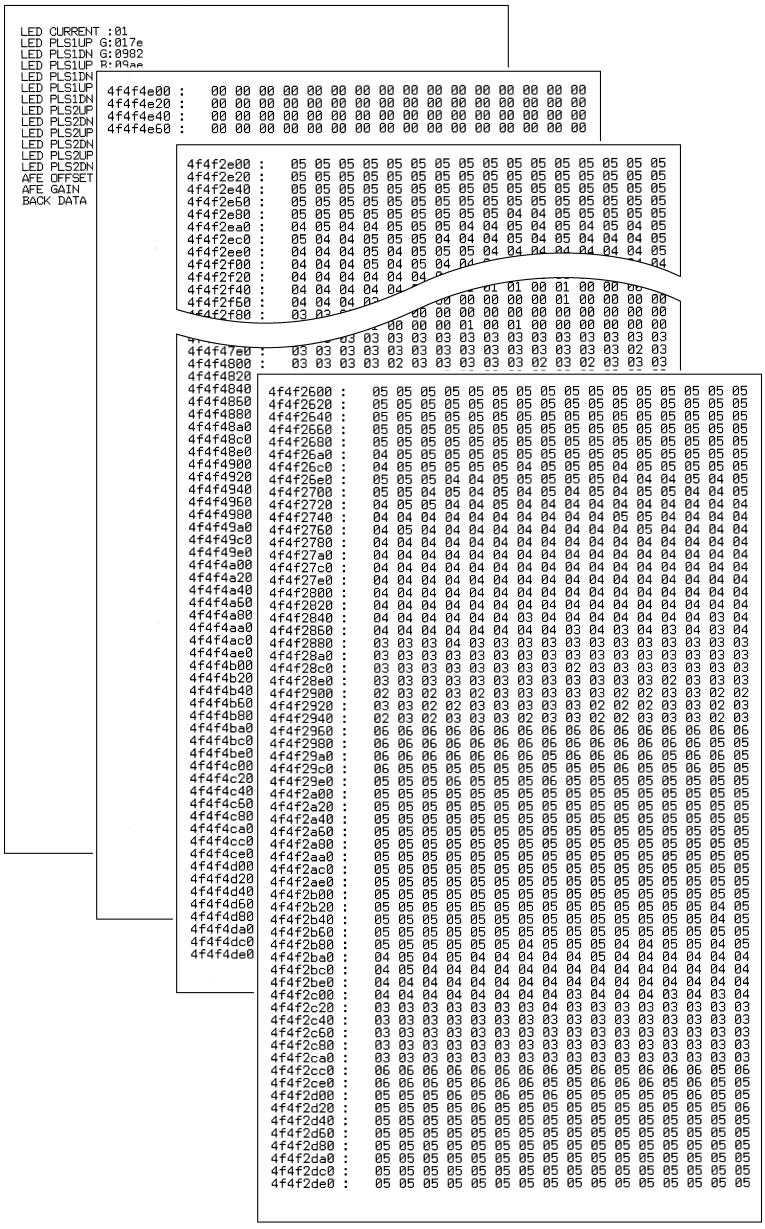
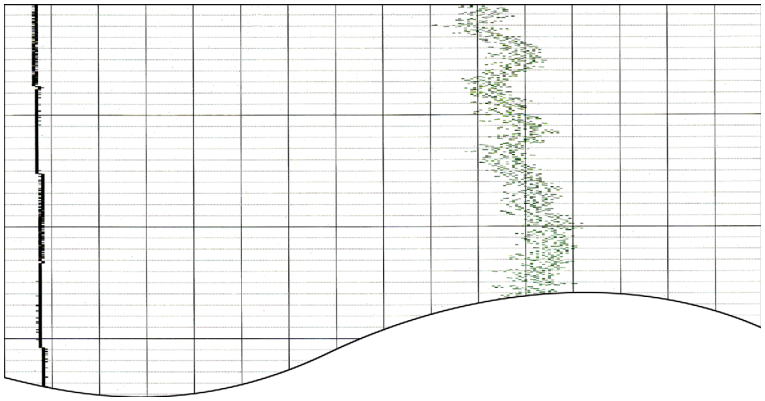


Fig. 5-1

■ Black and white scanning (Second side)



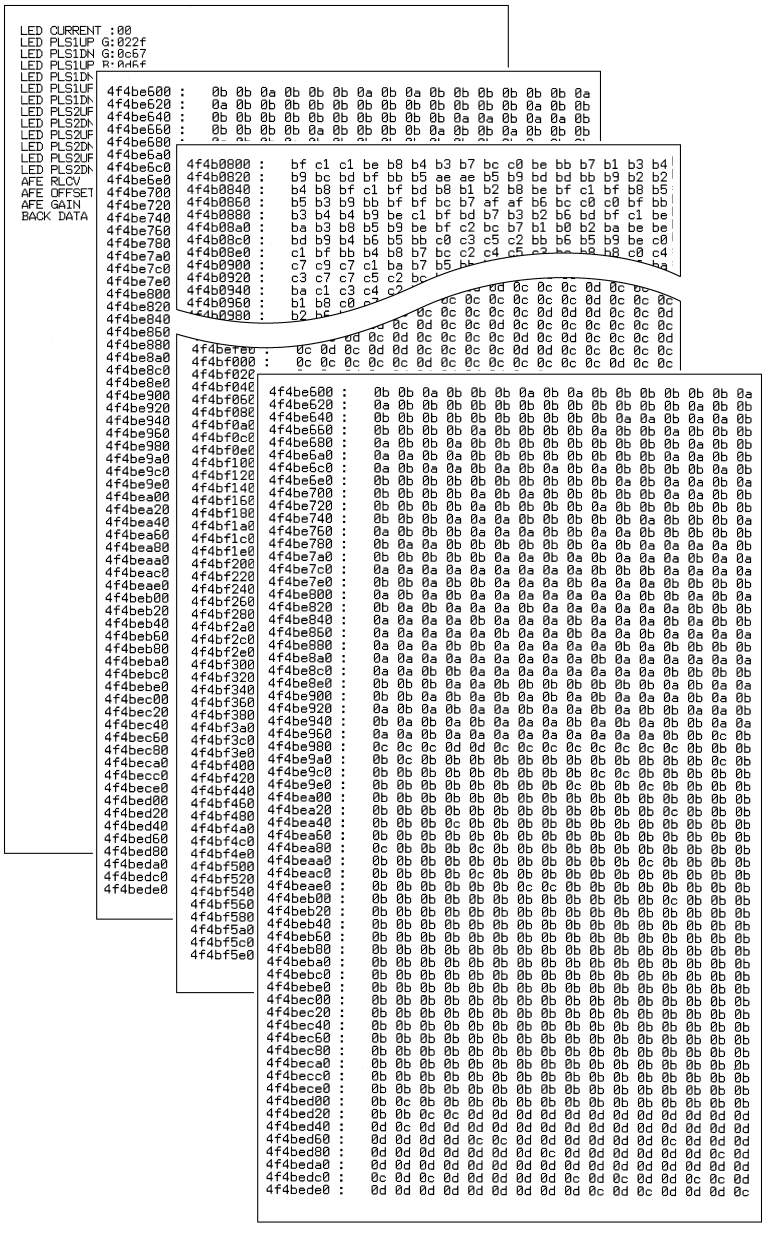


Fig. 5-2

■ Color scanning (First side)

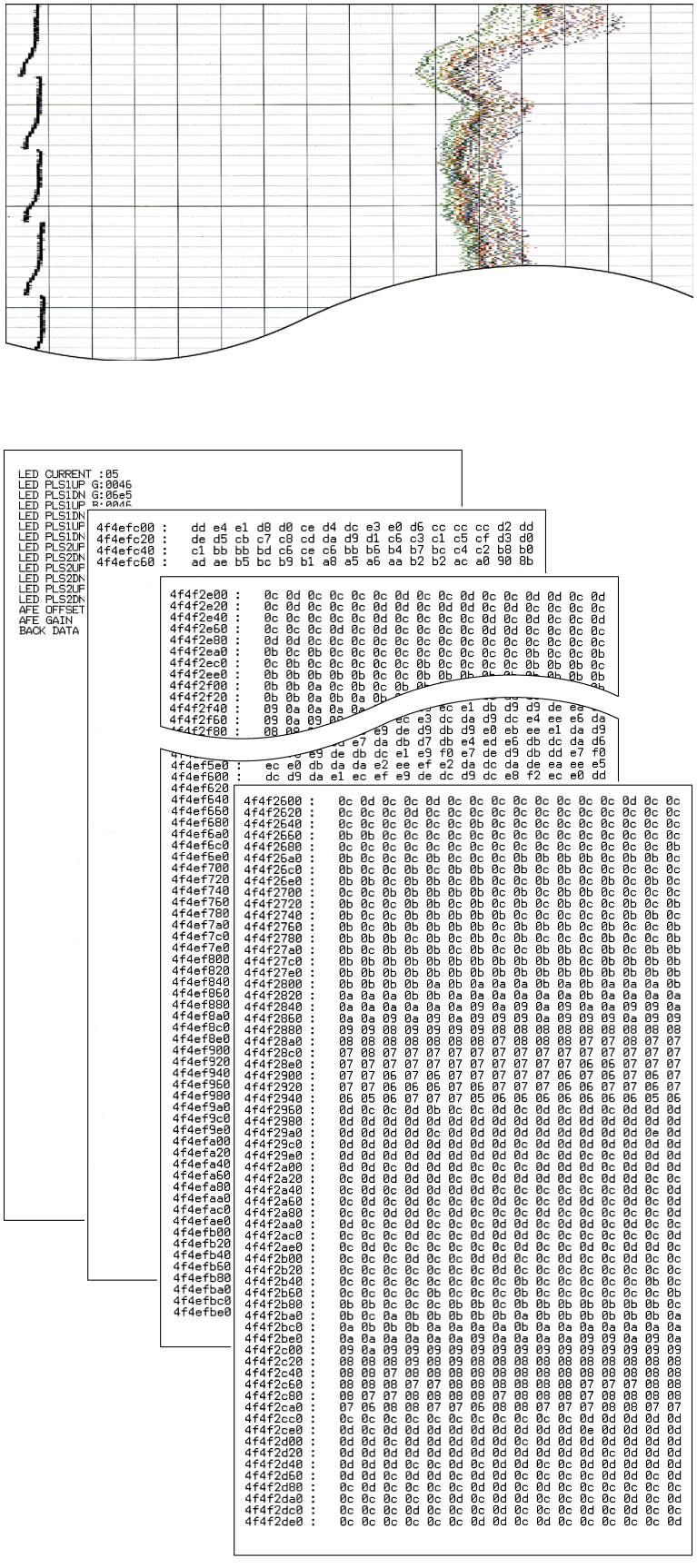
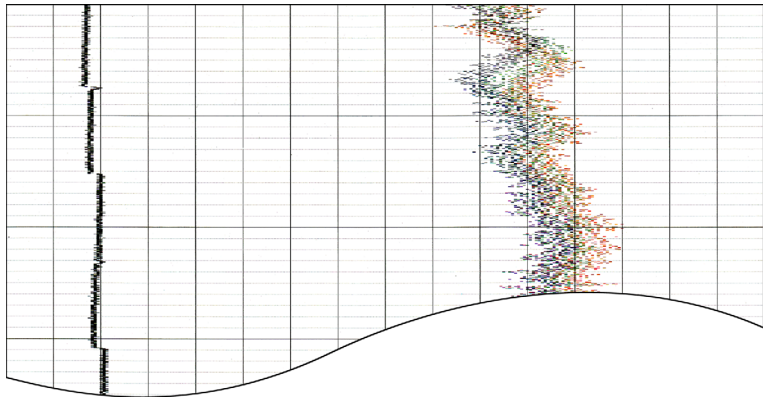


Fig. 5-3

■ Color scanning (Second side)



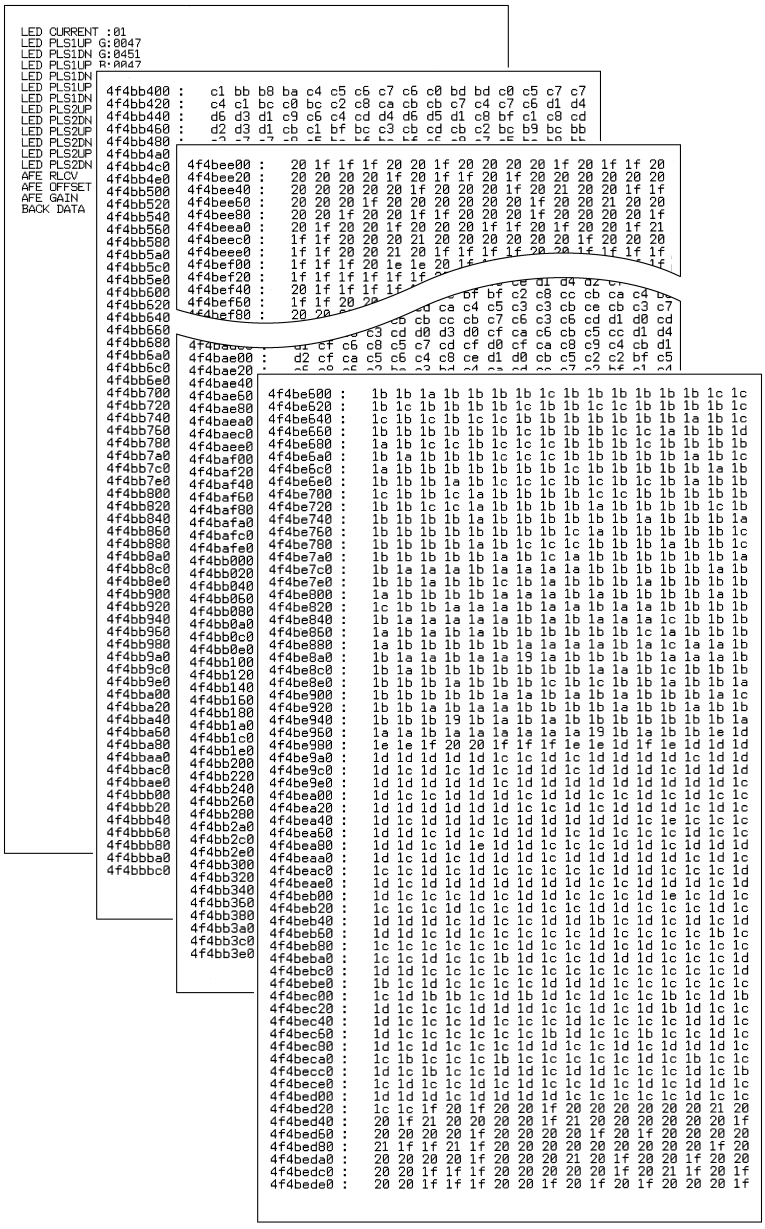


Fig. 5-4

1.4.3 Placement of scanner unit in position for transportation (Function code 06)

<Function>

This function is to move the scanner unit in position for transportation located at the left end. When you fix the machine and check its operation, you need to perform this function last before packing and shipping.

Note:

Please instruct end users to perform this function if possible before packing and shipping their FAX machine to a sales agent or a service dealer for the purpose of repair. (For information on the procedure to make the user operate the maintenance mode, refer to "1.2 How to Enter the End User-accessible Maintenance Mode" in this chapter.)

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **0** and **6** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The scanner unit moves to the designated position for transportation located at the left end. The "MAINTENANCE 06" is displayed until the scanner unit is placed in position. When the document scanner unit is placed in the position, the "SCAN LOCKED" appears on the LCD.

(2) When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

Note:

- When the document scanner unit fails to move to the transport position or when the maintenance mode: code 06 is executed while a reading error occurs, "SCAN LOCK ERROR" appears.
- After moving the scanner unit to the transport position, you cannot perform the scanning operation such as copy.

1.4.4 ADF performance test (Function code 08)

<Function>

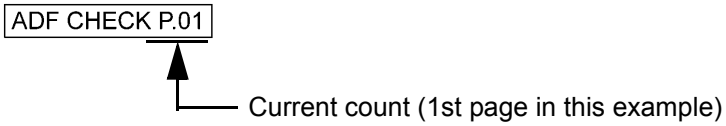
The machine counts the documents fed by the automatic document feeder (ADF) and counts the scanned document pages and displays the result on the LCD.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Load documents. (Do not exceed the paper capacity of the ADF.) "DOC.READY" is displayed on the LCD.

(2) Press the **0** and **8** buttons in this order.

(3) While counting the documents, the machine feeds them in and out, displaying the number of pages on the LCD as shown below.



Note:

In the case of a duplex scanning model, 1 sheet is counted as 2 pages.

(4) When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

1.4.5 Monochrome image quality test pattern (Function code 09)

<Function>

This function allows you to print various monochrome test patterns and check the quality and if there is any image loss.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **0** and **9** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(2) Printing of the monochrome image quality test pattern (see the figure below) starts, and when printing is finished, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

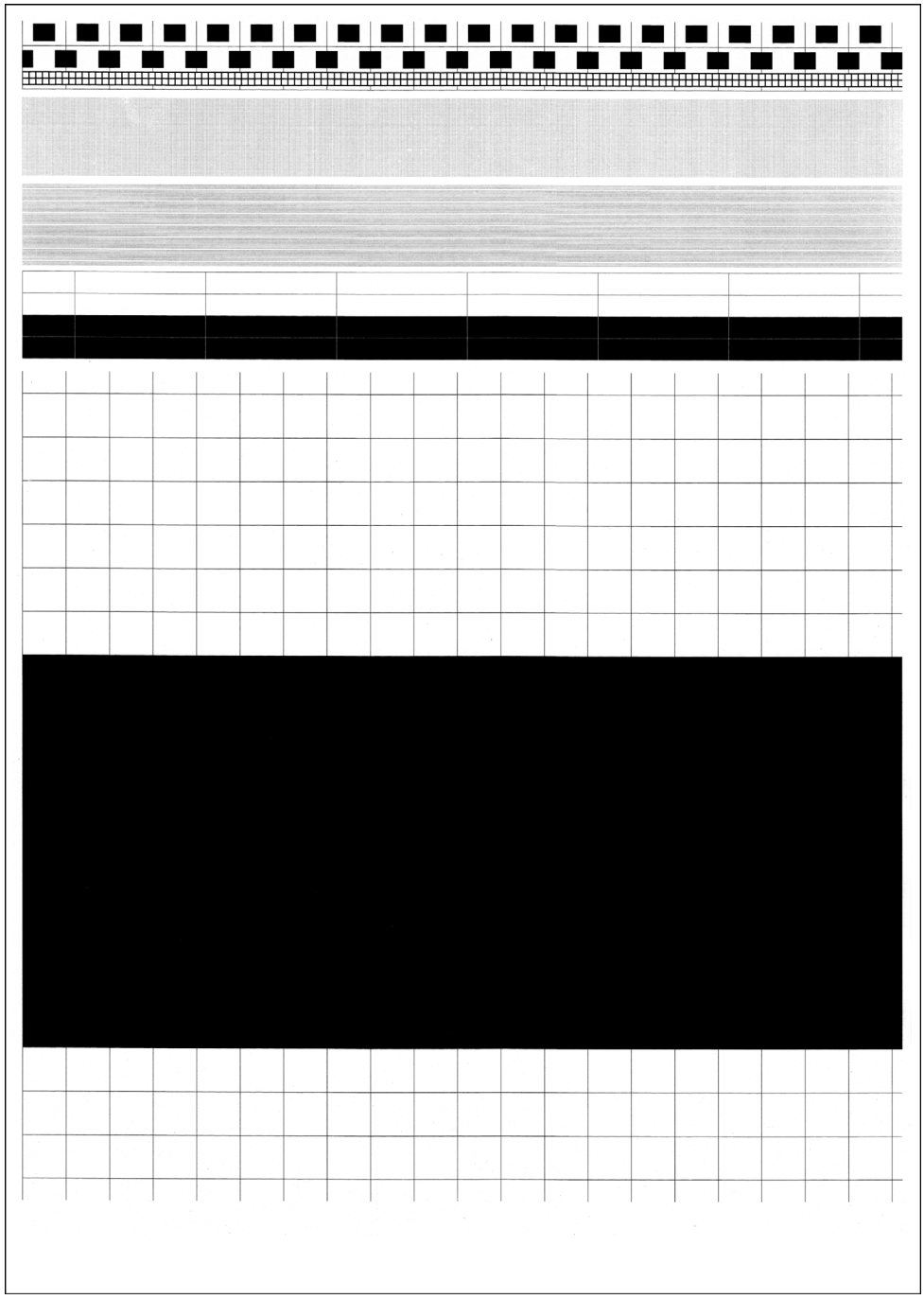


Fig. 5-5

1.4.6 Worker switch (WSW) setting and printout (Function code 10, 11)

[1] Worker switch setting (Function code 10)

The machine incorporates the following worker switch functions which may be activated with the procedures using the buttons on the control panel. The worker switches have been set at the factory in conformity to the codes of each country. Do not disturb them unless necessary. Some of these switches are disabled according to the model and specifications.

■ **Worker switch**

WSW No.	Function
WSW01	Dial pulse setting
WSW02	Tone signal setting
WSW03	PABX mode setting
WSW04	Transfer facility setting
WSW05	1st dial tone and busy tone detection
WSW06	**Redial/Pause** button setting and 2nd dial tone detection
WSW07	Dial tone setting 1
WSW08	Dial tone setting 2
WSW09	Protocol definition 1
WSW10	Protocol definition 2
WSW11	Busy tone setting
WSW12	Signal detection condition setting
WSW13	Modem setting
WSW14	AUTO ANS facility setting
WSW15	Redial facility setting
WSW16	Function setting 1
WSW17	Function setting 2
WSW18	Function setting 3
WSW19	Transmission speed setting
WSW20	Overseas communications mode setting
WSW21	TAD setting 1
WSW22	ECM and call waiting caller ID
WSW23	Communications setting
WSW24	TAD setting 2
WSW25	TAD setting 3
WSW26	Function setting 4
WSW27	Function setting 5
WSW28	Function setting 6
WSW29	Function setting 7
WSW30	Function setting 8

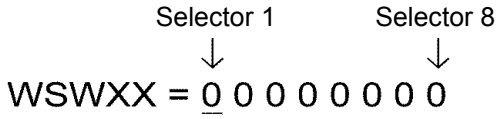
WSW No.	Function
WSW31	Function setting 9
WSW32	Function setting 10
WSW33	Function setting 11
WSW34	Function setting 12
WSW35	Function setting 13
WSW36	Function setting 14
WSW37	Function setting 15
WSW38	V.34 transmission settings
WSW39	V.34 transmission speed
WSW40	V.34 modem settings
WSW41	ON-duration of the scanning light source
WSW42	Internet mail settings
WSW43	Function setting 16
WSW44	Speeding up scanning-1
WSW45	Speeding up scanning-2
WSW46	Monitor of power ON/OFF state and parallel port kept at high
WSW47	Switching between high-speed USB and full-speed USB
WSW48	USB setup latency
WSW49	End-of-copying beep
WSW50	SDAA settings
WSW51	Function setting 17
WSW52	Function setting 18
WSW53	Function setting 19
WSW54	Function setting 20
WSW55	Interval of time required for the developing bias voltage correction
WSW56	Function setting 21
WSW57	Function setting 22
WSW58	Function setting 23
WSW59	Function setting 24
WSW60	Function setting 25
WSW61	Scanning light intensity to judge to be stable 1
WSW62	Scanning light intensity to judge to be stable 2
WSW63	Function setting 26
WSW64	Setting the language/Default paper size
WSW65	Setting the paper support
WSW66	Reserved (Change of the setting is prohibited)
WSW67	Reserved (Change of the setting is prohibited)

WSW No.	Function
WSW68	Reserved (Change of the setting is prohibited)
WSW69	Reserved (Change of the setting is prohibited)
WSW70	Reserved (Change of the setting is prohibited)
WSW71	Reserved (Change of the setting is prohibited)
WSW72	Reserved (Change of the setting is prohibited)
WSW73	Reserved (Change of the setting is prohibited)
WSW74	ADF stop control
WSW75	Paper feeding parameter for turning the document counter when the machine takes action duplex scanning
WSW76	The limited number of the documents in reverse for paper ejection of the simplex scanning from ADF
WSW77	The limited number of the documents in reverse for paper ejection of the duplex scanning from ADF
WSW78	Recording stop function when the drum reaches the end of life

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **1** and **0** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The machine displays "WSW00" on the LCD and becomes ready to accept a worker switch number.

(2) Enter the desired number from the worker switch numbers (01 through 78). The following appears on the LCD.



(3) Enter a value to be set (0 or 1) using the **0** and **1** buttons.

(4) Press the **OK** button. This operation saves the newly entered selector values onto the EEPROM and readies the machine for accepting a worker switch number.

(5) Repeat steps (2) through (4) until the modification for the desired worker switches is completed.

(6) When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

- To cancel this operation and return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode during the above procedure, press the **Stop/Exit** button.
- If there is a pause of more than one minute after a single-digit number is entered for double-digit worker switch numbers, the machine will automatically return to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

[2] Printout of worker switch data (Function code 11)

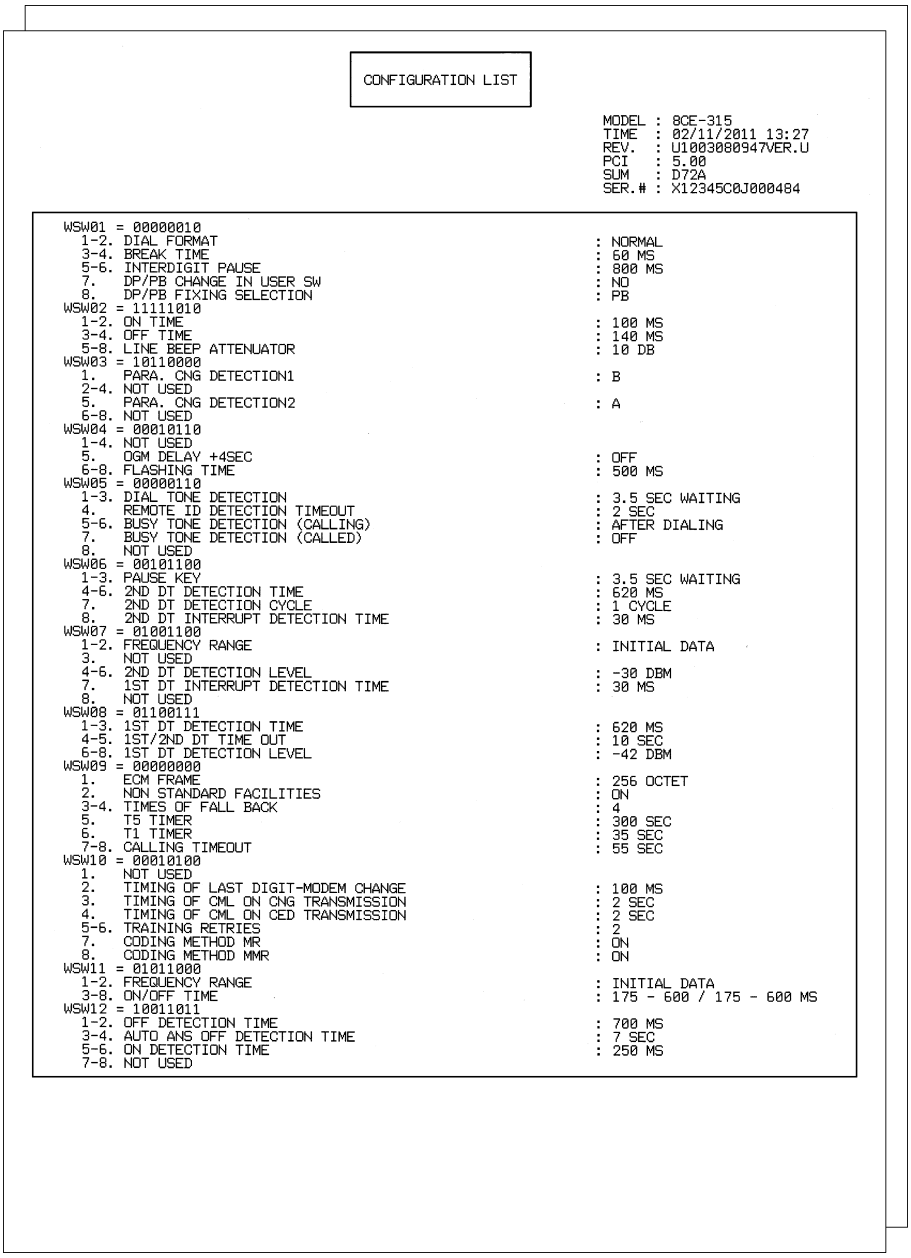
<Function>

The machine prints out the setting items of the worker switches and their contents specified.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **1** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode.
The "PRINTING" will appear on the LCD.

(2) Printing of CONFIGURATION LIST (see the figure below) starts, and when printing is finished, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.



CONFIGURATION LIST

```
MODEL : 8CE-315
TIME  : 02/11/2011 13:27
REV.  : U1003080947VER.U
PCI   : 5.00
SUM   : D72A
SER.# : X12345C0J000484

WSW01 = 00000010
  1-2. DIAL FORMAT                          : NORMAL
  3-4. BREAK TIME                           : 60 MS
  5-6. INTERDIGIT PAUSE                     : 800 MS
  7.   DP/PB CHANGE IN USER SW               : NO
  8.   DP/PB FIXING SELECTION                : PB
WSW02 = 11111010
  1-2. ON TIME                              : 100 MS
  3-4. OFF TIME                             : 140 MS
  5-8. LINE BEEP ATTENUATOR                 : 10 DB
WSW03 = 10110000
  1.   PARA. CNG DETECTION1                 : B
  2-4. NOT USED
  5.   PARA. CNG DETECTION2                 : A
  6-8. NOT USED
WSW04 = 00010110
  1-4. NOT USED
  5.   OGM DELAY +4SEC                      : OFF
  6-8. FLASHING TIME                        : 500 MS
WSW05 = 00000110
  1-3. DIAL TONE DETECTION                  : 3.5 SEC WAITING
  4.   REMOTE ID DETECTION TIMEOUT          : 2 SEC
  5-6. BUSY TONE DETECTION (CALLING)        : AFTER DIALING
  7.   BUSY TONE DETECTION (CALLED)         : OFF
  8.   NOT USED
WSW06 = 00101100
  1-3. PAUSE KEY                            : 3.5 SEC WAITING
  4-6. 2ND DT DETECTION TIME                : 620 MS
  7.   2ND DT DETECTION CYCLE               : 1 CYCLE
  8.   2ND DT INTERRUPT DETECTION TIME      : 30 MS
WSW07 = 01001100
  1-2. FREQUENCY RANGE                      : INITIAL DATA
  3.   NOT USED
  4-6. 2ND DT DETECTION LEVEL               : -30 DBM
  7.   1ST DT INTERRUPT DETECTION TIME      : 30 MS
  8.   NOT USED
WSW08 = 01100111
  1-3. 1ST DT DETECTION TIME                : 520 MS
  4-5. 1ST/2ND DT TIME OUT                  : 10 SEC
  6-8. 1ST DT DETECTION LEVEL               : -42 DBM
WSW09 = 00000000
  1.   ECM FRAME                            : 256 OCTET
  2.   NON STANDARD FACILITIES              : ON
  3-4. TIMES OF FALL BACK                   : 4
  5.   T5 TIMER                             : 300 SEC
  6.   T1 TIMER                             : 35 SEC
  7-8. CALLING TIMEOUT                      : 55 SEC
WSW10 = 00010100
  1.   NOT USED
  2.   TIMING OF LAST DIGIT-MODEM CHANGE    : 100 MS
  3.   TIMING OF CML ON CNG TRANSMISSION    : 2 SEC
  4.   TIMING OF CML ON CED TRANSMISSION    : 2 SEC
  5-6. TRAINING RETRIES                     : 2
  7.   CODING METHOD MR                     : ON
  8.   CODING METHOD MMR                    : ON
WSW11 = 01011000
  1-2. FREQUENCY RANGE                      : INITIAL DATA
  3-8. ON/OFF TIME                          : 175 - 600 / 175 - 600 MS
WSW12 = 10011011
  1-2. OFF DETECTION TIME                   : 700 MS
  3-4. AUTO ANS OFF DETECTION TIME          : 7 SEC
  5-6. ON DETECTION TIME                    : 250 MS
  7-8. NOT USED
```

Fig. 5-6

Note:

The function names specific to multi-function machines are printed in CONFIGURATION LIST for convenience of program development. They are invalid in this product and should be ignored.

1.4.7 Operational check of LCD (Function code 12)

<Function>

This function allows you to check whether the LCD on the control panel works normally.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **1** and **2** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The LCD shows.

(2) Each time you press the **Start/Black** button, the LCD cycles through the displays as shown below.

(3) When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed regardless of the display, the machine cancels the operation, beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

<Display 1>	
Backlight	: ON
LCD	: Display of all dots OFF
Data LED	: ON
Error LED	: ON
<Display 2>	
Backlight	: ON
LCD	: Display of all dots ON
Data LED	: ON
Error LED	: ON
<Display 3>	
Backlight	: OFF
LCD	: Display of all dots OFF
Data LED	: ON
Error LED	: ON
<Display 4>	
Backlight	: OFF
LCD	: Display of all dots ON
Data LED	: ON
Error LED	: ON

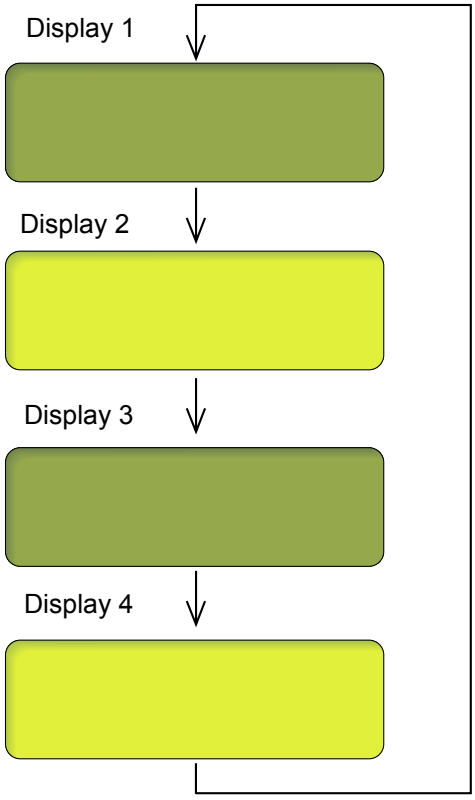


Fig. 5-7

1.4.8 Operational check of control panel button (Function code 13)

<Function>

This function allows you to check if the buttons on the control panel work properly.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **1** and **3** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "00" will appear on the LCD.

(2) Press the buttons in the order designated in the illustration shown below. The LCD shows the corresponding number in decimal notation each time a button is pressed. Check that the displayed number is correct by referring to the illustration below.

When the buttons are pressed in an incorrect order, a warning beep goes off and "INVALID OPERATE" appears on the LCD at the same time. Press the **Stop/Exit** button, and the press the correct buttons.

(3) After the last number button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

Memo

When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

■ **MFC-9460CDN/9465CDN/9560CDW**

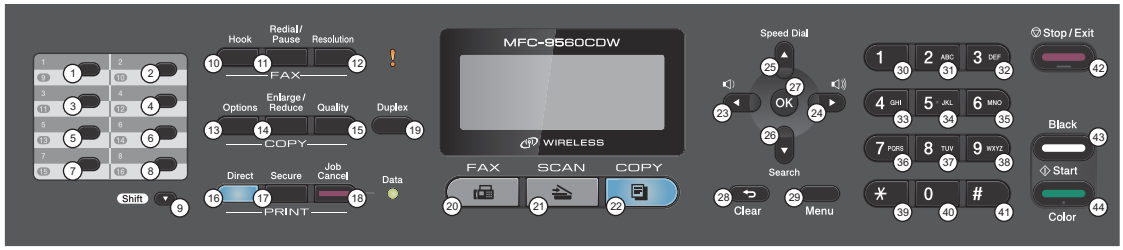


Fig. 5-8

■ **DCP-9055CDN**

Fig. 5-9

■ MFC-9970CDW

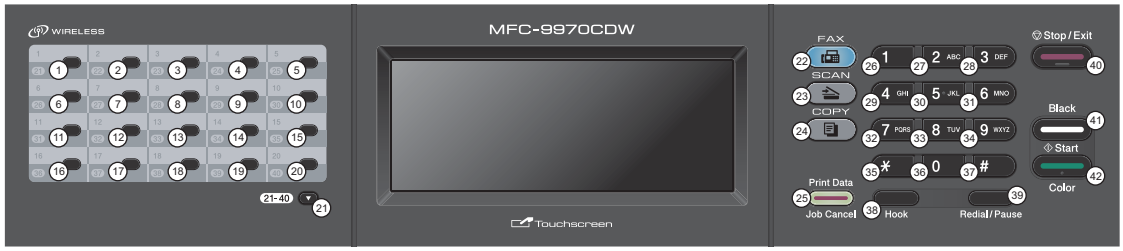


Fig. 5-10

■ DCP-9270CDN

Fig. 5-11

1.4.9 Software version check (Function code 25)

<Function>

This function allows you to check the management information of the software programs such as version information, check sum.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **2** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The machine displays each of items described below on the LCD.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to check the next item.

(3) When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed regardless of the display, the machine cancels the operation, beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

LCD	Description
TOTAL: Ver A[*1]	Main firmware version information(A): Revision information
PCL: Ver 1.00(P)[*1]	Sub firmware (PCL/PS) version information
ENG: Ver1.00[*1]	Engine firmware version information
NET: Ver 1.00	Network program version information
HV: Ver 1.00	High voltage CPU program version and PCB information
PANEL:A08103015	Panel firmware version information
i0801170900:0000	I-FAX firmware version information
B09014151027:AF57[*1]	Boot program creation date
U09040911553:A668[*1]	Main firmware creation date
D09041191021:2E8F[*1]	Demo firmware data creation date
P09040031122:FC00[*1]	Sub firmware (PCL/PS) creation date
ROM Check Sum	Check sum self-diagnosis function[*2]

[*1] How to display the check sum information
Press the **OK** button when its version information is displayed on the LCD to display the check sum information. Press the **OK** button again to go back to the version information display. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to check the next item.

Note:
Regarding the version information (Network, HVPS and I-FAX) of which check sum information cannot be obtained, the check sum information is not displayed even if you press the **OK** button.

[*2] There are two types of check sum information which can be checked with this function. This function checks if these two types of check sum information are matched each other. When you press the **OK** button while "ROM Check Sum" is displayed, check is automatically conducted for each ROM of each software part. When the check sum is matched, "OK" is displayed on the LCD. When all ROMs result in OK, "ROM Check Sum OK" is displayed at the end, and the operation is finished. When the check sum of any ROM is not matched, "NG" is displayed, and the display stops.

1.4.10 Operational check of sensors (Function code 32)

<Function>

This function allows you to check each of the sensors.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **3** and **2** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(2) The machine beeps 1,100 Hz and 400 Hz tones cyclically through the following volumes for testing the speaker. To stop beeping, press the **OK** button.

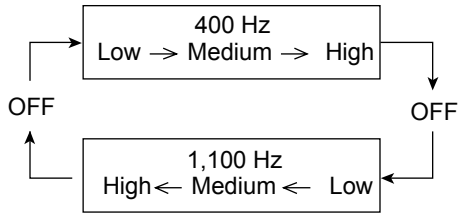


Fig. 5-12

If the sensing status are as listed below, the LCD will show "C1C2L2T2**" when paper tray 2 is installed. "C1********" appears on the LCD when paper tray 2 is not installed. Press the **Start/Black** button to check the next item.
Given below is the relationship between the LCD indication, sensor name and sensor state.

LCD	Sensors	Sensing status (OK/NG)
C1	T1 paper edge sensor	Paper tray 1 not installed/installed
C2	T2 paper edge sensor	Paper tray 2 not installed/installed
L2	T2 plate-up detection sensor	Plate down/Plate up
T2	T2 connector	Paper tray 2 installed/not installed
MP	MP paper empty sensor	MP tray paper not detected/detected
MR	MP registration front sensor	MP tray paper not detected/detected
CV	Front cover sensor	Front cover closed/open
RC	Back cover sensor	Back cover closed/open
RM	Registration front sensor	Paper not detected/detected
RA	Registration rear sensor	Paper not detected/detected
PO	Paper eject sensor	Paper not detected/detected
FW	Waste toner sensor	Light shielded on sensor/Light guided to sensor
NK	New toner sensor Black	OFF/ON
NY	New toner sensor Yellow	OFF/ON
NM	New toner sensor Magenta	OFF/ON
NC	New toner sensor Cyan	OFF/ON
KC	Toner sensor Black	Toner (K) detected/not detected
YC	Toner sensor Yellow	Toner (Y) detected/not detected
MC	Toner sensor Magenta	Toner (M) detected/not detected
CC	Toner sensor Cyan	Toner (C) detected/not detected

Note:
- The "--" appears on the LCD if there is no display.
- The "**" appears on the LCD if the parts are not installed or there is no item.

LCD	Sensors	Sensing status (OK/NG of temperature/humidity)
TMP	External temperature/humidity sensor	XX °C/NG
HUM	External temperature/humidity sensor	XX %/NG
MAC	Internal temperature sensor	XX °C/NG
BT	Belt unit temperature sensor	XX °C/NG

LCD	Sensors	Sensing status (OK/NG)
DF	Document front sensor	Without documents/With document
DR	Document first side rear sensor	Without documents/With document
AC	ADF cover sensor	Close/Open
DB	Document second side rear sensor	Without documents/With document

Note:
- The "--" appears on the LCD if there is no display.
- The "**" appears on the LCD if the parts are not installed or there is no item.

(3) Check that the display on the LCD is changed when the detection condition of each sensor is changed. For instance, insert paper to the document front (rear) sensor or the registration front (rear) sensor, open the front cover or the back cover, take out the toner cartridge, make a jam at the paper outlet, and insert paper from the manual feed slot, etc.

(4) When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

■ Location of sensors

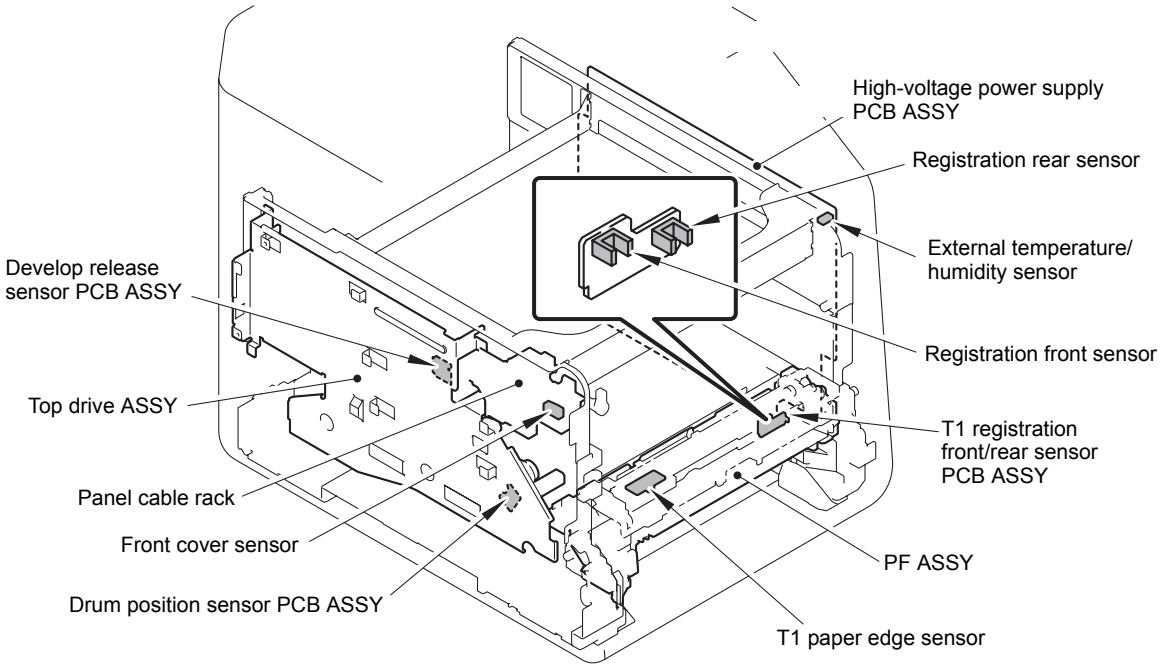


Fig. 5-13

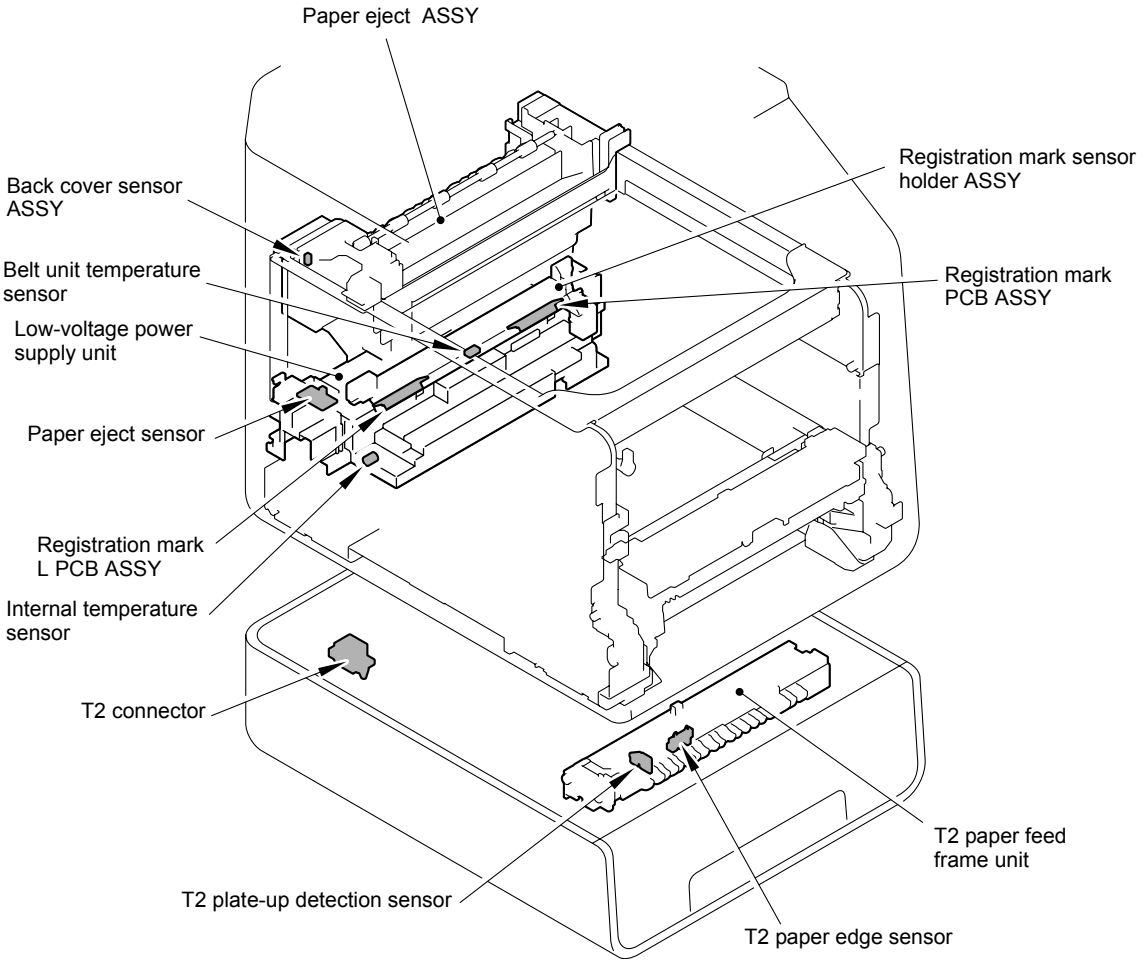


Fig. 5-14

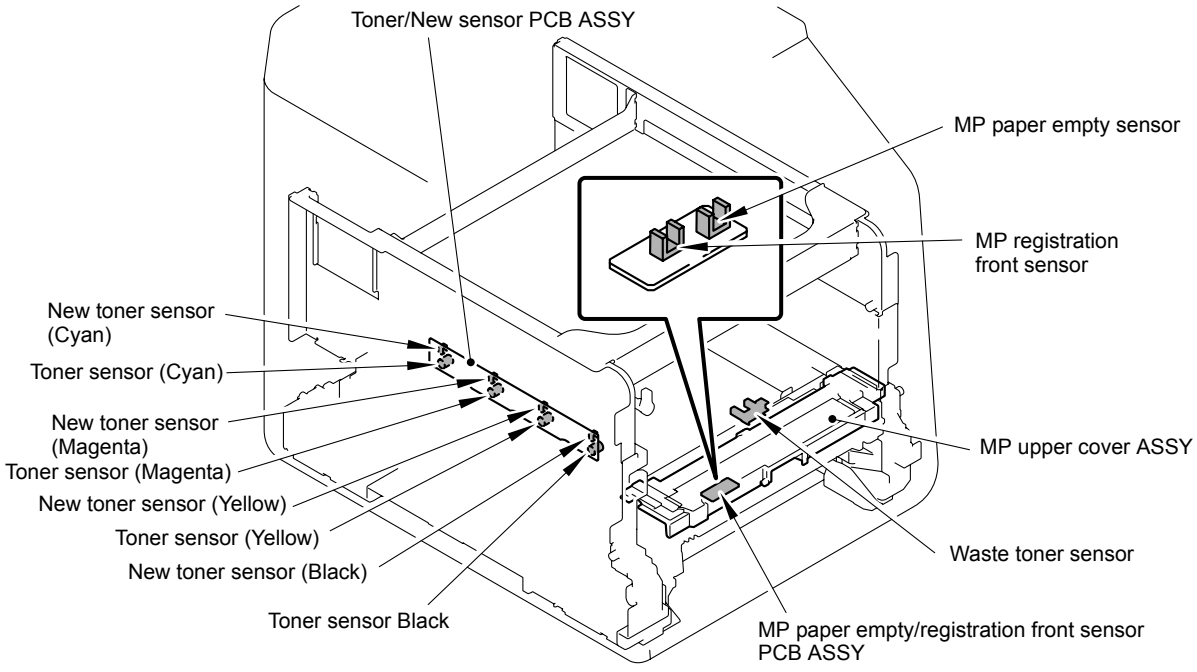


Fig. 5-15

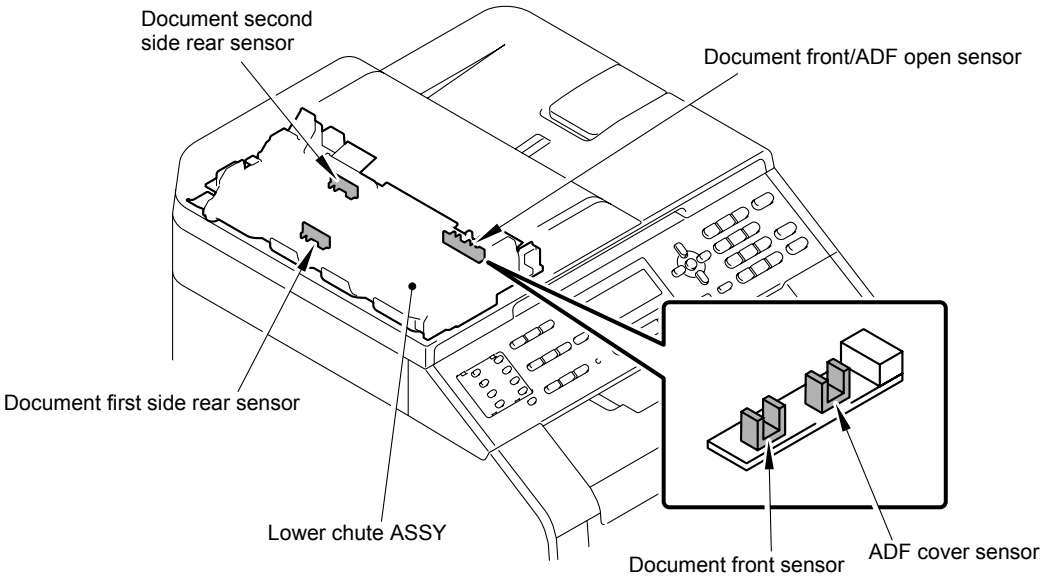

Document second
side rear sensor
Document front/ADF open sensor
Document first side rear sensor
Lower chute ASSY
Document front sensor
ADF cover sensor

Fig. 5-16

1.4.11 LAN connection status display (Function code 33)

<Function>

This function allows you to check the status of the wired LAN connection. The display items are shown in the table below.

LCD	LAN connection status
Active 100B-FD	100BASE-T Full Duplex
Active 100B-HD	100BASE-T Half Duplex
Active 10B-FD	10BASE-T Full Duplex
Active 10B-HD	10BASE-T Half Duplex
Inactive	Not connected.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **3** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(2) The display items in the table above are displayed.

(3) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

1.4.12 PC print function (Function code 43)

<Function>

This function allows the machine change that the setting of each computer printing function indicated to the following function settings.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **4** and **3** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "Manual Feed" will appear on the LCD.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select the function you want to set and press the **OK** button.

(3) When select the unchanging (On/Off) parameter, press the ▲ or ▼ button, or change the parameter using the numeric buttons. And press the **OK** button.
When you select a parameter to input a numeric value, directly input a numeric value from the ten-key pad and press the **OK** button.

(4) Press the **Stop/Exit** button so that the buzzer for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

■ Function setting

LCD	Description	Set value	Initial value
Manual Feed	Switching of the Manual Feed	On/Off	Off
Resolution	Resolution to print	300/600/1,200 dpi	600
Toner Save	Switching of the Toner Save	On/Off	Off
Density	Switching of the Density level	-6 to 6	0
JB-Can Time	Setting of the time until the host time-out at the Job Cancel	0 to 225 (seconds)	4
Sleep Time	Setting of the time until enter the Sleep Mode	0 to 99 (minutes)	5
Pege Protection	Switching of the protection of the page memory	Off/Letter/A4/Legal/Auto	Off
Emulation	Switching of the emulation	Auto/HP/PS	Auto
Auto I/F Time	Switching of the I/F open time	1 to 99 (seconds)	5
Media Type	Switching of the recording paper type	Thin/Plain/Thick/Thicker/ Trancparency/Recycled/ Bond/Envlopes/EnvThin/ EnvThick	Plain or Thin
Paper Size	Switching of the area of develop the image	Letter/Legal/A4/ Executive/B5/JISB5/A5/ B6/A6/Monarch/C5/ COM10/DL/DLL/A4Long / PostCard/Folio	Letter or A4
Copies	Switching of the print copies	1 to 99 (pages)	1
Orientation	Switching of the print direction	PortLait/Landscape	Portlait
P-Pos X-Offset	Switching of the offset print position of the landscape orientation	-500 to 500 (1/300 dpi)	0
P-Pos Y-Offset	Switching of the offset print position of the portrait orientation	-500 to 500 (1/300 dpi)	0

LCD	Description	Set value	Initial value
AutoFF	Switching of the auto form feed	On/Off	Off
AutoFF Time	Switching of the time-out period of the auto form feed	1 to 99 (seconds)	5
FF Surpress	Switching of the FF Suppress	On/Off	Off
Auto LF	Switching of the auto LF	On/Off	Off
Auto CR	Switching of the auto CR	On/Off	Off
Auto WRAP	Switching of the auto CRLF at the print width	On/Off	Off
Auto Skip	Switching of the Skip at the backend/tip of the paper	On/Off	On
Left Margin	Switching of the margin at the left end	0 to 145 (columus)	0
Right Margin	Switching of the margin at the right end	10 to 155 (columus)	80
Top Margin	Switching of the margin at the upper end	0 to 2.00 (inches)	0.5
Bottom Margin	Switching of the margin at the bottom end	0 to 2.00 (inches)	0.5
Lines	Number of the text lines in the page	5 to 128 (lines)	60
Error Print	Switching of the ErrorPrint of the PostScript	On/Off	On

■ Detail description

LCD	Detail description
Manual Feed	Effective for the print from the computer, or for the print of the NetWorkConfig/TestPrint/Fontlist/Configuration from the panel. When select the tray on the computer, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored.
Resolution	Effective only for the print from the computer. When set the Resolution on the computer, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored.
Toner Save	Effective for all print, and change the setting of the Function Menu. However, as for the Copy, this setting becomes invalid. When set the Toner Save or the computer, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored.
Density	Effective for the print from the computer, or for the print of the NetWorkConfig/TestPrint/FontList/Configuration from the panel. Link the setting of the Toner Save. Judge the both setting, and decide the density. When set the Density or the computer, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored.
JB-Can Time	Configure the setting for until the host time-out at the Job Cancel. The setting value is the second time scale.
Sleep Time	Configure the setting for the time until shift to the Sleep Time. Change the setting of the Function Menu.

LCD	Detail description
Page Protection	Configure the setting to protect the page memory, when recording in computer. Set in the PCL-Core. There is not the influence of the memory management problem of the MFC.
Emulation	Configure the setting for the Emulation. Change the setting of the Function Menu. When the data include the ENTER LANGUAGE, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored.
Auto I/F Time	Configure the setting for the interface open time. The function is in the PC-Print. When the PC-Scan/Remote-SetUp works on the way, the setting becomes invalid.
Media Type	Effective for the print from the computer. When set the type of the recording paper on the computer, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored. The default value is different by the country setting. China is the Thin, and others are the Plain.
Paper Size	Switching of the area of develop the image. Does not set the Paper Size of the Menu, set the drawing size of the PC-Print. When set the size of the recording paper on the computer, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored. The default value is different by the country setting. U.S.A/Canada are the Letter, and others are the A4.
Copies	Effective for the print from the computer. When set the number of the copies on the computer, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored.
Orientation	Configure the switching for the print direction. Effective for the print from the computer.
P-Pos X-Offset	Configure the setting for the offset print position of the landscape orientation. Effective for the print from the computer. When set the X-Offset on the computer, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored.
P-Pos Y-Offset	Configure the setting for the offset print position of the portrait orientation. Effective for the print from the computer. When set the Y-Offset on the computer, the setting becomes effective. And this setting is ignored.
AutoFF	Configure the setting for the ON/OFF of the Auto Form Feed. Effective for the print from the computer.
AutoFF Time	Configure the setting for the Time Out, when the Auto Form Feed is ON.
FF Surpress	Configure the setting for the skip of the blank page. Effective for the print from the computer. The blank data in the Copy/Fax cannot be turned ON/OFF in this setting.
Auto LF	Configure the setting for the auto line feed.
Auto CR	Configure the setting for the auto Carriage Return.
Auto WRAP	Configure the setting for the auto CRLF at the print width.
Auto Skip	Configure the setting for the skip at the back-end/tip of the recording paper and add the blank space.
Left Margin	Configure the setting for the column space at the left end.
Right Margin	Configure the setting for the column space at the right end.
Top Margin	Configure the setting for the space at the upper end.
Bottom Margin	Configure the setting for the space at the bottom end.
Lines	Configure the setting for the number of the lines in the PCL.
Error Print	Configure the setting for the Error Print of the BR-Script 3.

1.4.13 Not-disclosed-to-users functions (Function code 45)

Regarding the not-disclosed-to-users functions, the function setting can be executed by a simple panel operation.

■ Changing return value of USB No.

<Function>

When the OS of the computer is Windows Vista®, and the computer is connected to a device through USB 2.0 full speed, the OS might fail to get the serial No. of the USB device depending on the computer and USB device. When the OS fails to get the serial No., the return value may continue to increase every time the device is connected to the computer. To avoid this problem, the return value of the serial No. is dropped to "0".

LCD	Description
USBNo. =ON	Returns the serial No. of the device. (default)
USBNo. =OFF	Returns "0".

An asterisk "*" appears beside the current setting.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **4** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "USBNo." will appear on the LCD. Then, press the **OK** button.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select "USB No. = ON" or "USB No. = OFF," and then press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(3) "Accepted" is displayed on the LCD, and the product goes back to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(4) Turn the power switch of the machine OFF.

Note:
This mode is enabled when the power of the machine is turned OFF and ON.

■ Switching Dither Pattern

<Function>

This function is to switch the dither pattern when printed letters and/or slanted lines are not smooth, and thin lines are rough or uneven.

LCD	Description
PS.DitherType=0	Dither Pattern 0 is selected. (A dither pattern which improves roughness of letters and slanted lines) (default)
PS.DitherType=1	Dither Pattern 1 is selected. (A dither pattern which alleviates banding)

An asterisk "*" appears beside the current setting.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **4** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "USBNo." will appear on the LCD.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "PS.DitherType" and then press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(3) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select "PS.DitherType=0" or "PS.DitherType=1," and then press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(4) "Accepted" is displayed on the LCD, and the machine goes back to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

■ Switching of ON/OFF of DirectPrint Color mode-Improve Gray Color

<Function>

This function is to switch ON/OFF of the print control for the gray color when other colors are slightly blended in the gray color or the gray color is uneven upon printing.

LCD	Description
DP.ImpGray=ON	DirectPrint Color mode - Improve Gray Color. (Print control for gray color) ON (Improves the symptom that other colors are slightly blended in the gray color.) (default)
DP.ImpGray=OFF	DirectPrint Color mode - Improve Gray Color. (Print control for gray color) OFF (Improves the unevenness of the gray color.)

An asterisk "*" appears beside the current setting.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **4** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "USBNo." will appear on the LCD.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "DP.ImpGray" and then press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(3) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select "DP.ImpGray=ON" or "DP.ImpGray=OFF," and then press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(4) "Accepted" is displayed on the LCD, and the product goes back to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

■ Switching of timing to execute Auto Registration

<Function>

Relative displacement between Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black is detected using the registration mark sensor, and the Auto Registration is executed at the timing when the displacement value exceeds the stipulated threshold value.

This is a function to switch the threshold value which is used as the timing to execute Auto Registration.

The threshold value can be switched in three phases between High, Mid, and Low.

LCD	Description
Regi Freq=Mid	The frequency to execute Auto Registration is middle. (default)
Regi Freq=High	The frequency to execute Auto Registration is high.
Regi Freq=Low	The frequency to execute Auto Registration is low.

An asterisk "*" appears beside the current setting.

Note:
It can be set regardless of the Auto Registration switching function in the function menu. Even if this function is switched, it does not affect the timing to execute Auto Registration in the function menu.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **4** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "USBNo." will appear on the LCD.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "Regi Freq" and then press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(3) Select "Regi Freq = Mid", "Regi Freq = High", or "Regi Freq = Low" by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button, and press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(4) "Accepted" is displayed on the LCD, and the product goes back to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

■ Adjusting left-end print start position on second side in duplex printing

<Function>

This function is to adjust the left-end print start position on the second side in the left and right direction if it is displaced in duplex printing.

The adjustable range is -100 to 750 (unit: 300 dpi) (The minus direction means the left direction.)

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **4** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "USBNo." will appear on the LCD.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "DX.XAdjust=**" and then press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(3) To move the print start position to the left, press the ▲ button and decrease the value. To move the print start position to the right, press the ▼ button and increase the value.

(4) When the value is changed to the adjustment value, press the **OK** button. "Accepted" is displayed on the LCD, and the product goes back to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

■ Switching ON/OFF of Deep Sleep function

<Function>

This function is to switch whether or not to permit the machine to go into Deep Sleep when StoreData (Secure) exists in the main body.

LCD	Description
DpSlp.StrDt =ON	Even when StoreData (Secure) exists, the Deep Sleep function operates.
DpSlp.StrDt =OFF	When StoreData (Secure) exists, the Deep Sleep function does not operate. (default)

An asterisk "*" appears beside the current setting.

Note:
This function is enabled when the Deep Sleep function is set to ON.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **4** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "USBNo." will appear on the LCD.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "DpSlp.StrDt =***" and then press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(3) Select "DpSlp.StrDt =ON" or "DpSlp.StrDt =OFF" by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button, and press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button.

(4) "Accepted" is displayed on the LCD, and the machine goes back to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

1.4.14 EEPROM customizing (User-accessible) (Function code 52)

<Function>

This function allows users to customize the EEPROM settings such as language, function settings or worker switch settings.

Note:
This function is applicable to France and surrounding countries, Pan-Nordic, East Europe, Oceania and Iberia areas only.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **Menu**, **Start/Black** and **Menu** buttons in this order in the ready state. The "0" will appear on the LCD.

(2) Press the **5** and **2** buttons in this order. The "Set Country/Press OK" will appear on the LCD.

(3) Press the **OK** button. The country name will appear on the LCD.

Note:
The country name indicated on the LCD varies depending on the area (code input in Function code 74) as shown in the table below.

France and surrounding countries	Oceania	Pan-Nordic	Iberia	East Europe
France	Australia	Norge	España	österreich
België / Belgique	New Zealand	Suerige	Portugal	Ceska republika
Nederland		Suomi		Magyarorazág
		Danmark		Polska
		Others		България
				România
				Slovensko
				Others

(4) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display the country name where the machine is used. Press the **OK** button while the country name is being indicated. The EEPROM is customized, and the machine returns to the ready state.

1.4.15 Received data transfer function (Function code 53) (FAX model only)

<Function>

This function transfers received FAX data to another machine. It is useful when the machine cannot print received data due to the printing mechanism being defective.

Note:

- This function transfers received FAX file to another machine. It is useful when the machine cannot print received FAX file due to the printing mechanism being defective.
- If there are both color and monochrome data in a FAX file to be transferred, the monochrome data will be transferred first. If the receiver machine does not support the color function, the sender machine cannot transfer color data, resulting in an error.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **5** and **3** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "FAX TRANSFER" appears on the LCD.

- To check the number of received files, press the **1** button. The "1.NO. OF JOBS" appears on the LCD.Press the **OK** button, and the number of received files appears, just as "NO. OF. JOBS: 10."
- To transfer the activity report only, press the **2** button. The "2.ACTIVITY" appears on the LCD.
- To transfer received files (together with the activity report), press the **3** button. The "3.DOCUMENTS" appears on the LCD. Note that if there is no received file, the "NO DOCUMENTS" appears.
- To transfer the communication list for the latest communication, press the **4** button. The "4.COM.LIST (NEW)" appears.
- To transfer the communication list for last three errors, press the **5** button. The "5.COM.LIST (ERR3)" appears on the LCD.

(2) With the "2.ACTIVITY," "3.DOCUMENTS," "4.COM.LIST (NEW)," or "5.COM.LIST (ERR3)" being displayed, press the **OK** button. The "ENTER NO & SET" appears on the LCD.

(3) Enter the telephone number of the receiver machine and press the **OK** button again.

(4) The machine displays the "ACCEPTED" for approximately two seconds and starts dialing to transfer data.

Note:

- Be sure to type the telephone number with the numerical buttons. No one-touch dialing is allowed in this procedure.
- No station ID will be attached. A cover page and end page as shown on the next page will be automatically attached, instead.

■ Cover page sample

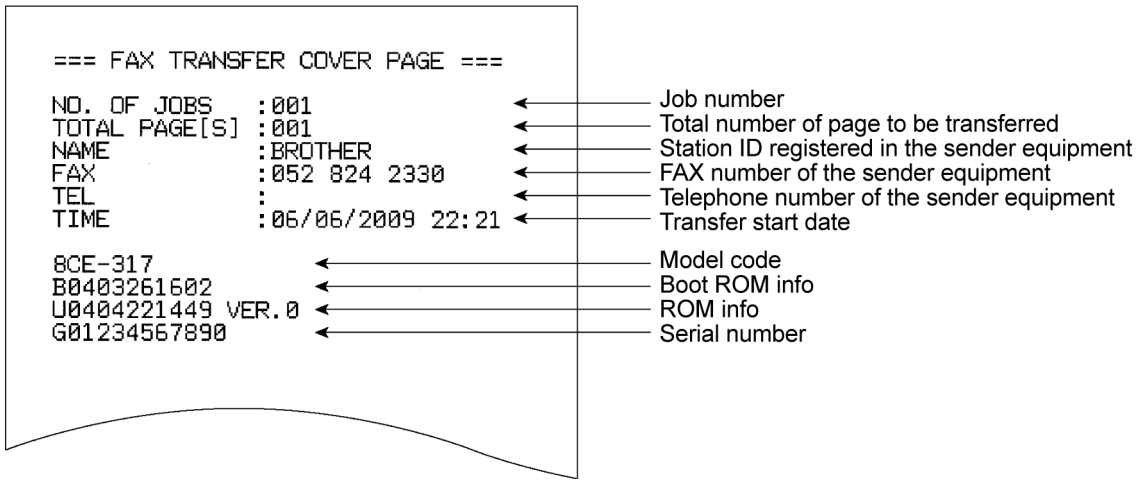


Fig. 5-17

■ End page sample

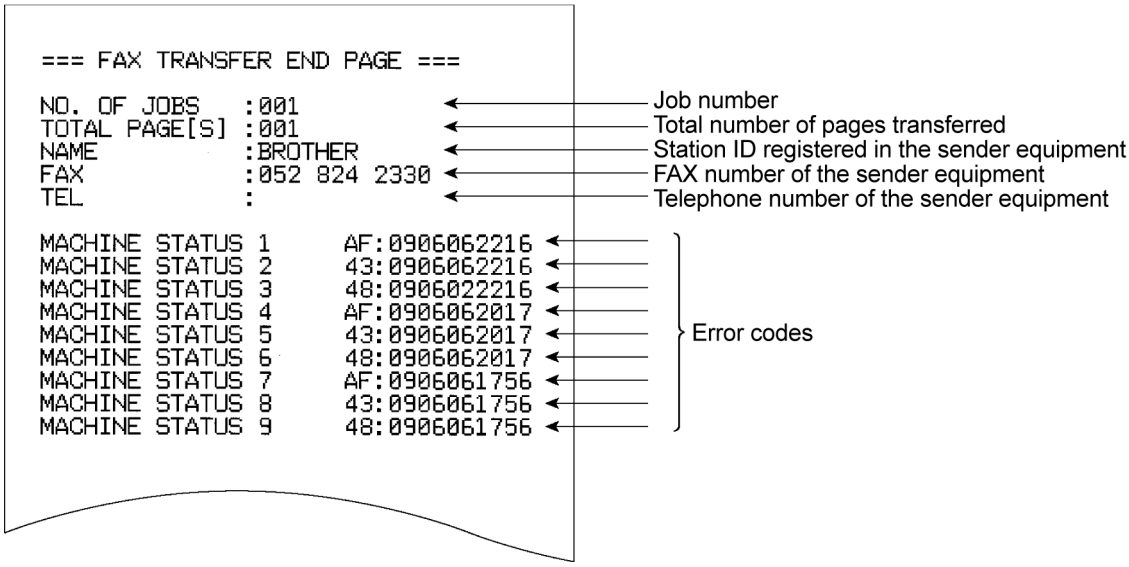


Fig. 5-18

1.4.16 Fine adjustment of scan start/end positions (Function code 54)

<Function>

This function allows you to adjust the scan start/end positions on the ADF and FB unit.

■ Simplex scanning model

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **5** and **4** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "SCAN START ADJ." will appear on the LCD.

(2) The " ▲ : ADF ▼ : FB" will appear after two seconds. Select one of them that you want to adjust the start position. If you want to adjust the start position of the ADF, press ▲ button, and if you want to adjust that of the FB unit, press ▼ button.

(3) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display the present compensation level for the start position. Compensation levels can be adjusted in 11 steps from +5 to -5 (mm).

(4) Press the ▲ button to increase the correction value and the ▼ button to lower it. When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(5) Set the compensation level and press the **OK** button. The "ACCEPTED" will appear on the LCD. One second later, the machine " ▲ : ADF ▼ : FB" will appear on the LCD.

(6) Press the **Stop/Exit** button when finish the adjustment. The machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

The correlation between the scan start/end positions and compensation levels is shown below.

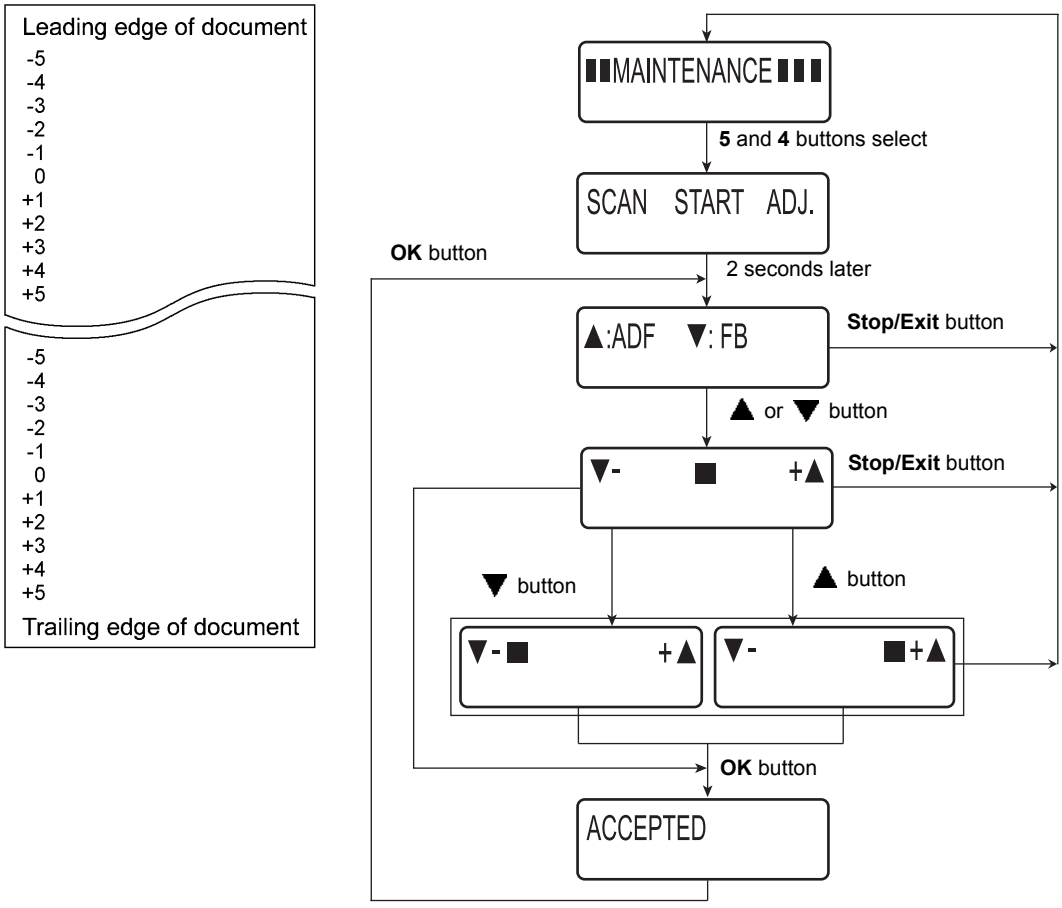


Fig. 5-19

■ Duplex scanning model

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **5** and **4** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The "SCAN START ADJ." will appear on the LCD.

(2) The " ▲ : ADF ▼ : FB" will appear after two seconds. Select one of them that you want to adjust the start position. If you want to adjust the start position of the ADF, press ▲ button, and if you want to adjust that of the FB unit, press ▼ button. When ADF is selected, " ▲ : FRONT ▼ : BACK" will appear on the LCD. (FRONT: First side; BACK: Second side)

(3) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display the present compensation level for the start position. Compensation levels can be adjusted in 11 steps from +5 to -5 (mm).

(4) Press the ▲ button to increase the correction value and the ▼ button to lower it. When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(5) Set the compensation level and press the **OK** button. The "ACCEPTED" will appear on the LCD. One second later, the machine " ▲ : ADF ▼ : FB" will appear on the LCD.

(6) Press the **Stop/Exit** button when finish the adjustment. The machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

The correlation between the scan start/end positions and compensation levels is shown below.

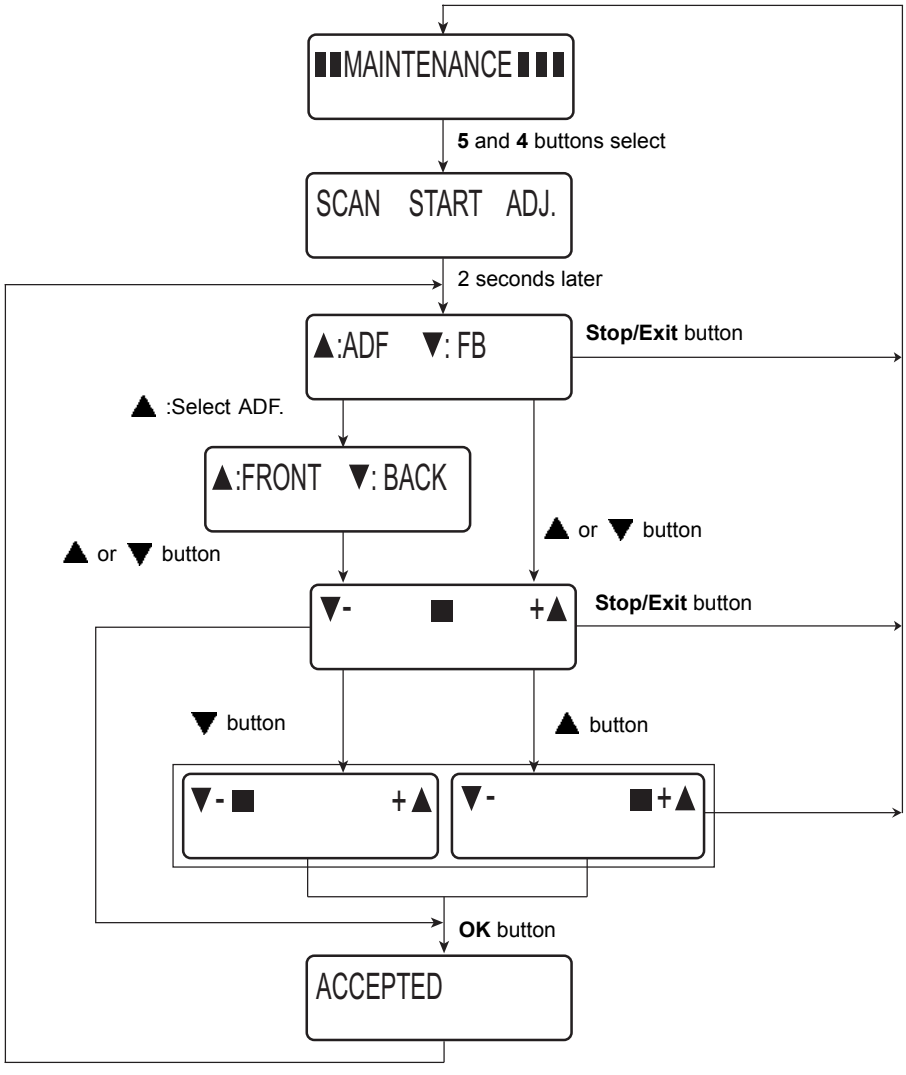


Fig. 5-20

1.4.17 Acquisition of white level data (Function code 55)

<Function>

This function allows you to acquire the white level of the scanner unit and save it to the EEPROM of the main PCB.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **5** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(2) The "Press START" will appear on the LCD. Press the **Start/Black** button.
The "SCANNER AREA SET" will appear on the LCD.

(3) After a few seconds, the machine saves the compensation of the white level data/ scanning width in the EEPROM, beeps for one second, and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

1.4.18 Adjustment of touch panel (Function code 61)

<Function>

This function adjusts the detection area on the touch panel.

Note:

The adjustment procedure requires a stylus with a thin tip. A commercially available stylus designed for electronic dictionaries or personal digital assistance (PDA) can be used. If you do not have it on hand, order the "STYLUS" from the Brother's parts list.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **6** and **1** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The adjustment screens shown below appear on the LCD.

(2) Touch the symbols on the touch panel with a stylus in the order of top-left, bottom-left, bottom-right, top-right, and the center. After a symbol touched disappears, touch the next one.

Note:

- Do not use tools other than a pen designed for touch panels. Especially, never use a pointed one, e.g., a screwdriver. Using such a tool damages the touch panel.
- Do not touch the touch panel with fingers. The contact area of a finger is too large to adjust the touch panel precisely.
- If no keys are pressed for one minute in the above procedure or you press the **Stop/Exit** button, the machine stops the procedure and returns to the initial stage of the maintenance mode.

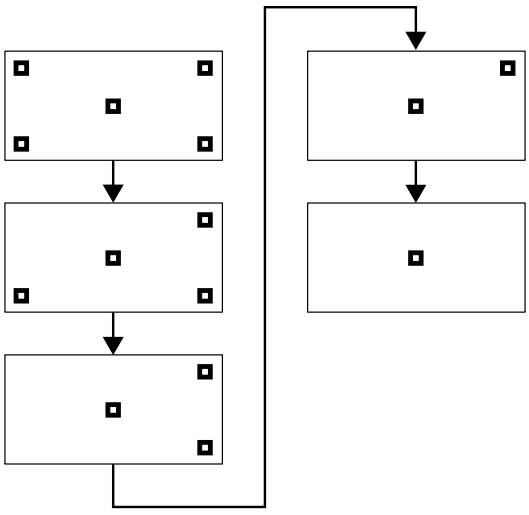


Fig. 5-21

When you press the symbol at the center (the 5th symbol), "OK" appears if the specified area is correctly adjusted. Then, the screen shown below appears, and the machine returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode in approximately 3 seconds.

Note:

If the way to press the symbol is wrong, or if a wrong place is pressed, "NG" appears on the LCD, and the machine returns to the screen in step (2) in approximately 3 seconds. Be sure to press the symbols from the top-left in the order shown above.

In the case of "NG", repeat this operation 2 to 3 times. If "NG" remains displayed even after the operation is repeated, check if there is harness connection failure in the touch panel, disconnection, short-circuit, or entry of foreign objects in the touch panel frame. Although any of these problems is not observed, if "NG" is displayed, replace the LCD unit.

1.4.19 Adjustment of inter-color position alignment (Function code 66)

<Function>

This function allows a service man to forcibly activate the inter-color position alignment adjustment function, which is usually executed automatically in a specified condition. If adjustment of inter-color position alignment (auto) fails because toner reaches its life, etc., you can adjust inter-color position alignment manually. The end user is allowed to execute reset of inter-color position alignment adjustment (manual) only.

Note:
If an error occurs after executing Maintenance Mode 66, upgrade the firmware to the latest one. (Refer to "1.1 Rewriting the Firmware (Sub Firmware, Main Firmware)" in Chapter 4.) After upgrading the firmware, execute Maintenance Mode 66 again.

■ Adjustment of inter-color position alignment (auto)

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **6** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode. "REGISTRATION" is displayed on the LCD.

(2) Press the **OK** button. "PLEASE WAIT" is displayed on the LCD, and adjustment of inter-color position alignment is automatically done.

(3) When this operation is completed without an error, "COMPLETED" is displayed on the LCD.

(4) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

When an error message is displayed on the LCD, take the measures described in the table below.

Error message	Measure
FAILED	Press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error. Adjust inter-color position alignment manually in accordance with the procedure for adjustment of inter-color position alignment (manual) given next page.
TONER EMPTY # [*1]	Replace the empty toner cartridge and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error. Conduct adjustment of inter-color position alignment (auto) again.
NG*L : c080 R : M105	Press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error. Conduct adjustment of inter-color position alignment (auto) again.
NG R-L : C030	
NG PWM L120 R180	
NG PWM R-L : 080	
NG CNT R100 L100	
NG S-POSI R : 080	
NG SKEW C : 050	
Cover is Open	Close the front cover.
No Paper	Replenish paper of the A4-size paper specified in the display on the tray. Conduct adjustment of inter-color position alignment (auto) again.
Jam Tray 1	Remove the jammed paper, and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Jam Rear	

[*1] # indicates the toner color (Y, M, or C) of which cartridge became empty.

Memo
Although adjustment of inter-color position alignment (auto) is executed several times and the result of inter-color position alignment adjustment chart (P5-41) does not fall within the range of ±4, readjust it according to the following procedures.

<Operating procedure after adjustment inter-color position alignment (auto) fails>

1) Press the **6** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode. "REGISTRATION" is displayed on the LCD. Load paper on the tray.
2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "PRINT CHART" on the LCD, and then press the **OK** button.
3) Display "PRINTING" on the LCD, and print the inter-color position alignment adjustment chart. After printing, "PRINT CHART" is displayed again.
4) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "OFFSET ADJUST" on the LCD, and then press the **OK** button. "1. MAGENTA = 0" is displayed on the LCD.
5) With the printed inter-color position alignment adjustment chart, check the numeric value where the color is the darkest among the pattern ❶ (Magenta Left). Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display that numeric value, and then press the **OK** button.
6) Enter the numeric value of the patterns ❷ to ❸ and ❼ to ❾ in the same way.
7) When you enter the numeric value of the pattern ❾ (Yellow Right), "COMPLETED" is displayed.
8) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

■ Adjustment of inter-color position alignment (manual)

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **6** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode. "REGISTRATION" is displayed on the LCD. Load paper on the tray.
(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "PRINT CHART" on the LCD, and then press the **OK** button.
(3) Display "PRINTING" on the LCD, and print the inter-color position alignment adjustment chart. After printing, "PRINT CHART" is displayed again.
(4) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "SET REGISTRATION" on the LCD, and then press the **OK** button. "1. MAGENTA = 0" is displayed on the LCD.
(5) With the printed inter-color position alignment adjustment chart, check the numeric value where the color is the darkest among the pattern ❶ (Magenta Left). Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display that numeric value, and then press the **OK** button.
(6) Enter the numeric value of the patterns ❷ to ❾ in the same way.
(7) When you enter the numeric value of the pattern ❾ (Yellow Right), "COMPLETED" is displayed.
(8) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

■ Inter-color position alignment adjustment chart

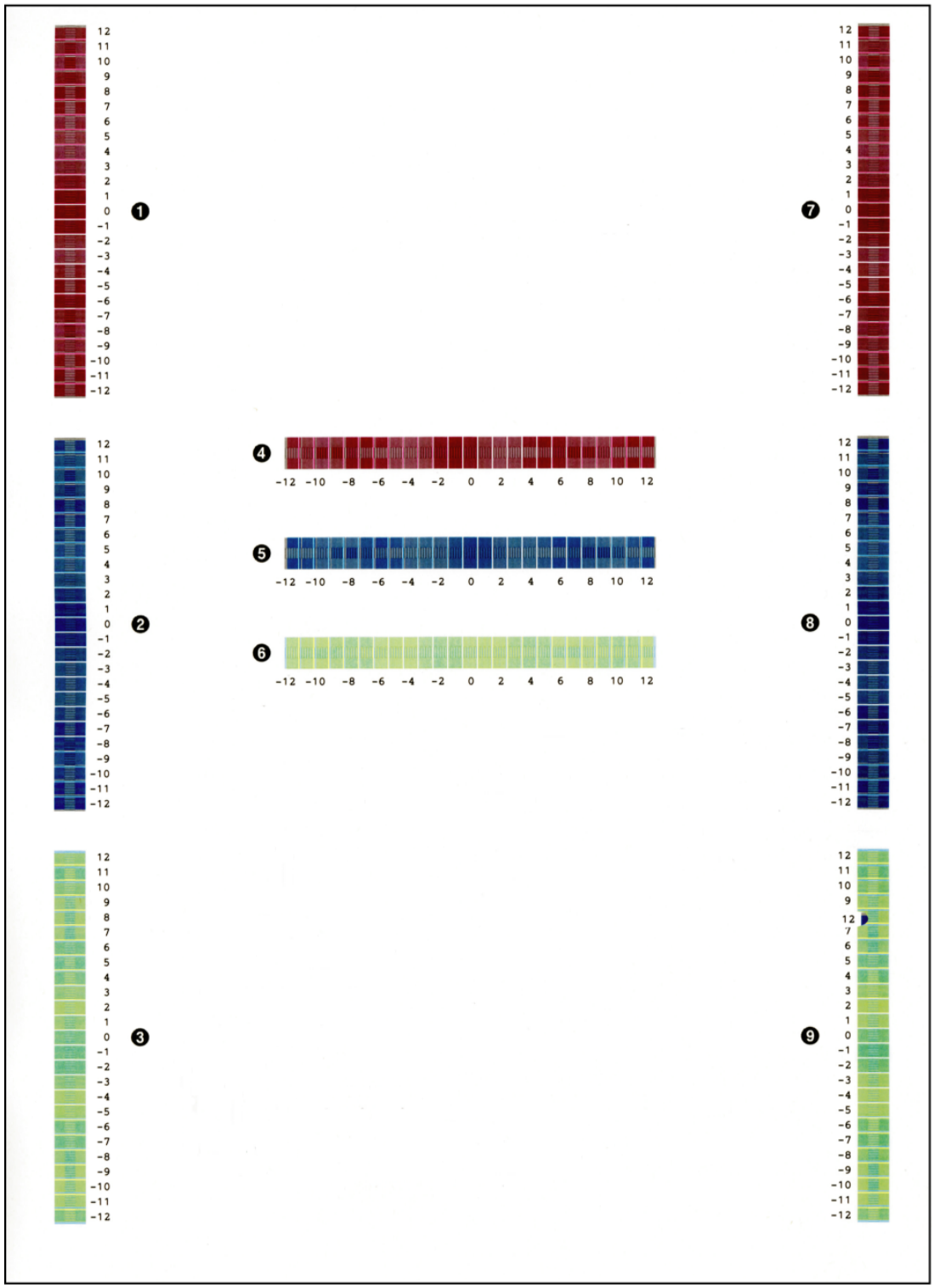


Fig. 5-22

■ Reset of inter-color position alignment adjustment (manual)

If adjustment of inter-color position alignment (both auto and manual) cannot be executed because an incorrect value is inputted in adjustment of inter-color position alignment (manual), etc., you can clear the input value for adjustment of inter-color position alignment (manual).

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **6** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode. "REGISTRATION" is displayed on the LCD.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "MANUAL REG RESET" on the LCD, and then press the **OK** button.

(3) Display "PLEASE WAIT" on the LCD.

If you want to perform adjustment of inter-color position alignment again, you may as well conduct adjustment of inter-color position alignment (auto) of Function code 66.

1.4.20 Continuous print test (Function code 67)

<Function>

This function allows you to conduct the pick-up and delivery test as printing patterns.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **6** and **7** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(2) When "SELECT: K 100%" is displayed on the LCD, select a relevant continuous print pattern using ▲ or ▼ button and then press the **OK** button.

The available continuous print patterns are shown below.

LCD
SELECT: K 100%
SELECT: C 100%
SELECT: M 100%
SELECT: Y 100%
SELECT: R 100%
SELECT: G 100%
SELECT: B 100%
SELECT: KCMY1%*
SELECT: KCMY5%*
SELECT: Lattice

* * KCMY1% and KCMY5% are available only for A4 and Letter.

(3) When "SELECT: A4" is displayed on the LCD, select a relevant paper size using ▲ or ▼ button, and then press the **OK** button.

The available paper sizes are shown below.

LCD
SELECT: A4
SELECT: LETTER
SELECT: LEGAL
SELECT: A5
SELECT: B6
SELECT: A6

(4) When "SELECT: TRAY1" is displayed on the LCD, press the ▲ or ▼ button to select the print format, and press the **OK** button.

The available print formats are shown below.

LCD
SELECT: TRAY1
SELECT: TRAY2
SELECT: MP
SELECT: TRAY1 DX
SELECT: TRAY2 DX
SELECT: MP DX

(5) The "PAPER FEED TEST" appears on the LCD, and print of the continuous print pattern with the selected pick-up test items starts.

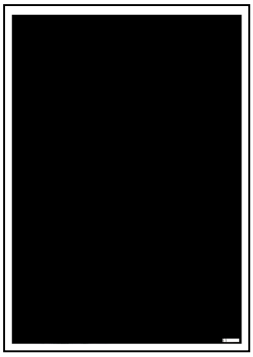
(6) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

Note:

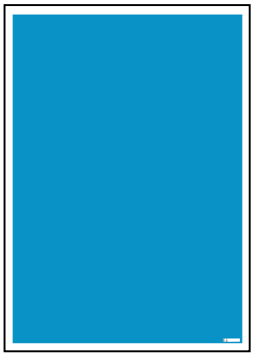
- The test printing is stopped until there is no paper in a tray. Press the **Stop/Exit** button to stop if you check the paper feeding and ejecting operations. (Printing is resumed when paper is loaded in the tray.)
- In the case that the error occurs during test printing, the continuous print is terminated. (If you do not press the **Cancel** button, printing is resumed when the error is cleared.)
- To clear the error, remove the error factors, and then press the **Start/Black** button.

■ **Continuous print pattern**

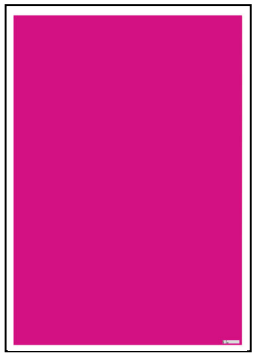
SELECT: K 100%



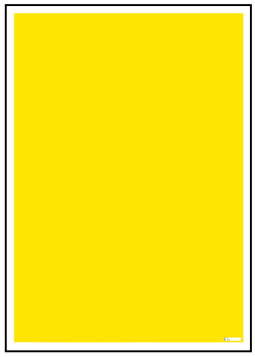
SELECT: C 100%



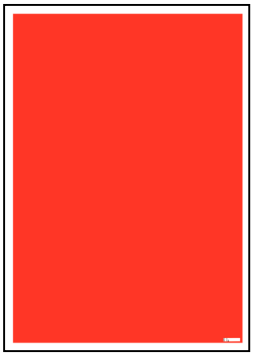
SELECT: M 100%



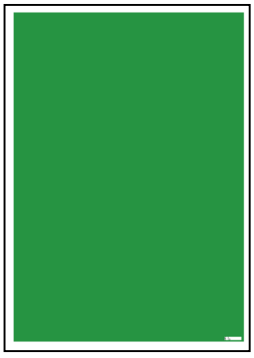
SELECT: Y 100%



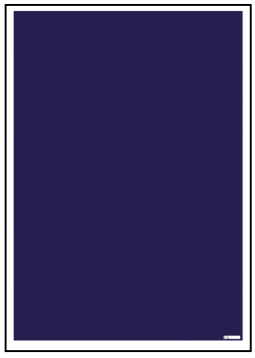
SELECT: R 100%



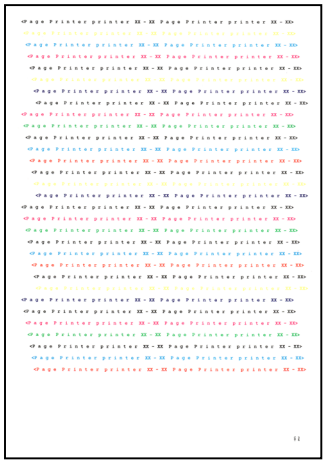
SELECT: G 100%



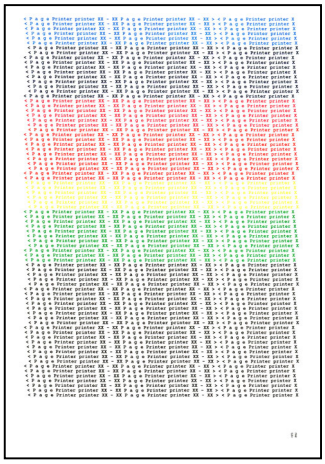
SELECT: B 100%



SELECT: KCMY1%



SELECT: KCMY5%



SELECT: Lattice

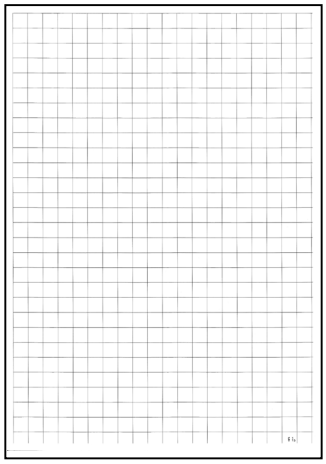


Fig. 5-23

1.4.21 Laser unit test pattern print (Function code 68)

<Function>

This function allows you to print the laser unit test patterns and check if there is any failure in the laser unit.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **6** and **8** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. "PRINTING" is displayed on the LCD, and one laser unit test pattern (refer to the figure below) is printed.

> **Note:**
> When printing fails, a relevant error is displayed on the LCD. When the error factors are removed and the **Start/Black** button is pressed, the machine automatically recovers to the re-executable state. "PRINTING" is displayed on the LCD, and the laser unit test pattern is printed on a sheet.

(2) When this operation is completed without an error, "SCANNER CHECK" is displayed on the LCD.

(3) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

When an error message is displayed on the LCD, take the measures described in the table below.

Error message	Measure
TONER EMPTY # *	Replace the empty toner cartridge and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Cover is Open	Close the front cover.
No Paper	Replenish paper of the A4-size paper specified in the display on the tray. Press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Jam Tray1	Remove the jammed paper, and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Jam Rear	

* # indicates the toner color (K, Y, M, or C) of which cartridge became empty.

■ Laser unit test pattern

Fig. 5-24

1.4.22 Frame pattern print (One-sided) (Function code 69)

<Function>

This function allows you to print one page of the frame pattern of the external circumference in one-sided printing and check if there is any deviation or omission of print.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Load Letter-size paper on the paper tray.

(2) Press the **6** and **9** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. "PRINTING" is displayed on the LCD, and one page of the frame pattern (Refer to the next page) in one-sided printing. When print is completed, "WAKU SX" is displayed on the LCD.

> **Note:**
> When printing fails, a relevant error is displayed on the LCD. Remove the cause of error and press the **Start/Black** button, and the product automatically goes back to the executable state, and "WAKU SX" is displayed on the LCD. Press the **OK** button, and "PRINTING" is displayed on the LCD, and one page of the frame pattern is printed in one-sided printing.

(3) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

When an error message is displayed on the LCD, take the measures described in the table below.

Error message	Measure
TONER EMPTY # *	Replace the empty toner cartridge and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Cover is Open	Close the front cover.
No Paper	Replenish the letter-size paper in the tray and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Jam Tray1	Remove the jammed paper, and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Jam Rear	

* # indicates the toner color (K, Y, M, or C) of which cartridge became empty.

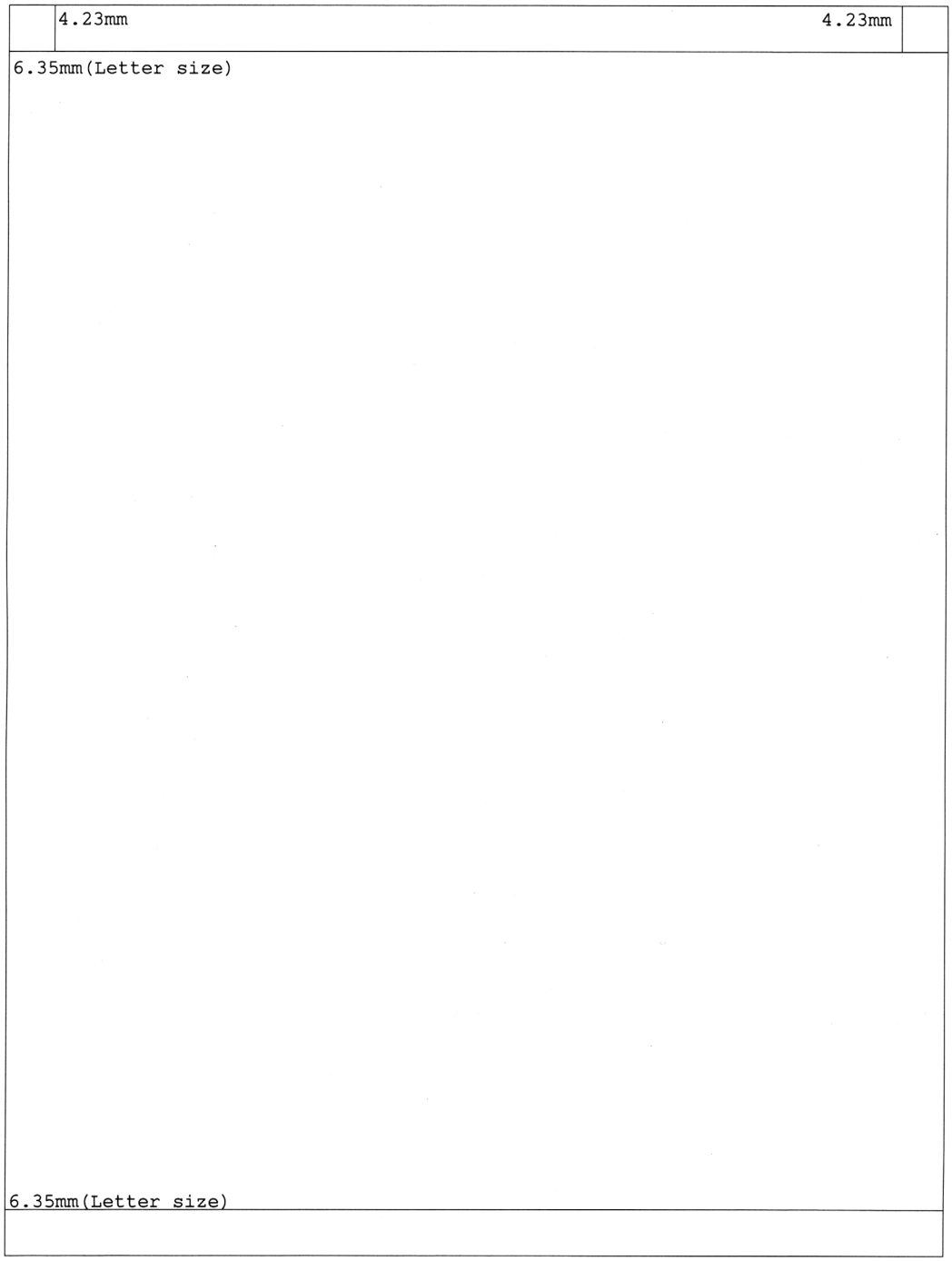


Fig. 5-25

1.4.23 Frame pattern print (Two-sided) (Function code 70)

<Function>

This function allows you to print one page of the frame pattern of the external circumference in two-sided printing and check if there is any deviation or omission of print.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Load Letter-size paper on the paper tray.

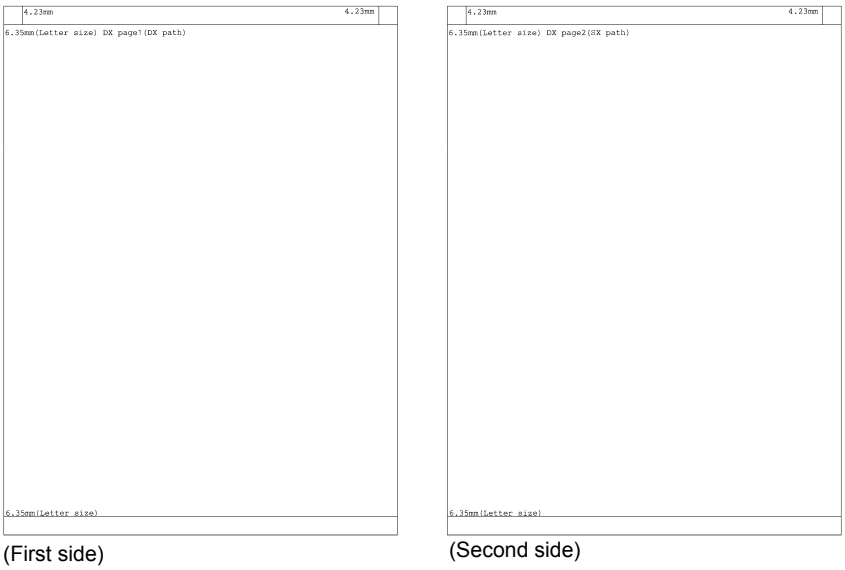
(2) Press the **7** and **0** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. "PRINTING" is displayed on the LCD, and one page of the frame pattern (refer to the figure below) in two-sided printing. When print is completed, "WAKU DX" is displayed on the LCD.

> **Note:**
> When printing fails, a relevant error is displayed on the LCD. Remove the cause of error and press the **Start/Black** button, and the product automatically goes back to the executable state, and "WAKU DX" is displayed on the LCD. Press the **OK** button, and "PRINTING" is displayed on the LCD, and one page of the frame pattern is printed in two-sided printing.

(3) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.
When an error message is displayed on the LCD, take the measures described in the table below.

Error message	Measure
TONER EMPTY # *	Replace the empty toner cartridge and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Cover is Open	Close the front cover.
No Paper	Replenish the letter-size paper in the tray and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Jam Tray1	Remove the jammed paper, and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Jam Rear	

* # indicates the toner color (K, Y, M, or C) of which cartridge became empty.



(First side) (Second side)

Fig. 5-26

1.4.24 Color test pattern (Function code 71)

<Function>

This function allows you to print the pattern of each color and check if there is any smear on or failure in the belt unit, develop roller, and exposure drum, etc.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **7** and **1** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(2) When "2D3S YCMK_ _A" is displayed on the LCD, press the ▲ or ▼ button to select an appropriate print pattern, and press the **OK** button.

(3) "PRINTING" is displayed on the LCD, and the color test pattern (Refer to the next page) is printed.

The available print patterns are shown below.

LCD	Description	
2D3S YCMK_ _A	One sheet for each color with full page print mode*	Total 4 sheet
2D3S MCYK	4-color horizontal band	Total 1 sheet
2D3S Y	Yellow	Total 1 sheet
2D3S C	Cyan	Total 1 sheet
2D3S M	Magenta	Total 1 sheet
2D3S K	Black	Total 1 sheet

* In the full page print mode, the cleaning operation is performed between printing of Magenta and Black.

Note:
When printing fails, a relevant error is displayed on the LCD. When the error factors are removed and the **Start/Black** button is pressed, the machine automatically recovers to the re-executable state. "PRINTING" is displayed on the LCD, and the color test pattern is printed.

(4) When printing is finished, the screen returns to the print pattern display. To print the solid color test pattern again, press the **OK** button.

(5) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

When an error message is displayed on the LCD, take the measures described in the table below.

Error message	Measure
TONER EMPTY # *	Replace the empty toner cartridge and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Cover is Open	Close the front cover.
No Paper	Replenish paper of the A4-size paper specified in the display on the tray. Press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Jam Tray1	Remove the jammed paper, and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error.
Jam Rear	

* # indicates the toner color (K, Y, M, or C) of which cartridge became empty.

■ Color test pattern

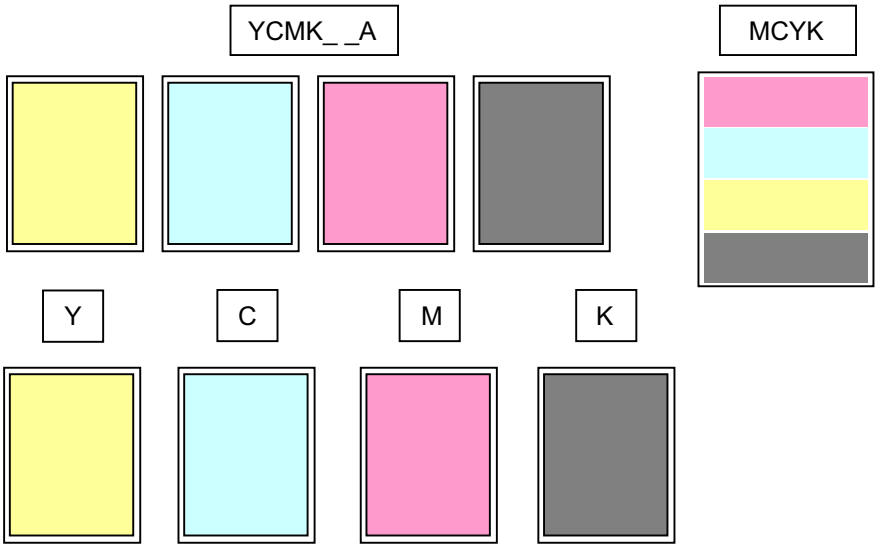


Fig. 5-27

1.4.25 Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor (Function code 72)

<Function>

This function allows you to print the patch data for density sensor sensitivity adjustment on the belt unit and measure the density with the density sensor. The characteristics of the density sensor are calculated based on the value measured by the density sensor, and the parameter is adjusted upon color density adjustment.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **7** and **2** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. "PLEASE WAIT" is displayed on the LCD.

(2) When the parameter is obtained without errors, the machine returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

When an error message is displayed on the LCD, take the measures described in the table below.

Error message	Measure
FAILED	Remove the error factors with the following operations and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error. - Re-insert the toner cartridge in the correct position. - Replace the toner cartridge. - Replace the drum unit. - Replace the belt unit. - Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
TONER EMPTY # *	Replace the empty toner cartridge and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error. Perform the sensitivity adjustment of the density sensor again.
Cover is Open	Close the front cover.
Replace Toner	Replace the black toner cartridge and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error. Perform the sensitivity adjustment of the density sensor again.

* # indicates the toner color (Y, M, or C) of which cartridge became empty.

1.4.26 Setting by country (Function code 74)

<Function>

This function allows you to customize the machine according to language, function settings, and worker switch settings.

Note:
When you replace the main PCB ASSY and rewrite the firmware forcibly, be sure to carry out this procedure.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **7** and **4** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The present country code is displayed.

(2) Enter the desired country code (e.g., MFC-9560CDW (U.S.A): 0301). The newly entered code appears.

Note:
The machine does not work properly when an incorrect code is entered.

(3) Press the **OK** button. The machine saves the setting and displays the "PARAMETER INIT" on the LCD. The machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

Memo
When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, or when no button is pressed for one second procedure during the above procedure, the machine cancels the above, beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode. In this case, the modified setting data is not saved.

■ Setting by country code list

Country	DCP-9055CN	DCP-9270CDN	MFC-9460CDN	MFC-9465CDN	MFC-9560CDW	MFC-9970CDW
U.S.A	---	---	0101	---	0301	0101
Canada	---	---	0102	---	0302	0102
Brazil	---	---	0142	---	---	---
Argentina/ Chile	---	---	---	---	---	0136
Germany	1004	1004	0103	0203	---	0103
UK	1004	1004	0104	0204	---	0104
France	1005(1055)	1005(1055)	0105(0155)	0205(0255)	---	0105(0155)
Belgium	1008(1055)	1008(1055)	0108(0155)	0208(0255)	---	0108(0155)
Netherlands	1009(1055)	1009(1055)	0109(0155)	0209(0255)	---	0109(0155)
Spain	1015(1066)	1015(1066)	0115(0165)	0215(0265)	---	0115(0166)
Italy	1004(1066)	1004(1066)	0116	0216	---	0116(0166)
Portugal	1004(1066)	1004(1066)	0118(0165)	0218(0265)	---	0118(0166)
Switzerland	1004	1004	0110	0210	---	0110
Norway	1004	1004	0107(0157)	0207(0257)	---	0107(0157)
Sweden	1004	1004	0126(0157)	0226(0257)	---	0126(0157)
Finland	1004	1004	0112(0157)	0212(0257)	---	0112(0157)
Denmark	1004	1004	0113(0157)	0213(0257)	---	0113(0517)
Slovakia	1004	1004	0130(0188)	---	---	---
Bulgaria	1004	1004	0132(0188)	---	---	---
Rumania	1004	1004	0133(0188)	---	---	---
Czech	1004	1004	0137(0188)	---	---	---
Hungary	1004	1004	0138(0188)	---	---	---
Poland	1004	1004	0139(0188)	---	---	---
Russia	---	---	---	0248	---	---
EEU General	---	---	0150	0250	---	0150
South Africa	---	---	0124(0174)	---	---	0124(0174)
Turkey	---	---	0125(0174)	---	---	0125(0174)
Australia	0040	---	0106(0156)	---	---	0106(0156)
New Zealand	0040	---	0127(0156)	---	---	0127(0156)
Singapore/ Hong Kong/ Gulf	0040	---	0140	---	---	0140
Korea	---	---	0140	---	---	---
China	0020	---	---	0220	---	---

* Country codes are subject to change without notice.

Note:

The information in this page is as of August 2010.
For information on the latest code settings, see the ROM/firmware information provided by Brother.

1.4.27 Sensitivity adjustment of registration mark sensor and check of belt unit surface (Function code 75)

<Function>

This function makes the registration mark sensor to adjust its sensitivity compulsory. This allows you to check if the registration mark sensor works properly. This function makes the machine to check the surface of the belt unit by using the registration mark sensor as well.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **7** and **5** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. After "REGI_SENS ADJUST" is displayed on the LCD, "REGI ADJ-BELTOFF" is displayed.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select the appropriate item.

LCD	Description
REGI ADJ - BELTOFF	Adjust the sensitivity of the registration mark sensor when the belt unit is not operated. This is to check whether the registration mark sensor's operation is okay or not.
REGI BELT CHECK	Check that there are no scratches on the surface of the belt unit of the registration mask sensor.
REGI ADJ&CHECK	Adjust the sensitivity of the registration mark sensor when the belt unit is operated. (This adjustment is the same as the operation before the inter-color position alignment.)

(3) Press the **Start/Black** button to execute adjustment of the sensitivity. Upon completion of this adjustment, the "OK" appears on the LCD.

(4) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

Note:

- If you press the **Start/Black** button during the sensitivity adjustment or after the error message appears on the LCD, the sensitivity adjustment is started again.
- In the case that the error occurs, refer to the next page to check the error description and the way to solve it.

■ Error display when "REGI ADJ-BELTOFF" is executed

Error message	Description	Solution
REGI_ADJ:NG	Registration mark sensor failure	Execute the adjustment of inter-color position alignment (manual).(Refer to "Adjustment of inter-color position alignment (Function code 66)" in this chapter.)
		Replace the belt unit.
		Replace the engine PCB ASSY.
		Replace the main PCB ASSY.
		Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.

■ Error display when "REGI BELT CHECK" or "REGI ADJ&CHECK" is executed

Error message	Description	Solution
NG:X L:YYY R:ZZZ *1, *2	Error occurred at the registration mark sensor L or registration mark sensor R, or at the both of them.	Execute the adjustment of inter-color position alignment (manual). If the error occurs again, replace the belt unit. (Refer to "Adjustment of inter-color position alignment (Function code 66)" in this chapter.)

*1 X shows the result of the state check of the belt unit surface in the number of errors (1 to 9). As the number is larger, the state of the belt unit is worse. When an error is detected at the registration mark sensor L or registration mark sensor R, the number of errors which occurred at the registration mark sensor L is displayed. (The number of errors which occurred at the registration mark sensor R is displayed only when no error is detected at the registration mark sensor L.) When ten or more errors are detected, "NG: A" is displayed.

*2 YYY and ZZZ indicate the largest width in 2,400 dpi dots among the error noises detected by the registration mark sensor L and registration mark sensor R respectively. (1 to 999). When an error noise of which width exceeds 999 is detected, "L: 999 R: 999" is displayed.

1.4.28 Operational check of fans (Function code 78)

<Function>

This function is to check whether each of fans is operating correctly or not. The operation of the following fan is checked respectively, and their operating states (rotation speed 100 %, rotation speed 50 %, or OFF) are displayed.

LCD	Parts name	Description
F	Fuser fan	Evacuate hot air of the fuser unit.
P	Power fan	Evacuate hot air of the low-voltage power supply PCB ASSY.
B	Blower	Intake air to prevent a dirt on the corona wire.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **7** and **8** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The indication will appear on the LCD as shown in the figure below.

(2) Press the **Start/Black** button to check the next item. For operation check, spin or stop fans actually on each item.

(3) Press the **Stop/Exit** button so that the machine stops checking the fans, beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

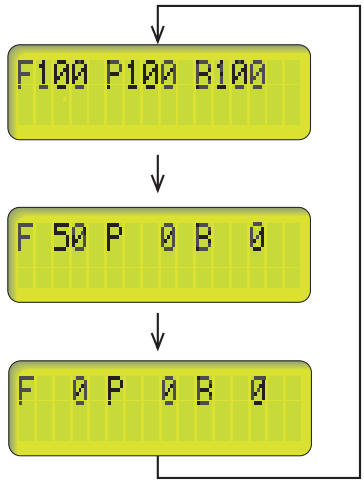


Fig. 5-28

■ Location of fans

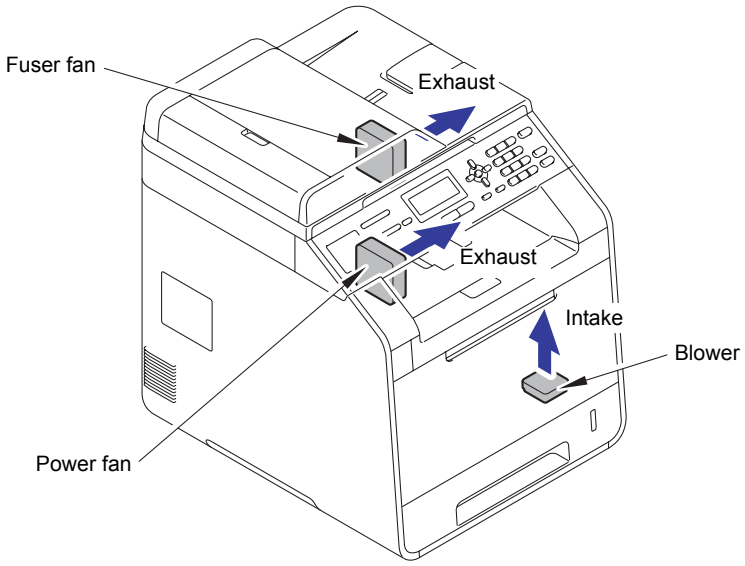


Fig. 5-29

1.4.29 Display of the machine history (log) (Function code 80)

<Function>

This function allows you to view the machine's history (log). The display items are shown in the table below.

	LCD	Description
Serial	USB:	Serial number
MAC Address	MAC:	MAC Address (Ethernet Address)
PCB Serial	PCB:	Main PCB serial number
Drum related items	DRUM:	Number of drum rotations
	DRUM_PG:	Number of printed pages by drum
	DRUM_CH: *1	Number of times the drum unit has been replaced/ Date of last replacement
Toner related items	CTN_PG1:	Number of printed pages by cyan toner
	CTN_PG2:	Number of printed pages before previous reset of cyan toner
	CTN_ERM:	Remaining toner amount of cyan toner (the calculated value in dots)
	CTN_RRM:	Remaining toner amount of cyan toner (the remaining amount based on the number of rotations of the developer roller)
	CTN_CH: *1	Number of times the cyan toner has been replaced/ Date of last replacement
	CTN_RND:	Cyan toner developer roller count
	MTN_PG1:	Number of printed pages by magenta toner
	MTN_PG2:	Number of printed pages before previous reset of magenta toner
	MTN_ERM:	Remaining toner amount of magenta toner (the calculated value in dots)
	MTN_RRM:	Remaining toner amount of magenta toner (the remaining amount based on the number of rotations of the developer roller)
	MTN_CH: *1	Number of times the magenta toner has been replaced/Date of last replacement
	MTN_RND:	Magenta toner developer roller count

*1 Press the **OK** button while the number of times that the consumable part has been replaced is displayed, the date last time the consumable part was replaced is displayed. Press the **OK** button again, and the number of times the consumable part has been replaced is displayed again.

	LCD	Description
Toner related items	YTN_PG1:	Number of printed pages by yellow toner
	YTN_PG2:	Number of printed pages before previous reset of yellow toner
	YTN_ERM:	Remaining toner amount of yellow toner (the calculated value in dots)
	YTN_RRM:	Remaining toner amount of yellow toner (the remaining amount based on the number of rotations of the developer roller)
	YTN_CH: *1	Number of times the yellow toner has been replaced/ Date of last replacement
	YTN_RND:	Yellow toner developer roller count
	KTN_PG1:	Number of printed pages by black toner
	KTN_PG2:	Number of printed pages before previous reset of black toner
	KTN_ERM:	Remaining toner amount of black toner (the calculated value in dots)
	KTN_RRM:	Remaining toner amount of black toner (the remaining amount based on the number of rotations of the developer roller)
	KTNR_CH: *1	Number of times the black toner has been replaced/ Date of last replacement
	KTN_RND:	Black toner developer roller count
Other replacing part related items	WTNR_PG:	Printed pages by waste toner box
	WTNR_CH: *1	Number of times the waste toner box has been replaced/Date of last replacement
	BCLN:	Number of rotations of the belt cleaner roller
	BELT_PG:	Printed pages by belt unit
	BELT_CH:	Number of times the belt unit has been replaced
	PFMP_PG:	Printed pages by MP paper feeding kit
	PFMP_CH:	Number of times the MP paper feeding kit has been replaced
	PFK1_PG:	Printed pages by paper feeding kit1
	PFK1_CH:	Number of times the paper feeding kit1 has been replaced
	PFK2_PG:	Printed pages by paper feeding kit2
	PFK2_CH:	Number of times the paper feeding kit2 has been replaced

*1 Press the **OK** button while the number of times that the consumable part has been replaced is displayed, the date last time the consumable part was replaced is displayed. Press the **OK** button again, and the number of times the consumable part has been replaced is displayed again.

	LCD	Description
Other replacing part related items	FUSR_PG:	Printed pages by fuser unit
	FUSR_CH:	Number of times the fuser unit has been replaced
	LASR_PG:	Printed pages by laser unit
	LASR_CH:	Number of times the laser unit has been replaced
Average print rate related items *2	CCVRGUSI:	Average cyan coverage % (Toner in use)
	CCVRGACC:	Average cyan coverage % (Accumulated)
	MCVRGUSI:	Average magenta coverage % (Toner in use)
	MCVRGACC:	Average magenta coverage % (Accumulated)
	YCVRGUSI:	Average yellow coverage % (Toner in use)
	YCVRGACC:	Average yellow coverage % (Accumulated)
	KCVRGUSI:	Average black coverage % (Toner in use)
	KCVRGACC:	Average black coverage % (Accumulated)
Print pages related items	TTL_PG:	Total number of printed pages
	TTL_CO:	Total number of color printed pages
	TTL_MO:	Total number of monochrome printed pages
	TTL_CI:	Cyan printed pages
	TTL_MI:	Magenta printed pages
	TTL_YI:	Yellow printed pages
	TTL_KI:	Black printed pages
	TTLCOPY:	Number of copy pages
	CL_COPY:	Number of color copy pages
	MN_COPY:	Number of B/W copy pages
	TTLPCPT	Number of PC prints made
	CL_PCPT:	Total number of PC color printed pages
	MN_PCPT:	Total number of PC monochrome printed pages
	TTLFAX	Number of List/FAX outputs made
	CL_FAX:	Total number of color List/FAX printed pages
	MN_FAX:	Total number of monochrome List/FAX printed pages
Picked-up pages by tray	TR1_PG:	Number of pages picked up from the paper tray 1
	TR2_PG:	Number of pages picked up from the paper tray 2
	MP_PG:	Number of pages picked up from the MP tray
	DX_PG:	Number of sheets picked up from the DX
Picked-up pages by paper size	A4+LTR:	Number of A4/Letter size sheets picked up
	LG+F0L:	Number of Legal/Folio size sheets picked up
	B5+EXE:	Number of B5/Executive size sheets picked up
	ENVLOP:	Number of envelopes picked up
	A5:	Number of A5 size (including A5R) sheets picked up
	OTHER:	Number of other-size (including JIS B6) sheets picked up

*2 Average print rate: Print area/printable area

	LCD	Description
Print pages by paper type[*3]	PLTNRE:	Printed pages of plain, thin, and recycled paper
	TKTRBD:	Printed pages of thick, thicker, and bond paper
	ENVTYP:	Printed pages of envelope, envelope thick, and envelope thin
	HAGAKI:	Printed pages of Hagaki
	LABEL:	Printed pages of label
	GLOSSY:	Number of prints of glossy paper
Developing bias related time	CDEV_BIAS:	Cyan developing bias voltage (unit: V)
	MDEV_BIAS:	Magenta developing bias voltage (unit: V)
	YDEV_BIAS:	Yellow developing bias voltage (unit: V)
	KDEV_BIAS:	Black developing bias voltage (unit: V)
Power distribution time	POWER:	Power distribution time (unit: H)
	PWRCNT:	Number of times that the power is turned ON
Jam related items	TTL_JAM:	Total number of times when a jam occurs
	TR1_JAM:	Number of times when a jam occurs at the paper tray 1
	TR2_JAM:	Number of times when a jam occurs at the paper tray 2
	MP_JAM:	Number of times when a jam occurs at the MP tray
	DX_JAM	Number of sheets jammed in the DX
	IN_JAM:	Number of sheets jammed in the product
	RE_JAM:	Number of sheets jammed around the back cover
	ADSX_JAM:	Number of jams that occurred at singled sided scanning with the ADF
	ADDX_JAM:	Number of jams that occurred at double sided scanning with the ADF
Number of scanned pages	ADSX_PG:	Number of pages scanned in singled sided scanning with the ADF
	ADDX_PG:	Number of pages scanned in double sided scanning with the ADF
	FB_PG:	Number of pages scanned with the document table
Number of error occurrences	HODN_ER:	Number of times that the error caused by the dirt on the corona wire occurs
	FUSR_ER:	Number of times that fuser unit error occurs
	MTLK_ER:	Number of times that the motor lock error in the laser scanner occurs

[*3] Paper type according to the printer driver settings. It is not necessarily matched with the type of the actually fed paper.

	LCD	Description
Error log related items	MACHINEERR_##: *4	Error history ## to be displayed to the user: Error code/Occurrence page counter
	COMERR##:	Last communication error code
	ENGERR##:****** *5	Engine error history ##: Error level (2 bytes), large classification code (2 bytes), detailed classification code (2 bytes)
	DEVSTATUS__##: *6	Log for design analysis/Occurrence page counter

*4 01 to 10 are entered in ## in chronological order. When you press the **OK** button as the machine error history is displayed, the page counter values when the errors occurred are displayed.

*5 01 to 10 are entered in ## in chronological order. When you press the **OK** button as the engine error history is displayed, TM: elapsed time (minute) from the previous error and BT: the number of times when the power is ON are displayed. When you press the **OK** button again, the engine error history is displayed again.

*6 01 to 10 are entered in ## in chronological order. In the log for design analysis, even if a same error occurs continuously, it is recorded in the history every time it occurs.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **8** and **0** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(2) Each time the **Start/Black** button is pressed, next log information item appears on the LCD in the order. Press the ▼ button to go to the next item. Press the ▲ button to go back to the previous item.

(3) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

Note:
Regarding "MACHINEERR", "COMERR", and "ENGERR", when the **OK** button is pressed while the error history is displayed, the page counter value at which the error occurred is displayed. Press the **OK** button again to return the machine to the error history display.

1.4.30 Error code indication (Function code 82)

<Function>

This function displays an error code of the machine on the LCD.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **8** and **2** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The machine displays "MACHINE ERROR X X" on the LCD.

(2) Press the **Stop/Exit** button to return to the machine to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

1.4.31 Developing bias voltage correction (Function code 83)

<Function>

This function performs developing bias voltage correction to fix the density of each color toner when printed color is not correct.

Note:
Before this function is performed, there is a need that the "Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor (Function mode 72)" has been done more than once. When performing this maintenance mode 83 after replacing the main PCB ASSY, make sure to perform the "Sensitivity adjustment of density sensor (Function mode 72)" first.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **8** and **3** buttons in this order in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The machine displays "PLEASE WAIT" on the LCD and starts the developing bias voltage correction.

(2) Upon completion of the developing bias voltage correction, the machine returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode. When an error message is displayed on the LCD, take the measures described in the table below.

Error message	Measure
FAILED	Remove the error factors with the following operations and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error. - Re-insert the toner cartridge in the correct position. - Replace the toner cartridge. - Replace the drum unit. - Replace the belt unit. - Replace the registration mark sensor holder ASSY.
TONER EMPTY # *	Replace the empty toner cartridge and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error. Perform the developing bias voltage correction again after performing the sensitivity adjustment of density sensor (Function code72).
Cover is Open	Close the front cover.
Replace Toner	Replace the black toner cartridge and press the **Start/Black** button to clear the error. Perform the developing bias voltage correction again after performing the sensitivity adjustment of density sensor (Function code72).

* # indicates the toner color (Y, M, or C) of which cartridge became empty.

Note:
Any panel operation is invalid during the developing bias voltage correction.

1.4.32 Sending communication error list (Function code 87)

<Function>

This function is to send the error list to a service man at a remote location when a FAX communication error occurs on a user's machine. Reception of the error list enables a service man to analyze the problem occurring on a user's machine.

<Operating procedure>

- Service side

(1) The service side connects the phone line to the user in question.

- User side

(1) Press the **Menu** button and **Start/Black** button as the machine is in the ready state.

(2) Press the **0** button to display "0" on the LCD.

(3) Press the **8** button and **7** button in this order, and "SENDING P.01" is displayed on the LCD, and the error list is sent.

(4) When the error list is sent, the machine beeps for approximately 1 second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

Note:
If this operation is not performed while the phone line is connected, the error list sending operation is not started. Be sure to perform the operation explained above while the phone line is connected (i.e., while making a call using the built-in H/S, using the additional telephone set, or using the line monitor).

1.4.33 Counter reset after replacing the fuser unit and paper feeding kit (Function code 88)

<Function>

The number of replacement is increased by one, and the warning indication "Replace ***" is cleared, with implementing this operation after replacing the fuser unit and paper feeding kit.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **8** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode.

(2) The "Reset-Fuser Unit" will appear on the LCD.

(3) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select the item you want to reset. The LCD shows.

"Reset-Fuser Unit"

"Reset-PF KIT"

(4) Press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button, then "OK?" will appear on the LCD.

(5) Press the **OK** or **Start/Black** button to reset the counter of the selected part and returns the operating procedure (2) mode.

(6) When the **Stop/Exit** button is pressed, the machine beeps for one second and returns to the initial state of the maintenance mode.

1.4.34 Exit from the maintenance mode (Function code 99)

<Function>

This function allows you to exit from the maintenance mode. If the error related to the fuser unit occurs, the error is cleared. (Refer to "2.4 How to Recover from Errors of the Fuser Unit" in this chapter.)

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **9** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode. The maintenance mode exits from the maintenance mode and return to the ready state.

> **Note:**
>
> When a fuser error occurs, be sure to turn ON the power after cooling the halogen heater sufficiently.

2. OTHER SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2.1 Developer Roller Counter Reset Function

This function is to manually perform the operation same as the one when a toner cartridge is replaced with a new one. The purpose of this function is to provide a means to resolve an error when a new toner cannot be recognized by the machine, and the toner life display fails to be cleared.

(1) Press the **Clear** button while the front cover is being opened.

(2) "Reset Menu" appears on the LCD. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select the appropriate toner cartridge, and then press the **OK** button.

LCD	Description
K. TNR-STD	Starter/Standard black toner developer roller counter reset
K. TNR-HC	High capacity black toner developer roller counter reset
K. TNR-S.HC	Super high capacity black toner developer roller counter reset
C. TNR-STD	Starter/Standard cyan toner developer roller counter reset
C. TNR-HC	High capacity cyan toner developer roller counter reset
C. TNR-S.HC	Super high capacity cyan toner developer roller counter reset
M. TNR-STD	Starter/Standard magenta toner developer roller counter reset
M. TNR-HC	High capacity magenta toner developer roller counter reset
M. TNR-S.HC	Super high capacity magenta toner developer roller counter reset
Y. TNR-STD	Starter/Standard yellow toner developer roller counter reset
Y. TNR-HC	High capacity yellow toner developer roller counter reset
Y. TNR-S.HC	Super high capacity yellow toner developer roller counter reset

(3) Once " ▲ Reset ▼ Exit" appears on the LCD; press ▲ button.

(4) The developer roller counter is reset.

(5) The machine returns to the state in which the front cover is open.

Note:
If there is no operation for 30 seconds or more, the machine automatically returns to step (1).

2.2 Parts Life Reset Function

This function is used to reset the relevant part counter when the user replaced a periodical replacement part with the correct procedure, and also used to forcibly reset the relevant part counter when an error cannot be resolved because the user did not replace a consumable part with the correct procedure.

(1) Press the **3** and **9** buttons at the same time in the ready state.

(2) The "Reset Menu" will appear on the LCD. Select the applicable periodical replacement part or consumable part by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button and press the **OK** button.

<Periodical replacement parts or consumable part are indicated on the LCD>

- Drum unit
- Belt unit
- PF kit MP
- PF kit 1
- PF kit 2
- Fuser
- Laser

(3) Once " ▲ Reset ▼ Exit" appears on the LCD; press ▲ button.

(4) The machine implements clearing the counter.

Note:

- All replacement parts are always indicated on the LCD even though their lives do not reach the end of life.
- The machine returns to the ready state automatically if no panel operation is implemented for 30 seconds.

2.3 Deletion of User Setting Information, etc.

In this machine, the user setting information is stored in the EEPROM and flash memory of the main PCB ASSY. You can delete all the data listed below at a time with the procedure given below.

- Information related to Net
- User setting information

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **Menu** button while the machine is in the ready state.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button, then the "Initial Setup" or "General Setup" will appears on the LCD and press the **OK** button.
(Which will appear, "Initial Setup" or "General Setup", depends on the model.)

(3) Press the ▲ or ▼ button, then the "Reset Menu" will appear on the LCD and press the **OK** button.

(4) Press the ▲ or ▼ button, then the "All Settings" will appear on the LCD and press the **OK** button.

Non Touch panel model

(5) The "1.Reset 2.Exit" appear on the LCD.

(6) Press the **1** button, and the user setting information is deleted, and the machine goes back to the ready state.

Touch panel model

(5) The "Yes No" appear on the LCD.

(6) Press the "Yes", and the user setting information is deleted, and the machine goes back to the ready state.

Note:

The machine returns to the ready state automatically if no panel operation is implemented for 30 seconds.

2.4 How to Recover from Errors of the Fuser Unit

How to recover from errors of the fuser unit is to use Function code 99 in the maintenance mode.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **Menu** button and then the **Start/Black** button while the machine is in the ready state. Next, press the ▲ button four times to enter the maintenance mode.

Memo:
FAX models equipped with numerical keypads can enter the maintenance mode in the same way as conventional models; that is, by pressing the **Menu**, *, **2**, **8**, **6** and **4** buttons in this sequence.

(2) The machine beeps for one second and displays "▮▮ MAINTENANCE ▮▮▮" on the LCD, indicating that it is placed in the initial state of the maintenance mode, a mode in which the machine is ready to accept entry from the buttons.

(3) To exit from the maintenance mode and switch to ready state, press the **9** button twice in the initial state of the maintenance mode.

WARNING
When clearing an error, be sure that the fuser unit is cooled down sufficiently. If an error is cleared while the fuser unit is not cooled down, there is a possibility that the unit might be unable to be repaired.

2.5 Drum Cleaning

■ Drum cleaning function overview

This function is to attach a special cleaning sheet on the drum and perform the cleaning of the drum.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **Cancel** button and ▼ button while the machine is in the ready state.
"Drum Cleaning/Attach the cleaning sheet. Please refer to the included instructions." is displayed on the LCD.

(2) Open the front cover, take out the drum unit, and attach the cleaning sheet on the drum unit. (For the method of attaching the cleaning sheet, refer to the insertion of the cleaning sheet.)

(3) Mount the drum unit to the machine and close the front cover.
"Drum Cleaning/Please wait" is displayed on the LCD, and then drum cleaning starts.

(4) After a while, "Drum Cleaning/Drum Cleaning completed. Remove the cleaning sheet." is displayed on the LCD, and drum cleaning is completed. Then, open the front cover, take out the drum unit, and remove the cleaning sheet from the drum unit.

(5) Mount the drum unit to the machine and close the front cover, and the machine goes back to the ready state.

Note:
If the machine is not operated for 1 minute while it is in the state of the procedure (1), it goes back to the ready state.

2.6 Deep Sleep Function

In addition to the sleep function with the normal specifications, the deep sleep function is prepared to reduce the power consumption.

The deep sleep function is used to stop the operation of the following functions whereas they are available in the normal sleep mode.

- Operation of the wireless LAN
- Power supply to the paper tray 2
- Operation of all the fans
- Detection of files in a USB memory

<Transition conditions>

The machine goes into the deep sleep function when the user does not operate the machine (from a PC) and no warning such as an error is issued after it goes into the normal sleep mode and all the fans are stopped. When secure print exists, the machine does not go into the deep sleep mode.

<How to Exit>

The machine exits from the deep sleep function when it receives an input from the outside, for instance when it receives print data from a PC, or when any button on the control panel is operated, or when the front cover is opened or closed.

■ Setting of ON/OFF of the deep sleep function

You can set ON/OFF of the deep sleep function so that the machine will not go into the deep sleep function even when the aforementioned conditions are satisfied.

<Operating procedure>

(1) Press the **OK** button while the machine is in the ready state.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "General Setup" on the LCD, and then press the **OK** button.

(3) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "General Setup/Ecology" on the LCD, and then press the **OK** button.

(4) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display "Sleep Time" on the LCD, and then press the **OK** button.

(5) Press the **Job Cancel** button and **Start/Black** button at the same time while "Sleep Time/ *Min" is displayed on the LCD. "Deep Sleep/On*" is displayed on the LCD.

(6) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to switch Deep Sleep On and Off and display the state that you want to set, and then press the **OK** button.

(7) “Deep Sleep/Accepted” is displayed on the LCD, and the machine goes back to the ready state.

Note:

- When no operation is made for 30 seconds during the switching operation, the machine goes back to the ready state.
- The initial value of Deep Sleep is set to On.
- In the procedure (5), the present setting (On or Off) of Deep Sleep is displayed on the LCD.
- "*" is displayed on the right side of the present setting (On or Off) of Deep Sleep.

CHAPTER 6
CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS & WIRING DIAGRAM

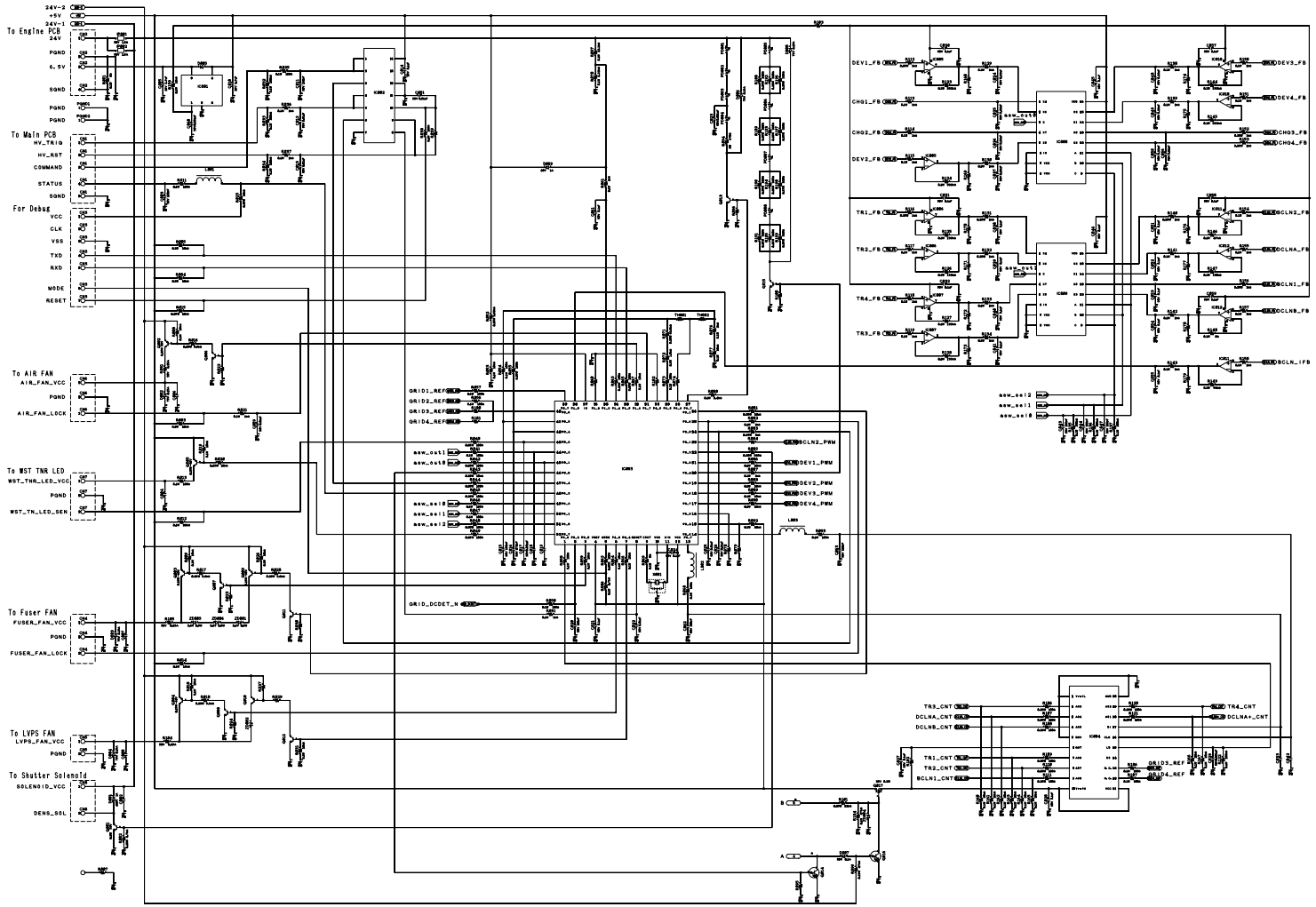
CHAPTER 6
CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS & WIRING DIAGRAM

This chapter provides the circuit diagrams and wiring diagram for the connections of the PCBs.

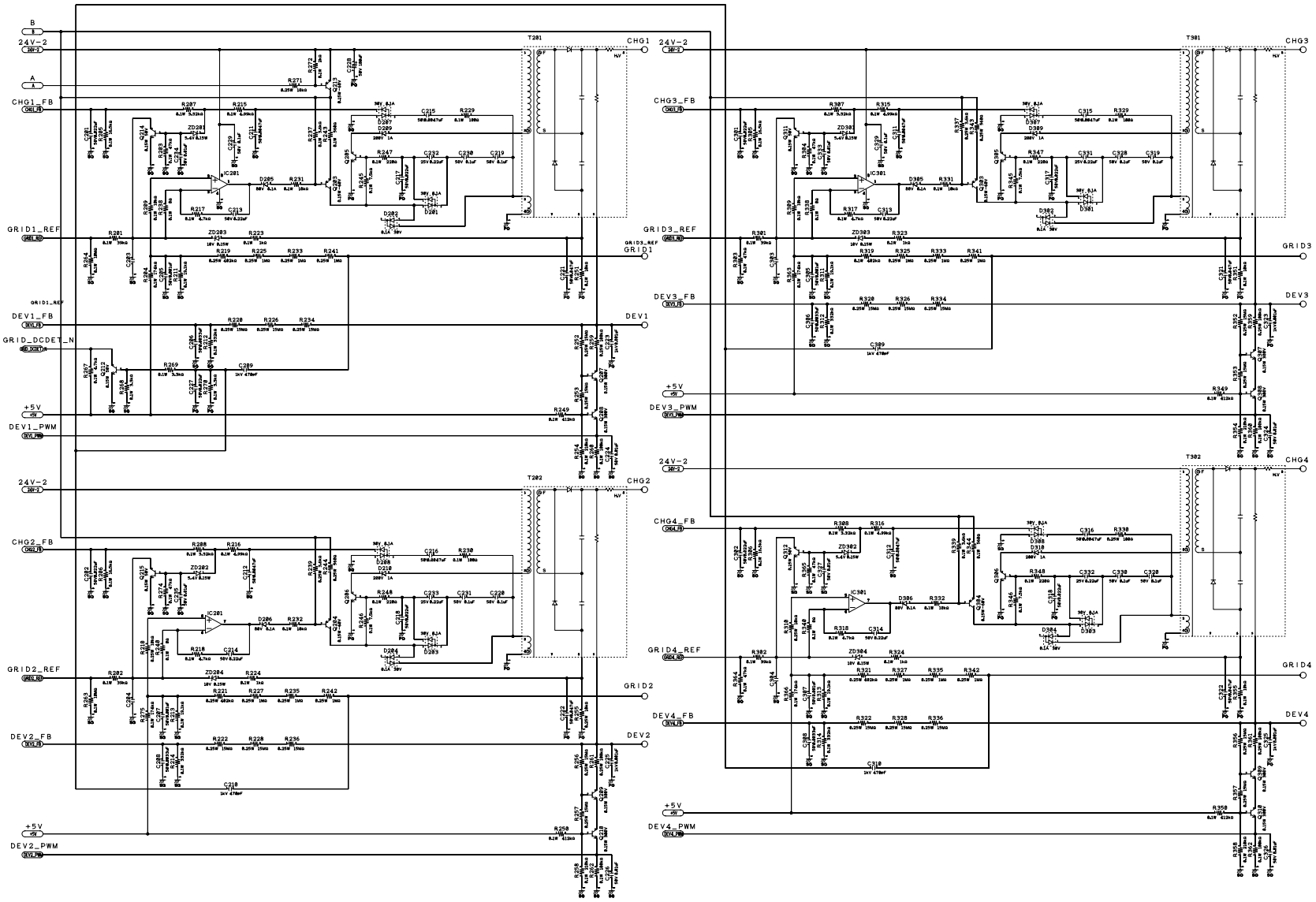
CONTENTS

1. CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS

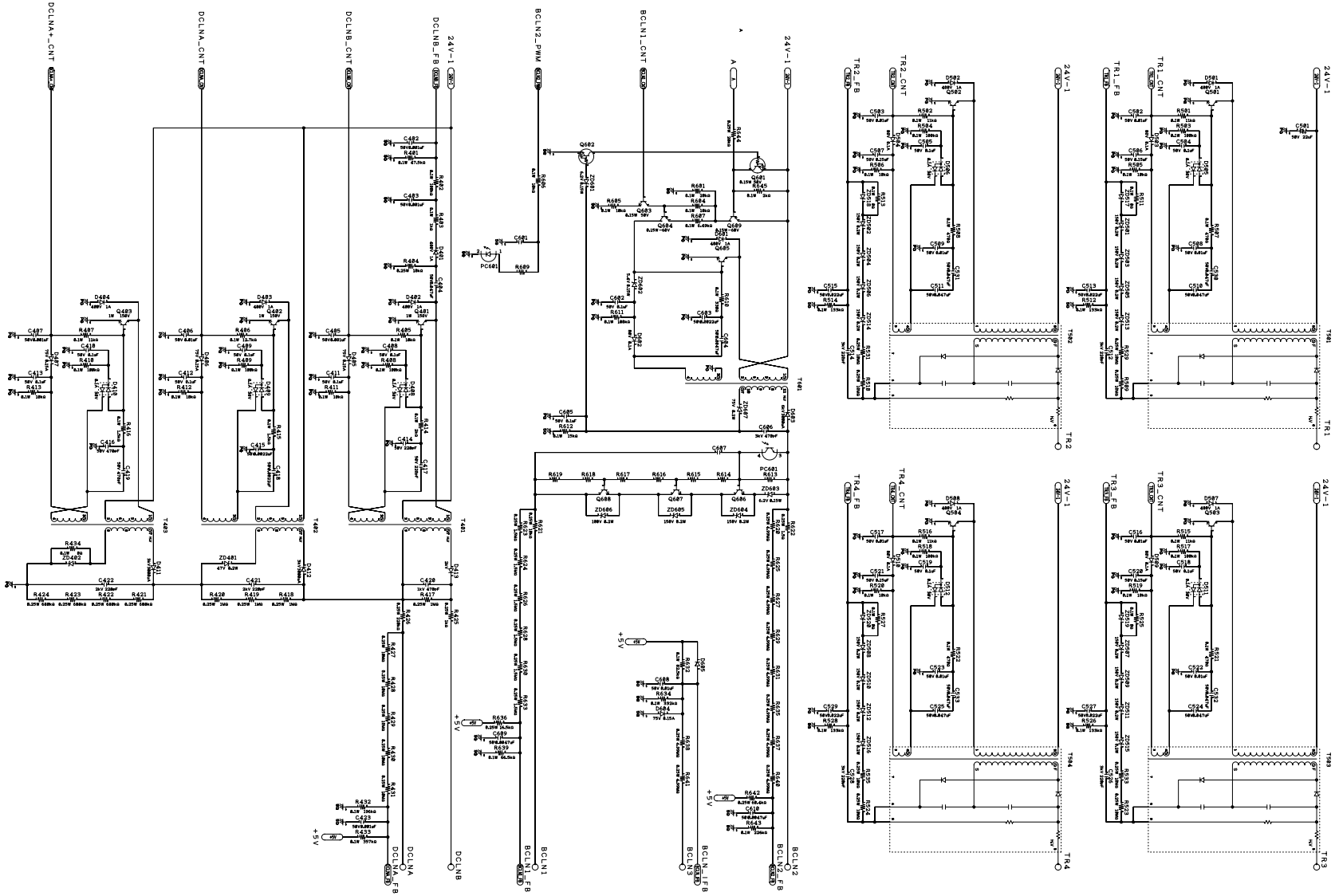
■ **High-voltage Power Supply PCB Circuit Diagram (1/3)**



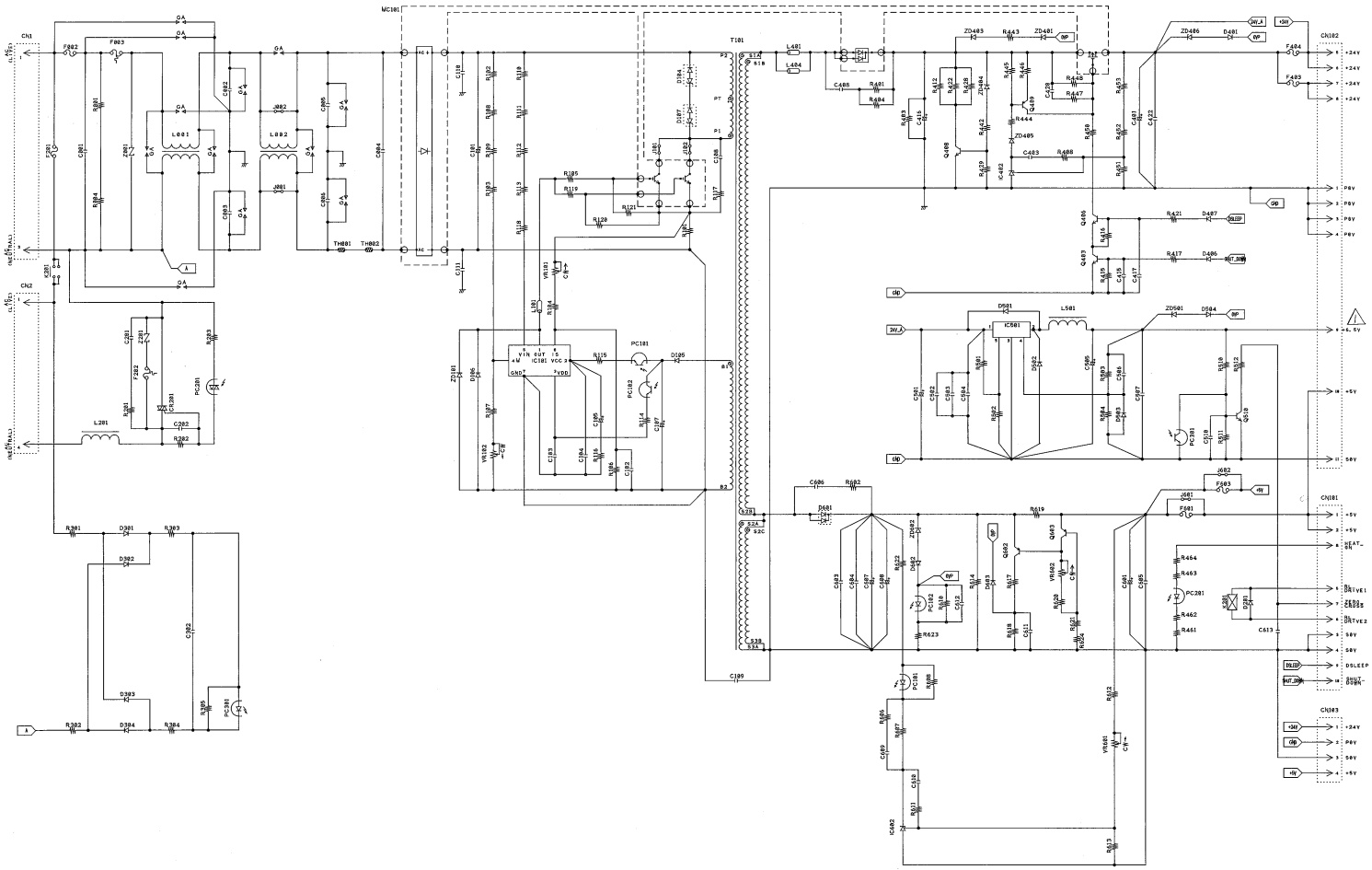
■ High-voltage Power Supply PCB Circuit Diagram (2/3)



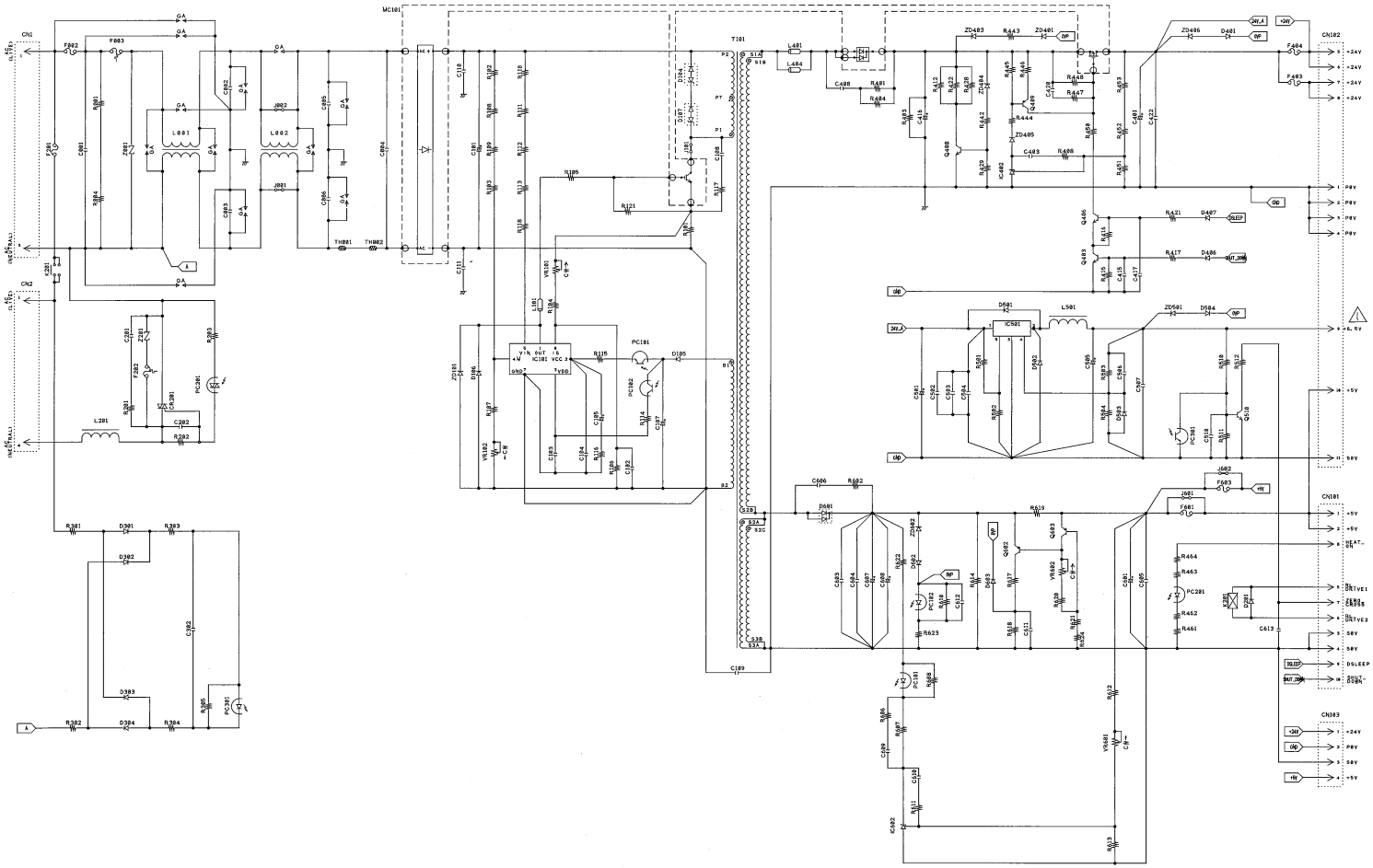
■ High-voltage Power Supply PCB Circuit Diagram (3/3)



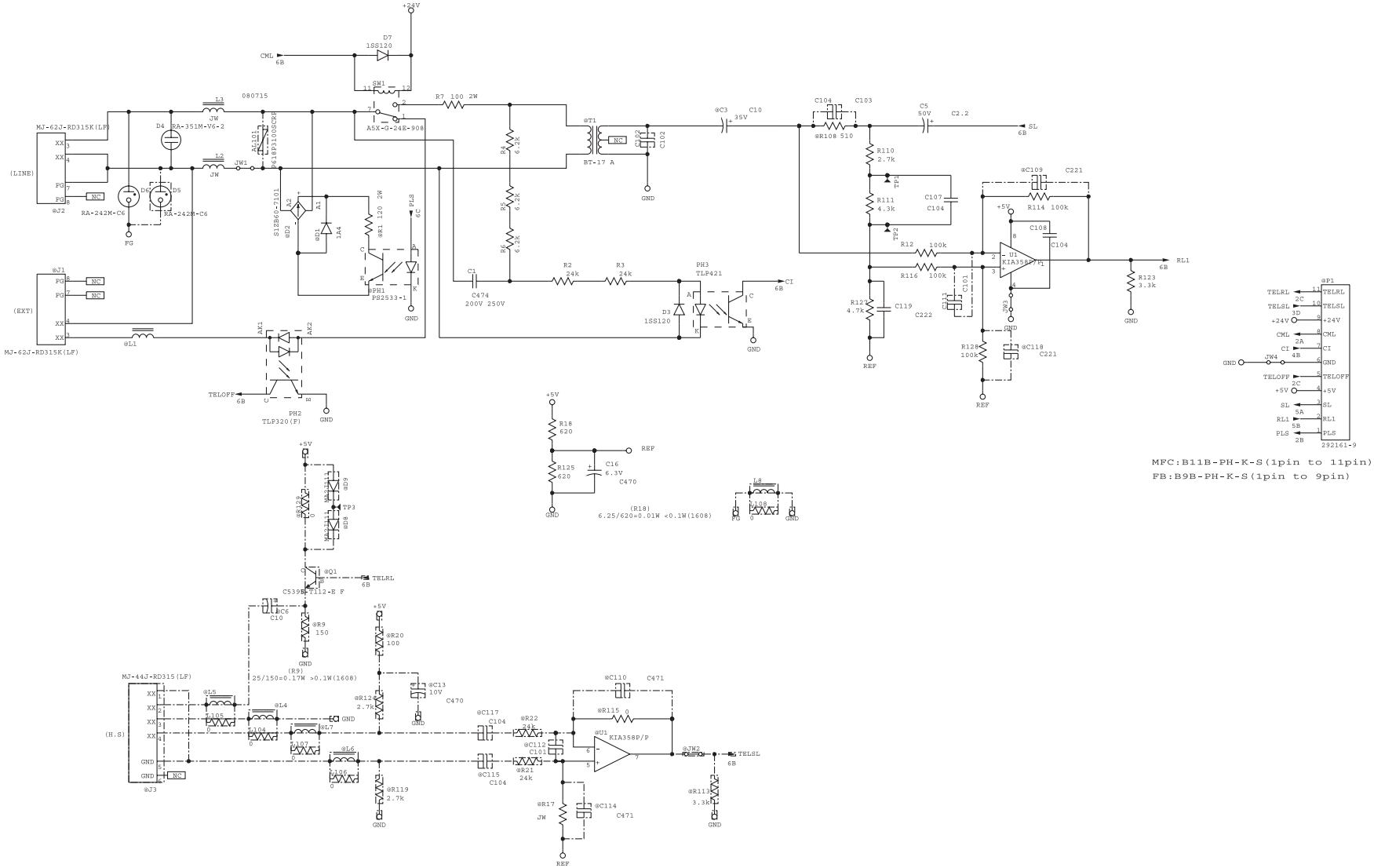
■ Low-voltage Power Supply PCB Circuit Diagram (100V)



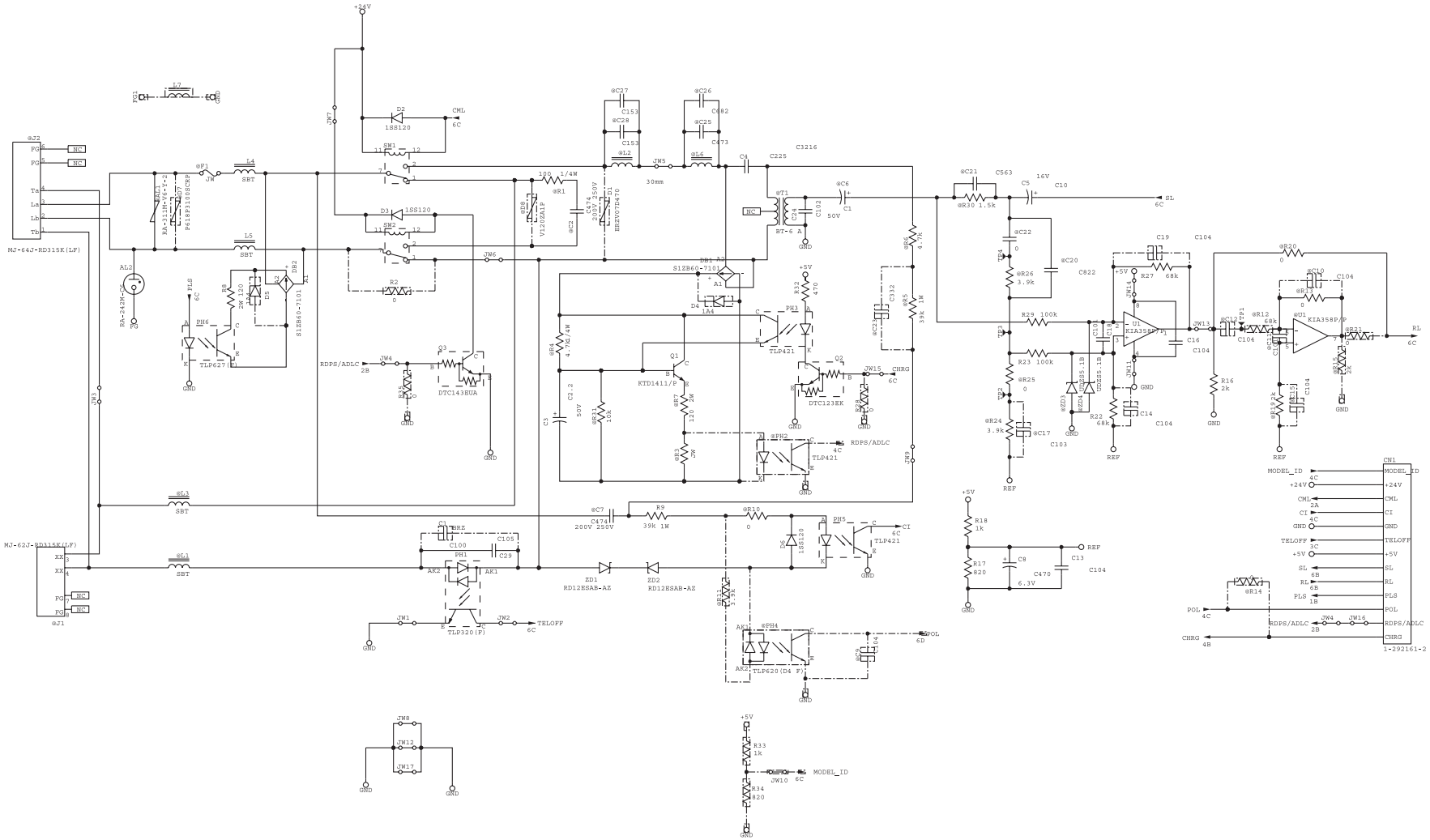
■ Low-voltage Power Supply PCB Circuit Diagram (200V)



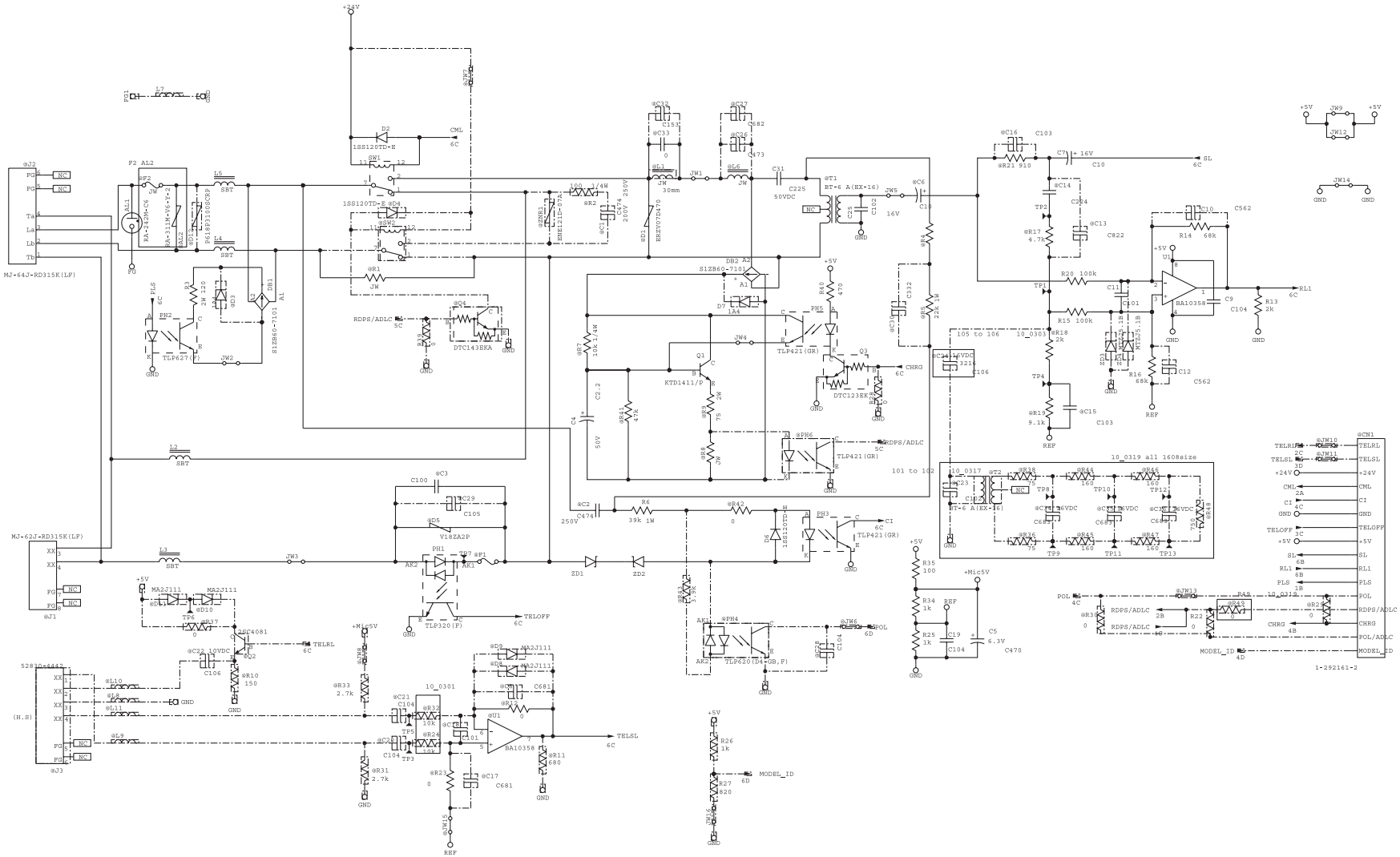
■ NCU PCB Circuit Diagram: U.S.A/Canada



■ NCU PCB Circuit Diagram: Europe/Oceania

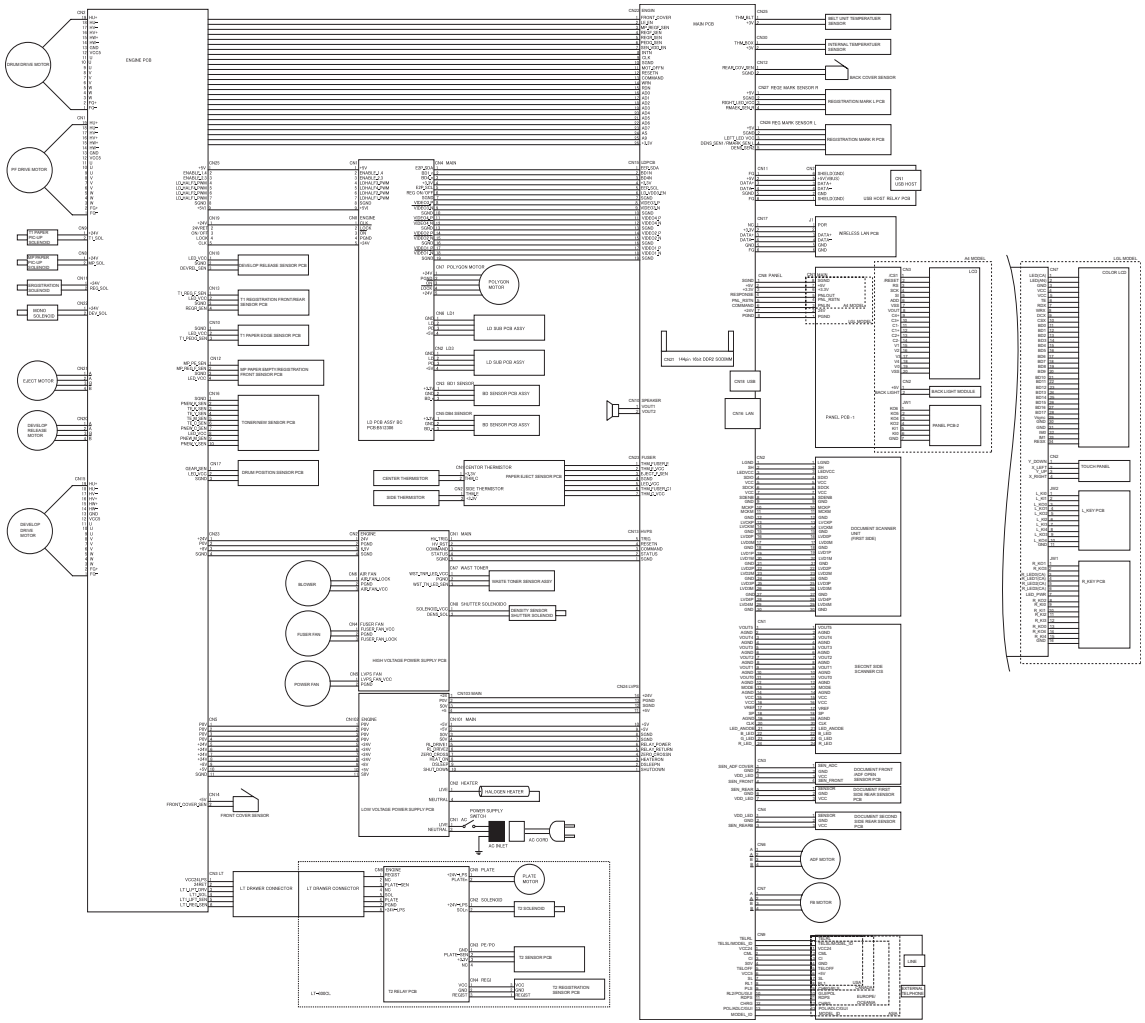


■ NCU PCB Circuit Diagram: China/Asia/South Africa/Gulf



2. WIRING DIAGRAM

■ Wiring Diagram



CHAPTER 7
PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE

CHAPTER 7
PERIODICAL MAINTENANCE

This chapter details consumable parts and periodical replacement parts. This chapter also covers procedures for disassembling and assembling periodical replacement parts.

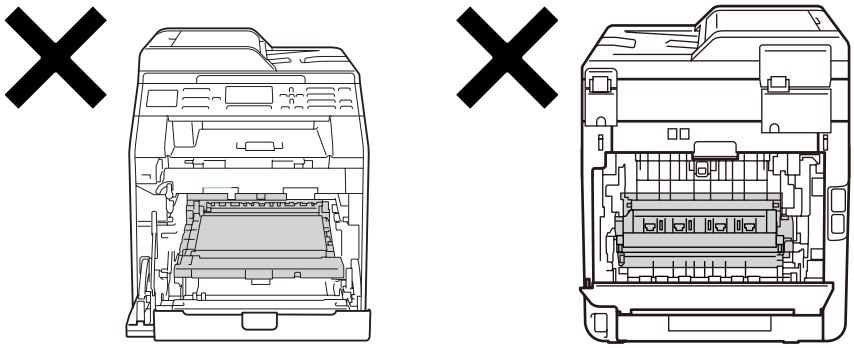
CONTENTS

1. PRECAUTIONS

To avoid creating secondary problems by mishandling, follow the warnings below during maintenance work.

WARNING

- Always turn off the power switch and unplug the power cord from the power outlet before accessing any parts inside the machine.
- When opening the front cover or back cover to access any parts inside the machine, never touch the shaded parts shown in the following figures.



Periodical replacement parts are the parts to be replaced periodically to maintain product quality. These parts would affect the product quality if they loose their functionality even if they do not appear to be damaged or there is no change in their appearance.

When replacing the periodical replacement parts, each of the counters need to be reset in order to record the number of replacement times. Refer to "2.2 Parts Life Reset Function" in Chapter 5. Also make sure to wipe the dirt on the drum unit as shown in the figure below when replacing each of the periodical replacement parts.

The number of printed pages of the machine can be checked on Print Settings. (Refer to User's Guide how to printout of User Settings.) The actual number of printed page will vary depending on the type of print job or the paper to being used. The figures indicated as the approximate life in the table above are worked out when printing a general business document (in accordance with ISO/IEC 19798) on A4-size paper.

Note:

- If the fuser unit is replaced after errors related to the fuser unit occur, you need to wait until the machine sufficiently cools down before replacing the unit. After replacing the unit, turn ON the machine and leave if for approximately fifteen minutes. This will make the machine to be released from the error.
- After disconnecting flat cables, check that each cable is not damaged at its end or shortcircuited.
- When connecting flat cables, do not insert them at an angle. After insertion, check that the cables are not at an angle.

2. PERIODICAL REPLACEMENT PARTS

2.1 Procedures to Replace Periodical Replacement Parts

■ Preparation

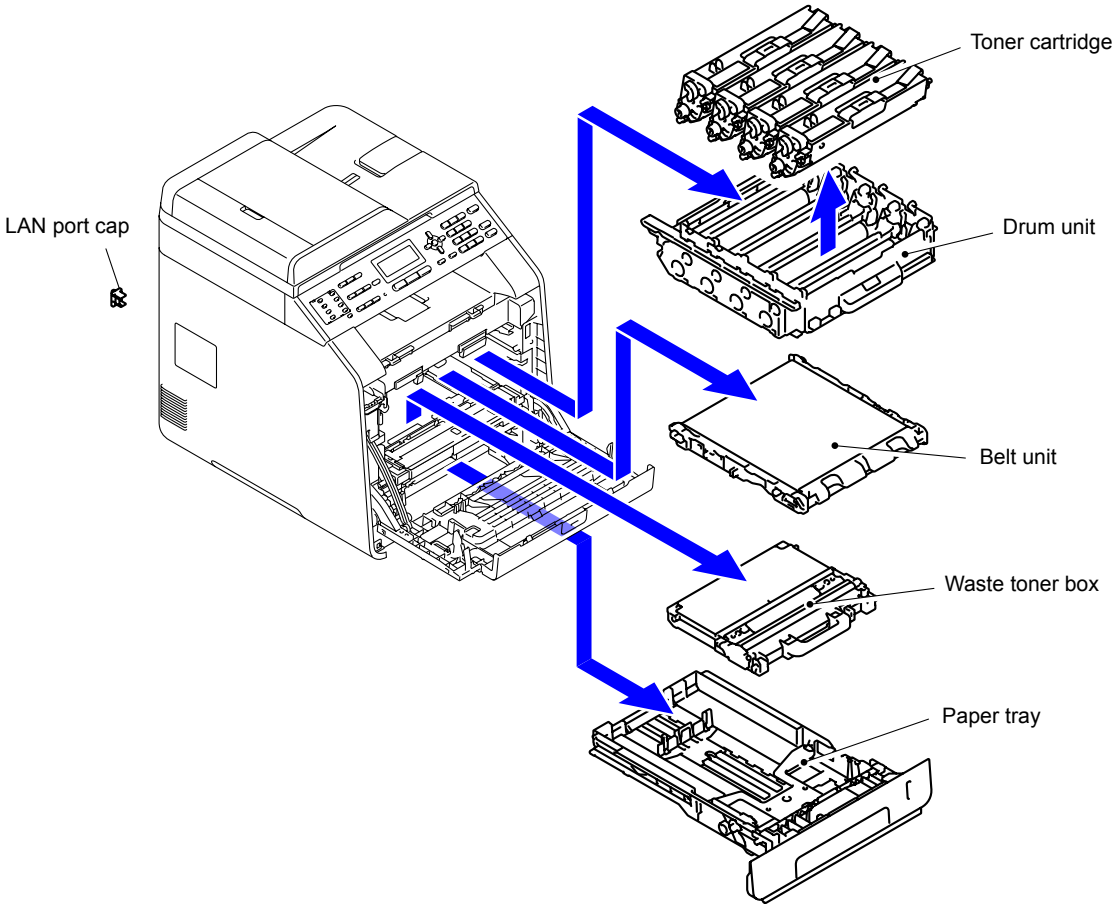
Prior to proceeding with the disassembly procedure,

(1) Unplug

- the AC cord,
- the USB cable, if connected,
- the LAN cable, if connected, and
- USB flash memory drive, if connected.

(2) Remove

- the Paper tray,
- the Toner cartridge,
- the Drum unit,
- the Belt unit, and
- the Waste toner box.



2.1.1 Fuser unit

(1) Open the Back cover.

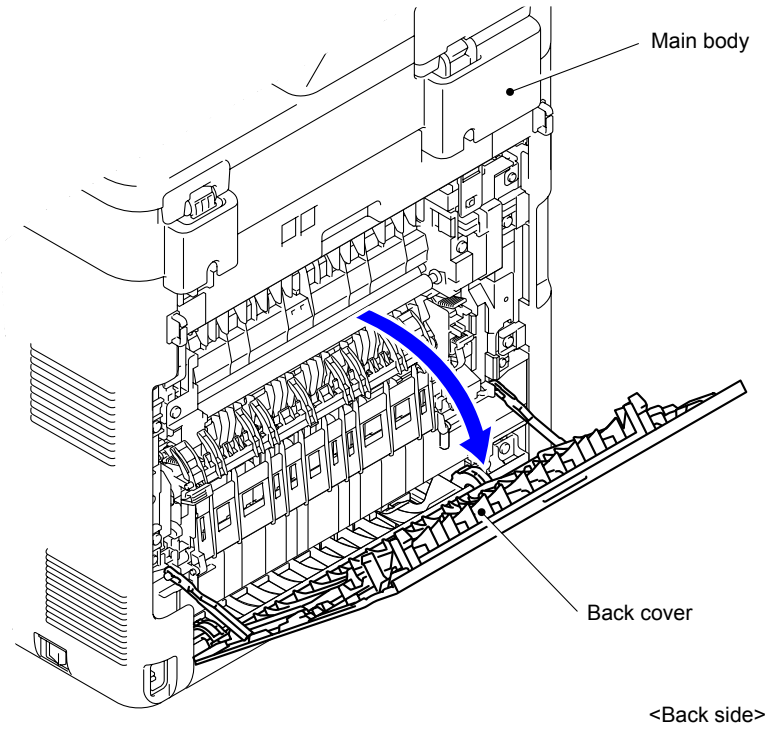


Fig. 7-1

(2) Remove the Back cover stopper arm L and R from the Main body.

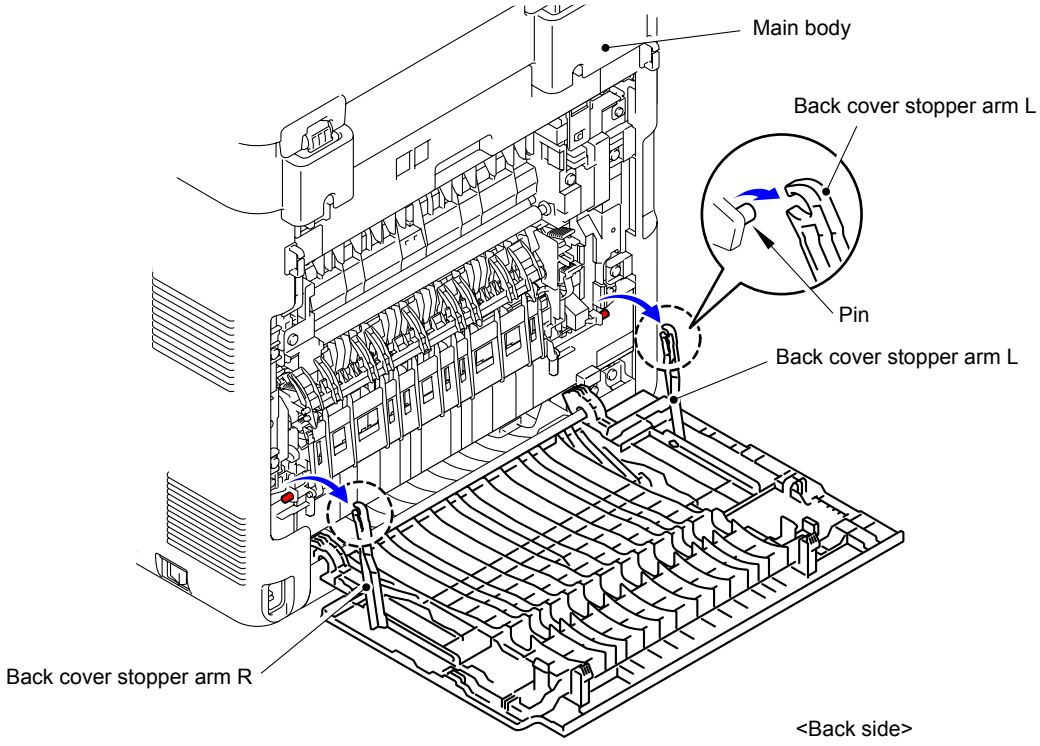


Fig. 7-2

(3) Remove the Shaft of the Back cover from the Bush on the right side of the Main body.

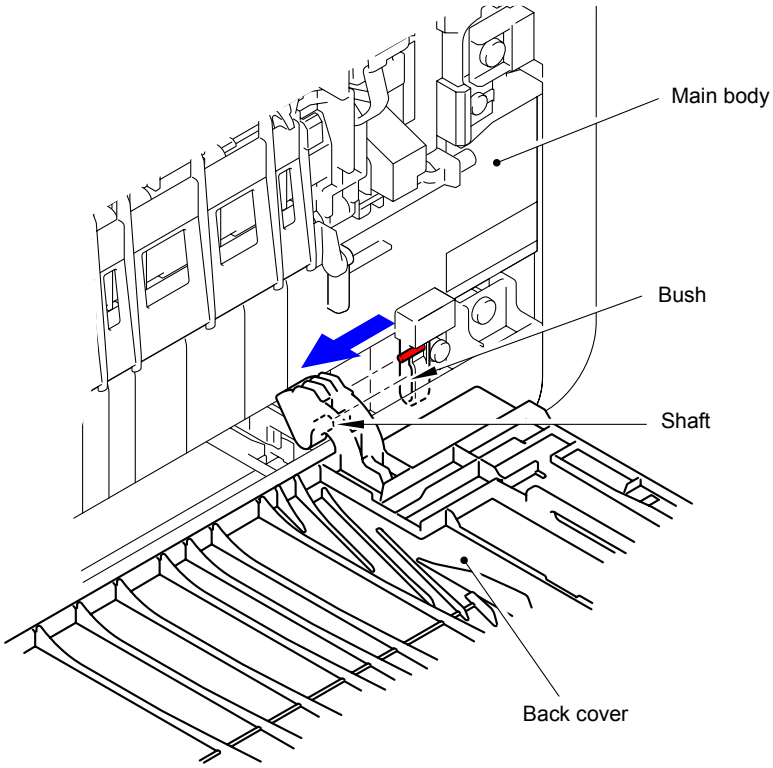


Fig. 7-3

(4) Remove the Back cover.

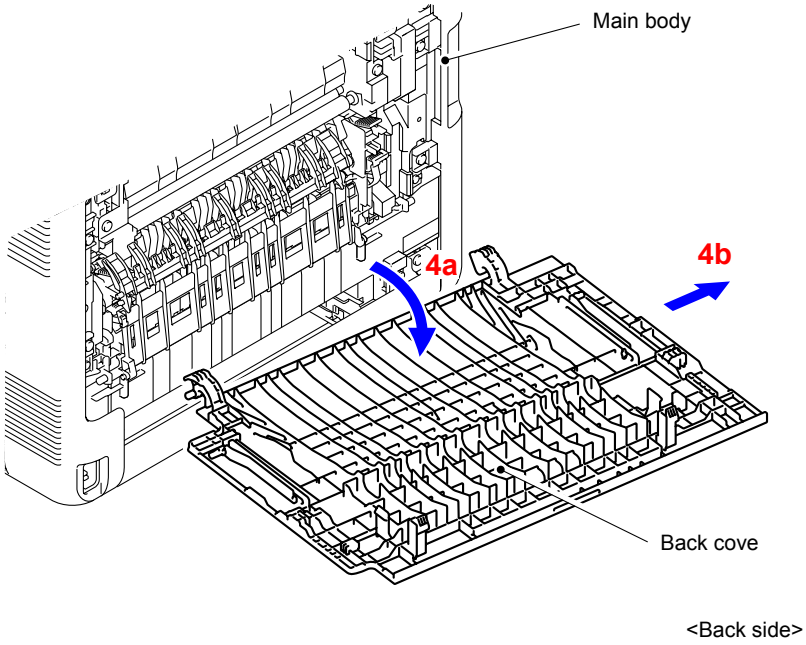


Fig. 7-4

(5) Open the Back flapper ASSY.

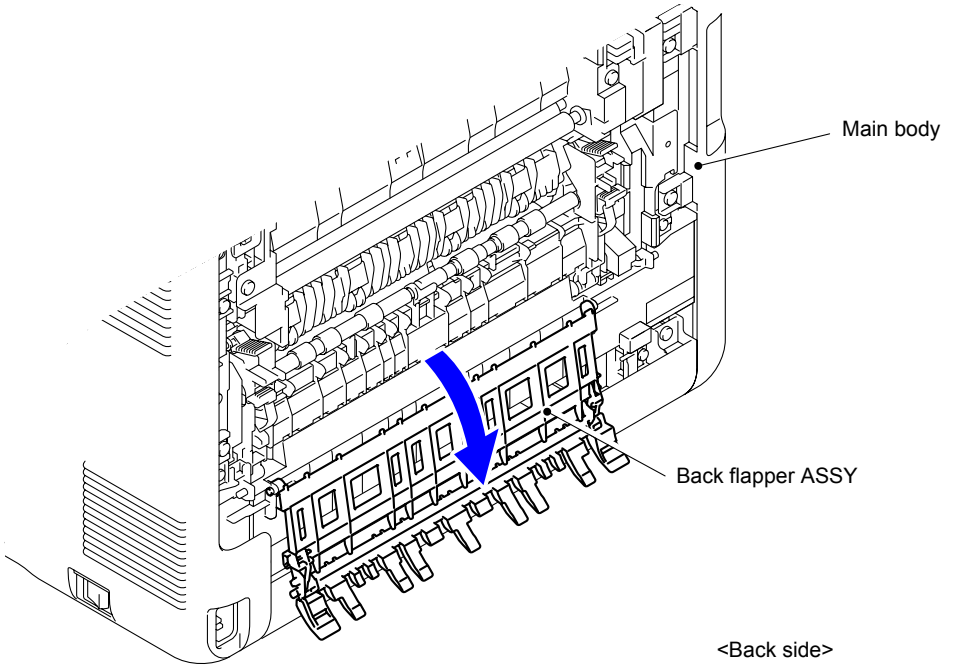


Fig. 7-5

(6) Release of the Fuser cover lock lever L and R and open the Fuser cover.

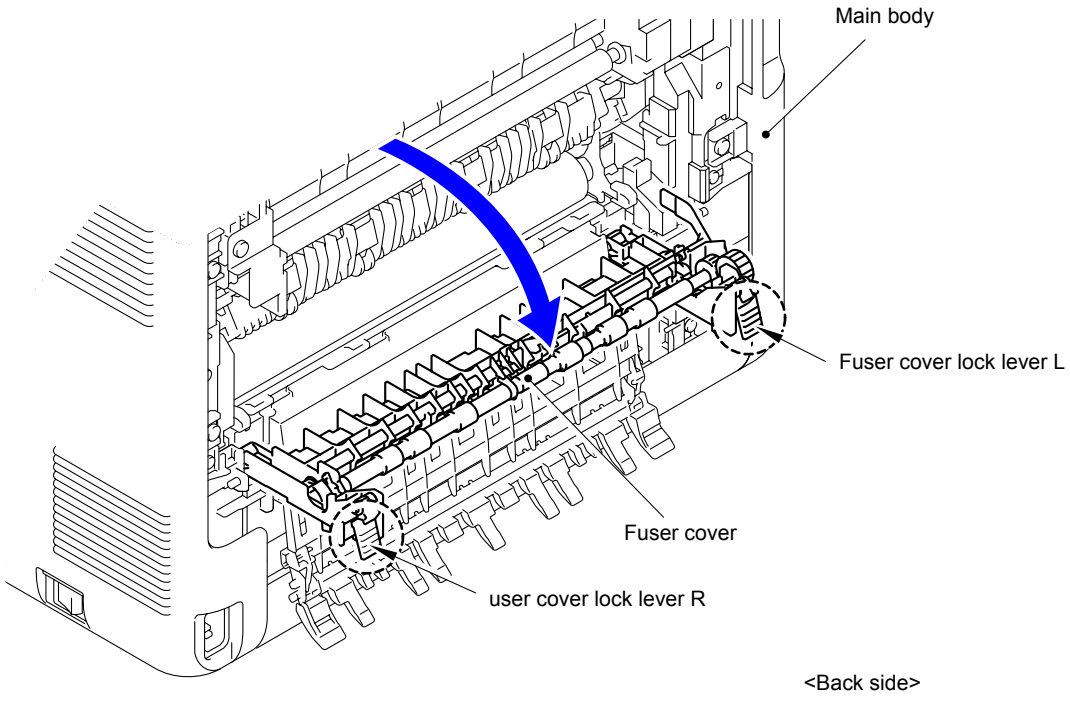


Fig. 7-6

(7) Remove the Taptite bind S M3x8 screw from the Fuser cover L.

(8) Release the Hook to remove the Fuser cover L from the Main body.

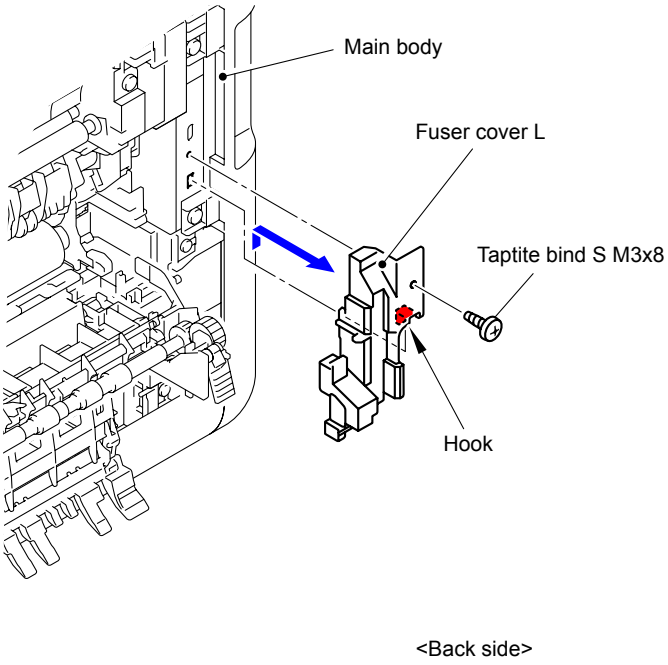


Fig. 7-7

(9) Slide the Outer chute ASSY in the direction of the arrow 9a to remove it to the front.

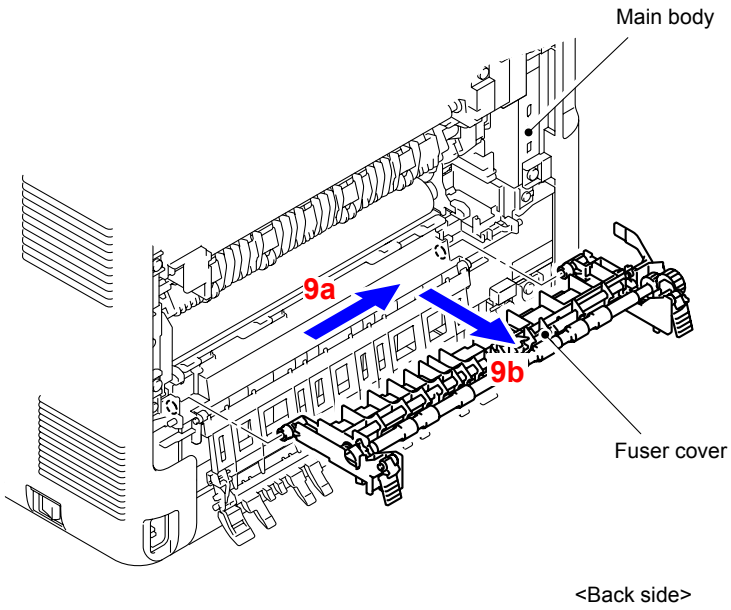


Fig. 7-8

(10) Remove the Taptite bind S M3x8 screw from the Fuser cover R.

(11) Release the Hook to remove the Fuser cover R from the Main body.

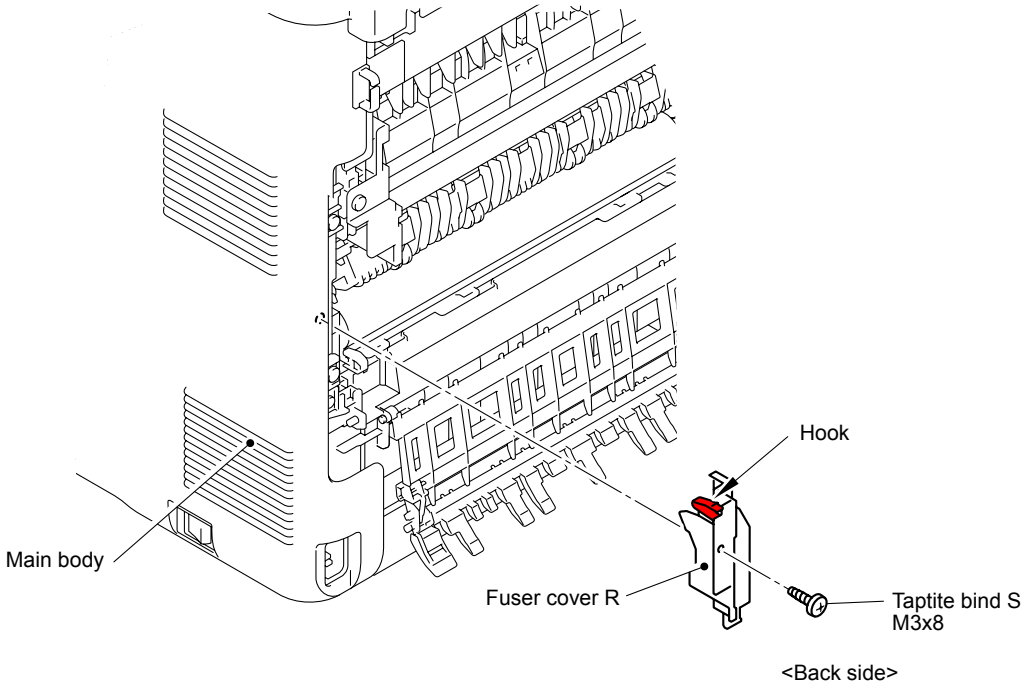


Fig. 7-9

(12) Disconnect the two Connectors (CN1, CN2) from the Paper eject sensor PCB ASSY.

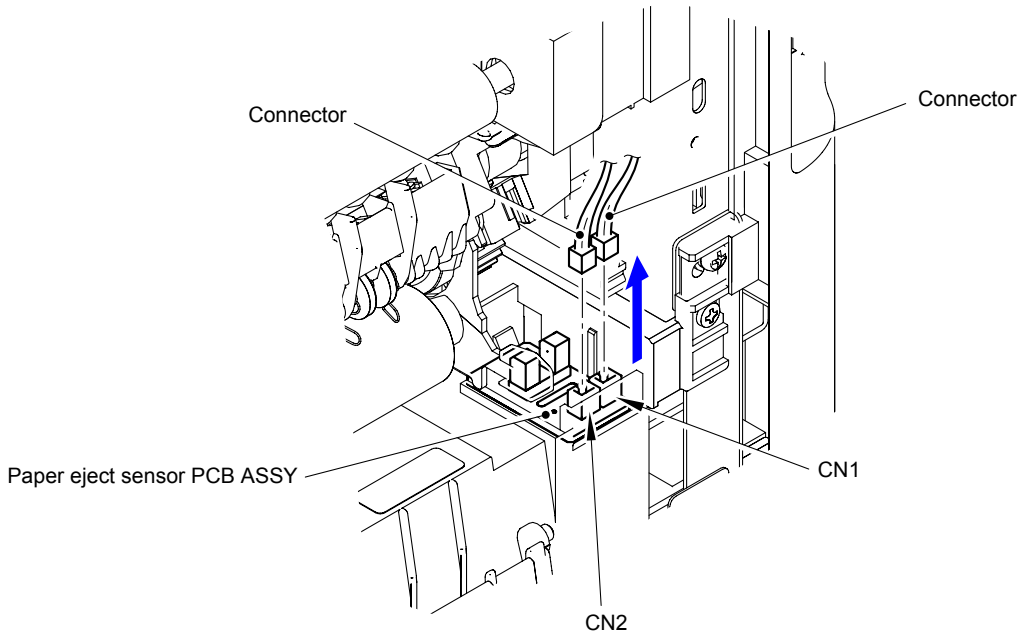


Fig. 7-10

(13) Disconnect the Electrode terminal from the Fuser unit.

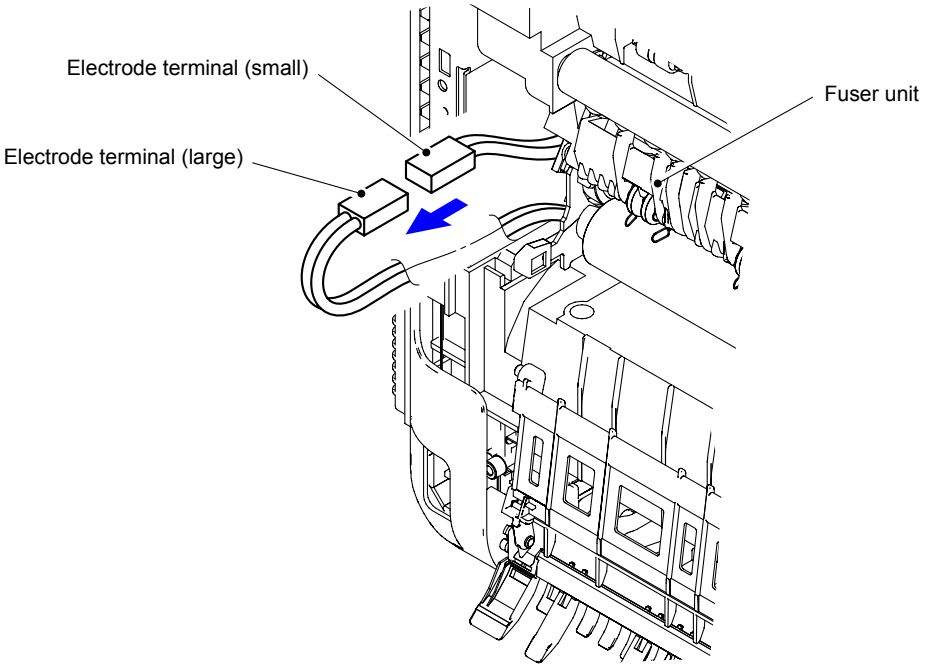


Fig. 7-11

(14) Remove the two Taptite pan B M4x14 screws to remove the Fuser unit from the Main body.

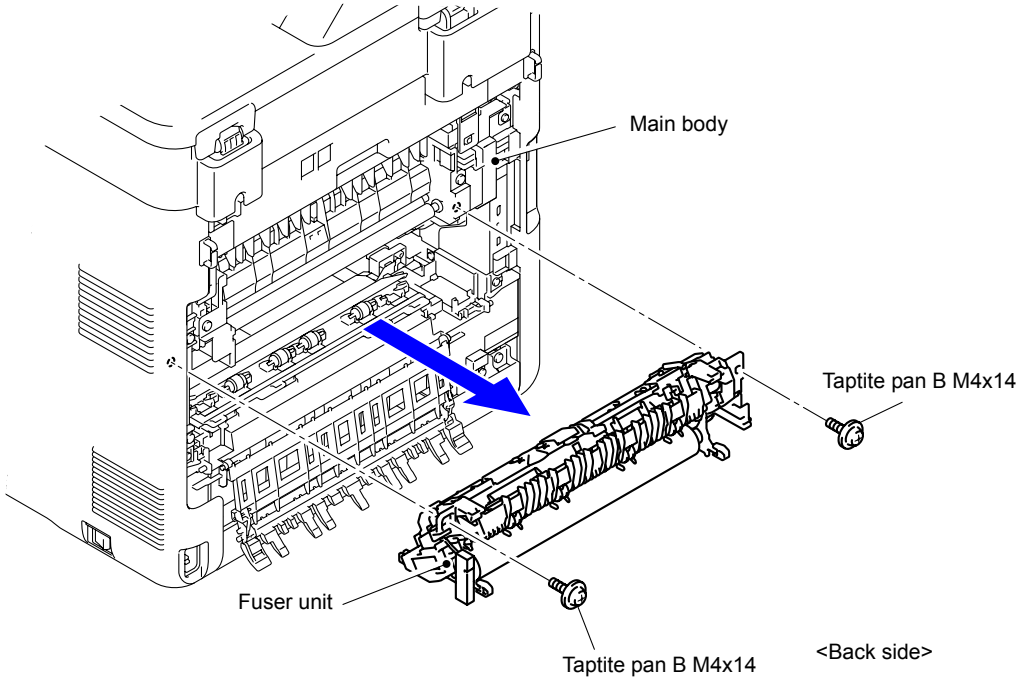


Fig. 7-12

(15) Remove the Filter ASSY from the Paper eject ASSY.

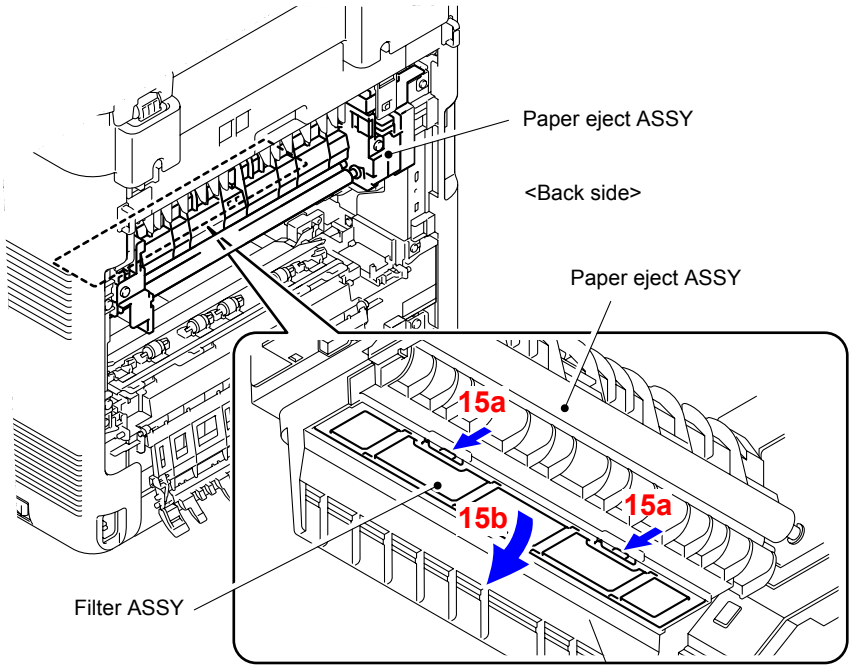


Fig. 7-13

(16) Hold down the Cleaner spring of the Cleaner pinch roller holder to remove the Cleaner pinch roller ASSY.

(17) Remove the other three Cleaner pinch roller ASSY in the same way.

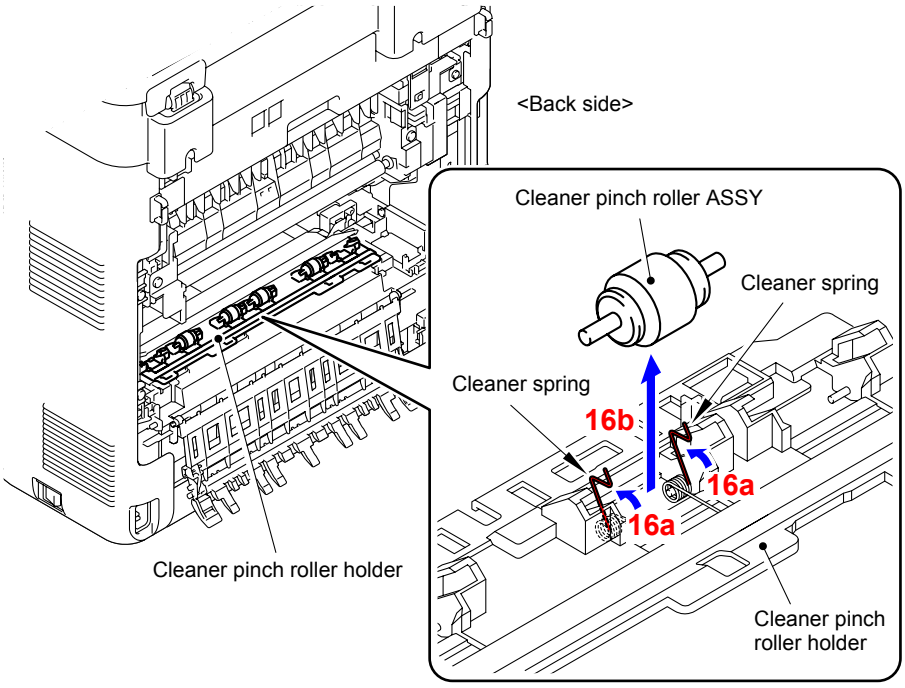


Fig. 7-14

Note:

- Do not apply a physical impact or vibration to the Fuser unit.
- Do not touch the roller and electrodes as shown in the figure below to prevent breakage of the Fuser unit.

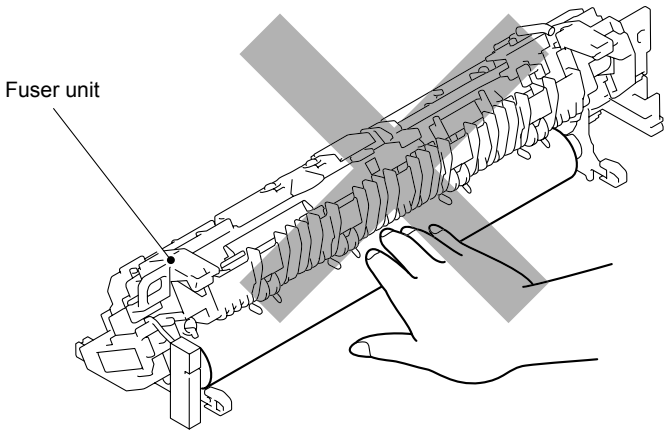


Fig. 7-15

(18) After replacing the Fuser unit, reset the counter. (Refer to "2.2 Parts Life Reset Function" in Chapter 5.)

2.1.2 Laser unit

(1) Open the Back cover.

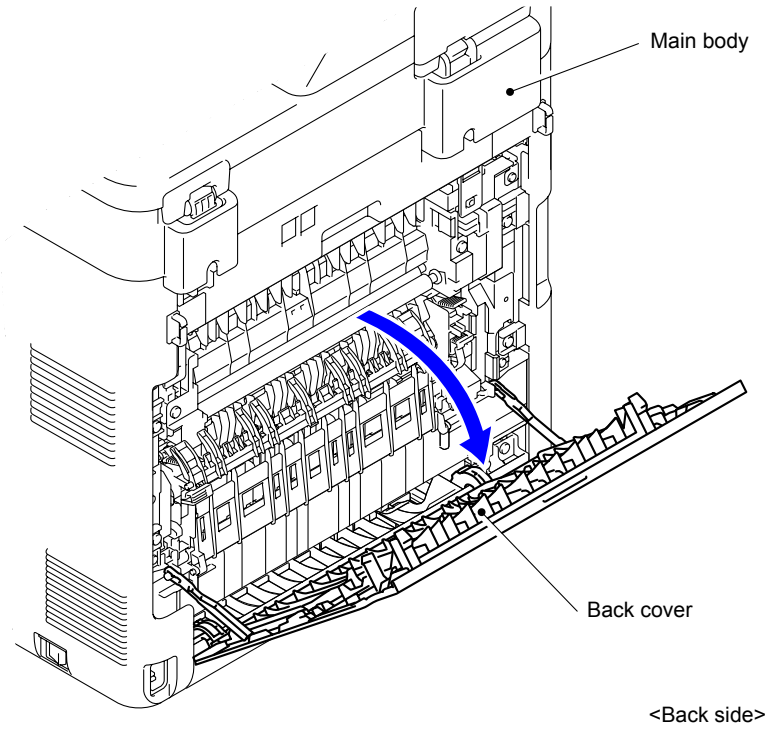


Fig. 7-16

(2) Remove the Back cover stopper arm L and R from the Main body.

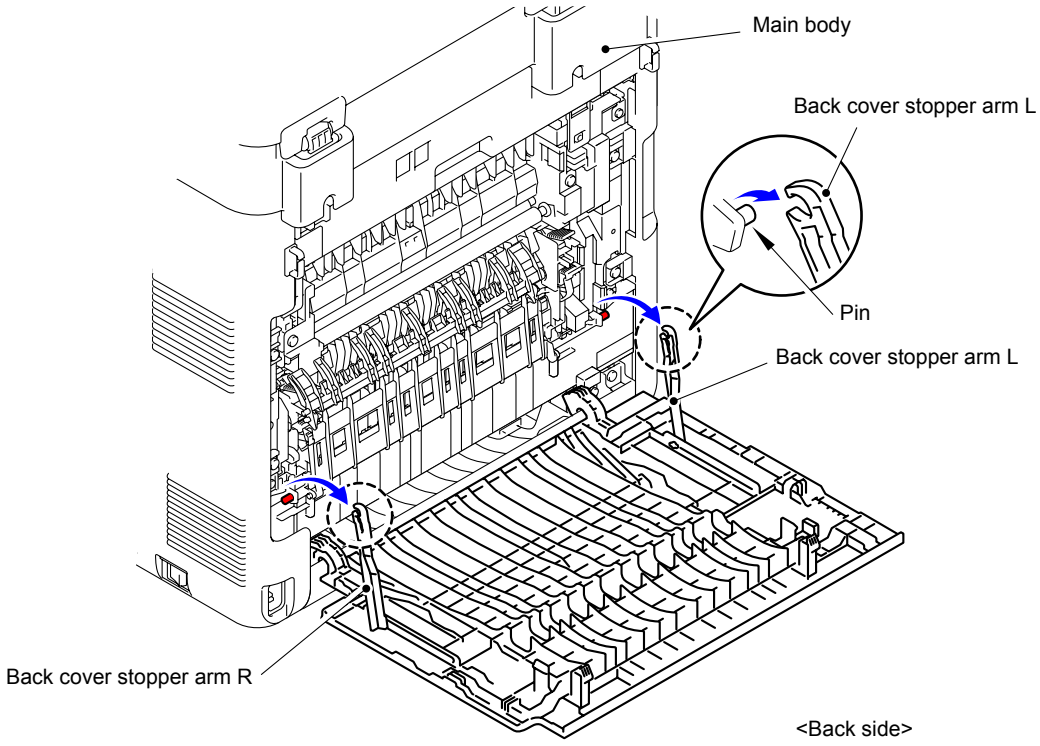


Fig. 7-17

(3) Remove the Shaft of the Back cover from the Bush on the right side of the Main body.

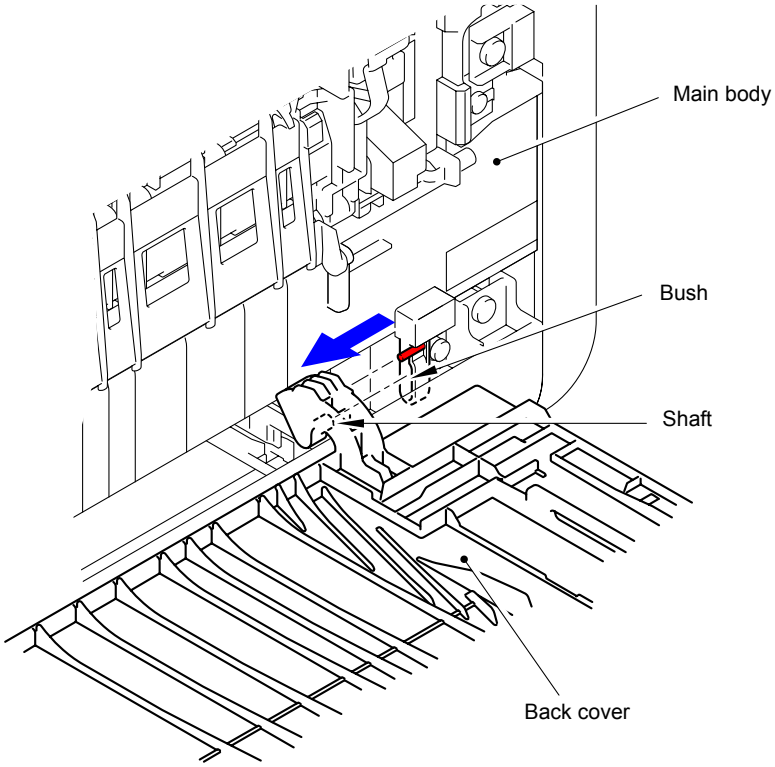


Fig. 7-18

(4) Remove the Back cover.

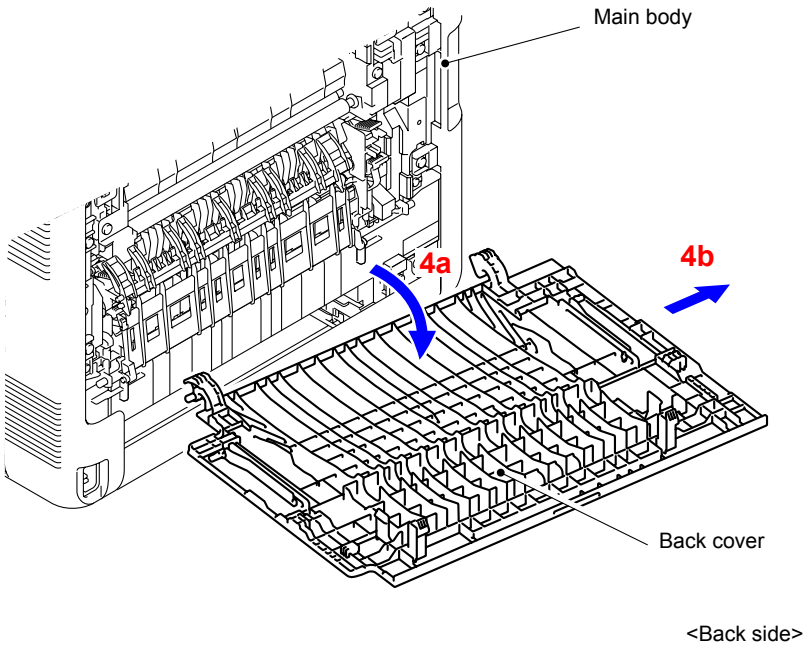


Fig. 7-19

(5) Open the Back flapper ASSY.

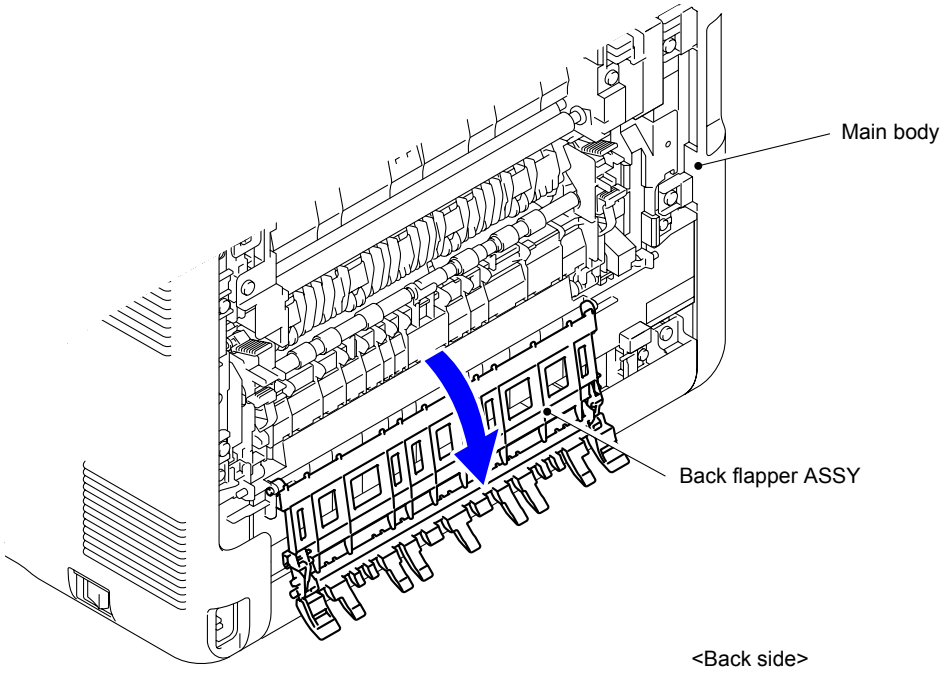


Fig. 7-20

(6) Open the Front cover.

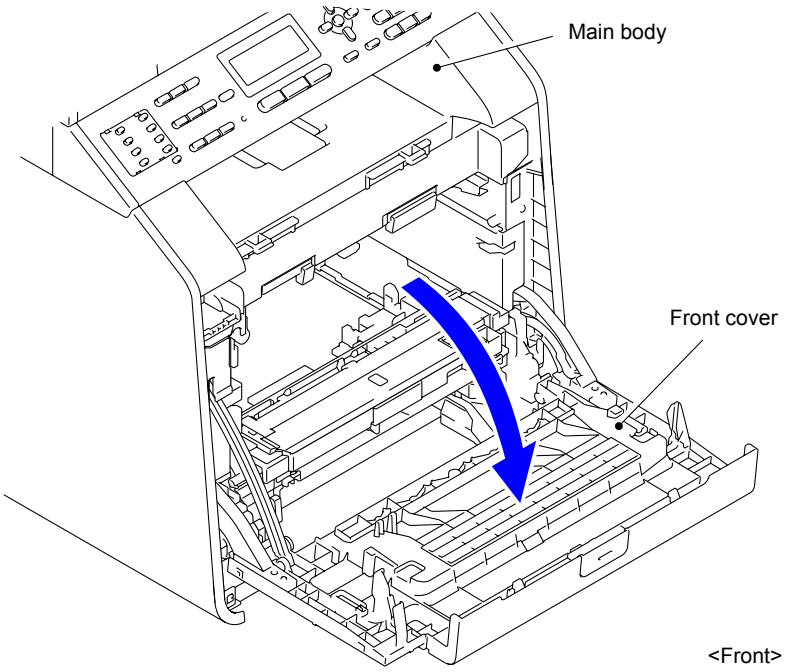


Fig. 7-21

(7) Remove the Taptite bind S M3x8 screw from the front of the Side cover L.

(8) Remove the Taptite bind B M4x12 screw from the side of the Side cover L.

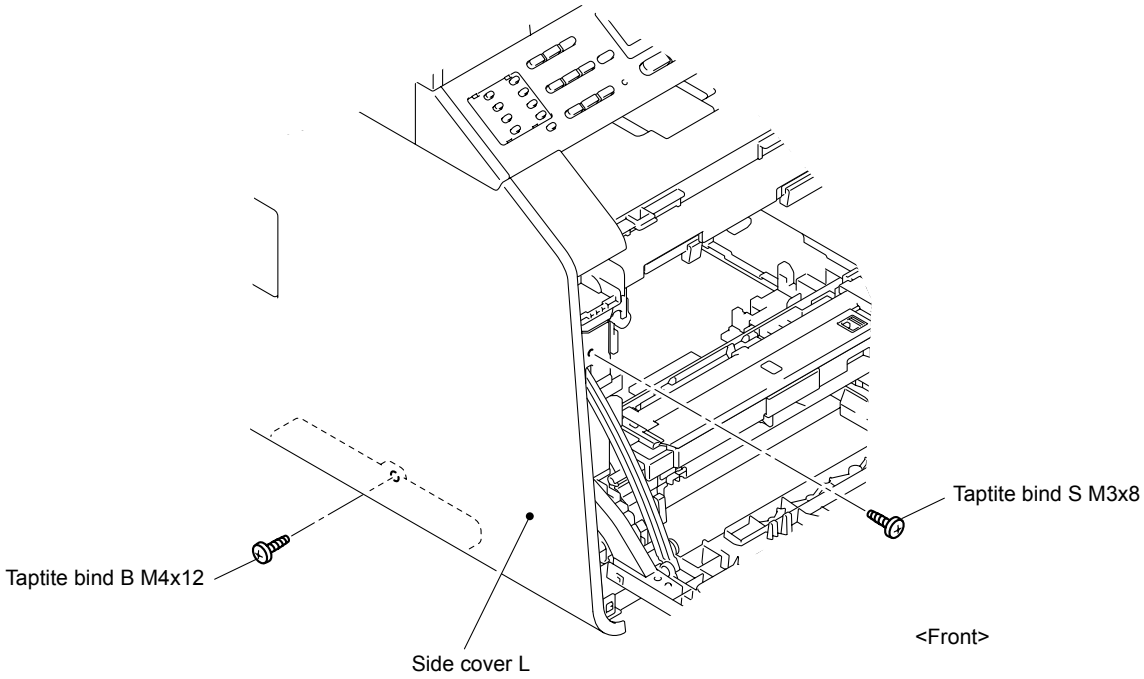


Fig. 7-22

(9) Remove the two Taptite bind S M3x8 screws from the back of the Side cover L.

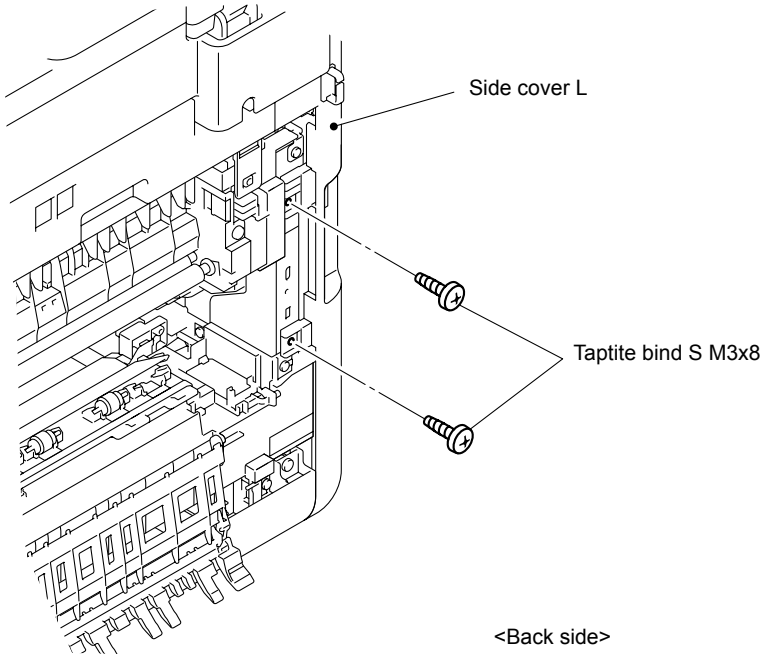


Fig. 7-23

(10) Release the Hooks 1 and 2 at the same time, and then release the Hooks 3 to 6 in numerical order. Release the Hook 7. Release the Hooks 8 and 9 to remove the Side cover L from the Main body.

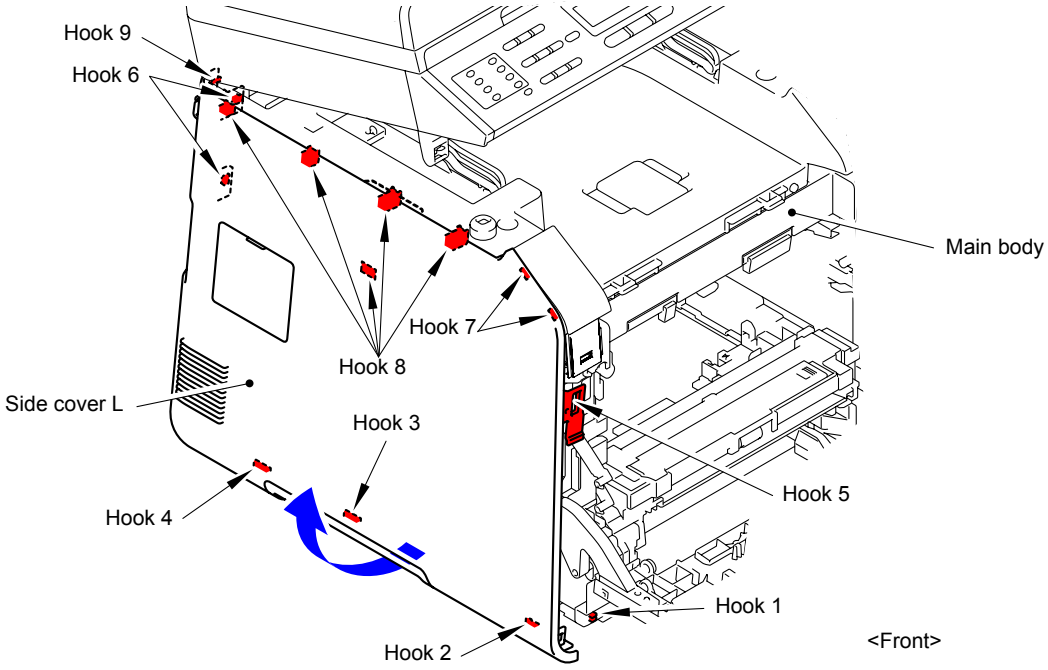


Fig. 7-24

* Inside of Side cover L

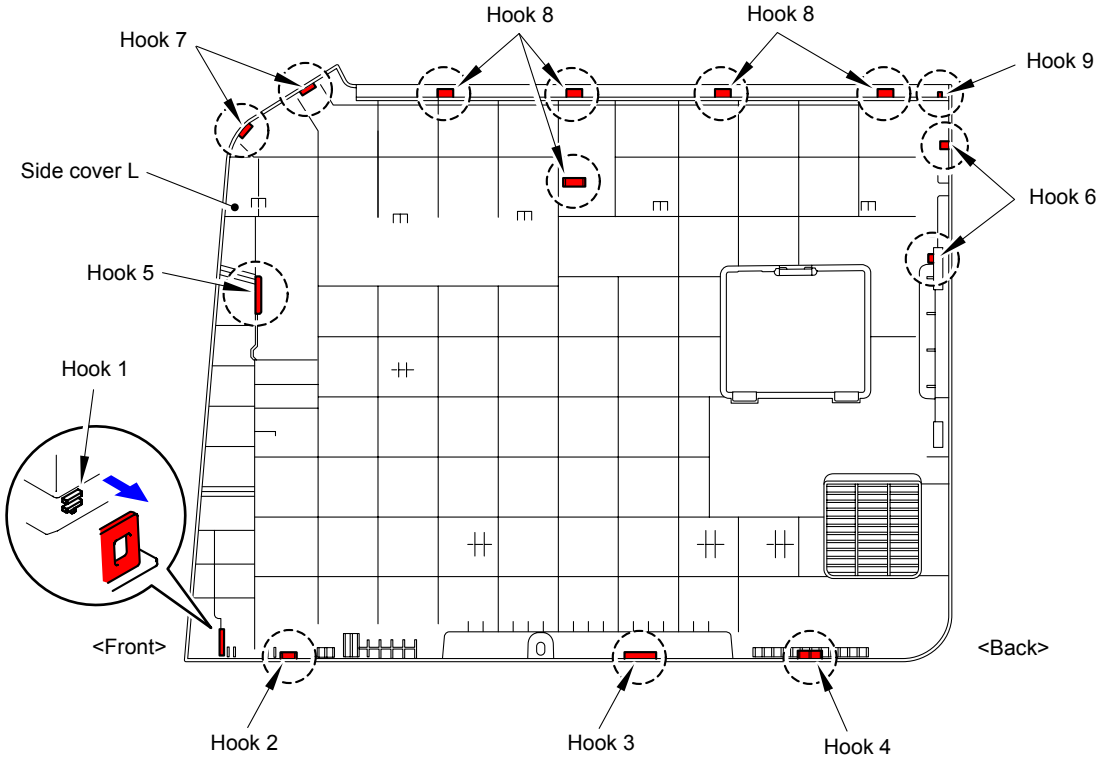


Fig. 7-25

(11) Remove the Taptite bind S M3x8 screw from the front of the Side cover R ASSY.

(12) Remove the Taptite bind B M4x12 screw from the side of the Side cover R ASSY.

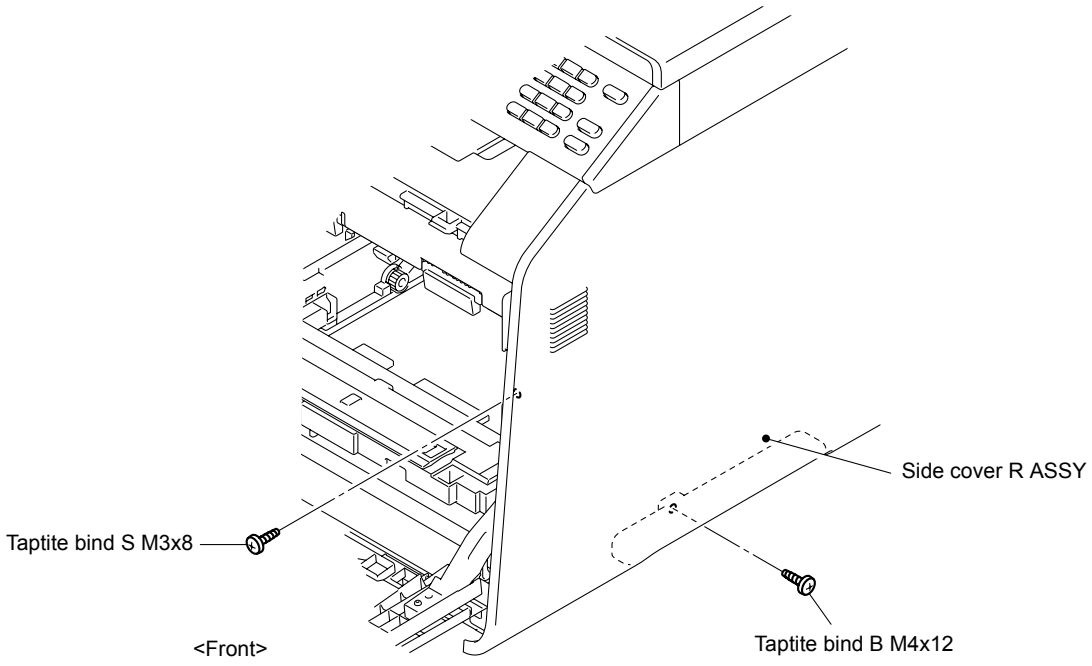


Fig. 7-26

(13) Remove the two Taptite bind S M3x8 screws from the back of the Side cover R ASSY .

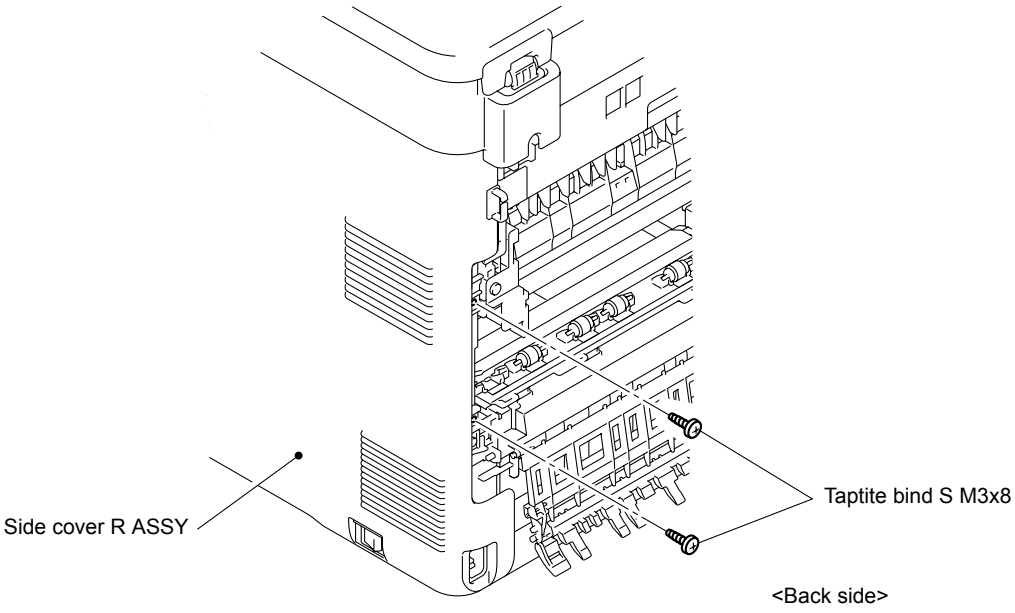


Fig. 7-27

(14) Release the Hooks 1 and 2 at the same time, and then release the Hooks 3 to 6 in numerical order. Release the Hook 7. Release the Hooks 8 and 9 to remove the Side cover R ASSY from the Main body.

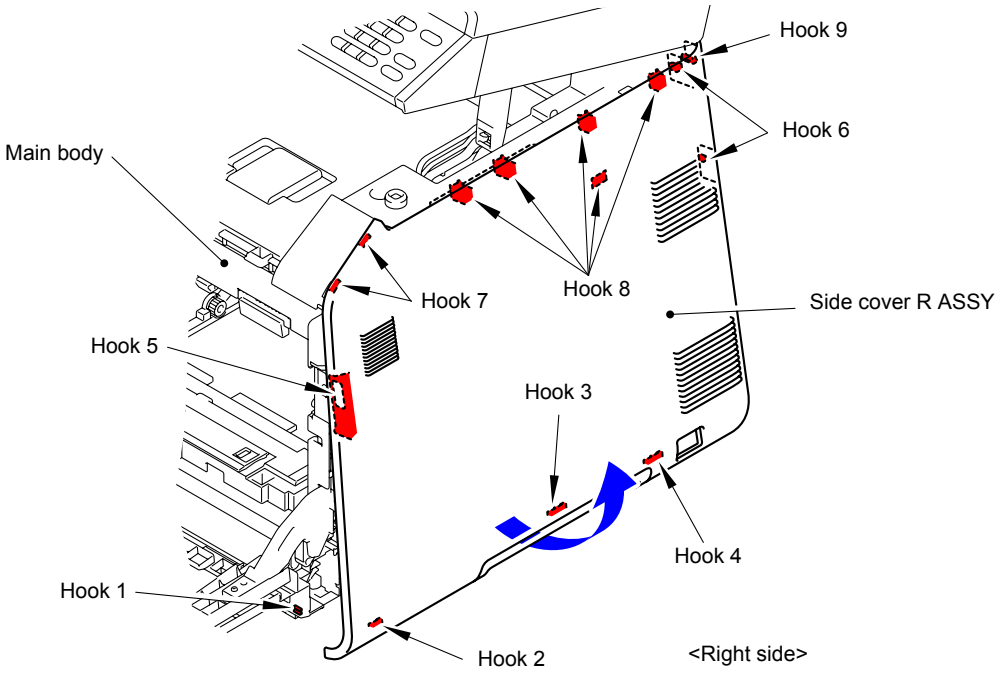


Fig. 7-28

* Inside of Side cover R ASSY

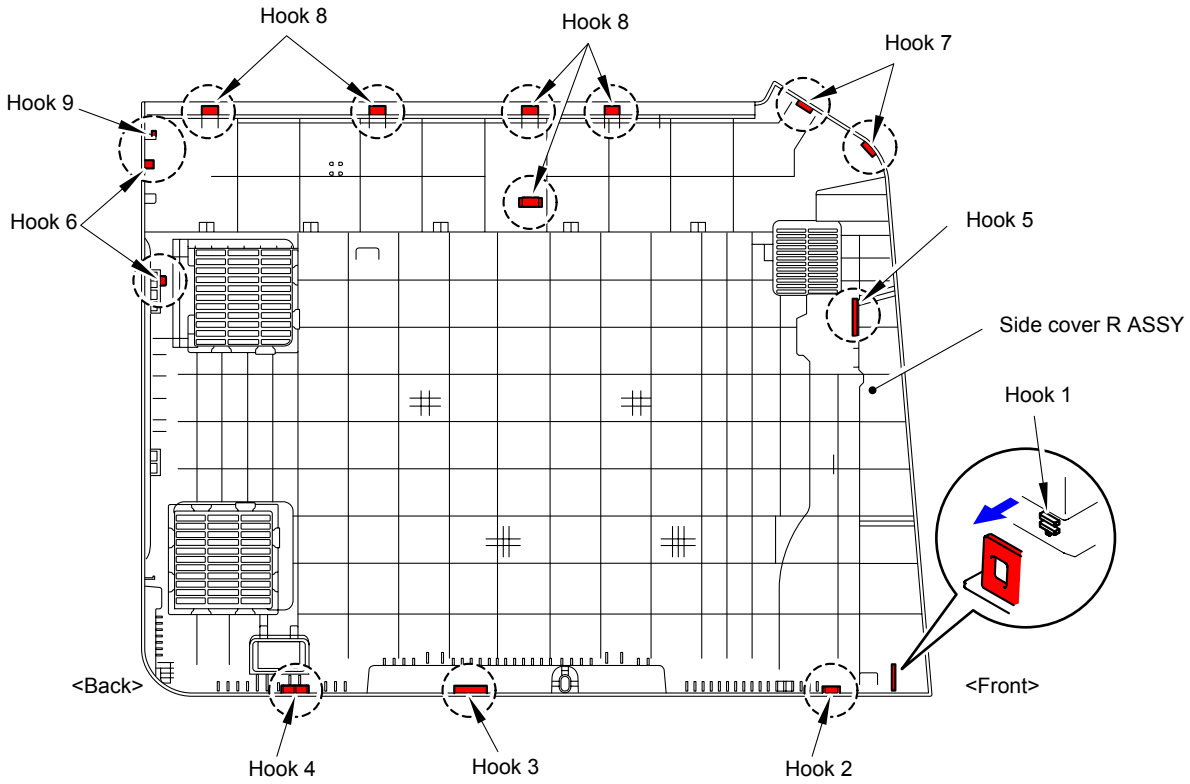


Fig. 7-29

(15) Remove the Ferrite core 1 from the FFC film.

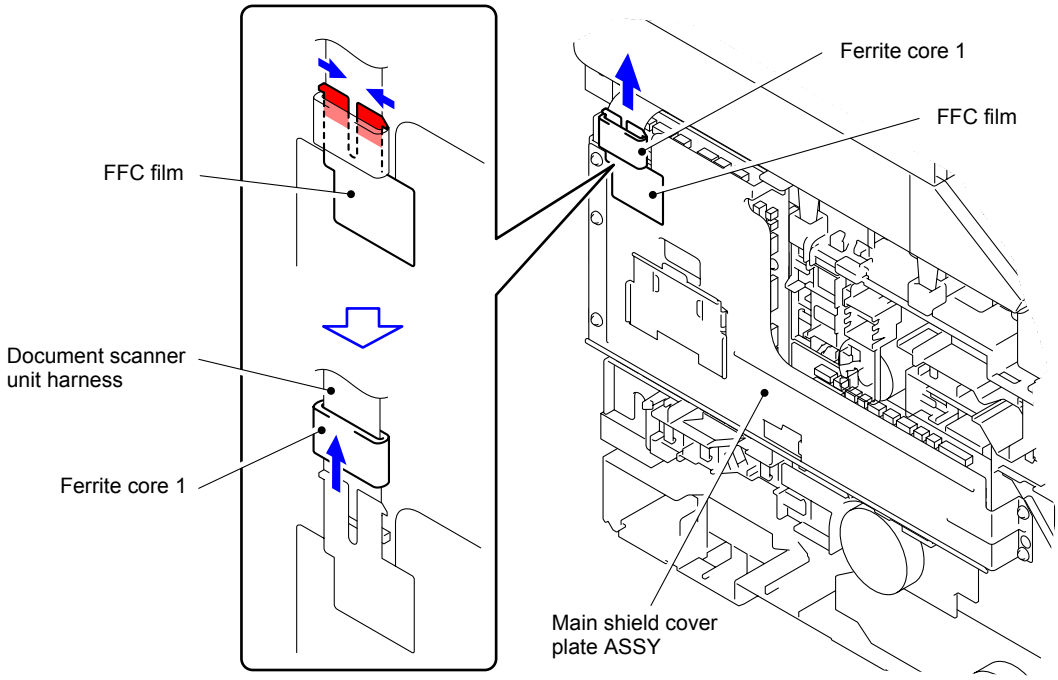


Fig. 7-30

(16) Remove the seven Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Main shield cover plate ASSY from the Main body.

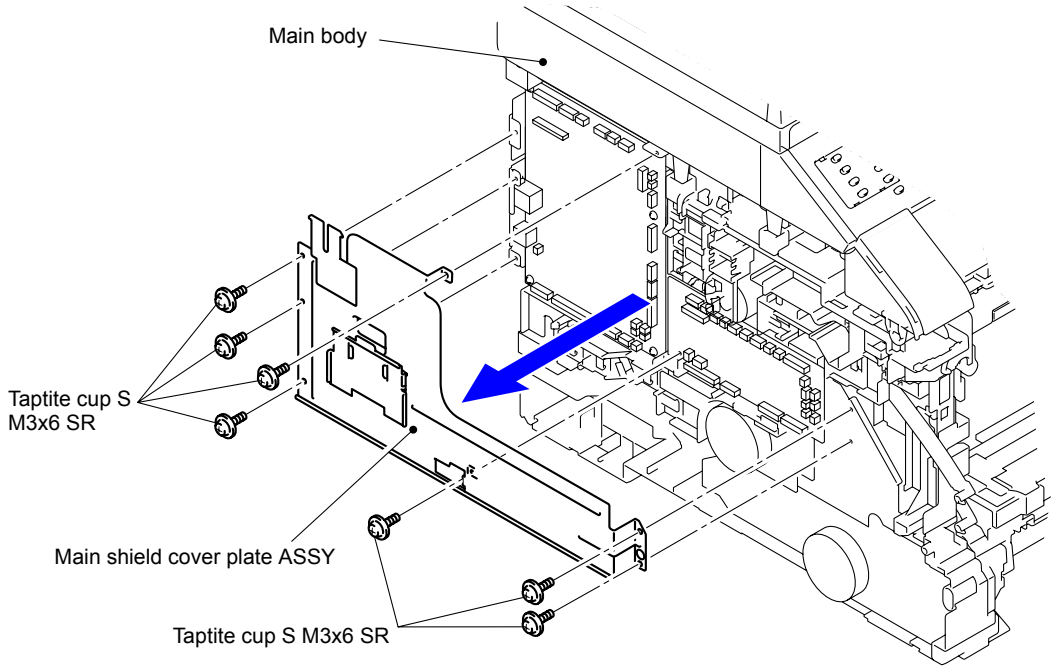


Fig. 7-31

(17) Remove one Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw each for the FB FG harness ASSY and ADF FG harness ASSY to remove them from the Main body.

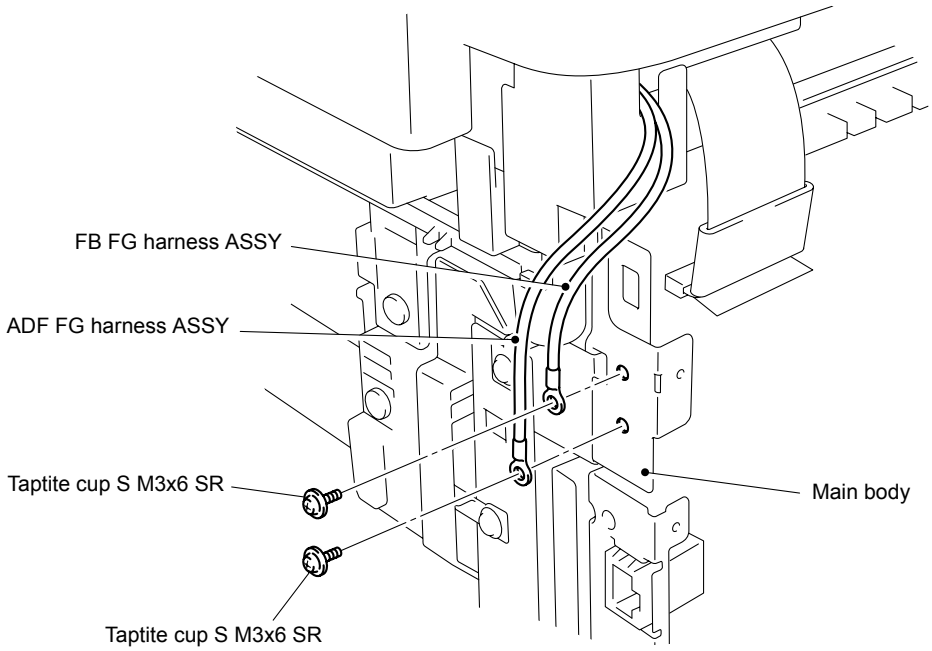


Fig. 7-32

(18) Disconnect the five Connectors (CN3, CN4, CN6, CN7, and CN8) and two Flat cables (CN1 and CN2) from the Main PCB ASSY.

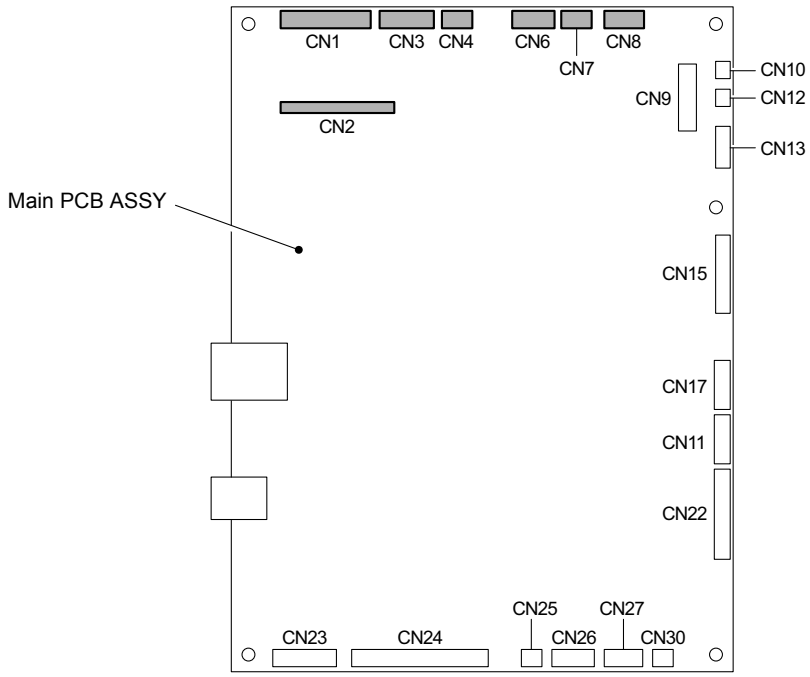


Fig. 7-33

(19) Release the Hooks of the Pull arm L and Pull arm R from the joint of the Scanner unit.

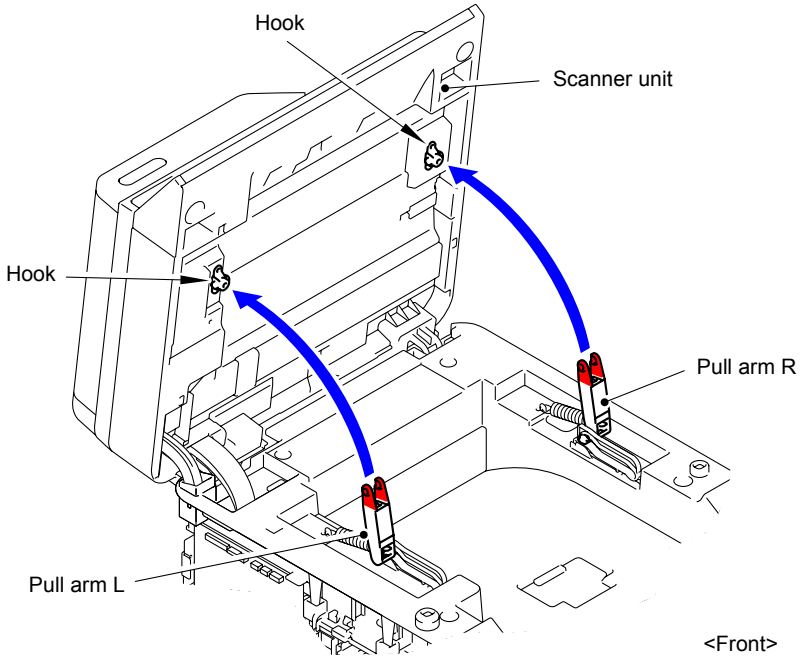


Fig. 7-34

(20) Remove the Pull arm L and Pull arm spring from the Pull arm guide L.

(21) Remove the Pull arm R and Pull arm spring from the Pull arm guide R.

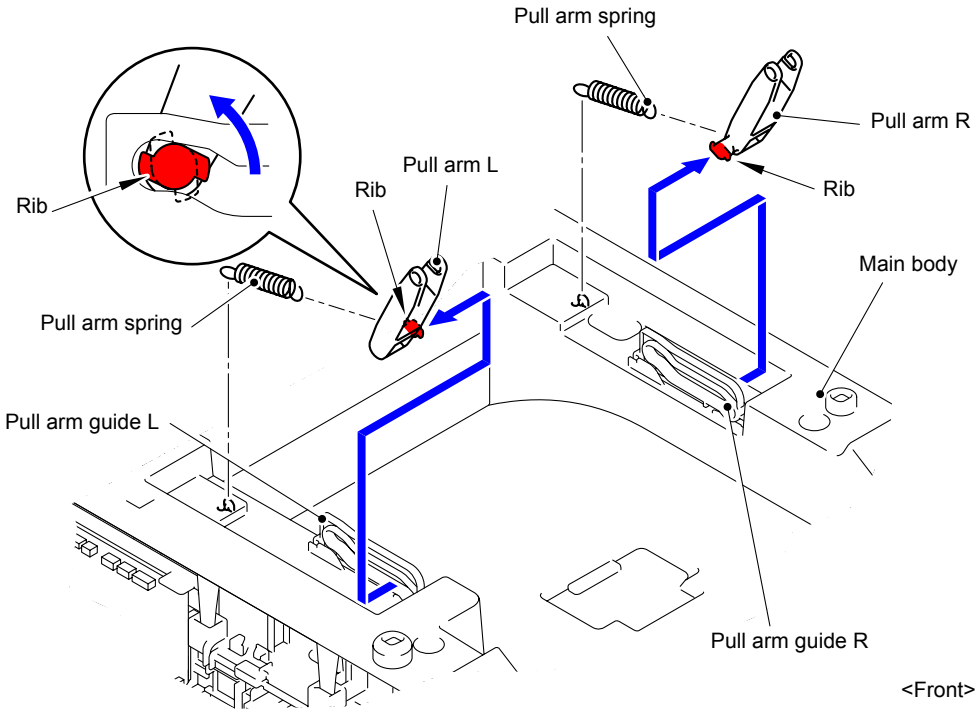


Fig. 7-35

(22) Open the Scanner unit. Remove the Ferrite core 1 from the Digital CIS harness.

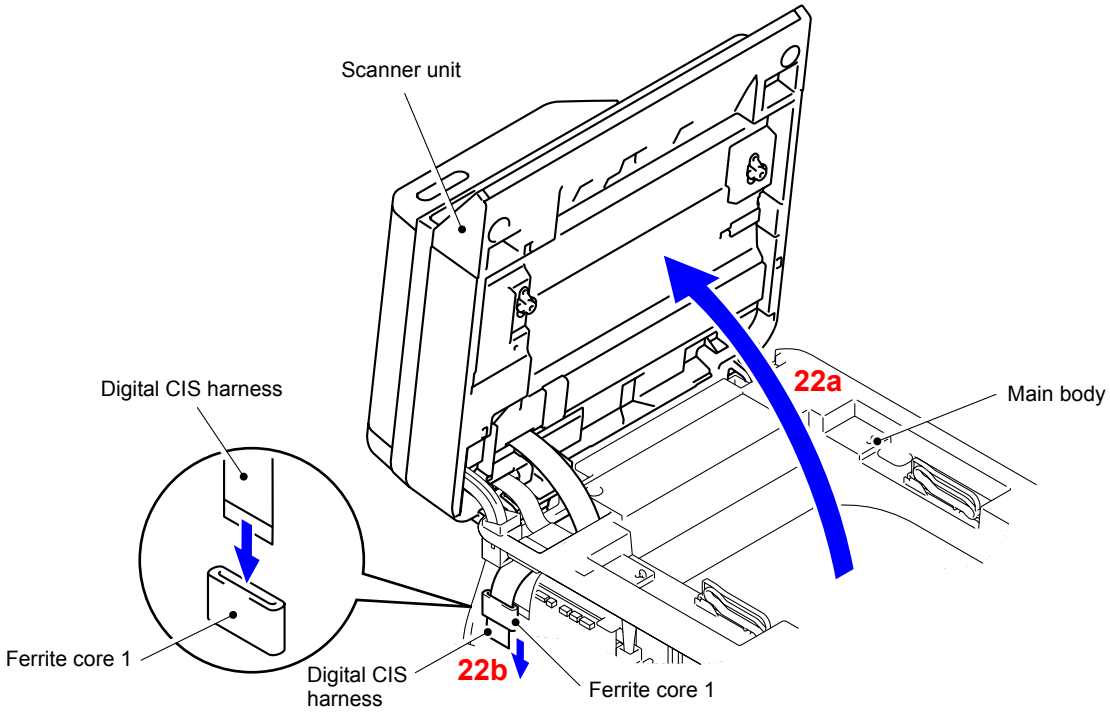


Fig. 7-36

(23) Remove the Digital CIS harness and Second side CIS harness from the Ferrite core 2 and 3 attached to the Film.

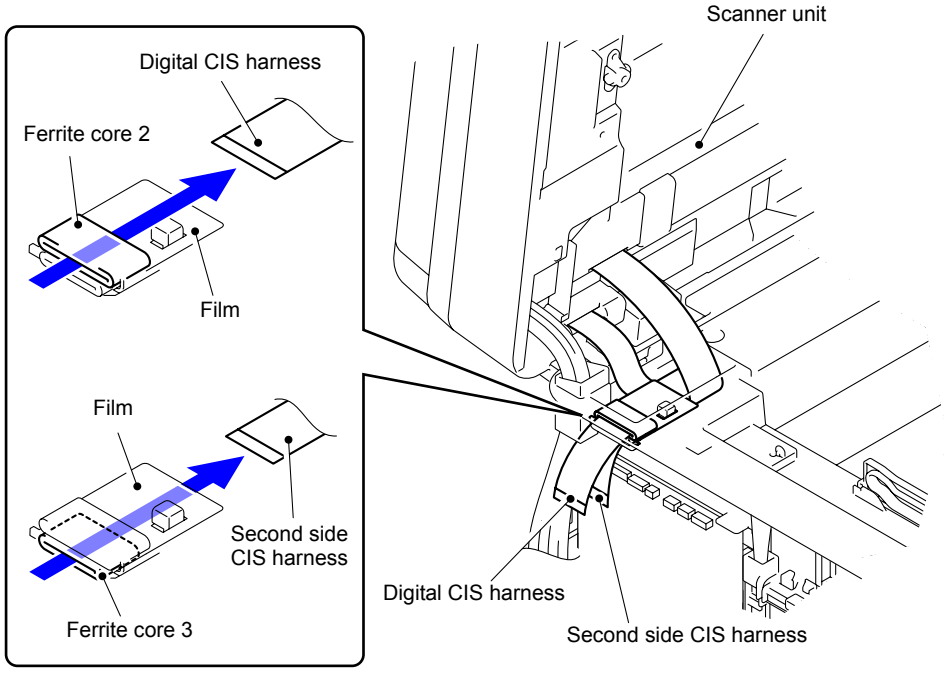


Fig. 7-37

(24) Remove the Harness from the Hook to take it out from the Hole in the Joint cover top.

(25) Take out the FB FG harness ASSY and ADF FG harness ASSY from the Hole in the Joint cover top.

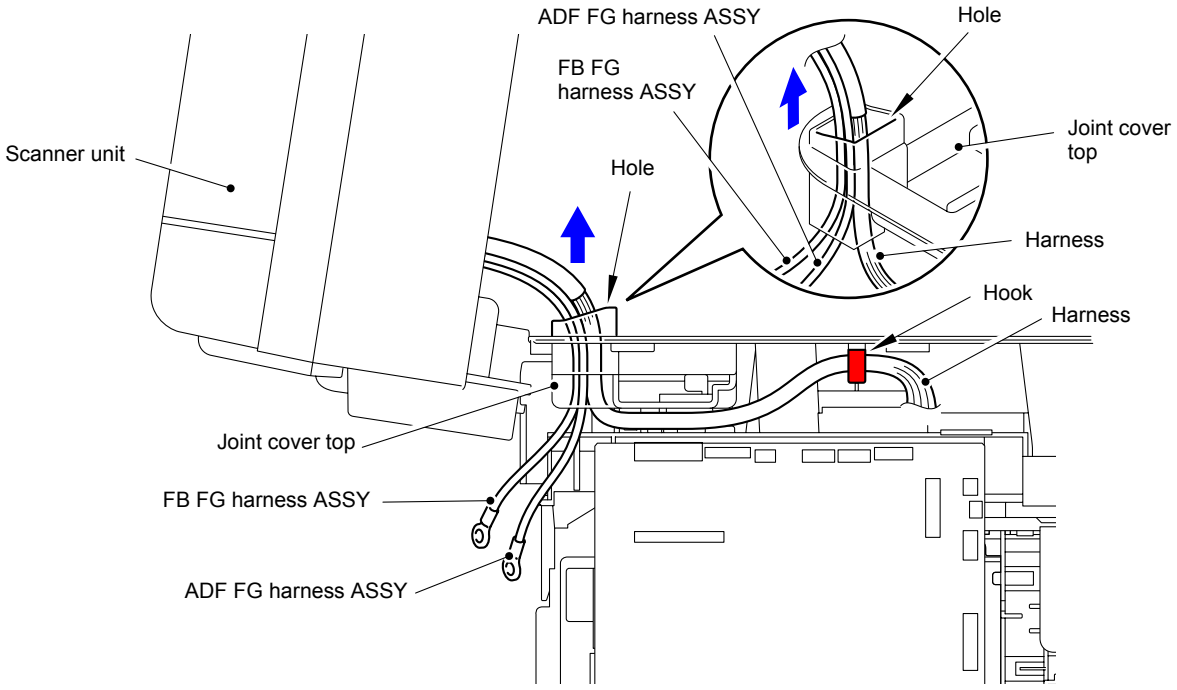


Fig. 7-38

(26) Change the angle of the Scanner unit as shown in the figure to remove it from the Main body.

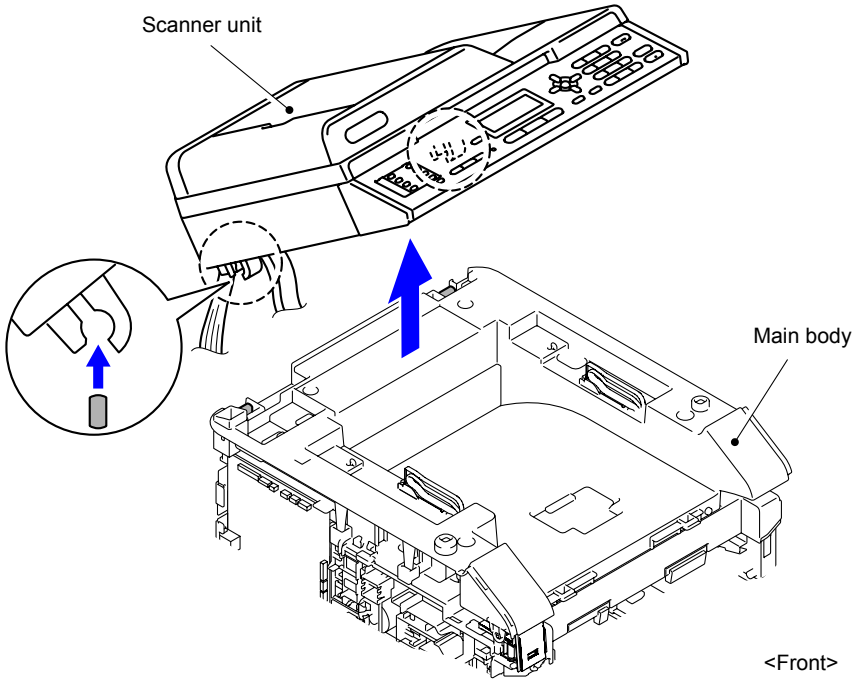


Fig. 7-39

(27) Remove the eight Taptite bind B M4x12 screws from the Joint cover top.

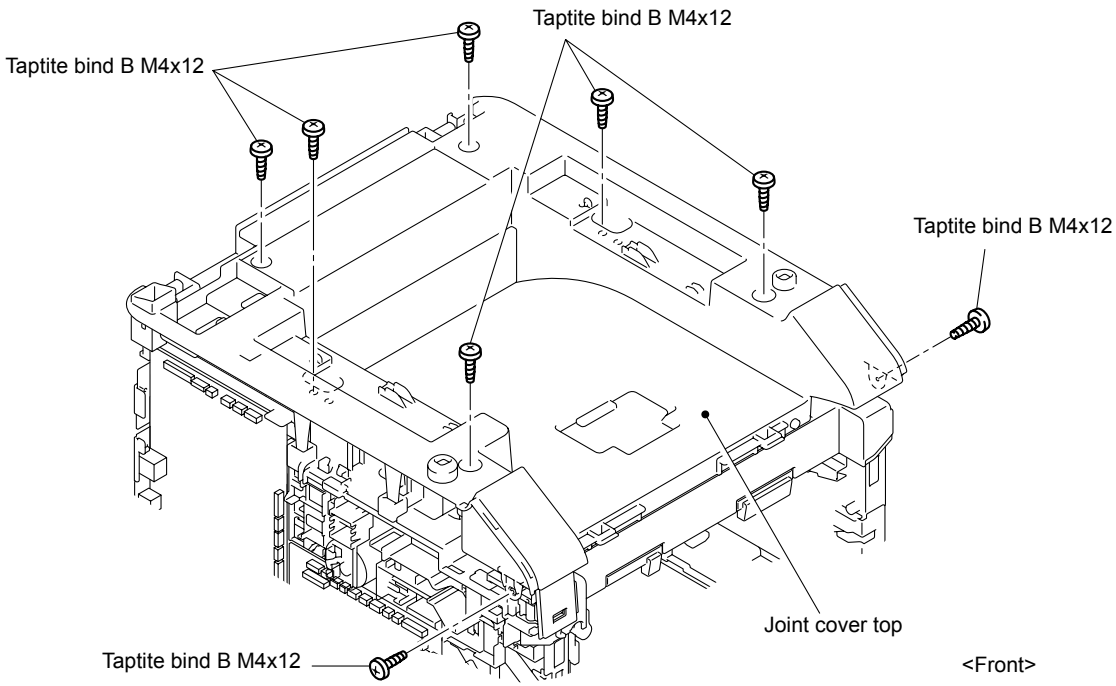


Fig. 7-40

(28) Release the eight Hooks to remove the Joint cover top from the Main body.

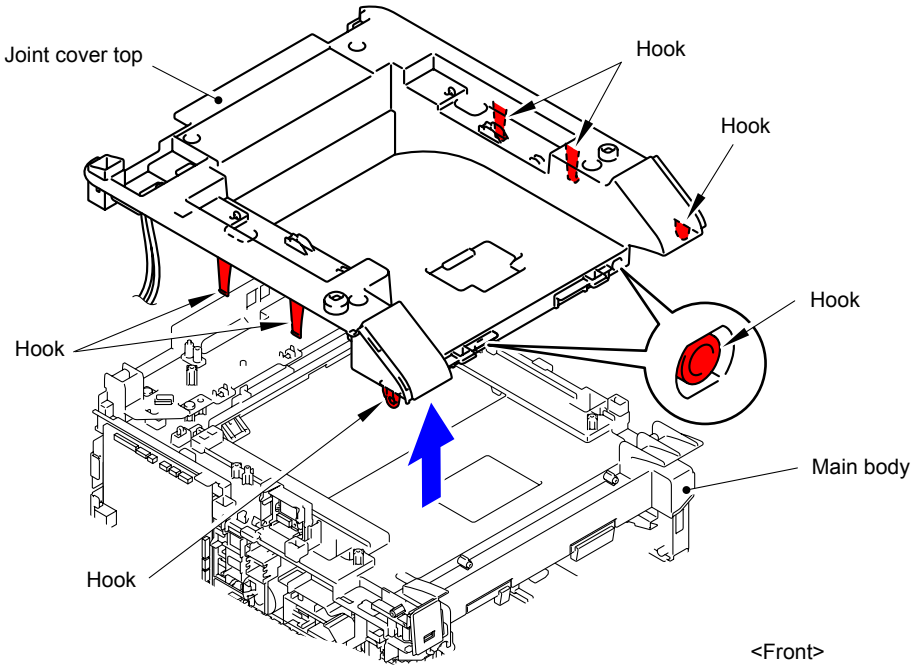


Fig. 7-41

(29) Remove the Screw pan (S/P washer) M3.5x6 screw to remove the NCU FG harness ASSY from the Main body.

(30) Disconnect the wiring from the Main PCB ASSY.

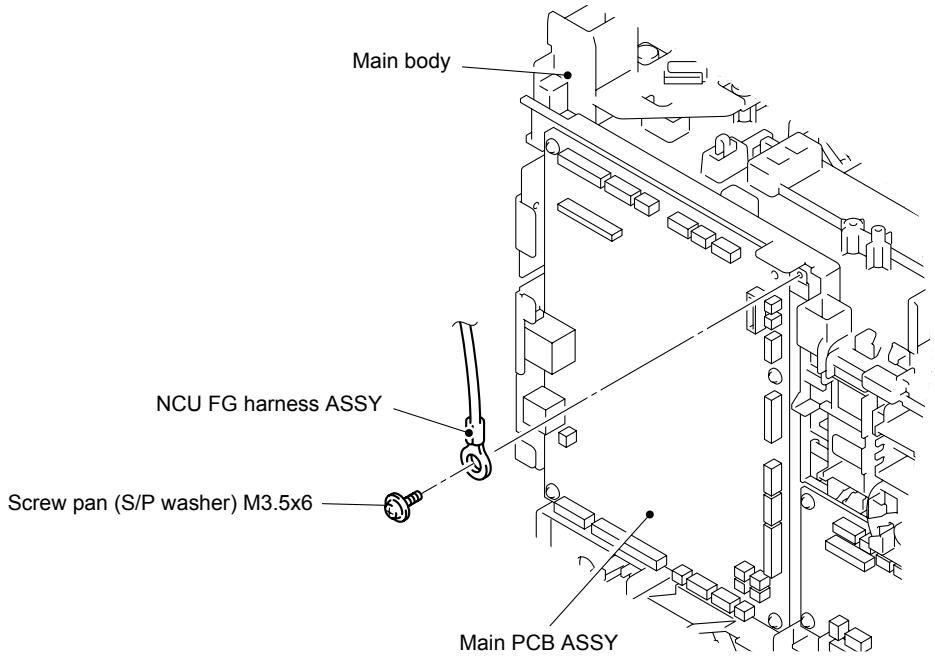


Fig. 7-42

(31) Disconnect the 14 Connectors (CN9, CN10, CN11, CN12, CN13, CN15, CN17, CN22, CN23, CN24, CN25, CN26, CN27, and CN30) from the Main PCB ASSY.

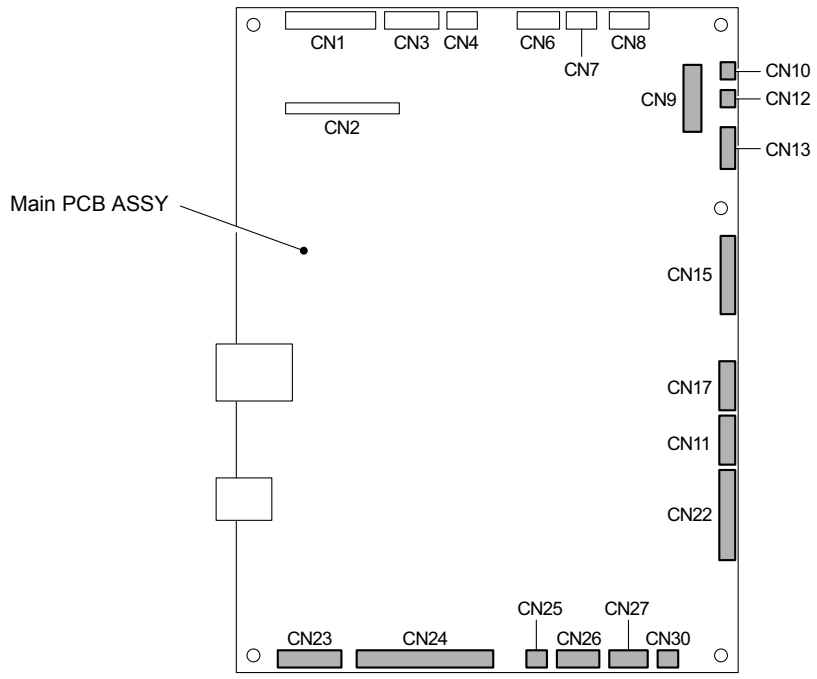


Fig. 7-43

(32) Remove the four Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Main PCB ASSY from the Top drive ASSY.

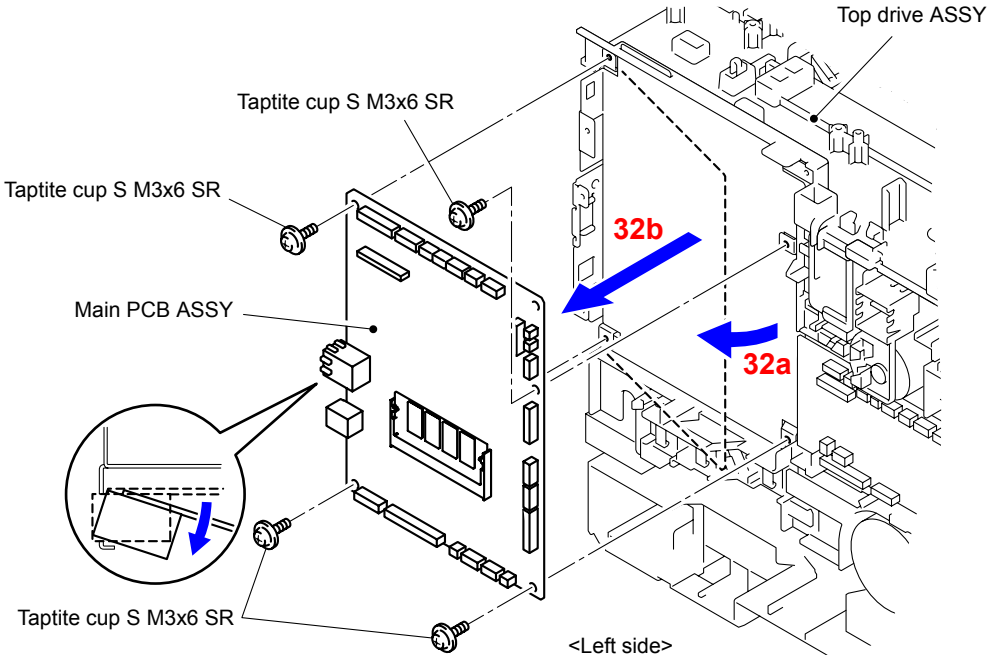


Fig. 7-44

(33) Remove the Main insulation sheet from the Top drive ASSY.

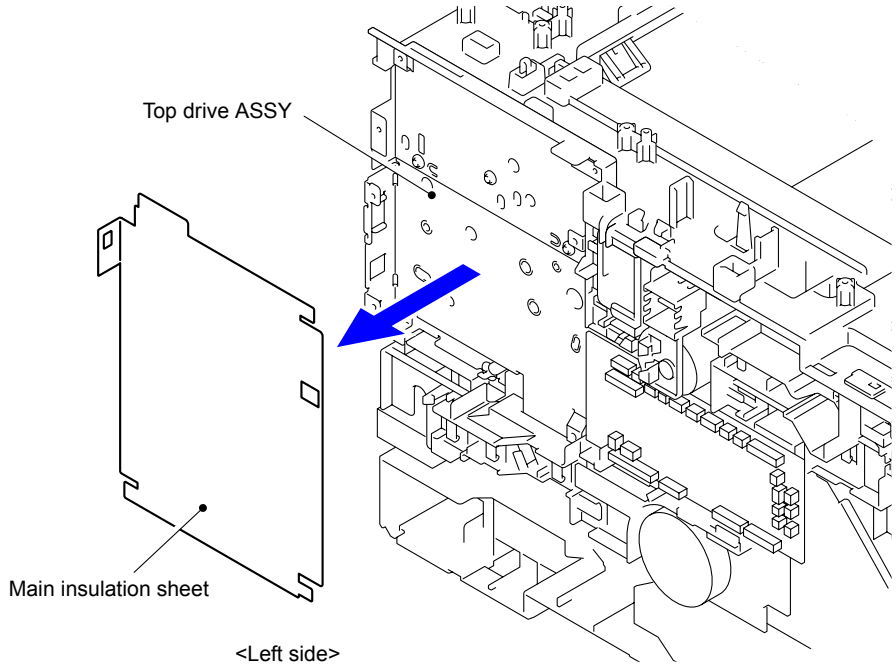


Fig. 7-45

(34) Remove the four Taptite bind B M4x12 screws from the Back cover upper.

(35) Release the two Hooks to remove the Back cover upper from the Main body.

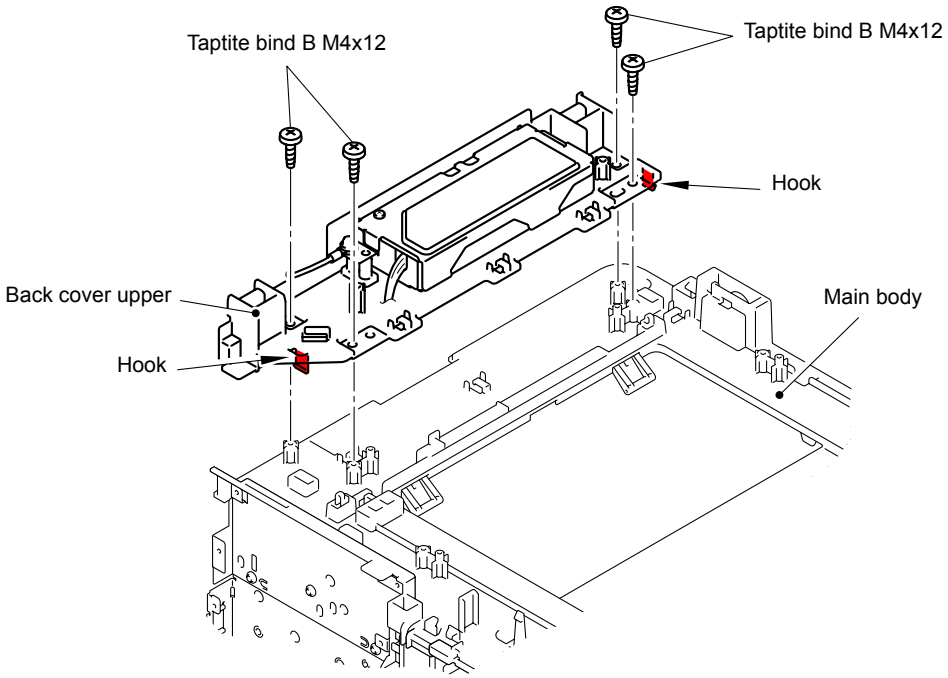


Fig. 7-46

(36) Remove the seven Taptite cup S M3x8 screws and Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screw from the Joint cover base ASSY.

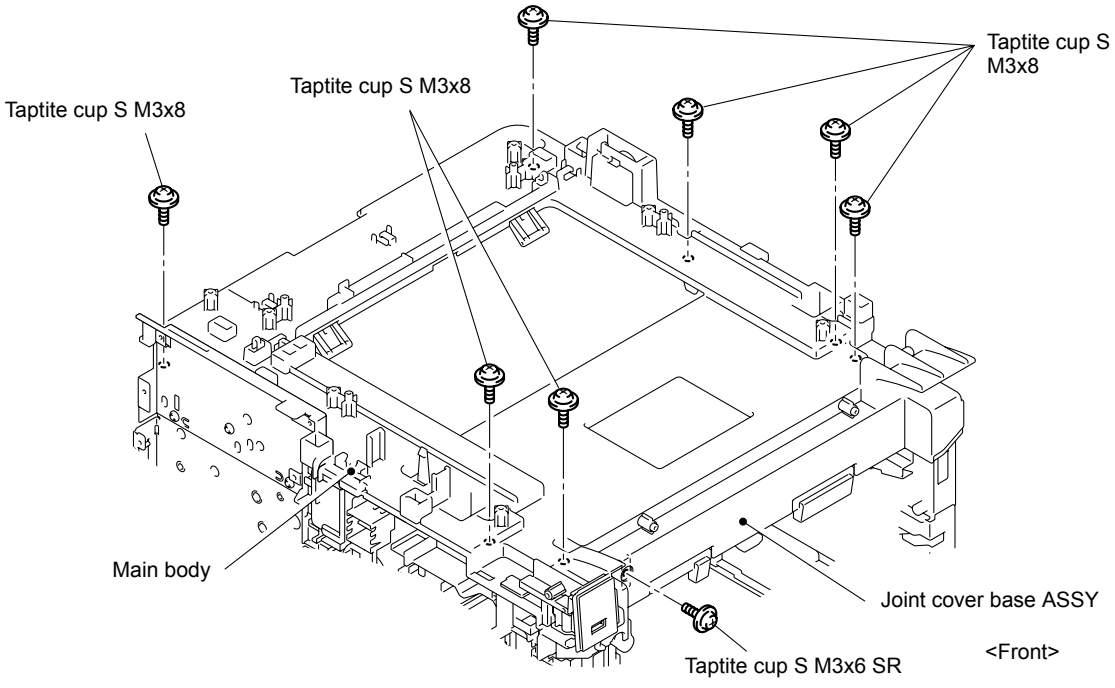


Fig. 7-47

(37) Remove the two Taptite bind B M4x12 screws from the Joint cover base ASSY.

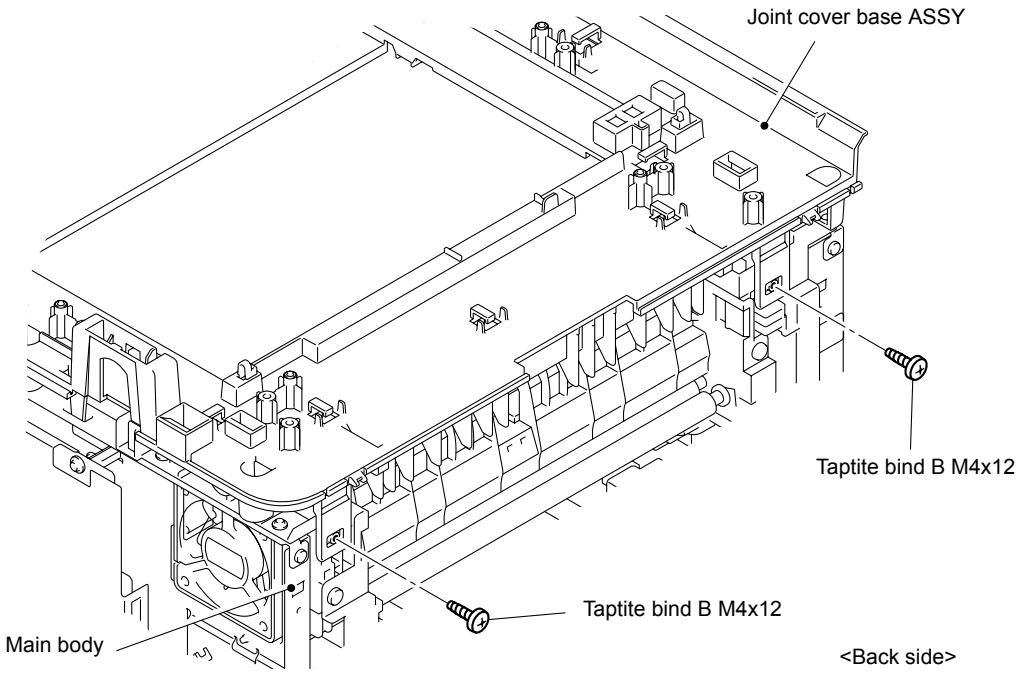


Fig. 7-48

(38) Release the ten Hooks to remove the Joint cover base ASSY from the Main body.

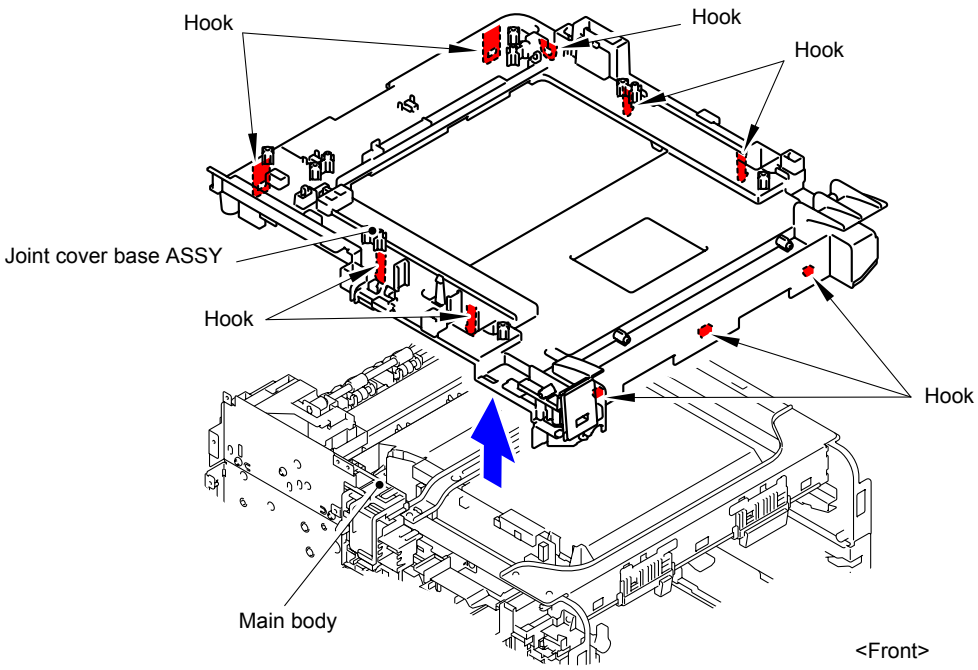


Fig. 7-49

(39) Remove the three Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Main shield plate from the Top drive ASSY.

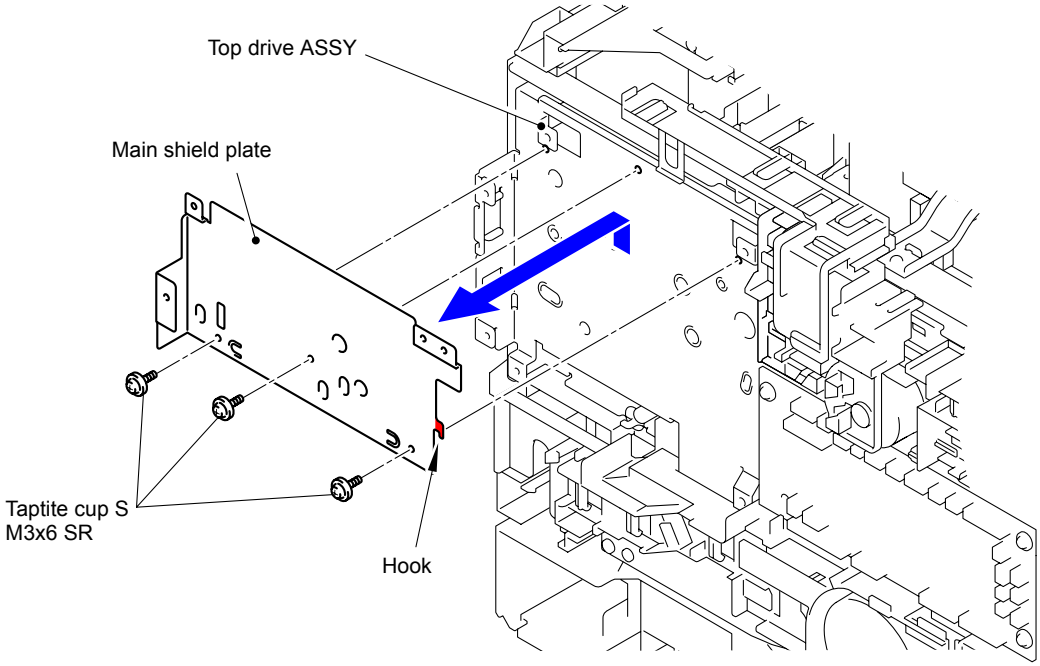


Fig. 7-50

(40) Disconnect the Flat cable from the Develop FFC holder.

(41) Release the two Hooks to remove the Develop FFC holder from the Upper cable rack.

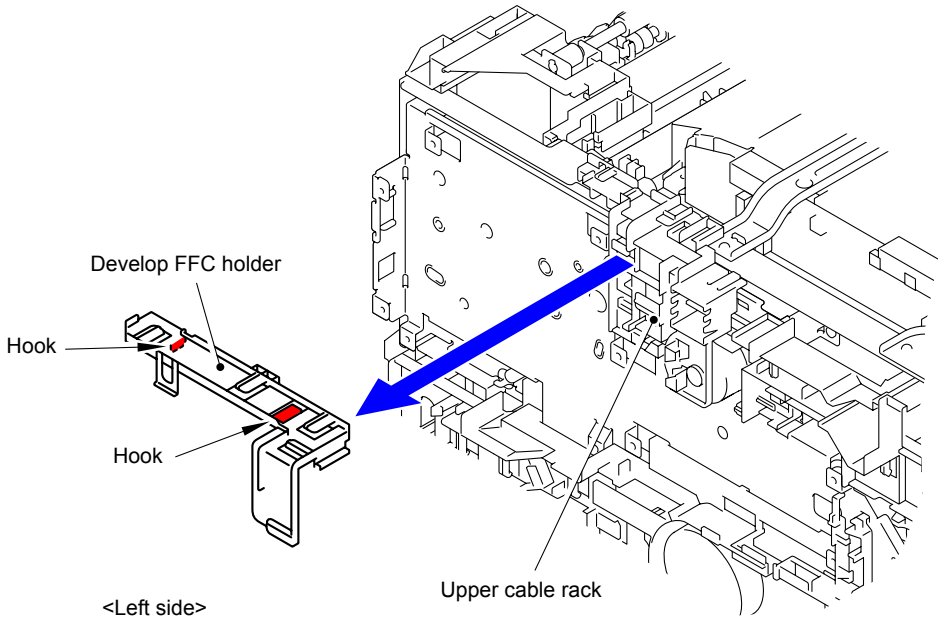


Fig. 7-51

(42) Disconnect cables from the Upper cable rack.

(43) Release the four Hooks to remove the Upper cable rack from the Base frame unit.

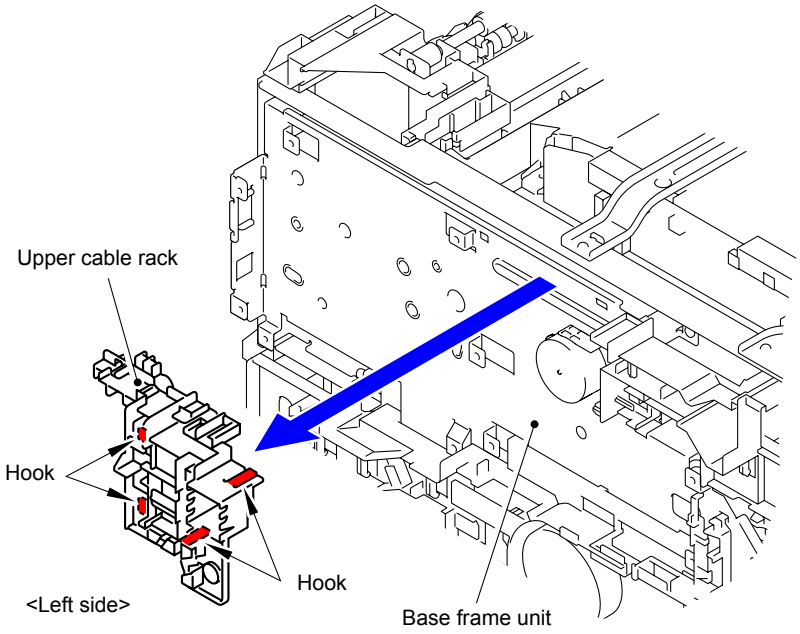


Fig. 7-52

(44) Remove the two Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the Top beam from the Base frame unit.

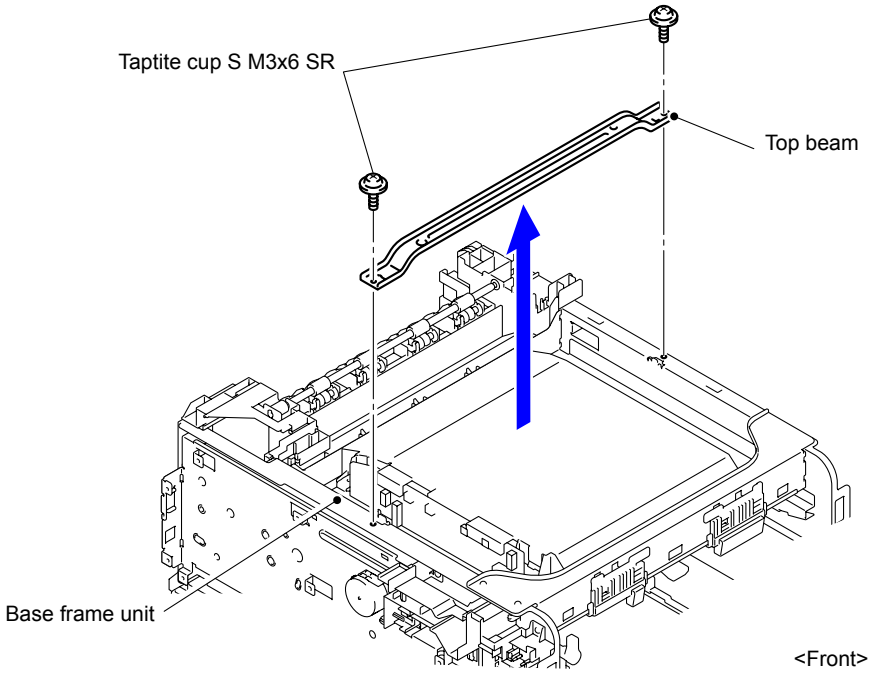


Fig. 7-53

(45) Remove the five Taptite cup S M3x6 SR screws to remove the four Scanner holders.

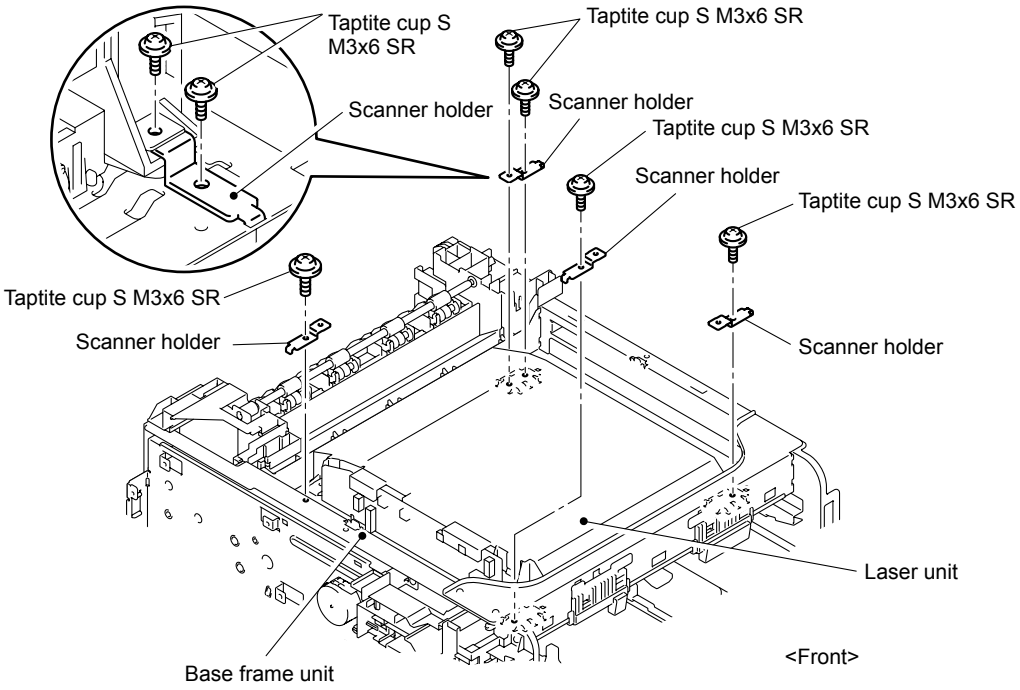


Fig. 7-54

(46) Remove the Connector (CN8) and two Flat cables from the Laser unit to remove the Laser unit from the Base frame unit.

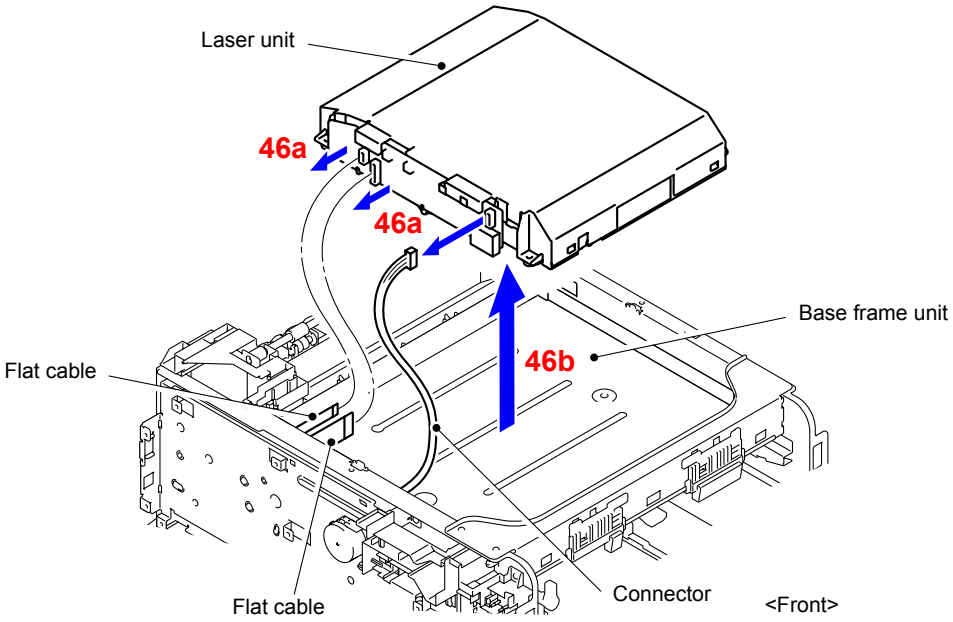


Fig. 7-55

Assembling Note:
When connecting flat cable(s), do not insert them at an angle. After insertion, check that the cable are not at an angle.

(47) After replacing the Laser unit, reset the counter. (Refer to "2.2 Parts Life Reset Function" in Chapter 5.)

2.1.3 Paper feeding kit1

(1) Release the Hook to remove the Separation pad holder ASSY from the Paper tray.

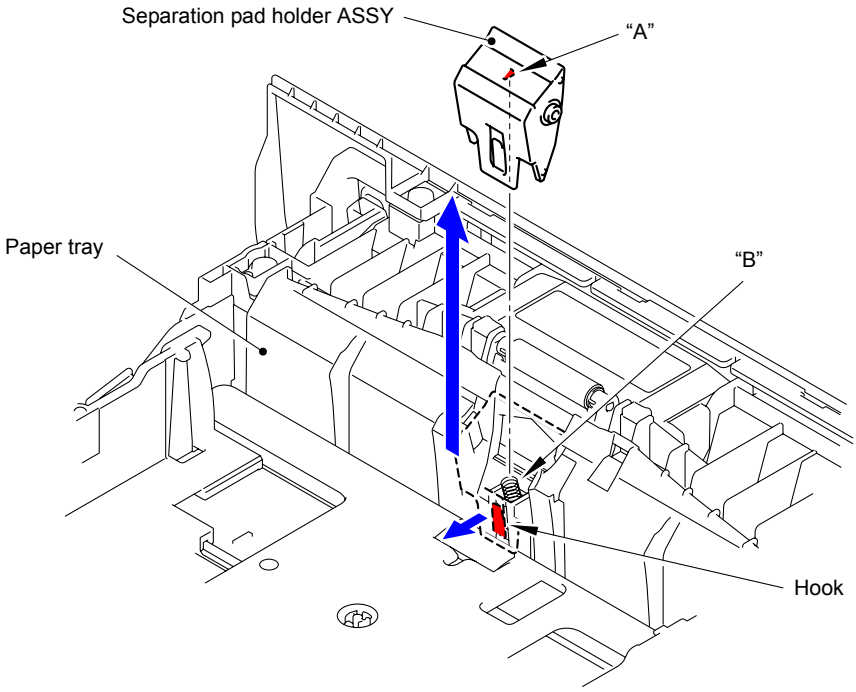


Fig. 7-56

Assembling Note:

Mount the Separation pad holder ASSY in a way that "A" of the Separation pad holder ASSY is inserted into "B" of the Separation pad spring.

(2) Remove the Separation pad spring from the Paper tray.

Note:
Be careful not to lose the Separation pad spring.

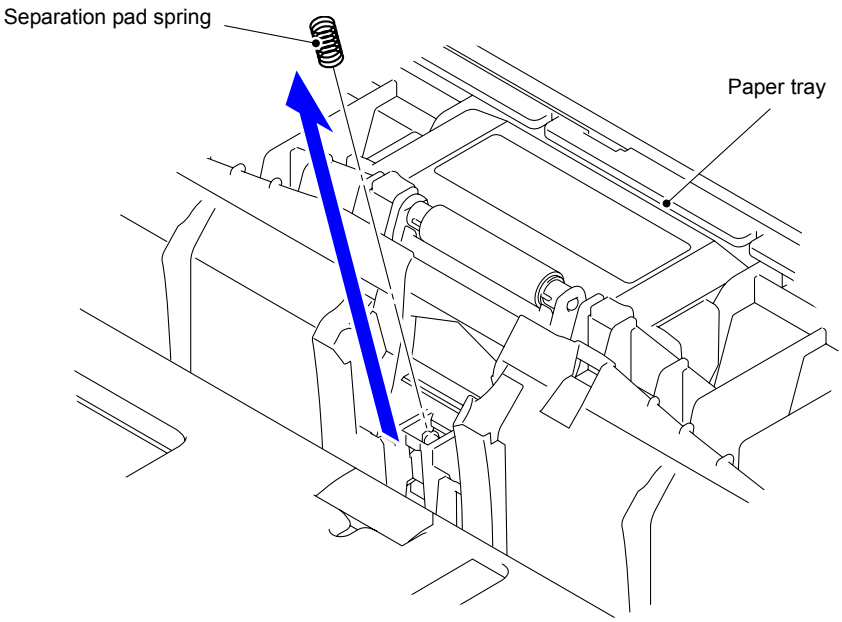


Fig. 7-57

(3) Push the T1 lift arm to the back to remove “B” of the Roller holder ASSY from “A” of the T1 lift arm.

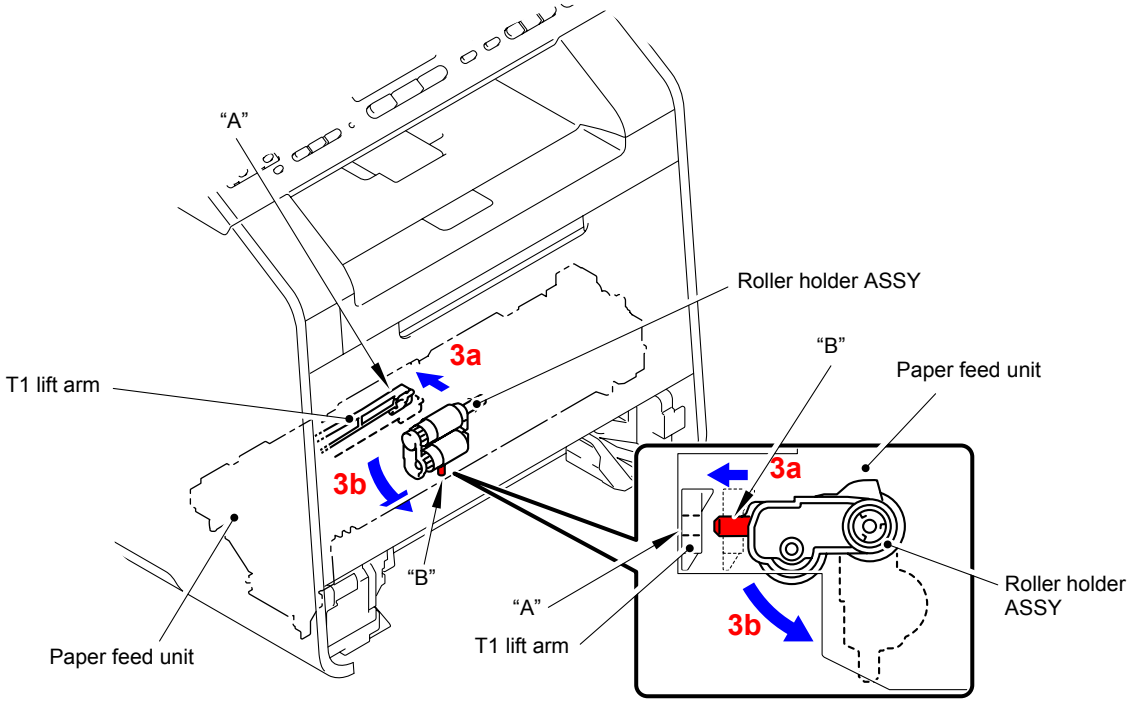


Fig. 7-58

(4) Slide the Roller holder ASSY in the direction of the arrow 4 to remove it from the “C” of the Paper feed unit.

(5) Slide the Roller holder ASSY in the direction of the arrow 5a and 5b in this order to remove it.

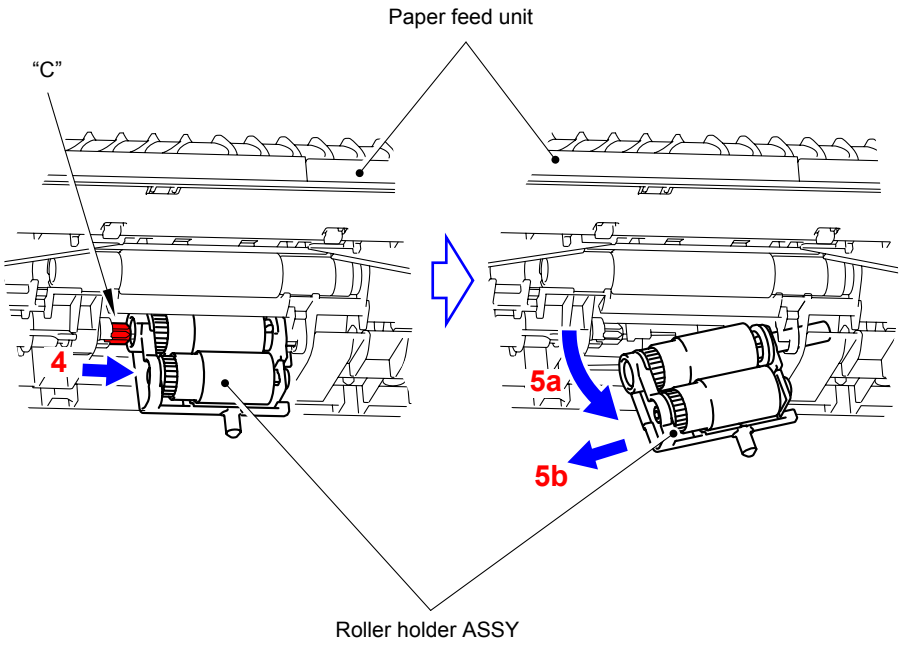


Fig. 7-59

Assembling Note:
Align the Shaft of the roller holder ASSY to the hole of the Paper feed unit and insert it into the hole.

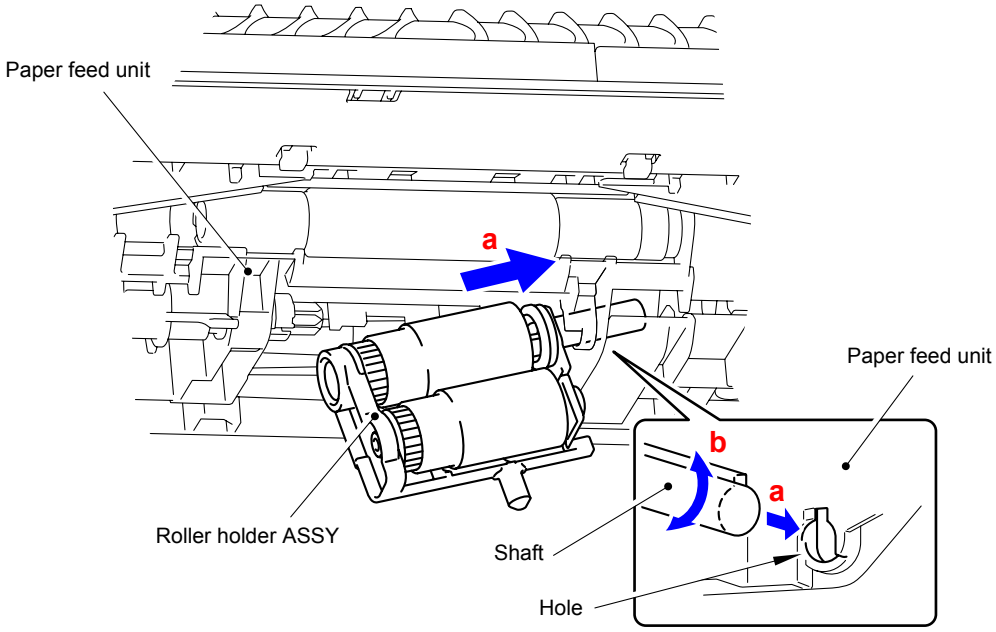


Fig. 7-60

(6) After replacing the Paper feeding kit, reset the counter. (Refer to “2.2 Parts Life Reset Function” in Chapter 5.)

2.1.4 Paper feeding kit2

(1) Release the two Hooks of the T2 separation pad ASSY to remove them in the upward direction.

Note:
Be careful not to lose the T2 separation pad spring.

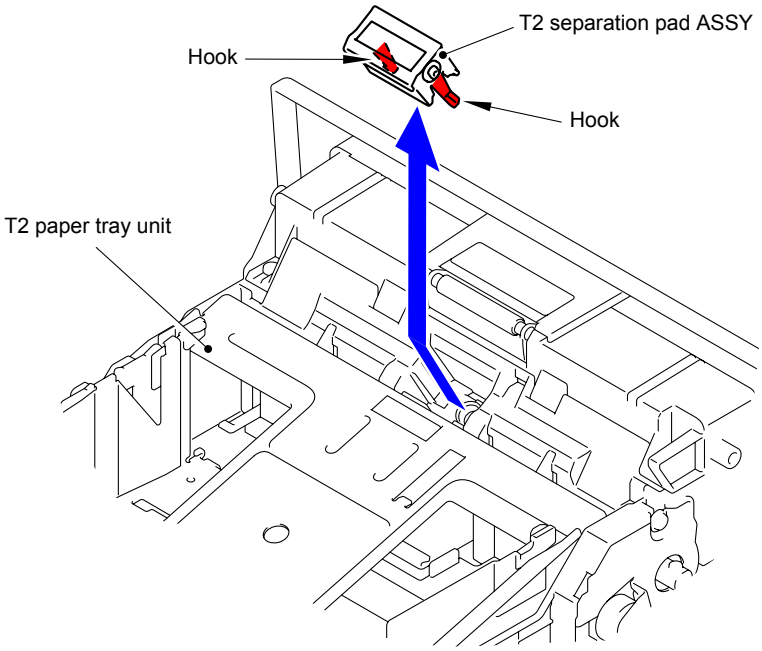


Fig. 7-61

(2) Remove the T2 separation pad spring from the T2 separation pad ASSY.

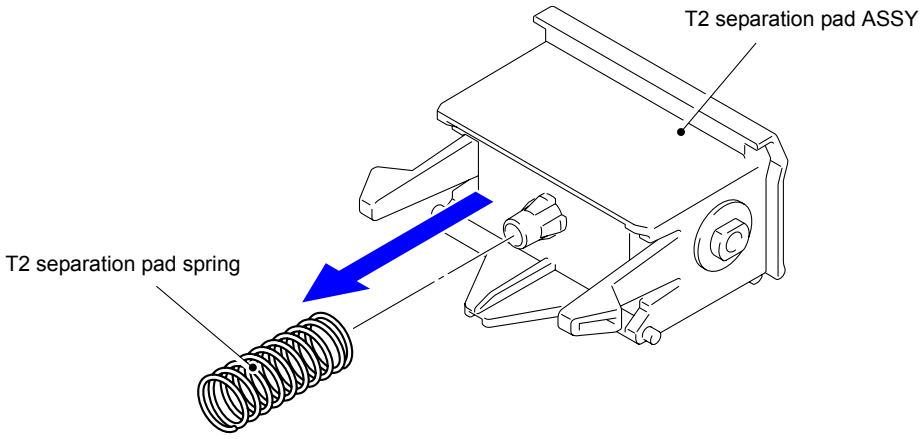


Fig. 7-62

(3) Release the Hook and slide the T2 separation roller ASSY in the direction of the arrow 3.

(4) Remove the T2 separation roller ASSY in the direction of the arrow 4b as rotating it in the direction of the arrow 4a.

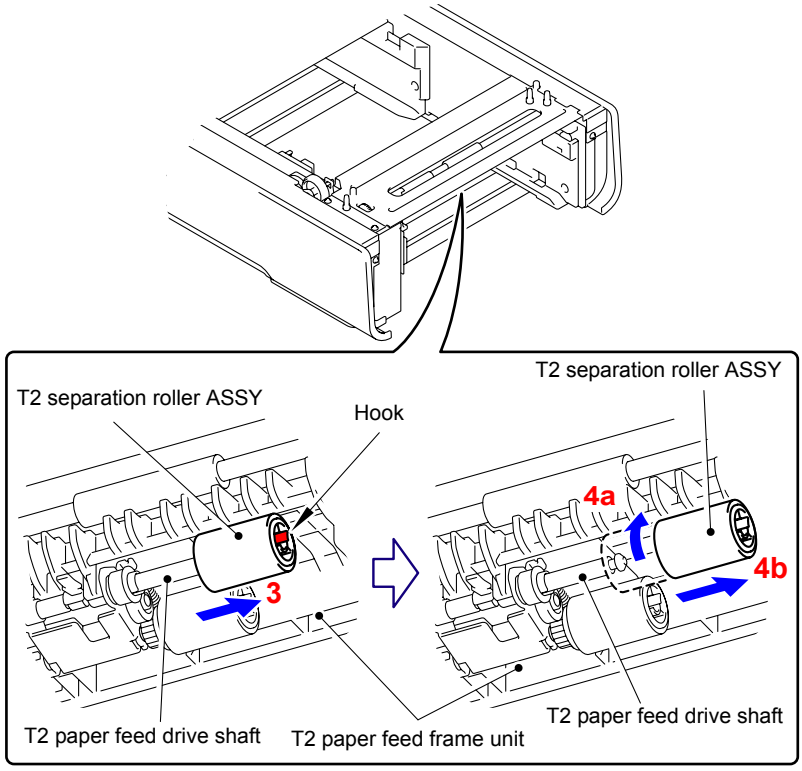


Fig. 7-63

Assembling Note:

When assembling the T2 separation roller ASSY, be sure to assemble it by sliding it in the direction of the arrow b as rotating the T2 separation roller ASSY in the direction of the arrow a.

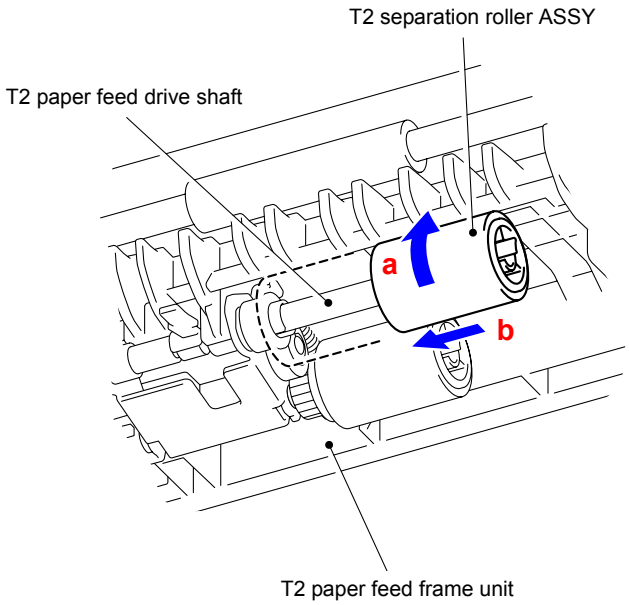


Fig. 7-64

(5) Release the Hooks to remove the Feed roller ASSY from the Paper feed shaft.

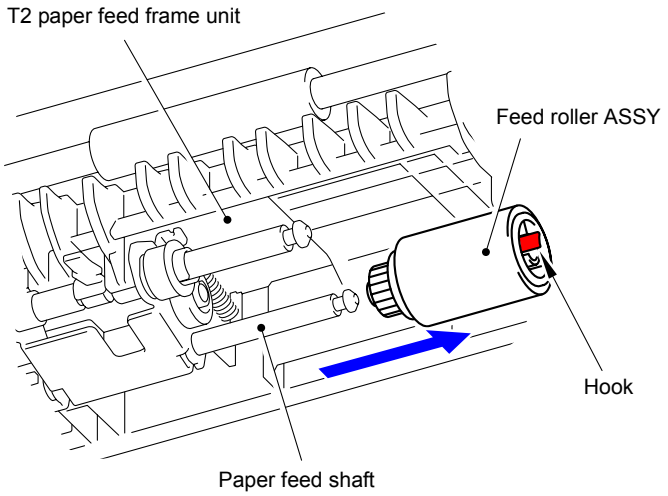


Fig. 7-65

(6) After replacing the Paper feeding kit, reset the counter. (Refer to "2.2 Parts Life Reset Function" in Chapter 5.)

2.1.5 MP paper feeding kit

(1) Press “A” to release the Hook and then remove the MP upper frame cover from the MP upper cover ASSY.

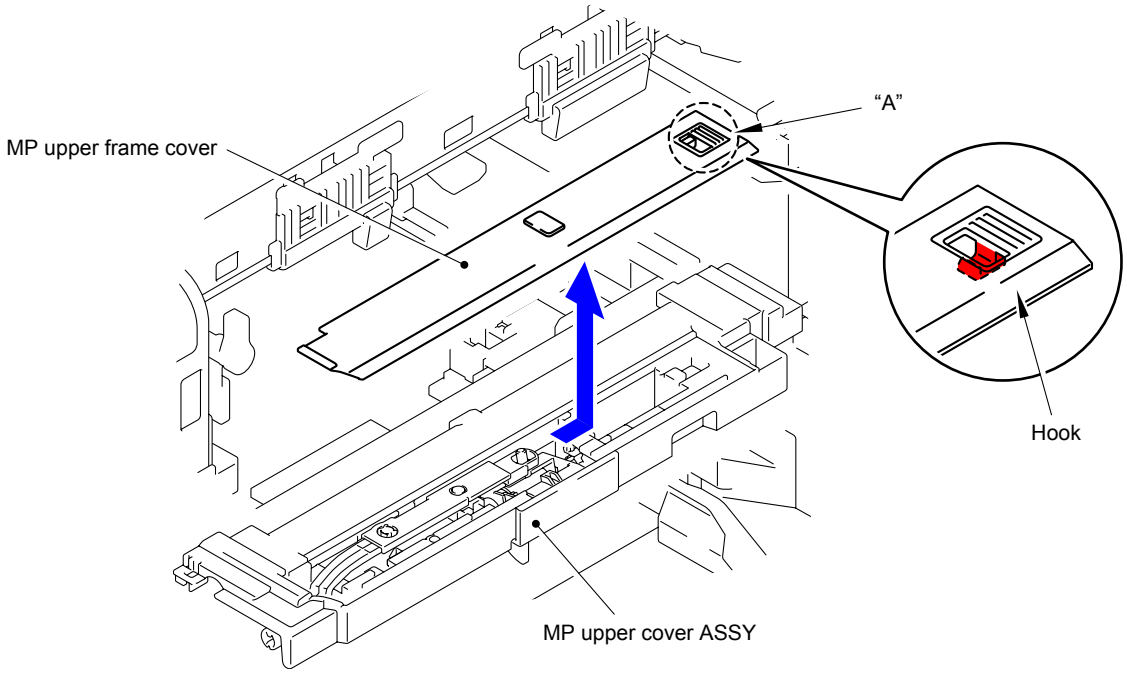


Fig. 7-66

(2) Remove the MP lift arm B from the MP upper cover ASSY.

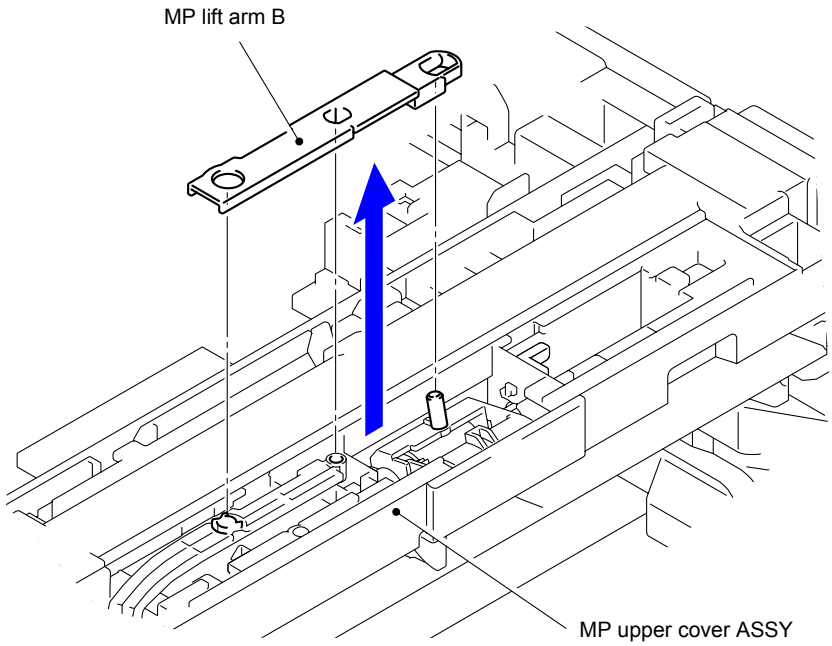


Fig. 7-67

(3) Release the Hook to remove the MP holder bush from the MP upper cover.

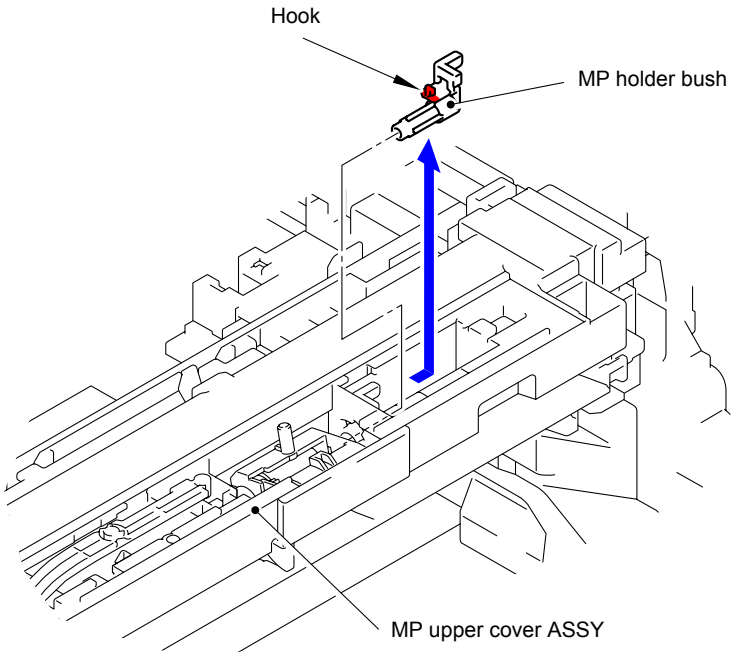


Fig. 7-68

(4) Remove the MP roller holder ASSY from the MP upper cover ASSY.

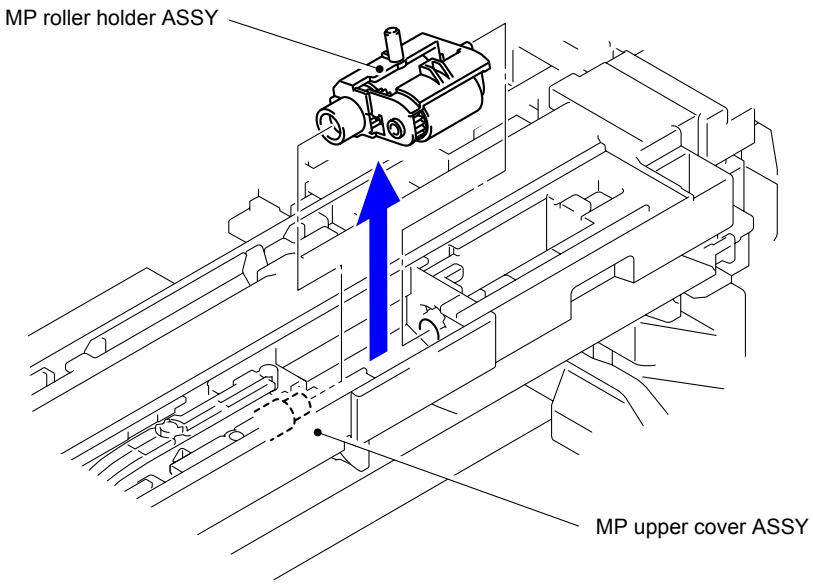


Fig. 7-69

(5) Turn the MP separation pad ASSY upright to remove it from the MP unit.

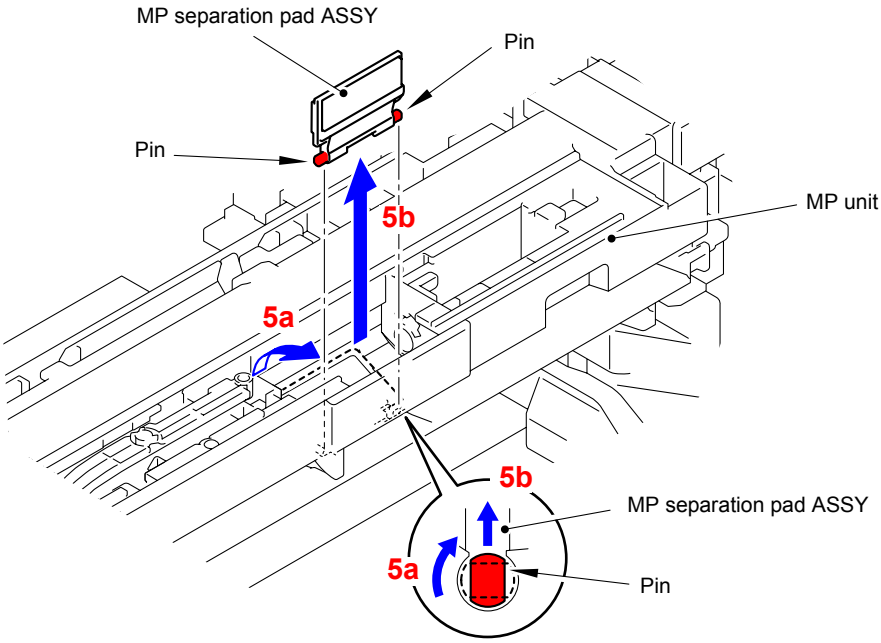


Fig. 7-70

(6) Remove the MP separation pad spring from the two Pins of MP unit.

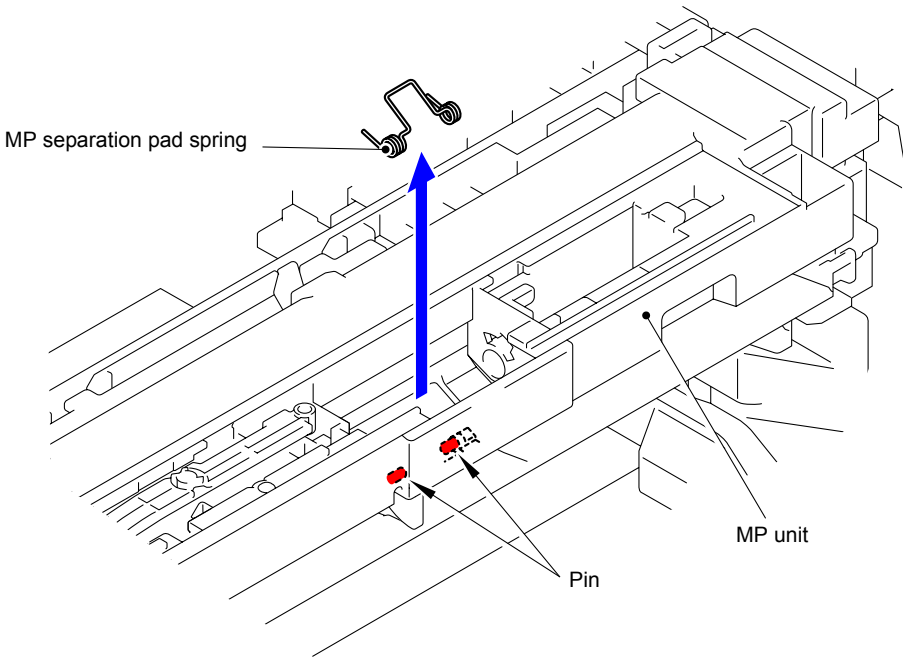


Fig. 7-71

(7) After replacing the MP paper feeding kit, reset the counter. (Refer to "2.2 Parts Life Reset Function" in Chapter 5.)

APPENDIX 1.
SERIAL NUMBERING SYSTEM

APPENDIX 1 SERIAL NUMBERING SYSTEM

■ Serial number labels for the machine itself

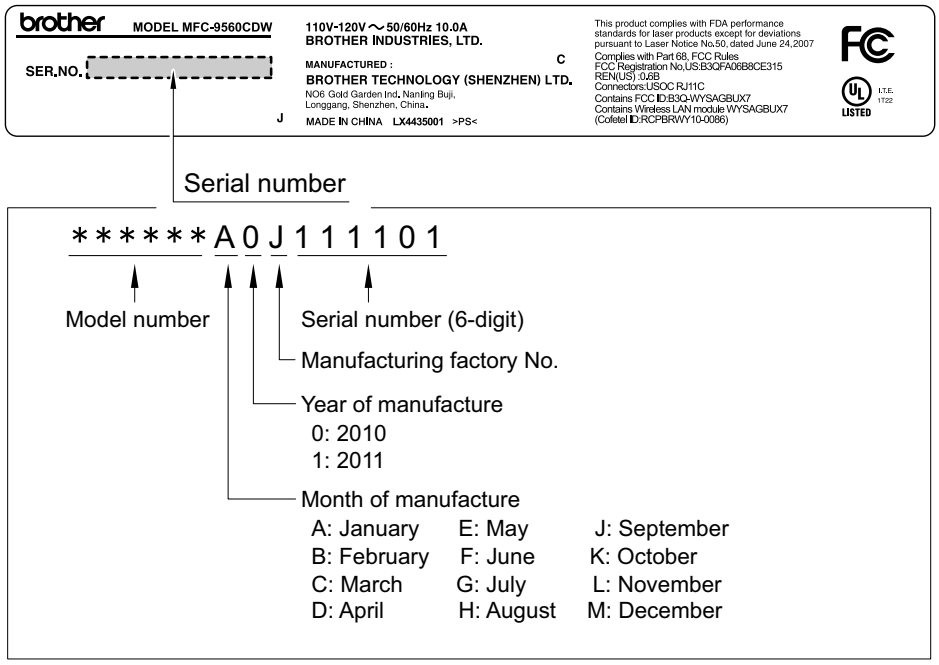


Fig. App 1-1

<Location>

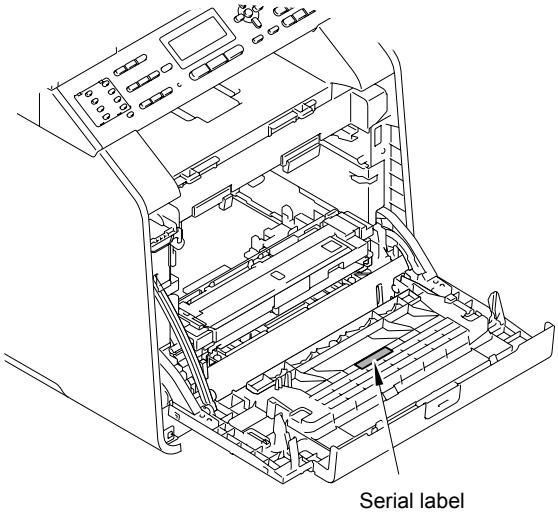


Fig. App 1-2

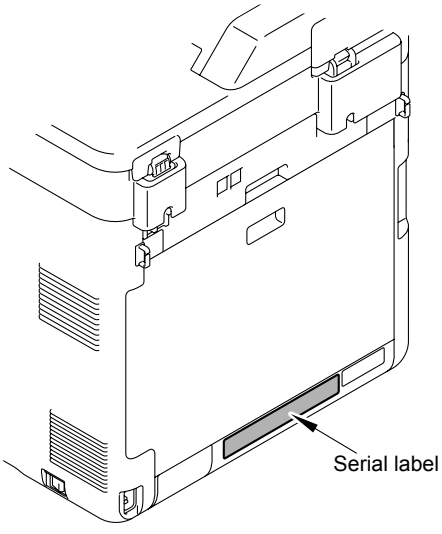


Fig. App 1-3

APPENDIX 2.

DELETION OF USER SETTING INFORMATION, ETC.

This appendix provides instructions on how to delete user setting information etc. recorded in the machine.

APPENDIX 2 DELETION OF USER SETTING INFORMATION, ETC.

In this machine, the user setting information is stored in the EEPROM and flash memory of the main PCB. You can delete all the data listed below at a time with the procedure given below.

- Information related to Net
- User setting information

<Operating Procedure>

(1) Press the **Menu** button while the machine is in the ready state.

(2) Press the ▲ or ▼ button, then the "Initial Setup" or "General Setup" will appear on the LCD and press the **OK** button.
(Which will appear, "Initial Setup" or "General Setup", depends on the model.)

(3) Press the ▲ or ▼ button, then the "Reset Menu" will appear on the LCD and press the **OK** button.

(4) Press the ▲ or ▼ button, then the "All Settings" will appear on the LCD and press the **OK** button.

Non Touch panel model

(5) The "1.Reset/2.Exit" will appear on the LCD.

(6) Press the **1** button, and the user setting information is deleted, and the machine goes back to the ready state.

Touch panel model

(5) The "Yes/No" will appear on the LCD.

(6) Press the "Yes", and the user setting information is deleted, and the machine goes back to the ready state.

Note:
The machine returns to the ready state automatically if no panel operation is implemented for 30 seconds.

APPENDIX 3.
INSTALLING THE MAINTENANCE DRIVER

APPENDIX 3 INSTALLING THE MAINTENANCE DRIVER

To identify multiple machines connected to the computer via USB, the computer needs to configure the corresponding number of virtual USB devices by a driver or software. If you connect a multiple number of machines to your computer, the same number of virtual USB devices will be automatically configured on your computer.

To prevent virtual USB devices from being configured without limitation, use the unique driver installation procedure described below that enables your computer to identify multiple machines via one single virtual USB device.

<Procedures>

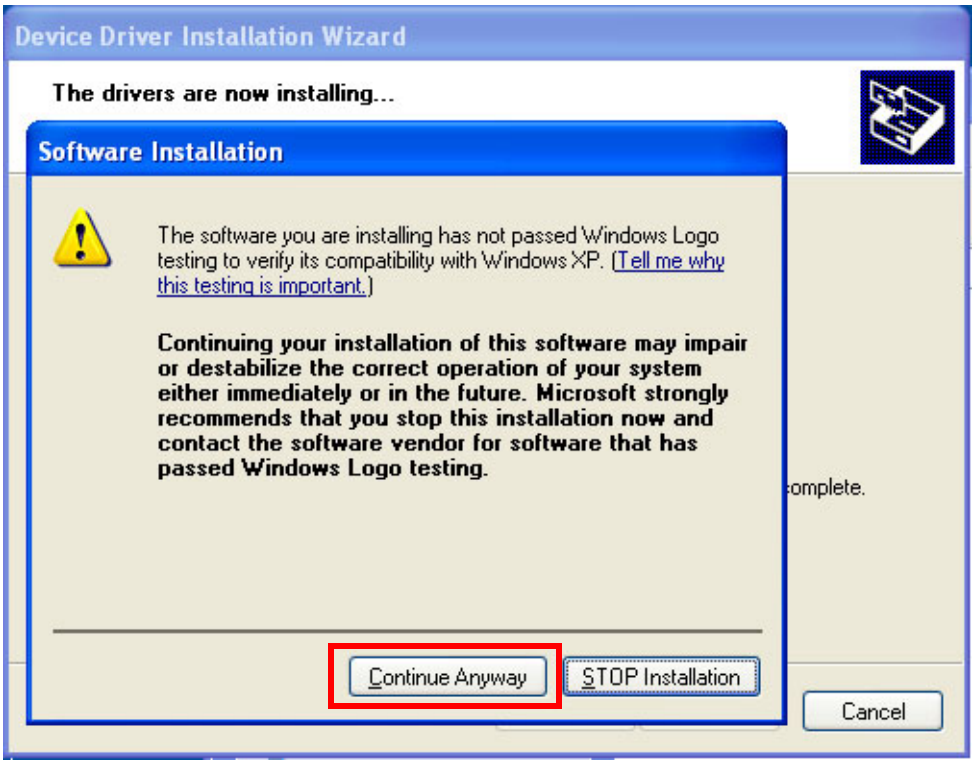
(1) While the machine is in the ready state, press the **OK** button and then **Start/Black** button. Next, press the ▲ button 4 times, and the machine goes into the maintenance mode.

(2) "▮▮ MAINTENANCE ▮▮▮" appears on the LCD, and the machine goes into the maintenance mode.

(3) Double-click "Setup.exe" of the maintenance printer driver which is saved in the temporary folder to execute.

(4) The following screen appears, indicating the detection of device driver installation wizard. Click **Next** to proceed. (Screen below is the example of Windows® XP.)

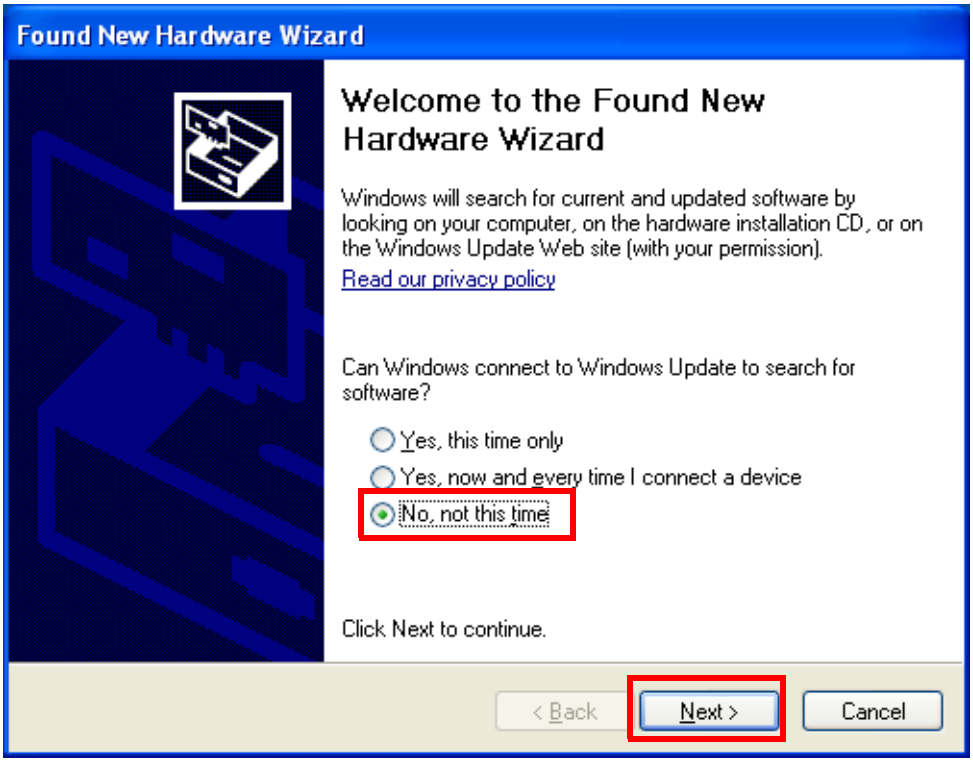
(5) Alert warning message appears three times, click **Continue Anyway** to proceed.



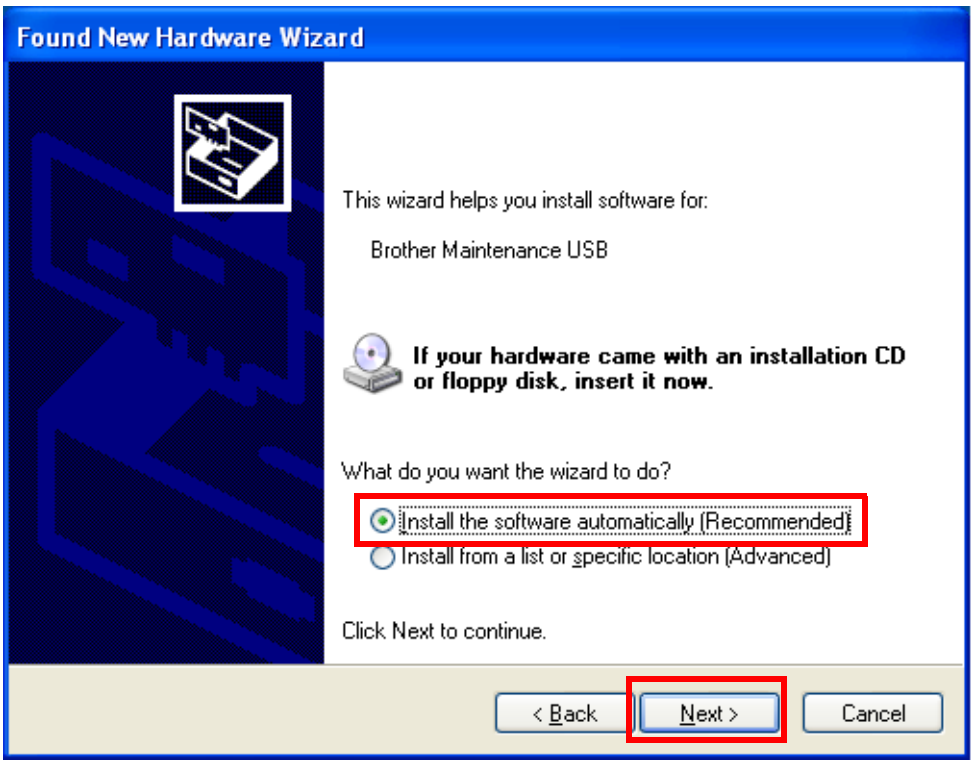
(6) If the device driver is successfully installed, the following message screen appears. Click **Finish** to return.

(7) Connect the machine to your computer using the USB cable.

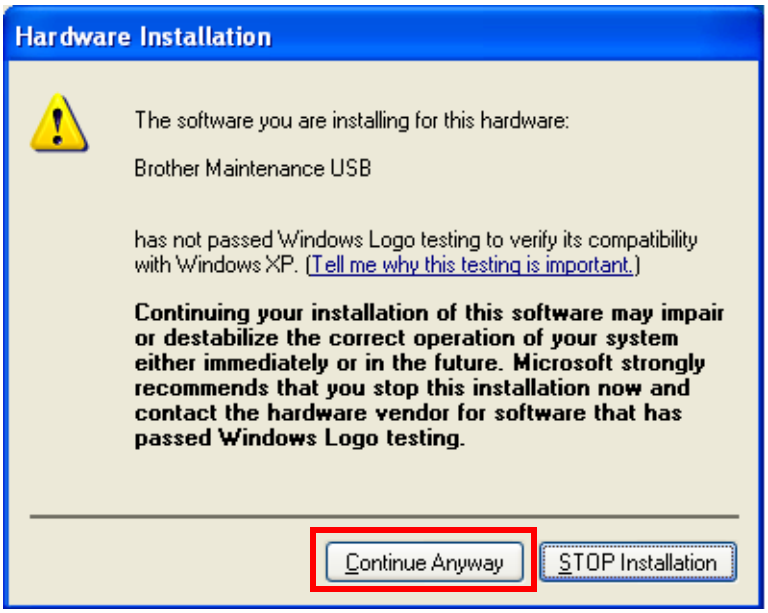
(8) The following screen appears, indicating the detection of new hardware device by the system. Select “No, not this time” and click **Next**.

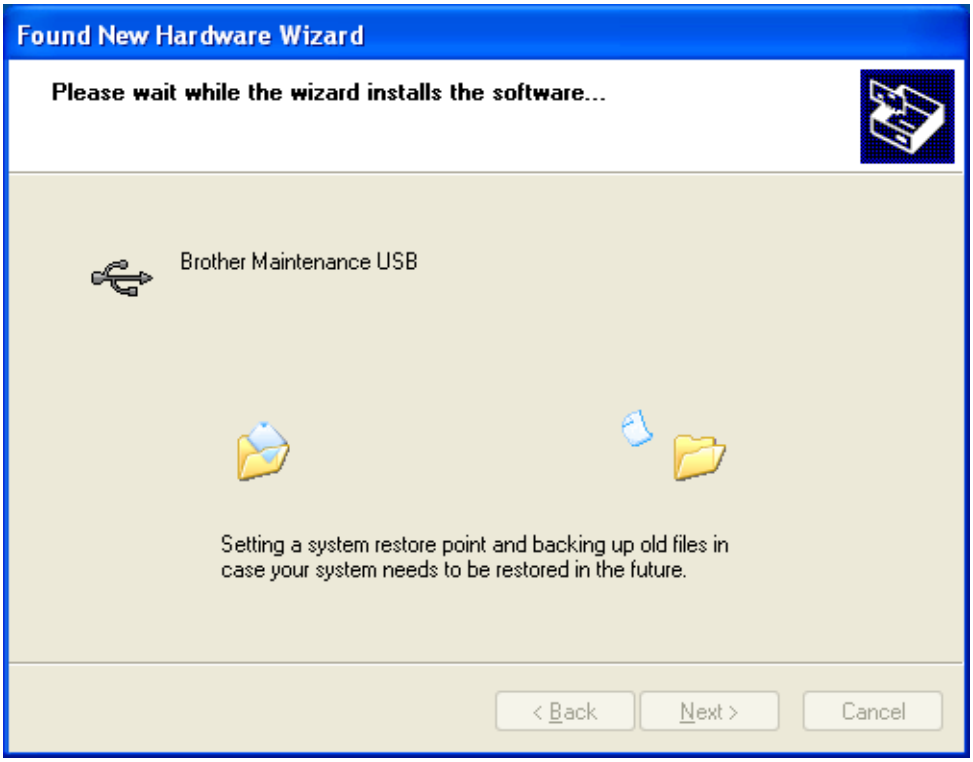


(9) Select “Install the software automatically (Recommended)” and click **Next**.

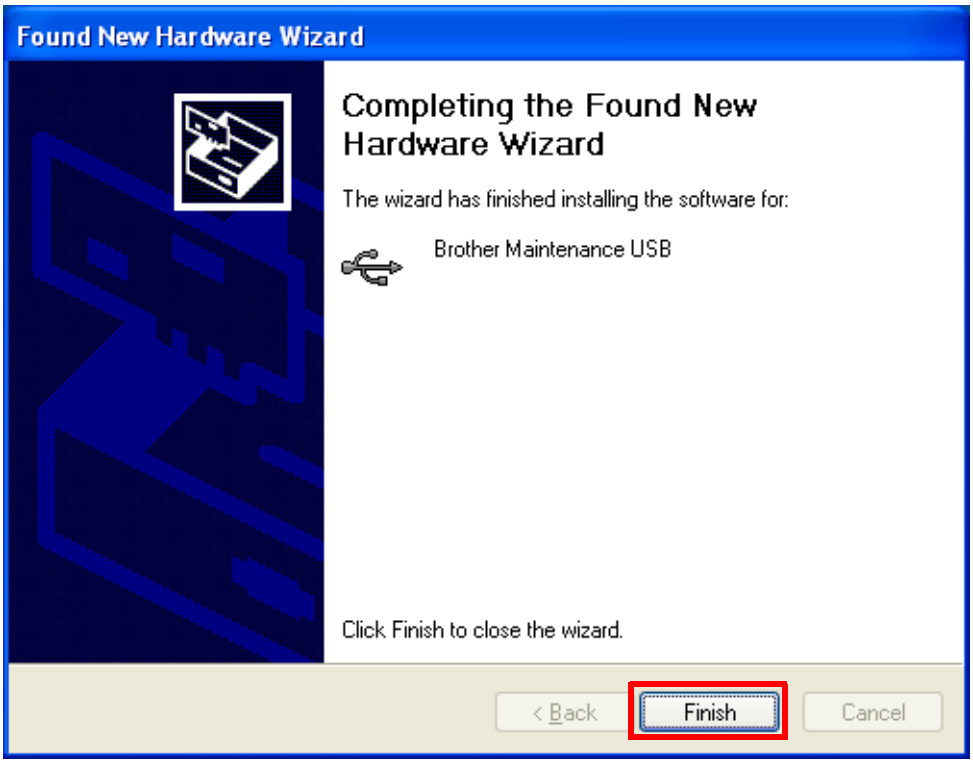


(10) Alert warning message appears, click **Continue Anyway** to proceed.





(11) If the Brother maintenance USB printer driver is successfully installed, the following message screen appears. Click **Finish** to return.



(12) Repeat the steps from (9) to (11) three times, and then complete its installation.

(13) Disconnect the USB cable.

(14) Press the ▲ or ▼ button to display “MAINTENANCE 99” on the LCD. Then, press the **OK** button. The maintenance mode exits from the maintenance mode and return to the ready state.